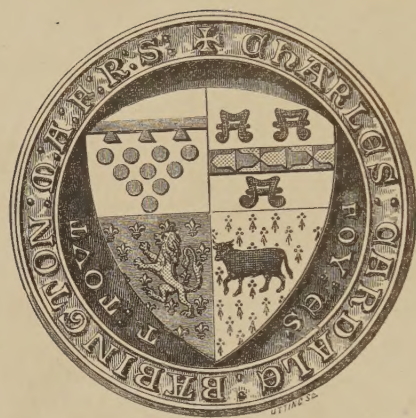






2 Vol t/1



S. 2. 3

947  
H532

Charles Cardale Babington,  
from the Editor, March 1865.





DA25  
B5  
V. 41  
pt. 1

RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI  
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.





THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS  
OF  
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND  
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY,  
UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS,

---

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished ; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,  
December 1857.*

---



POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN

MONACHI CESTRENSIS.







ere ptes affrici & Europa dep-  
erue by pe arme of pe see pte  
mouthes of pe arme contynen-  
this paas in fensre & fme  
as in bese and of piffenon  
of myddel erpe bywemyng and  
erue fwekep and wekep in bare  
de pte ordis de fceprone pte  
cosmographie  
is most in quantite Europa is  
the most pte in nombre of pepple  
is less of alle pe pte fmes bote  
in nombre of pepple and ifore fme  
moste men & fowles acontene

June & so hardier & boldere of herthe  
magis medio fme medietate pte  
haue pe grete see of myddel erpe by  
spynny in pe best at hercules pices  
pere pe see of Ocean of affrici bwekep out  
and makep the see aditum pe fensre of f  
see is fiftene polspand paas and pe grete fme  
polspand paas and bay in pe rye fide affrici  
& in pe lesse fide Europa and pte fme fwekep  
pmeere sees. pe endes of is pe watr Ocean  
an pe noy fide & fme in pe fowp fide  
pe grete see fowp fide oute of Ocean the  
up into pe fowp and pan into pe north sea  
leavis pe fuffe fwekep haue & passage of pte







3025  
E2  
v.41  
pt.1

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA  
AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF  
THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

SENIOR FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

VOL. I.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S  
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

L O N D O N :

LONGMAN, GREEN, LONGMAN, ROBERTS, AND GREEN.

1865.

44258



Printed by  
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

## CONTENTS.

---

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	ix
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS - - - - -	lxxiii
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, LIBER PRIMUS -	2





---

## INTRODUCTION.

---



## INTRODUCTION.

---

SCARCELY anything of the personal history of Ranulph Higden has come down to us; and indeed the scanty notices which we now possess, relating both to him and to his *Chronicle*, serve rather to perplex than to instruct us. A single sentence may tell all that we can say about him with certainty. He was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg's abbey in Chester, who died at an advanced age in the latter half of the fourteenth century, having compiled a *Polychronicon*, or *Universal History*, reaching to his own time; being likewise the author of some other works, which are in part extant.

Biographical notice of Higden. Materials scanty and unsatisfactory.

The name of Higden is variously written, and appears under the following forms: Higdenus, Higden, Hygden; also, Hikeden, Hykedown, Higenus, Higgeden; and, besides these variations, we have likewise, as it would appear, Higgenet (by a transition from Higgeden) and Heggenet.<sup>1</sup> His Christian name is usually written Ranulphus, in English Ranulf, or Ralph; but also Radulphus, and in English Randall, Rondoll, or Rondle.<sup>2</sup> He is very frequently designated Ranulphus

His name variously written.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, if Randall Higgenet, the monk of Chester, author of the miracle plays, be the same person; of which, as Warton says, not without reason, "there is the greatest probability." *Hist. of Engl. Poetry* (vol. ii. p. 179, note. Lond. 1778). Their dwelling place, vocation, and age agree; their names differ but slightly. See

also *Catalogue of Harl. MSS.*, n. 2013. Dr. Guest (*English Rhythms*, vol. ii. p. 415) observes that Higgenet is still a common name at Chester.

<sup>2</sup> Leland, *Collect.*, t. 2, p. 368 (ed. 1770); Tanner, *Bibl.*, p. 403; Oudin, *De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1029. We have, however, Higden's own authority for the form *Ranulphus*. In a Cambridge MS.,



Cestrensis, or Cestrensis only. The reader may well be satiated with these synonyms, and yet the most important variation is to be mentioned, if variation it be. It should rather be styled an erroneous designation. The Roger of Chester, mentioned by Bale and many others as a writer distinct from Ranulph Higden, seems, upon the whole, to be most probably identical with him; and his *Polycraticon* appears to be nothing else but a shorter form of the *Polychronicon* of our author, or, as some MSS. call it, his *Polycraticon*. But of this more hereafter.

Details of  
his history  
inexact  
or doubtful.

We are unable to point out either the exact place or date of his birth. His native place was somewhere in the west of England, according to Bale, and he must have been born in the latter part, probably during the last twenty years of the 13th century. He appears to have taken monastic vows in or about the year 1299. He attached himself to the Benedictine order, and became an inmate of the rich and powerful abbey of St. Werburgh in Chester.<sup>1</sup> From this time to the date

our E., a foot note on the prologue obscurely lets us into a deep mystery: *Gramata* (sic) *dant prima capitalia nomen agentis*. The same line is also mentioned by Oudin from Selden. The initial letters of the chapters of the first book form the following words:—

“Presentem cronicam compilavit  
frater Ranulphus Cestrensis.”

Ranulphus is obtained from c. 34, sqq., thus:—

“R[efert] A[ffirmatum] N[otat]  
V[ulgatum] L[ibri] P[ost]  
H[æc] V[er] S[unt].”

It seems that this whimsical mode of writing a title page was adopted by other writers also. See Oudin, *u. s.*; also Pits, *de Ill. Angl. Script.*, p. 516.

<sup>1</sup> “Ranulphus Hygden, in occidentali Anglorum patria oriundus, “ad Werburgæ fanum in Cestrien-

“sis-urbis cœnobio, perpetuis se  
“Benedictinorum sanctionibus con-  
“secravit.” Bale, *Cent. vi. n. 12.*  
“Usque huc (A.D. 1348) scripsit  
“Dominus Ranulphus Hykedon,  
“monachus monasterii Sanctæ Wer-  
“bergæ Cestrensis.” MS. Laud,  
619, in fine.

In the year 1093 Hugh Lupus, earl of Chester, established a convent of Benedictine monks, from Bec in Normandy, upon the foundation of St. Werburgh, having expelled the secular canons.

Her shrine, now the bishop's throne in the cathedral, is a beautiful specimen of workmanship of the early part of the 14th century. It must, as it would appear, have been built while Higden was an inmate of the abbey. Lewis, *Topogr. Dict.*, s. v.; Dugdale, *Monast.* vol. ii. p. 71 (ed. 18 46).

of his death, he being then "in a good old age,"<sup>1</sup> we have, I believe, no details of his personal history, except that we are told (but on very doubtful authority) that "one Don Rondle Heggnet" thrice visited Rome in order to obtain leave of the pope that the miracle plays, of which he was the author, should be acted "in the English tongue" at Chester. They were eventually acted in the mayoralty of Sir John Arnway (A.D. 1327, 1328). From A.D. 1309, during a period of seventy years, which was termed the Babylonian captivity, the pope resided at Avignon, and that without interruption, so far as we are aware. A grave suspicion, therefore, attaches to the whole story, which rests upon a note written in a Harl. MS. in 1628. Moreover it is not absolutely certain that Higgenet and Higden are the same person.<sup>2</sup> Our author certainly appears to have left his monastery on occasions, and to have visited various parts of England, including Derbyshire, Shropshire, and Lancashire, with which he is said to be familiar.<sup>3</sup> I can only add that his death probably occurred in the month of March 1363, and that he was buried in the abbey at Chester.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Usque hic (i.e. 1352) scripsit "Ranulphus Hikedoun, monachus Cestrensis, istorum Chronicorum compiler, qui obiit in senectute bona." Note at the end of MS. E. A later hand has added, "Anno Domini 1363."

<sup>2</sup> See Warton, *u. s.*

<sup>3</sup> "Aperte ausim affirmare Ranulphum in eruendis mysteriis antiquitatis Britannicæ dls δiὰ πασῶν illo (Polydoro Vergilio) superiorem fuisse; si spectes provincias in quibus versatus fuit, nempe Salapiam, Devaniam, Lunniam, Doroventaniam." Leland,

*De Script. Brit.*, p. 339. He often quotes Higden in this work.

<sup>4</sup> "Senex tandem obiit, annos habens in monachatu 64, circa Gregorii festum (March 12), anno ab incarnato Messia 1363, Cestriae in cœnobio sepultus." Bale, *Cent.*, vi. n. 12. "Tandem in senectute bona postquam vixerat in religione lxiv. annos, circa festum S. Gregorii, anno gratiæ 1363, in Domino obdormivit." (MS. *Laud.*, 619, *u. s.*) So also note at end of MS. E. (See above.) Hearne (Preface to Camden's *Annales*, p. 117) quotes from a Christ Church MS. this note

His works; Higden is principally<sup>1</sup> known to posterity as the author of the *Polychronicon*,<sup>2</sup> which was one of the most popular histories during the 14th and 15th cen-

Occasion

'manu vetusta : ' "Corpus hujus  
"Ranulphi conditum est in monas-  
"terio D. Wereburgæ in aûstrali  
"parte templi juxta chorum prope  
"ostium quod ducit in cimiterium.  
"Arcus illi muro concavatus est.  
"Inscriptum fuit in muro : *Non  
"hic sub muro, sed subter marmore  
"duro.*" Pits, *u. s.*, who is followed  
by bishop Nicholson (*Engl. Hist.*  
*Libr.*, 65), places his death in 1377.

<sup>1</sup> Some other works of his are extant in MS. : viz., *Speculum curatorum* (composed in 1340), Ball. Coll. Oxon. Cod. 69, and Cambr. Univ. Libr. Mm., 1. 20; and *Ars componendi sermones*, Bibl. Bodl. Cod. 2752. The former of these is mentioned by Bale, who had seen it, as appears by his quoting the opening words. He had also seen his *Pædagogicon grammatices*, and his *Distinctiones Theologicae*. The former of these was in Sion College, and the latter is in the Lambeth Library. See Tanner, p. 403, and Cave's *Hist. Lit.* Besides these, Bale mentions the following : *Abbreviationes Chronicorum*, which is probably the same as a very damaged work now in the British Museum (Cotton. MSS. Tib. E. viii. fol. 210), thus entitled ; " *Cronica  
"bona et compendiosa de Regibus Angliæ tantum, a Noe post diluvium  
"usque in hunc diem*" (it ends A.D. 1300) "*conscripta a Ranulpho Higdeno Cestriensi monacho, qui vixit  
"anno gratiæ 1358.*" Another copy is in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, numbered 21, ending at 1367. See Nasmith's *Catalogue*, p. 10. A letter from Dr.

Moberly apprises me of the existence of a third copy in the Winchester College library, ending at 1377. Bale then enumerates : *Expositio super Job ; In Cantica Canticorum ; Sermones per annum ; Determinationes subcompendio ; In litteram Calendarii* ; adding, as usual, *aliaque plura fecit*. The *Mappa Mundi*, which he names as a distinct work, is nothing but the first book of the *Polychronicon*. Bale likewise mentions *Ex Guilhelmo Stephanide* ; but it appears that this "ad ea pertinet  
"quæ in *Polychronico* scripsit de  
"Thoma Becket, archiepiscopo  
"Cantuariensi," Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin.* The like remark is probably to be made of the *Ex Stephano Langton* mentioned by Tanner.

<sup>2</sup> Higden gives as the reason for adopting this title, "quia præsens  
"chronica multorum temporum continet gesta." Oudinus is therefore mistaken in saying, "Operi suo  
"Polychronici nomen indidit, recte  
"quidem, et cum modestia, quia  
"nimirum uti collectaneum quoddam ex multis aliis chronicis excerptum ; quod aliorum quidem  
"est quoad res contentas, Ranulphi  
"autem quoad ordinem, atque enarrationes rerum ultimæ ætatis."  
(*De Script. Eccl.*, t. 3, p. 1027.) He soon afterwards refers to G. J. Vossius, Sandius, the *Acta Erud. Lips.* for 1694 (read 1692), and V. Placcius, for more information about Higden. I have examined them all, but they contain nothing which is not otherwise well known.



turies, and which continued to be much in use during the following century also. He tells us in the prologue to the first book that he composed it at the earnest request of his companions, *i.e.*, the Benedictines of St. Werburg, and designed to include therein the more important facts of general history from the Creation to his own time in chronological order, noting also the dates of their occurrence according to more than one computation of years. In the early part of the history the birth of Abraham is taken as the origin, and the year of the judge, or other historical personage, is also added in the margin. From Abraham to David he reckons 942 years. The establishment of David's kingdom becomes another origin, and Abraham disappears; and from this date to the Babylonian captivity he reckons 496 years, adding also the year of the Jewish king then reigning in the margin; but for the latter part the year of the foundation of Rome, after which date the secondary king disappears in the later editions of the chronicle.<sup>1</sup> From the Babylonian captivity to Christ, the years from the captivity and from the foundation are recorded. From the Christian era downwards to the age of Charlemagne, the years of that era and of the emperor of Rome are noticed; and from that time forwards the years of the Christian era and of the king or emperor whose acts are related.

The Polychronicon is divided into seven books, this division being suggested by the account of the cosmogony in Genesis. The first book is rather geographical than historical, being, as the author calls it, a map

of its composition. His chronological system.

Plan of the work. Contents of the seven books.

<sup>1</sup> Higden threatens occasionally to "purple his margins" with a triple series. This would be a fit place for doing so, and accordingly we find three columns of dates in the shorter forms of the chronicle, as in MS. D. In the following

period the year of Alexander's or Ptolemy's reign is not unfrequently added to the years of the Captivity and of Rome. But in other MSS., as A. and E., we never have more than two series of years tabulated in the margin

of the world. It comprises a brief description of the countries of the known world, and a more particular account of Great Britain. The second book is a History of the World from the Creation to the destruction of the Jewish temple by Nebuchadnezzar. The third book carries on the history to the birth of Christ. The fourth proceeds thenceforward to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth goes on with the history up to the invasion of the Danes, or, as Higden calls them, Dacians. The sixth book concludes with the Norman conquest. The remaining book proceeds as far as Higden's own time, that is to say, as far as the reign of Edward III.<sup>1</sup> The author pleasantly conceives that by thus dividing the vast current of history into seven streams, he laid open a path by which his readers may "go over dryshod."

---

<sup>1</sup> Thus far all is easy; but when we come to consider the exact year, we are immediately involved in grave difficulties. The MSS. end at very different years, and the notes in different MSS. give different accounts of the years at which Higden himself concluded his work. A full discussion of this perplexed matter must be left for our last volume. In the mean time, so far as I can judge at present, Higden's own work, after he had put his last strokes to it, terminated in the end of the year 1342. There are notes in several MSS. to that effect. See Tanner, &c. But there is also a considerable number of MSS. which end in the year 1327. These are either all or for the most part, I believe, more brief than the later ones; and I should conceive that we may place Higden's first edition in that year. The number of MSS. (not being imperfect) ending before 1327 is very small, and I have not

myself examined any such; but from Mr. S. A. Moore's notes it appears that there is one in Magd. Coll. Oxon. which ends in 1321, and another in the Advocate's Library at Edinburgh ending in 1326. These may have been written before a general issue of the book took place. The excellent Cambridge MS., our E., says that Higden concluded his chronicle at 1352, (in which, however, the events between 1342 and 1352 occupy less than a page,) and Caxton places the last year written by Higden in 1357. This will be the latest date that is well possible, if Higden died in 1363 at a very advanced age, to which latter year indeed J. Joscelin, archbishop Parker's secretary, says that he continued his work (*Cat. Hist.*, p. 292, Hearne). Trevisa leaps from 1348 to 1354, and ends 1360. But on these matters I hope to say something more definite on a future opportunity.

Our author mentions at great length, in his second chapter, the authorities from which his history is derived. But before discussing them it may be as well to consider a charge which has been brought against him by Wanley, Nicholson, and others.<sup>1</sup> The first-named author describing the Harleian MS. n. 655, writes thus in his catalogue :—

“ Polycratice temporum, seu Polychronica Rogeri, monachi Cestrensis, quam foedissime defloravit plagiariorum insignissimus, Ranulfus Higden commonachus suus.”<sup>2</sup> And again, describing n. 1707 of the same collection, he tells us that Ranulph Higden was not the original author of the *Polychronicon*, but an arrant plagiarist (plagiarium maxime insigne).<sup>3</sup>

Bishop Nicholson repeats the charge, adding reasons which will be best understood and appreciated by citing portions of his accounts of Roger Cestrensis and of Ranulphus Higden, given in his *English Historical Library*.

“ Roger Cestrensis, who was a Benedictine monk of St. Werburg, in Chester . . . wrote a large account of the affairs of this nation. This work he entitled *Polycratice Temporum*, and began it with the coming in of the Romans: he continued it at first no lower than 1314, but added afterwards a supplement of fifteen years more. In the Harleian library there are several MS. copies of this work,<sup>4</sup> one whereof is frequently marked

<sup>1</sup> Fuller (*Worthies of Chester*) had already asserted: “He vamped the history of Roger aforesaid.” After Wanley’s time the charge has been often repeated; Bale had indeed given occasion for it.

<sup>2</sup> Harl. Cat., vol. 1, p. 398. Lond. 1808. This was first published in 1762, long after the author’s death in 1726.

<sup>3</sup> Id. vol. 2, p. 180.

<sup>4</sup> I have examined (somewhat cursorily) all the MSS. of Roger of Chester in the British Museum; viz., Harl. MSS. n. 1707, 1728-9, 1751; Cotton, Julius E. viii. In none of them (so far as I observed) was the name of Roger written by the original scribe. The same remark is to be made of the MS. in Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; see below. The Rev. W. Stubbs, M.A., librarian to the Lord Arch-

by Bale's own hand. By comparing these with those of R. Higden in the same noble repository, it is manifest that Ralph stole his pretended work from Roger, disguising it only with his own superscription. For (1) one of the copies of the *Polycraticon* is plainly the numerical book described by Pitts,<sup>1</sup> under the name of Higden. (2) Another of them has *Ran. Cestr.* in a modern hand on its title, instead (as Mr. Wanley probably conjectures) of *Rog. Cestr.* rased out. (3) The forgery is most evident, from comparing a passage relating to the two Caerleons, to one whereof (Chester) the true historian takes notice of his being particularly related ;<sup>2</sup> which Ralph literally transcribes, adding, *Sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius patet.* Which is ascertaining the whole chronicle to

bishop of Canterbury, at my request, kindly examined a Lambeth MS. of Roger of Chester, and writes as follows : "The ascription of the Lambeth MS. 112 to Roger of Chester is not in a contemporary hand. It is written in the margin, I am pretty sure in Archbishop Sancroft's hand, and the title is written on the label outside in the same hand; 'Rogeri de Cestriâ Historia Polychronica.'

"The title of the book I do not find. It begins, 'Prologus primus' in *Historiam Polieronicam.*

"*Post præclaros artium.*

"*Præfatio II. At quoniam præsens Cronica.*

"*Præfatio III. Cupientibus igitur.*

"It ends in '*ecclesia libertatem*' (i.e. in 1327). and '*Explicit Historia Polieronica.*'

"The dates in the later books are in two columns." We have some curious phenomena here. The longer

form of the Chronicle is ascribed to Roger, and the title of his book is *Polychronicon.* To myself, as well as to Archdeacon Hardwick, the work seems to be the same as the *Polychronicon* of Higden.

<sup>1</sup> Reference to Pitts might have been spared, as he had never seen the book. "Historiam Ranulphi multum quæsitam, nunquam inventam, et mihi non visam fateor." (De Illust. Angl. Scriptoribus, p. 516.) This is most extraordinary.

<sup>2</sup> In MSS. Harl. 1707 and 1751, and in the MS. C.C.C., Cant. n. 259, the clause runs thus : "Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et præsens chronica fuit elaborata, urbs quidem in confinio Angliæ." But in Harl. MS. 1728, we have only this notice : "Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, Caerleon sive Caerlegion, urbs quidem in confinio Angliæ."



himself, according to the villainous contrivance, which we shall mention anon."<sup>1</sup>

And again under Higden:—

"If you spell the first letters of the several chapters that begin it, you read: *Præsentem chronicam composu- pilavit Frater Ranulphus monachus Cestrensis*. 'Tis observable, that the plagiary picks out such capitals, and enlarges them, as are for his wicked purpose, and omits the rest; which is another notorious proof of his knavish forgery."<sup>2</sup> Now if we compare the accounts of Roger of Chester and of Ranulphus Higden, as given by Bale,<sup>3</sup> from whom others do little else but copy, we are immediately struck with their remarkable similarity. Both Benedictine monks of St. Werburg of Chester, both concluding their Universal Chronicle in the time of Edward III., both urged to write it by their fellow-monks, both adding to their original chro-

<sup>1</sup> p. 64. Second ed., Lond. 1714. The first edition was published in 1696. See also Hearne, *Præf. ad Camd. Annal.*, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> Id. p. 65.

<sup>3</sup> "Rogerus de Cestria, Benedictinorum sectæ monachus, et in eadem urbe ad Werburgæ fanum, historiographus illustris, bonarum litterarum campos . . . merito multumque colebat. . . . Hic a suis commilitonibus monachis, præcipue ab ejus loci episcopo patrono suo rogatus, Anglorum historiam a Britannorum, immo ab ipsius mundi origine, usque ad annum Domini 1314, et demum ad annum Christi 1339, Latine docte et eleganter scripsit. In qua, præter authores a Ranulpho Hygdeno numeratos, Nennium, Elvodugi discipulum, et Gildam adducit, Ranulphumque ipsum plusquam 22 annis præcessit, ab Hugone Virleyo in *Historiarum Figuris*

"plerisque in locis citatus. Compositum ergo Rogerus Chronicon, egregium certe, quod vocabatur *Polygeratica Temporum*, libris septem. Incipit, '*Intrabo in agros priscorum subsequens*.'"

"*Additiones* 15 annorum, libro uno. Incipit, '*Septimo anno Regis Edwardi Secundi*.' Et alia quædam. Polygeraticorum vero primus post Præfationem liber incipit: '*Julius Cæsar divinis humanisque rebus*,' etc. Claruit hic Cestrius anno a Christi nativitate 1339, quo ultimum opus finiit, sub Edwardo Tertio, et Cestriæ sepelitur." Bale (*Cent. v. n. xlviii. ed. 1569*). Hugo Virley flourished A.D. 1344. He is the only writer before Bale, who mentions Roger of Chester, so far as I know. The *Figuræ Historiarum*, called by Bale "nobile opus," have not been printed. I do not perceive that they even exist.

nicle, both buried at Chester. Indeed there is nothing in Roger's history which differs from Higden's, except so far as concerns (1), their names; (2), the titles of their works; (3), their dates.

(1) With regard to the name, it is very probably by a mere error that Roger is written instead of Ranulphus; in many MSS. of the *Polychronicon* the name of the author is not given at all; and the book is often cited by others simply as the *Polychronicon*, or as *Cestrensis* only; the latter designation seeming to be inconsistent with the notion that *two* monks of Chester wrote Chronicles differing slightly from each other. There was a Roger Frend, afterwards abbot of Chester, in Higden's time, and if he was one of those who urged Higden to compose the chronicle, and assisted him in the compilation, it is not impossible that his name might be attached to the work by some scribes, who were only partially acquainted with the facts of the case.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, as appears from Wanley's probable conjecture, the name of Ranulphus has in one instance at least been substituted for the name of Roger, as though the error had been detected and corrected.

(2) No argument can be founded on the difference of the titles of their works. The *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury is designated in one of our MSS. (B.), and cited in one of the versions, as the *Polychronicon*; and in another MS. used in this edition (C.), we have actually have, "Idcirco eam historiam *Polycraticam*, "a pluralitate temporum quam continet censui nuncupandam." Indeed, *Polycratice temporum* could not be used as a title of an Universal History, by any

<sup>1</sup> See Dugdale's *Monast.*, vol. ii. p. 373. He was the eleventh abbot, and held office from A.D. 1240 to 1249. It may appear even more probable that the chronicle was often entitled

only *Cestrensis Polychronicon*, or *R. Cestrensis*, and that *Rogeri* was added by conjecture as the interpretation of the symbol *R.* which occurs throughout the book.

one who knew the meaning of the word, but in the general ignorance of Greek, the scribes, to whom the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury was a familiar name, frequently confounded the two words. The work of Higden, moreover, is sometimes called *Polycraticon*: thus our MS. C. has in the colophon: "Expliciunt  
" *chronicæ venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi Cestrensis, in*  
" *septem libellos distinctæ, dictæque Historia Policra-*  
" *tica.*" In the sixteenth century Higden's work was known under both titles.<sup>1</sup> It is not altogether impossible that Higden himself may have made the blunder, and corrected it in his later editions; for it is in the earlier MSS., so far as we know, that this error is mostly to be found.

(3) Very little stress can be laid on the slight difference of their dates. "Ranulphum ipsum plus quam xxii. annis præcessit," says Bale; but, by his own account, Roger afterwards continued the chronicle from 1314 to 1339. Now, as many of Higden's earlier copies cease at 1327, and at various years afterwards, it can scarcely be said that there is any difference of time between his and Roger's chronicles.<sup>2</sup>

The contents of the two chronicles may be said to be identical.<sup>3</sup> Higden's work itself appears in a longer

<sup>1</sup> "Vulgo vocatur Polichronicon  
" sive Policraticon," note on second  
fly-leaf of our MS. A.

<sup>2</sup> Bale indeed says, "In qua (his-  
" toria), præter authores a Ranulpho  
" Hygdeno numeratos, Nennium El-  
" vodugi discipulum et Gildam ad-  
" ducit." This is an error; in this  
edition the latter of these authors  
is enumerated among the sources of  
the history, and he is also quoted in  
c. xxxviii. With regard to Nennius,  
he is mentioned in our MSS. C. D.  
(See p. 24, note 2), as one of the  
historians used by Higden, but not  
in the other MSS. or in the versions.

This is one indication among others  
that the *Polycraticon* of Roger, is  
nothing else but a form of the *Poly-*  
*chronicon*.

<sup>3</sup> Bale mentions that it commences,  
"Intrabo in agros priscorum:" see  
this edition, p. 12. Archdeacon  
Hardwick had printed this note on  
the word *Intrabo*: "Here begins  
" the so-called '*Polycraticon*' of  
" *Roger of Chester*." In a copy  
of Macray's *Manual of British*  
*Historians*, p. 36 (Pick, 1845),  
where Roger of Chester is noticed,  
he has written: "I have collated  
" part of this" (i.e. Harl. MS. 1707,

and in a shorter form; and Roger's *Polycraticon* is only a slightly more abbreviated state of the shorter form.

Upon the whole there seems to be no ground for the charge of plagiarism brought against Higden; and from henceforth dismissing Roger of Chester and his *Polycraticon*, as being things of buckram,<sup>1</sup> we proceed to consider the sources whence the *Polychronicon* was derived.

Authorities  
cited by  
Higden.

The author recounts at large in his second chapter the names of the writers who are alleged in his *Chronicle*. They are about forty in number,<sup>2</sup> and it is needless to transcribe them here.<sup>3</sup> It will be of more

which Wanley declares to be almost identical with a MS. in which Bale himself has written *Polycratica temporum Rogeri Cestrensis*, and some other late hand has also written *Rogeri Cestrensis Polychronicon*; see Cat. Harl. MSS., vol. 1, p. 180, ed. 1808) "with MS. Nero, D. viii., assigned to Higden, "and find the two works almost "identical. One writer adopts the "title *Polyeronicon*, and the other "*Polycraticon*, but for precisely the "same reason. The Harleian is the "better text; the latter MS. (the "Harleian) goes down to 1327, and "there ends with an index." It commences not with "Intrabo," but with "In historico namque con- "textu;" above which a later hand has written, "Post præclaros," &c. By the kindness of the Rev. E. H. Perowne, B.D., I have examined the MS. (numbered 259) of Roger of Chester, in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Bale's account of him is transcribed on a fly-leaf, but his name does not occur in the MS. itself. It begins (certainly not abruptly) "Intrabo," and

ends A.D. 1338, "statim postea "concusserunt."

<sup>1</sup> Neither Leland in his *Comment. de Script. Britann.*, nor Henry Wharton, nor R. Gery, who write accounts of Higden, in the Appendix to Cave's *Historia Litteraria*, give Roger a place, or even mention him at all.

<sup>2</sup> Many authors are quoted in the first volume, which are not included in Higden's catalogue. Thus he refers to the life of John the Almoner, and copies it pretty closely (p. 240); also to Ptolemy the geographer (p. 44); and to Cicero (p. 82); to say nothing of passing allusions to the classics, as to Horace (p. 12), Virgil (pp. 208, 266), Ovid (p. 238), and Juvenal (p. 412); or to the Fathers, as Gregory Nazianzen (p. 8), or Gregory the Great (p. 12). Conversely a large number of the authors named are not quoted at all in this volume.

<sup>3</sup> The reader is requested to examine not only the lists, but also the various readings. The MSS. C. and D. give, in addition to the



utility to point out briefly, as the volumes of this edition make their appearance, to whom Higden is principally indebted for his accounts of the history and geography therein severally contained.<sup>1</sup> I proceed, therefore, to indicate the contents of the first book, (which may be seen more fully in the Summary which follows this Introduction,) in connection with the fountains (which are sometimes none of the purest) from which Higden has drawn.

The bombastic and not very intelligible<sup>2</sup> prologue concluded (c. i.),<sup>3</sup> the plan of the work expounded

Contents of  
Higden's  
first book.

list in our text, the names of Herodotus, Quintilian, and Aulus Gellius. Who this Herodotus (or as Higden writes him Erodotus) is I do not know. He is quoted or alluded to at pp. 172, 290, 296, 386. He names Pompey the Great, also the Picts, and seems to be some Western mediæval chronicler.

<sup>1</sup> In the present volume he quotes Isidore, naming him, about fifty times, and very frequently uses him without naming him at all; he quotes Pliny and Justin about a dozen times each. These last are the only classical authors of whom he makes considerable use, unless Solinus be so designated, who is referred to about half a dozen times. Of the rest, Hugutio, Petrus Comestor, Paulus Diaconus, William of Malmesbury, Bede, and especially Giraldus Cambrensis, are Higden's principal authorities, besides the anonymous *Geographia*, which he never names. His allusions to Augustine and Jerome are rather numerous, but mostly unimportant.

<sup>3</sup> It is possible that conjecture, or a collation of other MSS., might help the text a little; but I suspect not a great deal. On reflection, I think that *quo adviverent* (p. 2),

though evidently the reading of the MSS. (A., E.), should be changed into *quoad viverent*. Dr. Moberly has very kindly collated for this edition the prologue and also the second chapter (giving names of the authorities) as they stand in the Winchester MS. (see below); but the various readings are few and unimportant. For *quo adviverent* (p. 2) the Winchester MS., *quo advenerent*; for *tulerunt* (p. 6), *contulerunt* (which is better); for *nempe* (p. 6), *namque*; for *reperies* (p. 16), *invenies*; for *Ormesta* (p. 22), *Ormestia*; for *memorabilibus* (p. 22), *memoriæ*; for *episcopus*. *Historia* (p. 24), *episcopus de historia*. The other variations are not worth mentioning, being in some cases mere blunders. I have also subsequently collated Gale's excellent MS. (G.) for the same parts, but have not found a single various reading worth recording here.

<sup>3</sup> The reader who compares this Introduction with Higden's text, is requested to refer to the chapters by means of the Summary of Contents, as a few of the chapters of the Latin (not English) text are misnumbered. See *Corrigenda*.

His  
physical  
geography.

(c. iii., iv.), and the authorities rehearsed (c. ii.), the author proceeds with the first book, which is, as we have already said, a map of the world, or series of descriptions of the principal countries of the ancient and more modern nations. He begins by describing the magnitude of the globe, whose diameter he determines to be 6,491 miles;<sup>1</sup> then the three great parts of the world, and the relations of their magnitudes to one another. After that he proceeds to describe the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean, c. viii., ix. His principal authorities for these accounts are Isidore of Seville, of whom he makes very extensive use in the first book, and Pliny, to whom he is also largely indebted. Besides these Higden also quotes Giraldus Cambrensis, Bede, Solinus, Paulus Diaconus, and the author of a cosmography, whom he calls Priscianus, but who commonly passes, whether rightly or wrongly, under the name of Æthicus.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The true mean diameter is 7,912 miles.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 22, 40, 42, 50. I now see that Higden only followed the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more below, in which he is called *Prescianus*. The quotation at p. 40 appears thus in Æthicus: "Itaque Julius Cæsar bissextilis rationis inventor, divinis humanisque rebus singulariter instructus, cum consulatus sui fasces erigeret, ex senatus consulto censuit omnem orbem jam Romani nominis admetiri per prudentissimos viros, et omni philosophiæ munere decoratos. . . . Ac sic omnis orbis terræ intra annos xxxii. a dimensoribus peragratus est, et de omni ejus continentia perlatum est ad senatum," p. 26, Ed. Gronov. (ad calc. Pomp. Melæ, Lugd. Bat, 1696.) The readings of C. D., it will be observed here and in other places, agree more

nearly with the original text of the author referred to than the later and larger forms of the chronicle do. The quotation at p. 50 appears thus: "Plurimi qui res divinas (*humanas*, Higden) evidentius agnovērunt duas tantum partes accipientes suascent, id est, Asiam et Europam tantummodo; Africam vero censent Europæ finibus deputandam. \* \* \* Quia et spatio latitudinis caret, et cœli male (*leg. malo*) subjacet climati, laborans aeribus suis, venenis fucisque repleta immanium et incognitarum humani generi innumerabilium bestiarum." Id. pp. 25 and 51. (ubi plura.) These citations will in some degree show the manner in which Higden manipulates his authorities, as well as the difference of treatment in the earlier and later editions. There are several other places in which Higden may perhaps have

Our author, having at length concluded his general account of earth and sea, which we may call his physical geography, proceeds to describe the separate provinces of Asia, Africa, and Europe. Not to dwell on his speculations on Paradise (c. x.), derived in part from Isidore of Seville, Petrus Comestor, and John Damascene,<sup>1</sup> we pass on to his description of Asia,

Higden's  
account of  
the great  
divisions  
of the  
earth, Asia  
and its  
provinces.

used Æthicus, though without acknowledgment *e.g.*, in his description of Tile (Thule), of which Æthicus says (p. 61): "Insula Tilæ, quæ per infinitum a cæteris patet longius secreta, in medio oceani sita, *viz paucis nota*." Compare Higden, c. 31, who refers to Solinus *De Mirabilibus*; Solinus however (*Polyhist.* c. 22), does not employ the phrase, nor does his original source, Pliny. I now perceive, however, that Orosius (lib. i. c. 2) has almost copied Æthicus; and as Higden certainly knew that author, nothing can be said positively.

For more about Æthicus, who is most probably the same person as Julius Honorius, see Ritschl, in *Rhein. Mus.* 1842, pp. 481-523. Æthicus is by no means the only author quoted in Higden, which has occasioned me trouble, and I may be permitted to make one or two remarks respecting his citations and allusions in general. When the MSS. agree in the reference to an author, I have not *in general* thought it worth while to verify it; when otherwise, I have commonly tried to discover (frequently without success) which of the references was the true one. It has sometimes fallen out that an examination of the original authority shows that the true reference is something different to what any of the MSS.

contain. (See pp. 84, 196, &c.). It is much to be feared that some other citations may likewise be erroneous; but in cases where the MSS. agree, the fault ought to be charged upon Higden, not on his editor. To rectify every erroneous reference in a work which is in a great measure made up of quotations from other writers, variously altered and modified, would be an endless task; and indeed would very ill repay the labour in the case of such an author as Higden. However, where the case seemed to require it, I have made some search into the original authority for the statement; but shall be thankful to any one who may discover and inform me respecting errors or omissions on Higden's part or my own.

<sup>1</sup> The text of our edition differs much from the MSS. C. D., so much indeed that a collation is impossible. I now perceive, from a comparison of the *Eulogium Historiarum* (vol. ii. pp. 11-14) that this early text was very much derived from an unpublished work, entitled *Geographia Universalis*, which has been a good deal used by Higden for his description of northern Europe, though he never refers to the book. A copy of the text in D., and of the text of the *Geographia*, is subjoined in an appendix.

which commences with India (c. xi.). His account, which is for the most part fabulous, and relates to monstrous dragons, to the battles of pigmies and cranes, to men of strange conformations, ages, habits, and qualities, and to prophetic trees, which warned Alexander the Great not to enter Babylon,<sup>1</sup> is taken from Isidore, Pliny, Cicero, and Petrus Comestor. He preserves, however, some grains of truth, and describes with tolerable correctness the institutions of caste, the burning of widows, and the natural products. Parthia follows next in order, and the account of its kings and people is derived principally from Justin, some portions being also said to be taken from Isidore and Giraldus. Except that he erroneously designates Phrahates the Fourth, (who is known as Arsaces the Fifteenth,) by the name of "Mithridates, son of Mithridates," his account is conformable to the classical accounts which have come down to us.<sup>2</sup>

An account of Assyria and the adjoining regions follows (c. xiii.); it has the name of Isidore prefixed to several of the paragraphs, and he is also the authority for some clauses which have no name at their head.<sup>3</sup> The account of Babylon is mostly taken from Orosius. Some slight use is also made of Justin,

<sup>1</sup> Compare Jul. Valer. *Res Gest. Alex.*, lib. iii. c. 40, 41. (Ed. Mai.); Pseudo-Alex. *ad Aristot. de Mirab. Ind.* (Sig. Q. ii., ed. Neap. 1555); Vinc. Bel. *Spec. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 57; Mart. Pol. *Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4., for an account of these wonderful trees.

<sup>2</sup> Higden refers to Giraldus, dist. 17. for the statement. I do not understand the reference, neither does it appear likely that Giraldus (whose name is written at length in our MS. E.) is his authority at all. Although there is great confusion

about Oriental names in the classical writers, it does not appear (so far as I know) that any of them have called Arsaces xv. by the name of Mithridates. His father's name, moreover, was not Mithridates, but Orodes. See Lindsay's *Hist. and Coinage of the Parthians*, pp. 38-50, Cork, 1852.

<sup>3</sup> Thus the description of the boundaries of Syria (p. 100) is taken from Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3. § 16. Compare also § 15 with Higden's notice of Arabia.



Petrus Comestor, and Josephus. Judea and Jerusalem, as might be anticipated, are more fully described (c. xiv.). His principal authority is still Isidore, but reference is also made to several other writers, as Josephus, Augustine, Jerome, William of Malmesbury, Giraldus, Petrus Comestor. There is little in the account itself on which it is necessary to dwell. The most curious point about it is a change for the better which occurs in the text of MS. E., the latest and purest form, so far as I know, in which the Chronicle has appeared. In the earlier forms of the text, Mount Sion is placed at the north of Jerusalem, in the later at the south.<sup>1</sup> In the following chapter (c. xv.) the description of the Holy Land is concluded, embracing Idumea, Samaria, Galilee, Cedar, and Phenicia. In addition to Isidore, Higden quotes from Hugutio and Pseudo-Methodius. In the notice of Egypt (c. xvi.), Higden refers to Petrus Comestor, Bede, Jerome, and Isidore; from the last-named author he has derived some statements without acknowledgment. In common with various ancient writers, to whom he makes only a vague allusion, he considers that the Nile has its

<sup>1</sup> The reference is to William of Malmesbury "*De Regibus*;" the versions add falsely *libro primo*. The passage runs thus: "Fons intra nullus, sed cisternis ad hoc præparatis colliguntur latices, siti civium profuturi; quod ipsius urbis situs, supercilio ab aquilone montis Sion incipiens, ita sit molli clivo dispositus, ut pluvia ibi decidens nequam lutum faciat, sed instar fluviorum vel cisternis excipiat, vel per portas defluens torrentem Cedron augeat." *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. iv. § 367 (vol. ii. pp. 561, 562. Engl. Hist. Soc.). The text of E. expresses the sense of Malmesbury: "Urbis ipsius situs ab austro (*aqui-*

*lone*, A. B.) montem Syon habens, molli clivo versus boream (*austum*, A. B.) descendens sic dispositus ut pluvia stillans nequam lacum (*lutum*, B. and Malm.) faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cisternis excipiat, vel saltem per portas effluens torrentem Cedron adaugeat," p. 108. Here again it is instructive to observe the variations of expression between the text of the original author and the text of Higden. In the earliest form of Higden's text, which some would call Roger's *Polycraticon*, the whole passage based on William of Malmesbury is omitted.



sources in Ethiopia, not far from Mount Atlas.<sup>1</sup> It will be observed that Egypt in his cosmography forms a part of Asia.

Higden next proceeds to describe Scythia at some length (c. xvii.), following Justin almost entirely; the same chapter contains also brief notices of Bactria, the Caucasus, Hyrcania, Albania, Gothia, Armenia, and Mount Ararat. For his descriptions of these countries he quotes no authorities, except Albertus Magnus for some details about Mount Atlas, but his principal source of information is, as usual, Isidore.<sup>2</sup> His Gothia seems to include parts of Scandinavia and of Russia, both European and Asiatic.

In the following chapter (c. xviii.) he concludes his account of Asia, mentioning in a very brief manner Cappadocia, (which he distinguishes from Asia Minor,) and the following provinces of Asia Minor: Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia, Lydia, Pamphylia, and Cilicia. He has made much use of the New Testament in his notices of these, and also of Isidore,<sup>3</sup> whom, however,

<sup>1</sup> This is the view of Julius Honorius, p. 19 (ed. Gronov. ad calc. Pomp. Melæ), of Æthicus (*u. s. p.* 50); also of Solinus (c. xxvii. and c. xxxii.), and of his original author Pliny (lib. v. c. 10, where see Harduin's note, who refers to Marcianus Capella, Ammianus Marcellinus, and Xiphilinus; also lib. viii. c. 32, where he speaks more positively). Since this note was written, I have seen Mr. Vaux's paper, *On the Knowledge of the Ancients on the Sources of the Nile*. Trans. Roy. Soc. Lit., vol. viii. (new series) pp. 35-66, which contains much curious information on a subject which has just acquired a new interest.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 8, § 2 (for the Caucasus); c. 3,

§ 33 (for Hyrcania); c. 3, § 34 (for Albania); lib. ix. c. 2, § 89 (for Gothia, where, however, Higden substitutes *Gothos* for *Getas* in his text); lib. xiv. c. 3, § 35 (for Armenia). In Higden's account, however, are some things not contained in Isidore. Thus his short notice of Bactria seems not to be taken from him, but it is so unimportant that it is hardly worth while to inquire more particularly. Neither is it the same as that in the *Geographia Universalis* and the *Eulogium*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 3, § 37 (for Cappadocia, who also places it to the east of Asia Minor); § 38 (for Asia Minor); § 39 (for Bithynia); § 40 (for Ga-

he does not professedly quote. The chapter concludes with a more extended account of Amazonia (which he makes partly in Europe and partly in Asia), which is principally taken from Justin, and partly (with some expressions of dissent) from Isidore.<sup>1</sup> He also quotes from the apocryphal "Historia Alexandri" the letters of Thalestris, queen of the Amazons, to Alexander the Great, and that monarch's gracious reply.<sup>2</sup> These are the original sources of the account of Amazonia, and which it is important to indicate; but there is no doubt that Higden has taken his notice of this, as well as of some other countries, almost entire from the *Geographia Universalis*, of which more hereafter, in which the same authorities as he quotes are quoted also, and in the same order, or nearly so, with some verbal alterations.<sup>3</sup>

The nineteenth and twentieth chapters contain an account of Africa, from which Egypt is excluded. Still following Isidore, he discusses the etymology of the name, and runs rapidly over the provinces of Ethiopia, Libya, Tripolis, Gætulia, and Mauretania, dwelling somewhat more particularly on the foundation of Carthage and its date, maintaining, against Virgil and Dares Phrygius, that Eneas could not have seen

Africa and  
its pro-  
vinces.

latia); § 41 (for Phrygia; making, however, Phrygia the daughter of Æsopus, not of Europa); § 43 (for Lydia, which Higden has copied almost bodily); § 44 (for Pamphylia, which Isidore also identifies with Isauria, though he does not create a "Seleucus Antiochus" as the founder of Seleucia); §§ 45 and 46 (for Cilicia and Lycia; the identification, however, of Lycia with Lycaonia is an error with which Isidore is not chargeable). Some of the deviations from Isidore are to be found in the *Geographia*.

<sup>1</sup> Just., lib. ii. c. 4; Isid. Hisp., lib. ix. c. 2, § 64.

<sup>2</sup> "Ejusmodi Historiæ Alexandri" in bibl. Leidensi aliisque servantur "MSS." Harl. in Fabr. *Bibl. Græc.*, vol. iii. p. 34 (Hamb. 1783). Cardinal Mai has since published two such works, one of which is ascribed to Julius Valerius, but they do not contain these letters. Martinus Polonus, however (*Chron.* lib. ii. c. 4.), gives the same letters in substance, but writes *Callistrata* for *Thalestris*.

<sup>3</sup> See Haydon's *Introd.* to *Eulog. Hist.*, vol. ii. xxxii. (note).

Dido. He maintains the view of Justin, that Carthage was founded 72 years before Rome, and confirms it by the authority of Papias.<sup>1</sup> In the course of his remarks on these regions he acknowledges his obligations to Josephus, Gregory the Great, Marianus, Augustine, and Hugutio. His account of the marvels and monstrous people of Africa seems to be mostly taken from Solinus<sup>2</sup> (or from Pliny, whom he epitomizes), though no authority is cited for the statements made.

Europe and  
its pro-  
vinces.

Higden now proceeds (cap. xxi.) to describe Europe, which occupies the remainder of the book. He begins with an account of northern Europe, which is in good part derived from Isidore<sup>3</sup> and the *Geographia*,<sup>4</sup> and passes lightly over the provinces of Scythia, Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia or Slavonia, and Pannonia. In his account of the last, he makes mention of the

<sup>1</sup> This Papias is the author of the *Elementarium*; in which the passage occurs under *Carthago*; and I should suppose that he is the same that Grabe mentions, "cujus (Papiæ, sc.) *Syngrammata* allegantur in *Chronica Demonstratione* Alla-  
" tii, libro de Simeonum scriptis  
" suffixa, p. 22." Routh, *Rel. Sacr.*, tom. i. p. 43 (ed. alt.) I learn from Dr. Lightfoot that the famous passage about our Lord's brethren, referred to Papias, the apostolic father, by Routh and others, occurs in the *Elementarium* of this medieval Papias, who, no doubt, takes it from Jerome.

<sup>2</sup> Compare Solinus, capp. 30-31, with p. 158 of Higden.

<sup>3</sup> See Isid. Hisp., lib. xiv. c. 4, § 1-5 (for Europe generally, and for Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia); lib. xiii. c. 21, § 24 (for Tanais). He says scarcely anything about

Pannonia (lib. xiv. c. 4, § 5), and about Sclavia nothing at all. The accounts of Scythia, Alania, and Mœsia, in the *Geographia*, do not closely resemble those in Higden.

<sup>4</sup> For Pannonia and Sclavia see *Eulog. Hist.*, lib. iv. c. 66 and 67, and Mr. Haydon's preface, vol. ii. p. xxxviii., and the notes, where the deviations from the *Geographia* are given. The account of the latter is generally fuller and more accurate than Higden, and there seems to be no doubt that the *Geographia* is the parent of much in the *Polychronicon*, and not *vice versa*. I should be glad to discover the *Herodotus*, from whom these two works and the *Eulogium* so often borrow. It might, perhaps, be worth while to print the *Geographia*, as so much use has been made of it by other writers.

Huns, professing to derive his information from an author whom he calls Herodotus, but in truth taking his notice, citations inclusive, from the *Geographia*.

The twenty-second chapter is taken up with a description of Greece and its provinces. The classical authorities referred to are Justin, Varro, and Ovid, from whom are derived notices of the early history of Athens, the contest of Neptune with Minerva, the Delphian oracle, Deucalion's flood, and an allusion to Tempe; also an account of the colonization of Tarentum by the Spartans after the siege of Messene, which latter city he strangely places in Apulià, confusing it apparently with the Sicilian Messana. In the description of the provinces he principally follows Isidore,<sup>1</sup> and gives some details about Constantinople from William of Malmesbury. He refers also for smaller matters to Giraldus Cambrensis and Petrus Comestor.

Higden's account of Italy (c. xxiii.) is for the most part taken from Isidore, one citation being also made from Pliny. The conclusion of the chapter relates the origin and progress of the Lombards, and is derived wholly from Paulus Diaconus.

From Italy generally, Higden proceeds to a description of Rome in particular, which is made up of a strange assemblage of absurdities. A large part of these are derived from a small tract, whose author is generally considered to be unknown, though styled by Higden Magister Gregorius.<sup>2</sup> Its title is *Mirabilia Urbis Romæ*, and so popular did it become, that it

<sup>1</sup> See lib. xiv. c. 4, § 7-16. But some touches are due to the *Geographia*, e.g., the barbarous word *Helladia*. See Haydon, *u. s.*, p. xxxix., and the *Eulogium*, lib. iv. capp. 73-77.

<sup>2</sup> I transcribed the following extracts from a copy in the British Museum, supposed to be printed

about 1473. It consists of six leaves. In the description of the palace of Peace we read: "Ubi posuit Romulus suam statuam dicens: 'Hæc 'statua non cadet, donec virgo 'pariat.' Et statim cum B. Virgo 'peperit, statua corruit.'" (fol. 1, b). Compare Higden, p. 214. The section *De agulea* (sic) *S. Petri*, con-



went through more than 30 editions in the fifteenth century, apart from the translations into German and into Italian which were printed in the same period.<sup>1</sup> Other marvels are transcribed from the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury. The reader, who has any taste for the investigation of such matters, may consult the recent work of Dr. Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom im Mittelalter* (of which the first volume appeared at Stuttgart in 1859), in which the medieval

cludes with six rhyming lines, of which the last three are :

"Regia structura, quanta non extat  
in aula.

"Si lapis est unus, [dic] qua fuit  
arte levatus :

"Et si sunt plures, dic ubi con-  
geries." (Fol. 2, b.)

Compare Higden, p. 226, where the lines are read differently. Again :

"Infra capitolium fuit palatium pro

"magna parte aureum et lapidibus

"pretiosis ornatum, quod dicebatur

"valere tertiam partem mundi, in

"quo tot statuæ imaginum erant,

"quot erant mundi provinciæ, et

"habebat quælibet imago tintinna-

"bulum in collo per artem mathe-

"maticam dispositum, ut quando ali-

"qua regio Romano populo rebellis

"efficeretur, statim [imago] illius

"provinciæ vertebat dorsum imagini

"urbis Romanæ, quæ major erat

"super alias imagines tanquam do-

"mina ; et sic tintinnabulum quod

"habebat ad collum statim resona-

"bat. Tunc vates, qui capitolii

"quoque erant custodes, referebant

"illud senatui." (fol. 3 b). Com-

pare Higden, pp. 216, 218. Again :

"Tempore imperatoris Tiberii ve-

"nerunt Romam duo philosophi

"juvenes, scilicet Praxitelis (sic)

"et Phidias," &c., as in Higden,

p. 226, q. v., but more briefly. (fol.

4.) The author likewise gives an

account of the Colosseum and the

Pantheon, which may be compared

with those in Higden. It appears

from Mr. Dyer's elaborate article

*Roma*, in Smith's Dict. Gr. and

Rom. Geography, that this treatise

"was the first attempt at a regular

"description of ancient Rome." He

mentions that it has been edited

with notes by Nibby (*Ephemeride*

*Letterarie*, Rome, 1820). See also

Montfaucon, *Diar. Ital.*, c. 20.

<sup>1</sup> See Hain's *Repertorium*, vol. iii.

pp. 414-421 (n. 11,174-11,220).

Harding, in his *Confutation of*

*the Apology* of Jewel (fol. 166, b.,

Antwerp, 1565), ascribes the *Mira-*

*bilia* to Martinus Polonus. "The

"like fables and fond lyes he (Mar-

"tine of Pole) stuffed an other

"booke withall, which he wrote,

"entituled *Mirabilium urbis Romæ*."

Many of the worst absurdities of the

*Mirabilia* are related in his Chronicle,

e.g. the story of Praxiteles and

Phidias, *Chron.* lib. i. c. 7, where

we further learn that the temple of

crystal and gold (see Higden, p.

214) was the Colosseum ! Whether

however he is the author of the

treatise is uncertain.



legends are recounted with a patience and diligence rarely to be found except in a German. Willingly passing over these, I have only further to observe that Higden makes considerable use of Martinus Polonus in his account of the construction of the city,<sup>1</sup> and has also drawn upon Virgil, Livy, Solinus, William of Malmesbury,<sup>2</sup> and some very late verses, whose author does not appear, for various particulars embraced in his account.

In the following chapter (xxv.) Higden gives some account of certain institutions of the Romans, which is mostly taken from the *Etymologies* of Hugutio, which seem not to have been printed.<sup>3</sup> He has also used in a much smaller degree Ovid, Valerius Maximus, Isidore, and John of Salisbury, and in one instance, unfortunately, the *Legenda Aurea*. Upon the whole, this chapter is a much more historical and trustworthy compilation than that which went before it.

Leaving the old world, Higden now approaches the countries of modern Europe, and, beginning with Germany, makes his way westward to Britain, with which his "Map of the World" concludes. His somewhat meagre notice of Germany (c. xxvi.) is due in part to Isidore, also to Paulus Diaconus (from whom he takes the beautiful legend of the Seven Sleepers), to Bede, and to Pliny. Numerous particulars of his account in this and in many of the following chapters are derived from a source to which he has not referred, but which exists in manuscript under the title of *Geographia Uni-*

<sup>1</sup> See Mart. Pol. *Chron.*, lib. i. capp. 4-7; lib. iv. cap. *Domitianus*, &c.

<sup>2</sup> The verses, however, of Hilbert appear thus in William's, fourth book (§ 351, p. 537, Hardy):

"Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis prope tota ruina ;

"Quam magni fueris integra, fracta doces."

<sup>3</sup> I have consulted a MS. of this work in the Cambridge University Library, and found that Higden had correctly quoted it in all the cases where it seemed worth while to verify his references.

*versalis*. The author is unknown, but it is quite clear that Higden, as well as the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, is under considerable obligations to him.<sup>1</sup> The time at which he lived does not appear to have been investigated; the manuscript itself is of the 14th century, and probably the author himself is little, if at all, older.<sup>2</sup>

The opening sentence of his account of France (c. xxvii.) is taken without acknowledgment from Isidore.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Haydon, to whose valuable introduction to the *Eulogium Historiarum* (published in this series) I am much indebted, points out the chapters in that work which are taken from the *Polychronicon* and from the *Geographia*, and mentions the deviations *very minutely*. The reader who compares those chapters in the *Eulogium* borrowed from the *Geographia* with the chapters in Higden which treat of the same countries, will see at once that many of his statements, *for which he gives no authority*, are taken from this book. Thus, to take a crucial instance, the *Geographia* (fol. 4 b.) says of the Auroch: "Et hoc animal 'lingua Boemica *Loz* nuncupatur" (*Intr. to Eulog.* vol. ii. p. xl. (note.) This is altered in the *Eulogium* into, "In lingua nostra nomen ignoratur" (vol. ii. p. 72), but in Higden, p. 256, we have the identical statement: "Quod lingua Boemica 'Leoz (*Loz*, A) vocatur." This clause excepted, most of his account is tacitly taken from Pliny (lib. viii. c. 16). It was with no small satisfaction that I discovered, with Mr. Haydon's help, the source of not a few passages, or parts of passages, which I had in vain endeavoured to find elsewhere. I now

perceive also that some of Higden's authorities have been taken by him from the *Geographia*. All the quotations from Herodotus (so called) are, I believe, derived from this work. The *Geographia* also repeatedly quotes Isidore, but although Higden uses the same quotations, he is so familiar with him that he cannot be said to be beholden to any other writer for them. I have now examined the MS. of the *Geographia* in the British Museum (Arundel MSS. n. 123) since this Introduction was in type, and have traced Higden's statements to their origin in some cases, where the notes on the *Eulogium* did not conduct me to them.

<sup>2</sup> He quotes Petrus Comestor, who lived at the end of the 12th century, and an Alexander, who is doubtless Neckham, who lived a little later. See Appendix. The same quotations are reproduced in Higden, but in this introduction the authors, from whom the citations are professedly made, are called *his* authorities, even though they may have been taken at second hand.

<sup>3</sup> Higden's mistake in reading *humectentur* for *innectuntur* in Virgil is his own. Lactantius, the fountain head of the account, has

The more important parts of this chapter, relating to the succession of the early French kings, are taken from William of Malmesbury; other parts are derived from Ovid, Augustine, Hugutio, and Giraldus; also from those untrustworthy authorities, Turpin, and Geoffrey of Monmouth.<sup>1</sup> Higden likewise professes to quote from Herodotus, and from the second book of Eutropius, but the reference is false in each case, and some other authors are intended.<sup>2</sup> This chapter is mostly occupied with an account of the various tribes and dynasties of France from the times of Julius Cæsar downwards, and with a general outline of its geography. In that which follows (c. xxviii.) he enters on a description of the limits and positions of the provinces in particular, which seems to be for the most part taken from the *Geographia*,<sup>3</sup> but reference is made on certain points to Giraldus, Isidore, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Pliny, and also to Herodotus, but falsely as always. His observations respecting the woollen cloth

---

committed the error about the Sibyl. See Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2. § 104, vol. iii. p. 414 (ed. Arev.) and the notes. I had overlooked this in writing the note at p. 266.

<sup>1</sup> Warton (*Hist. Eng. Poetry*, vol. i. diss. 1) has many remarks on these writers. He thinks that the fabulous history ascribed to Turpin is not older than the 12th century. Pope Calixtus II. in 1122, it seems, pronounced the history to be genuine!

<sup>2</sup> Herodotus is quoted as giving an account of the Picts, p. 294. The second book of Eutropius is quoted for an account of the Gauls, in which it might very naturally have occurred; but there is no such passage either in that book or in the whole of his history, so far as I

know. It occurs, however, in Mart. Pol. *Chron.*, lib. ii. c. 6, who says, "Galli vero, ut Orosius ait, sunt animo feroces, corpora fortiora aliis hominibus habentes. Sed hoc comprobatum est, quod sicut in primo impetu virtus eorum fortior est aliis hominibus, ita postea virtus eorum minor est ferme quam mulierum." Possibly he has in his eye Oros. lib. v. c. 16 (compare also lib. vi. c. 12), with whom Higden's words agree more nearly than his own. With the expression of Orosius (p. 329 Hav.), "Post ubi incalcescente sole fluxa Gallorum corpora in modum nivium distabuerunt," compare Higden, p. 268.

<sup>3</sup> For Flanders, compare *Geographia*, fol. 8 (almost copied); for Picardy, *Geogr.* fol. 17 (very similar);

of Brabant<sup>1</sup> and Flanders (which he includes under France) as compared with the scarlet cloth of Lincoln are not without interest, and are probably derived from his own knowledge and observation.

His notice of Spain (c. xxix.) is but slight, and is principally taken from Justin and Isidore. The concluding remark about the Spanish possessions of the Saracens, as they then existed, is found only in the later form of the chronicle, and may be original.<sup>2</sup> In the thirtieth chapter the islands of the Mediterranean are described. For a great part of the account Higden is indebted to Isidore, not only for those sentences to which his name is prefixed, but likewise for much besides.<sup>3</sup> His account of Sicily is partly taken from Bede and Giraldus, as well as from Isidore. He also mentions St. Gregory's notion that souls are tormented in the flames of Etna. The only other author quoted in this unimportant chapter is Orosius.

for Normandy, *Geogr.* fol. 14 (which Higden abbreviates); for Poitou, *Geogr.* fol. 16, b.; for Aquitaine, the *Geogr.* fol. 3 (which gives, as the sources of the information, Isidore, Pliny, and Orosius); for Gascony, the *Geogr.* fol. 22, which however has not the latter part of Higden's description; and for Burgundy, the *Geogr.* fol. 4, b., which is pretty closely copied. The descriptions of Brittany (p. 290), and Anjou (p. 294), do not coincide with those in the *Geographia*, fol. 4 and fol. 3.

<sup>1</sup> The account of Brabant is not from the *Geographia*, where it is made a part of Germany (fol. 4).

<sup>2</sup> It does not occur in the account of Hispania, given in the *Geographia* (fol. 11).

<sup>3</sup> See Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 7 (for Gades); § 39, 40 (for Sardinia); § 41 (for Corsica); § 19, 20

(for the Cyclades); § 21 (for Delos); § 22 (for Rhodes); § 31 (for Samos); § 14 (for Cyprus, in part); § 15, 16 (for Crete); § 32 (for Sicily); lib. xiii. c. 18, § 3, 4, 5 (for Scylla and Charybdis); lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36 (for the Æolian Islands); lib. xvi. c. 2 (for the salt of Agrigentum). The short notice of Aradus has nothing but what is contained in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2, § 24, and Ezek. xxvii. 8, 11. Higden, however, took it with little alteration from the *Aradia* sive *Aradium* of the *Geographia* (fol. 1, b.), which refers to the *Glossa* on Ezekiel. Even when *Ranulphus* is prefixed to a sentence the matter is taken from Isidore, who writes, lib. xiv. c. 6, § 36, thus: "Æædem  
" insulæ et Vulcaniæ vocantur  
" quod et ipsæ, sicut Ætna,  
" ardeant." See Higden, p. 318.



The islands of the Atlantic (including the Baltic) follow upon these (c. xxxi.) The description of the Canaries, or Fortunate Islands, is taken from Pliny and Isidore. His account of Denmark, which he and other medieval writers call Dacia,<sup>1</sup> is likewise in part taken from Isidore, though without acknowledgment. Higden however has misapplied his authority, for Isidore undoubtedly intended by Dacia the Roman province on the Danube usually so called.<sup>2</sup>

For his notices of some other parts of Northern Europe, Wyntlandia, Islandia, and Norguegia, he gives no authority, but there is no doubt that he has again made considerable use of the *Geographia Universalis*. By the first of these, which he describes as an island lying to the west of Dacia, he seems to intend the northern part of Jutland, which is indeed not very far from being an island.<sup>3</sup> His account of Iceland and Norway deals principally with their natural productions. The great imperfection of his geographical

<sup>1</sup> See, for example, Henry of Huntingdon, and his copyist, B. Cotton (edited in this series), *passim*; also the Index to Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit. &c.* "When the Danes," says Dr. Latham, "took their place in history, they had not long been known under that name, before they were attributed to Attila, and Scandinavia became a part of Hundom. Why? Because the *Daci* were more or less Hun; and because, as early as the time of Procopius, we find them called *Dani*, the Dani (in after times) being called *Daci*." Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.*, vol. i. p. 1094. s. v. *Hunni*. To make confusion worse confounded Denmark is called *Danubia* in the Abingdon Chronicle (vol. i. p. 46).

<sup>2</sup> "*Daci autem Getarum soboles*

*fuerunt, et dictos putant Dacos, quasi Dagos, quia de Gothorum stirpe creati sunt.*" Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 90, who copies Justin's words: "*Daci quoque soboles Getarum sunt,*" lib. xxxii. c. 3. See Higden, p. 320.

<sup>3</sup> In Spruner's *Hist. Atl.*, t. 57, this tract is marked *Wendila*, which seems to be the same word. In the *Eulogium Historiarum*, however (vol. ii. p. 78), *Wyntlandia* is thus described: "*Winlandia est patria juxta montana Norwegiæ versus Orientem sita, super littus oceani; . . . globum de filo faciunt,*" &c. This is taken *verbatim* from the *Geographia* (fol. 22 b.), and is plausibly understood by Mr. Haydon to mean Finland, and I now incline to believe that Higden ought to have



knowledge of these regions at once reveals itself by his description of Norway (in which he doubtless includes Sweden) as an island, surrounded everywhere by the sea.<sup>1</sup> He also conceived Iceland as lying to the north of Norway.<sup>2</sup> His description of Thule, or, as he miscalls it, Tile, is taken from Pliny, Solinus, and Giraldus; he also derives something, as has been already observed, though without acknowledgment, from Æthicus. He thinks it necessary to distinguish from this another island, near India, called Tylos, mentioned by St. Augustine.<sup>3</sup> Thule is still, as Æthicus long ago said, "vix paucis nota;" and it is impossible to say where Higden supposed it to lie.

His description of the British isles.

Our author at length approaches the British isles, and begins by Ireland, which begins by the thirty-second chapter, and ends with the thirty-sixth. In this lengthy account he incorporates almost everything which Solinus had written,<sup>4</sup> and makes one or two

meant Finland also, but in describing the island as lying to the west of Denmark, he seems to have confused Wendila with the Winlandia whose description he has taken from the *Geographia*. Neither Wyntlandia nor Wynlandia are ordinary forms; Finlandia, Finnia, and Finnonia are the only Latin renderings of Finland mentioned in Lloyd's edition of the *Dict. Hist.* of C. Stephens (Genev. 1693). Neither does Zedler (*Universal Lexicon*, s. v. *Finland*) throw any light upon the matter.

<sup>1</sup> He has, doubtless, misunderstood his authority, the *Geographia*, which says (fol. 14), "Norwegia latissima est Europæ provincia mari fere undique circumcincta;" but Higden omits the *fere* and calls it *insula*, p. 326. Most of his de-

scription is transferred, with alterations, from the *Geographia*.

<sup>2</sup> Our author was misled by the *Geographia*, which, describing Norway, says: "Ab oriente habet Gallatiam (!), a septentrione Islandiam (sic), ubi mare perpetuo congelatur; ab occidente et Hibernicum oceanum et Britannicum; a meridie Daciæ (i.e. Denmark) et Gothiæ finibus terminatur." The description of Iceland, however, in Higden is mostly taken from Giraldus Cambrensis. *Top. Hib.* ii. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Aug. *De Civ. Dei*, lib. xxi. c. 5, § 1 (and the note of the Benedictine editor); Plin. lib. vi. c. 32, on which Harduin observes that it is the modern *Queximi*.

<sup>4</sup> C. xxii. He observes: "Illic nullus anguis." This may well

remarks on the authority of Bede and a martyrology.<sup>1</sup> But so nearly the whole of his account is taken from Giraldus Cambrensis,<sup>2</sup> that it is unnecessary to add much about it in this place. With regard to St. Patrick's purgatory in Lough Derg, of which little is said by Giraldus,<sup>3</sup> the following passage from Archbishop Usher will satisfy most readers. "Quæ vero de " Patricii feruntur Purgatorio, non modo Ranulphus " Cestrensis, Henricus Knighton, et Johannes Bramp- " ton, sed etiam Matthæus Parisiensis, Vincentius " Bellovacensis, et Antoninus Florentinus ex eo mutuati " sunt libello, quem de Oëni cujusdam militis Hibernici " in Patricianum purgatorium ingressu, ex Gilleberti " Ludensis monachi relatione, in lucem edidit Hen- " ricus, Cisterciensis ordinis in Saltereyensi apud Hunt- " ingdonienses monasterio cœnobita." *Britt. Eccl. Antiq.*

account for Higden's scepticism about St. Patrick, who regards the common legend as "sufficiently favorable," p. 338.

<sup>1</sup> A Life of St. Brigid, the saint referred to, goes under the name of Cogitosus, in which *Scotia* is used for *Ireland* (See Canis. *Thes. Mon. Eccl.*, vol. i. 416.), and probably the same may be true of her other biographies, which are numerous. (See Hardy, *Descr. Cat. of Materials of British History*, vol. i. p. 720.) Mr. Wright thinks it later than the 6th century, when it is supposed to have been written. (*Hist. of Ireland*, vol. i. p. 29, note.)

<sup>2</sup> The reader may pick out the pieces of Giraldus, by comparing Higden's sentences in order, thus:—

Cap. xxxii. of Higden is contained in Girald. *Top. Hib.* iii. 7; i. 1; ii. 1; i. 2; i. 4; i. 25, 26, 27; i. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; i. 22; i. 5 (referring to Bede and Solinus); i. 4;

i. 18; i. 7; i. 18 (also reading *philomenæ* for *philomelæ*); i. 22, 23, 25.

Cap. xxxiii. in the same work, iii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (reading *Sangandius*), 5; iii. 16 (reading *Herymon*); iii. 7, 8; iii. 36, 37, 38; iii. 40; iii. 43 (reading *Sitaracus*), 44, 45, 46.

Cap. xxxiv. (after the reference to Solinus) in iii. 10 (reading *phalings*, which is perhaps better), 11; iii. 19, 20, 21 (confirming Gale's emendation *ars quam Mars*), 22, 23, 24; iii. 26; iii. 35; ii. 19; ii. 1; ii. 43.

Cap. xxxv. in ii. 4, 5, 6, 7; ii. 28; ii. 9; ii. 19; ii. 7; ii. 42, 43; ii. 29. (The conclusion of the chapter, pp. 370–376, is not contained in Giraldus.)

Cap. xxxvi. in ii. 55; iii. 27, 28, 29; iii. 32, 33, 34. (The quotation from Augustine, p. 380, is not in Giraldus.)

<sup>3</sup> See his *Top. Hib.* ii. 5.

c. xvii., p. 465 (ed. 1687), where a great deal more information will be found.<sup>1</sup>

A short chapter on Scotland follows (c. xxxvii.), for which Bede, Isidore, and Giraldus are quoted, as well as the Herodotus before mentioned. Higden has misunderstood his authorities to some extent,<sup>2</sup> and upon the whole his account is of very little value, and for the most part legendary.<sup>3</sup>

At length Higden concludes with a description of his own country, "on account of which his whole work was undertaken." He takes Wales first, and England afterwards. His description of Wales is written in a lame kind of rhyming verse, occupying one long chapter (c. xxxviii.); and the only authority whom he quotes is Gildas, and him only once.

<sup>1</sup> It appears from Mr. Hardy's *Descriptive Catalogue of Materials of British History* (vol. 1. p. 859.), that this choice production has been printed "in almost every language of Europe."

<sup>2</sup> Thus Isidore is represented as saying: "Hujus Scotiæ (Scotland) incolæ dicuntur Scoti propria lingua;" but that author (lib. ix. c. 2, § 103) appears to me to mean the Irish by Scoti. Elsewhere (lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6) he says: "Scotia, eadem et Hibernia, proxima Britannia insula." Further Higden appears to have no authority from Bede, or from any writer but Giraldus, for saying that Scotland was ever called *Hibernia*. The Scoti of Bede in all the places quoted seem to be Irishmen, and the Hibernia in which they dwell to be Ireland. Higden rightly enough observed that Ireland was called Scotia in St. Brigid's Life; but the converse, that Scotland is called in

old writers Hibernia, does not seem to be correct.

<sup>3</sup> For the legend of St. Andrew Higden refers to Giraldus, but like several other citations which purport to be from him, I know not where to find it. "Eadem etiam de re," i.e., the translation of St. Andrew's relics from Constantinople, says Usher, "scripsisse Giraldum in Chronica sua, refert Enlogii auctor; ad ea respiciens, quæ ex Giraldo Cambrensi, libro i. Polychronici sui, cap 37, Ranulphus Cestrensis inseruit. Ejusmodi argumenti commentariolum in manibus habeo, ab Andreapolito quodam Culdeo exaratum; . . . illum certe fuisse, ex quo sua descripsit Giraldus, res ipsa indicat." *Britt Eccles. Antiq.*, c. xv. p. 341 (Lond. 1687). Usher then gives the document at length, which agrees substantially (but by no means verbally) with Higden.

The whole of his account however, or very nearly so, is taken from the *Itinerarium Cambriæ* and the *Cambriæ Descriptio* of Giraldus.<sup>1</sup> Under these circumstances we pass over the account without further remark, than that some few touches about the Welsh manners and Welsh productions may be due to Higden's personal knowledge or to the reports which he had heard from others.

The remaining chapters of this book contain an

<sup>1</sup> For Higden's account of the veneration of bells, &c. in Wales, p. 428, compare Girald. *Itin. Cambr.*, lib. i. c. 2; of Brecknock and its marvels, p. 412, Id. lib. i. c. 2; for the Welsh bowmen, p. 402, Id. lib. i. c. 4. (allusion doubtful); for Goldcliff, p. 412, Id. lib. i. c. 5; for Barry island, p. 414, Id. lib. i. c. 6 (very closely copied); for the three courts (*curiæ*) of Wales, p. 400, Id. lib. i. c. 9; for the Pembroke demons, p. 416, Id. lib. i. c. 12; for Crucmaur (*Cruc Mawr*, Giraldus) and its wonderful tumulus, p. 416, Id. lib. ii. c. 3; for the weapons of North and South Wales, p. 400, Id. lib. ii. c. 5; for the Bardesey island, p. 416, Id. lib. ii. c. 6; for the marvellous stone in Anglesey, and Count Hugh's experiment upon it, p. 424, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the rock of the hearers, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the mice and the monks, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the vindictive character of the Welsh and Irish saints, p. 426, Id. lib. ii. c. 7; for the two Merlins, pp. 418-422, Id. lib. ii. c. 8 (very closely copied); for the mountains of Snowdon and their rich pastures, p. 422, Id. lib. ii. c. 9; for their lakes and one-eyed trout and other marvels, p. 422, Id. lib. ii. c. 9 (where Giraldus has *truta* for *turtri*); for the

well at Ruthelan, pp. 422-424, Id. lib. ii. c. 9; for the Trojan descent of the Welsh, p. 394, Id. *Cambr. Descript.* c. 3; for the civil and ecclesiastical divisions of Wales, p. 400, Id. c. 4; for the names Cambria and Wallia, p. 396, Id. c. 7; for the manners of the Welsh, pp. 400-412, Id. c. 8-18 (but Higden has some details about dress, &c., which are not there contained); for the fertility of the country and its products, pp. 396-398, Id. c. 6 and 8 (but Higden here again has some things not in Giraldus). The blood in St. Winifrid's well seems to be the only marvel related by Higden, not to be found in these works of Giraldus, for which see Camden's notes on Girald. *Itin. Cambr.*, lib. ii. c. 10.

One or two of the absurd stories related by Giraldus are also to be found in Nennius, as those about the wonderful stone of Anglesey, and the tumulus at Crucmaur, near Cardigan. See his *Hist.*, c. 84. and c. 87, and the notes in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, p. 80. Nearly the whole of Higden's metrical account is transferred into the *Eulogium*, but very inaccurately. Mr. Haydon (vol. ii. pref. p. li.) does not seem to have been aware that Giraldus is the authority from whom Higden took almost everything.

account of England, which must be discussed in the following volume.

Credibility  
and value  
of Higden,  
as an his-  
torian.

I have thus far briefly gone over the chapters of Higden's first book herein-after contained, with a view to indicate the authorities upon which they profess to depend; at the same time, when I could, I have pointed out his sources of information when he has himself withheld them, as in his chapters on the islands of the Mediterranean, on Northern Europe, and on Wales. Such cases also as I have observed of erroneous citations, those for example of Priscian, Eutropius, and Herodotus, have been pointed out, and in one or two instances corrected. At the same time, I fear that there are more errors of citation than I have myself discovered, and an increased knowledge of Higden has more and more convinced me of his inaccuracy. Not, indeed, that this fault is to be very severely dealt with, when we bear in mind the age in which he lived; but it is not the less a cause of disquiet and perplexity to his editor. We have also to regret that Higden has drawn so much from untrustworthy authorities. For recounting the Trojan origin of the European nations, and the absurdities which had clustered about the history of Alexander the Great, and a variety of fabulous narratives relating to distant lands and ancient times, we ought not to tax Higden severely; more especially as in some cases, for example when repeating the marvels current about Rome, he expresses doubts respecting their truth. At the same time, we cannot but feel disappointment that his account of countries which lay nearer home, as Scotland and Wales, should contain so little that is valuable, and so much that is utterly worthless and absurd. For the rest we need only say, that the value of the history and geography varies much with the authors quoted; whose sense Higden has in general represented with truthfulness and with much elegance



of expression.<sup>1</sup> His knowledge of letters was for his age very considerable; and any one who examines his list of authors would find that it could be no light matter, even in an age of printed books and every appliance for understanding them, to go through them all.<sup>2</sup> So far as I have at present observed, there is no appearance of any intentional garbling or falsifying his authorities, so as to make them mean something else than what they do mean. When compared with other writers of his time, he is considered by excellent judges to appear very favourably.

The following testimonials to his diligence and integrity deserve to be cited:—

“*Litteris divinis et humanis*” (says Bale) “*tam clarus evasit, ut inter suæ ætatis præcipuos earum cultores connumeraretur. In historiographorum lectione multa diligentia, opera, et cura usus est. . . . Compendio quodam in unum redegit historiæ volumen ea quæ ante sparsim et sine lucido ordine apud multos authores in obscuris delitebant bibliothecis; unicuique suorum authorum honorem integrum servans. . . . Tamque egregie suam in eo navabat operam, ut a peritis scriptoribus, Polydoro potissime, egregius historicus diceretur.*”<sup>3</sup>

Henry Wharton observes, “*ut vix aliam quam com-pilatoris gloriam meruerit, nisi quod libro ultimo*

<sup>1</sup> It will be understood from Higden's own remarks (pp. 18–20), that he does not quote the actual words of his authors. His later and longer edition deviates from them much more than the earlier, represented by C. D. This is singular, as the commencement of D. shows that it is an abbreviation of a larger work; and I cannot quite satisfactorily account for the phenomenon.

<sup>2</sup> At the same time Higden ap-

pears to have taken his quotations not unfrequently at second hand. I cannot altogether acquit him of dissingenuousness in suppressing his obligations to the *Geographia Universalis*.

<sup>3</sup> Cent. vi. n. 12. This is taken in part from Leland, *De Script. Brit.*, p. 339, who elsewhere (p. 13) writes thus: “*Ranulphus Higedenus, Cestrensis, antiquarum rerum, ut illa ferebant sæcula, non imperitus.*”

" multa e suo penu inseruerit;" and then proceeds to add these terms of high commendation: " Compilatoris  
 " tamen munus tam egregie præstitit, ut pauci admo-  
 " dum e nostratibus historici fide, gravitate, ac judicio  
 " cum eo sint conferendi." <sup>1</sup>

Popularity  
 of Higden's  
*Polychro-  
 nicon*.

There is a value, however, to be attached to Higden's work apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography, which well informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed; for it was to them the standard work on general history. The Latin MSS. of the work are prodigiously numerous, and amount in all, I believe, to a number considerably greater than one hundred.<sup>2</sup> Moreover it was translated into English in the fourteenth and again in the fifteenth century; the earlier of which translations was printed, with some modern alterations, by the father of English typography, Caxton, in 1482, and again by his scholar Wynkyn de Worde in 1495; and yet once more, in such demand must the book have been, by Peter Treveris in 1527. But of the translations more hereafter. Nor is this all; not only were manuscripts of the original *Polychronicon* multiplied, and the English translation circulated extensively by means of the printing press, but other authors incorporated the labours of Higden into their own works, and sometimes with little other acknowledgment than by adding calumny to larceny. Thus the author of the *Eulogium Historiarum*, whose name is deservedly unknown, not content with pilfering a large part of his history from Higden, and with

<sup>1</sup> Appendix to Cave's Hist. Lit. s. a. 1357.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Macray (*Manual of British Historians*, p. 39) says: "There are MSS. in nearly all the libraries in England." He then goes on to mention "some of them." These "some" are upwards of seventy;

and I know from a MS. catalogue drawn up by Mr. Stuart Moore from Mr. Hardy's notes, and kindly communicated to me, of a good many which are not contained therein. This catalogue I hope to publish in the last volume, when I have rendered it as complete as possible.

spoiling not a few things that he touches, must needs go out of his way to call our author *madidus monachus*, and while following the common legend about St. Patrick and the snakes, exclaim in pious horror against Higden (under the name of "monachus Cestriæ," as a *novus chronographus, qui dicta antiquorum vilipendit*.<sup>1</sup>

Such was the contemptuous treatment which Higden received at the hands of a contemporary thief. Another writer, who flourished later in the 14th century, Henry of Knighton, canon of Leicester, like the author of the *Eulogium*, incorporates much of Higden into his history; but, unlike that mean writer, handsomely acknowledges his obligations in the following terms: "Igitur opusculum historiæ meæ a conquæstu regni Angliæ cum adminiculo septimi libri Cistrensis (sic in Twysden), *laudiflvi chronographi, perlucide scribentis*; cujus seriem de verbo ad verbum cum aliis quæ aspectui meo sparsim se obtulerant inscribere seriatim propono."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See Mr. Haydon's pref. to vol. i. of the *Eulog. Hist.*, pp. xlv.-xlvii. It does not appear that Higden is quoted by name, but only as "a monk of Chester." For the deviations from Higden which this writer makes, either by design, or in carelessness, or in ignorance, the reader may consult Mr. Haydon, who has detailed them with a most laborious minuteness. It is impossible to help wishing that the author had been more worthy of the pains and erudition of his editor. Here and there, however, *aliquid humani* has happened to him, in common with us all; thus the Paulus (*Introd.* to vol. ii. p. xxiii.) of the *Polychronicon* (see p. 64) is not Marco Polo, but Paulus Diaconus. (See *De Gest. Long.*, lib. i. c. 6.) Similarly the Hugo named in the preface to vol. i. p. lv.

note, is not Hugo de S. Victore, but Hugo or Hugutio Pisanus. (*Etymol. cap. Molo.*)

<sup>2</sup> P. 2311. (*Twysd. Hist. Angl. Script. x.*) The following passage, which quite accords with our notion that Higden put out two editions of his chronicle, may be quoted now, though we hope to recur again to the subject at the close of the work: "Explicit historia Leycestrensis anno gratiæ mcccxxvi. Nunc Cistrensis imponit finem chronicæ suæ; sed postea quædam adjecit ei, videlicet de morte antequi Edwardi regis, cum quibusdam aliis eventibus in tempore regis Edwardi tertii, prout infra patebit in suo loco per singula." (*Id.* p. 2550.) Knighton considers that Higden ended his chronicle at this point, "utrinque discessum est"

We learn from Bale, that John Rocheforth, who wrote in the beginning of the 15th century, made a compendium of the *Polychronicon* in one book.<sup>1</sup>

Henry Bradshaw, in fine, himself "a native of " Chester . . . and at length a Benedictine monk of " St. Werburgh's abbey," Higden's own home, composed before the close of the 15th century a *Life of St. Werburgh* in English verse. He thus acknowledges his obligations to Higden:

" Untoo this rude worke myne auctors these;  
 " Fyrst the true legends, and the venerable Bede,  
 " Mayster Alfrydus, and Wyllyam Malmusbury,  
 " Gyrard, *Polychronicon*, and other mo indeed."<sup>2</sup>

Several writers, also, as Knyghton himself, Malverne, Caxton, and others, undertook the continuation of the *Polychronicon*, both in the 14th and 15th centuries; but of these we say nothing now, reserving our account for the close of Higden's work. The reader, however, will easily perceive how popular the history must have been, to have been so often continued by other hands.

In the course of these remarks we have had occasion to quote several authors who mention Higden; but it would be a long undertaking to collect a catena of allusions to the *Polychronicon* from the writers of the 14th and following centuries. In addition to those to whom we have already referred, we may mention the names of Wycliffe,<sup>3</sup> Purvey,<sup>4</sup> and Thorpe,<sup>5</sup>

(*Id.* p. 2569). These words refer to the events of year 1340, according to the marginal date in our MSS. A. and E.; but Knyghton appears to refer them to 1336 or 1337; at least, we have 1336 occurring in his margin a little before them, and 1338 a little after them.

<sup>1</sup> *Cent.*, vii. n. 41. This may possibly be the same book that is mentioned above, p. xii. note, as a work of Higden.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted in Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poetry*, vol. ii. p. 178.

<sup>3</sup> *Fasciculi Zizaniorum*, p. 256 (Ut narrat Cestrensis in suo *Polychronicon*).

<sup>4</sup> *Id.* 397 (quod narrat Cestrensis, libro vi.)

<sup>5</sup> Writings of Brute, Thorpe, Cobham, &c., p. 79 (*Rel. Tract Society*) (as "Cisterciensis" [*i.e.*, Higden, lib. vii. c. 37] "tells"). A MS. memorandum in the *Annales* of William



among the Lollards; also of John Capgrave,<sup>1</sup> Richard of Cirencester,<sup>2</sup> and Thomas of Elmham,<sup>3</sup> among the chroniclers; all of whom wrote before Caxton's edition appeared in 1482. None of these authors, however, so far as I know, mention Higden by name.<sup>4</sup> To them, I doubt not, others might be added.<sup>5</sup> After the English translation was printed and reprinted, the book, of course, became more generally known, and it would be useless to collect mere allusions; such passages as throw any light upon the author's life or his works have been already quoted, so far as they have come to my knowledge.<sup>6</sup>

Wyrcester designates him similarly: "Nota etiam Chronica Ranulphi monachi Cisterciensis." *Wars of the English in France, temp. Henr. VI.*, vol. ii. p. 765, note (in this series). This was, probably, written at the end of the 15th century.

<sup>1</sup> *De Illust. Henr.*, p. 40, &c. (secundum Pollichronicam). Capgrave quotes from the work several times in the same manner, without naming the author, and sometimes incorporates it without naming it at all. See pp. 75, 79, and Mr. Hingeston's notes, and the Index.

<sup>2</sup> *Spec. Hist.*, lib. ii. c. 51, vol. i. p. 204 (Cestrensis, sicut dicit in sua *Polychronicon*).

<sup>3</sup> *Hist. Monast. S. August.*, pp. 185, 186 (Cestrensis in sua *Polychronica*, and similarly elsewhere).

<sup>4</sup> Those of them who call him *Cestrensis* can have known nothing of two monks of Chester, Roger and Ranulf; and I believe Bale to have been the inventor of the hypothesis that there were two.

<sup>5</sup> It is likely enough that Lord Cobham and Reginald Pecock tacitly refer to Higden. See *Writings of Brute, Cobham, &c.*, p. 126 (as

above); and the *Addenda* to Pecock's *Repressor*.

<sup>6</sup> The Reformers frequently quote Higden. See the Index to the Parker Society's volumes for references to Calfhill, Pilkington, and Jewel. I have examined all the passages, but there is little to be said of them. Calfhill and Pilkington simply refer to the *Polychronicon* without naming the author. Jewel sometimes quotes thus, "Sir John Trevisa saith," but also refers to "Ranulf Cestr.," and, what is more deserving of notice, distinguishes him from Roger, though, as I conceive, erroneously. "This story is recorded by Ranulphus, Rogerus Cestrensis, and Rogerus Hoveden, that lived at the same time." (*Works*, vol. iv. p. 697.) I will only add that the *Polychronicon* was referred to, both as a book of authority, and as a well-known book, by the Reformers and their opponents alike. Thus Horne, bishop of Winchester, after quoting the *Polychronicon*, writes: "Polychronicon vult, quod nullum legatum papæ in suam terram venire permisit." To which Stapleton replies: "Fal-



MSS. of  
Higden  
used for  
this edi-  
tion.

The Latin text, however, was never printed before the present edition, with the exception of the portions relating to British History, which were published by Gale.<sup>1</sup> These seem to have been taken from a single MS., though it is possible that the occasional deviations from it may not always be due to accident or conjecture; it was formerly in his own possession, and is now with his other books in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge. (O. 5, 12.)

In the present edition it has been used only occasionally, and nearly always for those readings of Gale which seemed to require verification. It is called G. in the notes of this volume. It is a folio on vellum of 149 leaves, paged by a contemporary hand, in double columns, each column containing 51 lines, very neatly written in a hand of the 15th century.

Begins: "*Prologus primus in historiam Polocroni-  
cam* (sic.) *Post præclaros,*" &c.

Ends (under A.D. 1352): "*cannabi, lini, et specierum.*"

A table of contents in a later hand is bound up with it.

The following account of the MSS. collated throughout for the present work may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text.

"sum est, quod ex Polychronico  
"prætendis desumere, quod papæ  
"legati," &c. Elsewhere, on the  
same page, he says: "Polychronici  
"author refert, quod, &c., quæ  
"verba tu omittis;" and bye and  
bye goes on to observe, "non opus  
"est ad libros eruditos Lanfranci,  
"benigne lector, remittere. Rogo  
"eos, quibus *Polychronicon aut Fa-  
"bianum* inspiciendi facultas datur,  
"ut ipsa loca examinent." See  
Stapl., *Op.*, tom. ii. pp. 1025, 1028  
(ed. Par. 1620). Stapleton's work  
is dated, Lovanii, 1561. Of other

writers, John Ross, who wrote at  
the beginning of Henry VII.'s  
reign a *Historia Regum Angliæ*,  
edited by Hearne; Caius, who  
styles him "*summæ fidei scripto-  
"rem,*" *Animadv.* (p. 371, Hearne),  
though he distinguishes him from  
Roger; and Usher, in his *Britan-  
nicarum Ecclesiarum Antiquitates*,  
have made more or less use of Hig-  
den as a historical authority.

<sup>1</sup> In his *Hist. Brit. Scriptores*  
XV. (vol. i. pp. 179-287, Oxon.  
1691.)

A. This beautiful vellum MS., in double columns, of about the beginning of the 15th century, written by a scribe named Arnold, was given to the library of the University of Cambridge (where it is marked li, 2, 24) by archbishop Parker. It wants the first leaf of the contents and two fly-leaves; now containing 163 leaves.

Begins (fol. 13, after table of contents): "Post præclaros."

Ends (fol. 161, lib. viii. A.D. 1381): "Mense Martii ejusdem anni Dominus Thomas Hatfield Episcopus Dunelmensis moritur senex multorum dierum."

At the beginning, on fly-leaves of parchment, are pasted two pieces of parchment, in hands of the 15th century, inscribed *Ranulphus Chestrensis*, and *Ranulphus vel Polichronicon*.

On fol. 4 is written *Cronica que dicuntur Chester*, a remark which seems to indicate that the scribe knew nothing about *two different* Chester Chronicles, one by Roger and another by Ranulf.

After which, in archbishop Parker's hand, "qui scripsit ad annum 1341."

Below this is written, in a hand of the 16th century, on an erasure: "Ranulphus Hygden."

And below this the anagram, *Presentem cronicam*, &c. (wrongly written *chronicam*), about which we have already spoken. Below this again, in the same hand of the 16th century: "Hic titulus textitur ex literis initialibus capitum primi libri, et vulgo vocatur *Polichronicon* sive *Polieraticon*." This writer, who is probably archbishop Parker, evidently knew nothing about a *Polycraticon* of Roger distinct from a *Polychronicon* of Ranulf.

At fol. 152 (p. 297 of the red pagination), against the words *ecclesia libertatem* (lib. vii. c. 44, mis-numbered 43, A.D. 1327), the original scribe has written "*explicit historia*,"\* but the history is continued in the same hand. In the margin Parker, as it seems, has written, "Nota, quæ sequuntur in codice isto et altero

"diversos habuerunt scriptores; ut in hac proxima  
"sententia plane cernitur de morte Edwardi II."\*

On fol. 152 b we have, in Parker's ordinary hand,  
"In hoc anno," *i.e.* 1330, "incipit continuatio historiæ  
"hujus scripta in cœnobio S. Albani et vocari potest  
"Chronica Albanensis, ut in alio libro ejusdem ma-  
"nus et formæ." Also at the bottom of the leaf,  
at the words "*utriusque discessum est*, A.D. 1340,  
in a contemporary hand is written "Hic finit Ches-  
"tyr."\*

At fol. 153, however, is written at the side, in a scrawling hand of the end of the fifteenth century, against the words *sub pena carceris et capitis interdixit* (lib. vii. c. 44, A.D. 1342), the following note: *Alius liber scriptus habet in margine "Hucusque Randulphus,"* below which Parker again has written, *Non hic, sed superius*, referring to his note on A.D. 1327. In the upper margin at the same place is written in a different hand of the sixteenth century, a long note stated to be taken "ex veteri quodam libro," of which the following is a part: "Hic revera Ranulphus monachus Cestrensis suas cronicas terminavit." He goes on to say: "Hic etenim liberalibus artibus eruditus literaturaque insignis quorundam sodalium suorum instantia pulsatus de famosioribus orbis historiis, scilicet ab initio microcosmi usque ad tempora Edwardi regis, tertii post conquestum, opus æternaliter commendabile produxit in lucem. Quod opus, quia multorum temporum chronicas claudit, *Polycraticon* voluit appellari." He then goes on to mention the continuation by John Malverne, a monk of Worcester, about which nothing shall be said at present. The reader is again requested to observe that *Polycraticon* is the title of the work attributed to *Ranulphus*. The notes which are followed by an asterisk recur (in the same words or nearly so) in another MS. of Higden, formerly in Parker's possession, and now numbered 117 in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

Described in the Catalogue of the MSS. of the Cambridge University Library, from which this account is partly taken. Some additional information will be found there (vol. iii. p. 396).

B. In the library of Caius College, Cambridge. A very fine MS., and earlier than the preceding. Henry Wharton says of it: "*Ex quamplurimis, quos vidi, historiæ istius codicibus manu scriptis longe pulcherrimus est qui in collegio Gonvillii et Caii, cujus ipsemet alumnus fui, asservatur.*" Tanner also calls it "*omnium pulcherrimum.*" It is a folio, on vellum, of 191 leaves, in two columns, each column of about 45 lines, written in a contracted hand of the latter part of the 14th century, and illuminated.

Begins (fol. 8): "*Post præclaros.*"

Ends (A.D. 1375): "*et palam in eorum sermonibus prædicantes.*"

The MS. has no original title, and no note or notes concerning Higden. It contains an index, above which (fol. 1) a later hand, probably of the 15th century, has written, "*Polychronicon Ran. Hygden usque ad annum Domini 1370.*" The notes on the fly-leaves show that it was written before the end of the 14th century: "*Cautio Magri Henrici Hosbern expos. ciste de Derlynton in vigilia nativitatis beate Marie, A.D. mcccc.*" "*Cautio Henrici Osberne expos. ciste Ling in festo Sci Benedicti, et erit pollicronica pro xxvi. s. viii. d.*" &c. Numbered 82 in the library. See Descriptive Cat. of MSS. in Caius Coll., p. 36.

The above notes are not in the same hand as the MS. itself.

The scribe of MS. B. was evidently often unable to read his original well, for he sometimes leaves a space for a word which he cannot understand, sometimes runs two words into one, and occasionally distorts the orthography of a word in such a manner as to make it unintelligible.

C. In the library of St. Mary Magdalen's College, Oxford. One of the earliest MSS. of Higden in existence.

Folio, on vellum, of 119 leaves, in double columns, each column containing about 56 lines, written in a hand, abounding in contractions, of about the middle of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 1): "In historico contextu."

Ends (A.D. 1327): "Nam in ejus primordiis recepit  
"terra fertilitatem, aer temperiem, mare tranquillita-  
"tem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia libertatem."

After which (all in the same hand):

"Scribitur ecce liber, patrias profer mihi liber,

"Virginis o liber, scriptor tibi sit peto liber.

"Qui legit attendat, ne scriptorem reprehendat;

"Nam defectiva sit copia sæpe nociva.

"Libro conscripto, scriptor pellatur Egypto,

"Solvat ut invicto Regi laudes benedicto."

"*Expliciunt cronice venerabilis Ranulphi, monachi  
"Cestrensis, in septem libellos distinctæ, dictæ-  
"que Historia Policratica.*"

"Penna, quiesce, modo; finemque laboris ego do.

"Metro complodo liber claudens quasi nodo."

After this follows the table, consisting of 24 columns (complete), likewise in the same hand. Numbered clxxxi. in the library. Described in Coxe's *Catalogue of the MSS. in the Libraries of the Oxford Colleges* (Magd. p. 82.), where some additional information will be found. There is nothing to show to whom the MS. belonged, or by whom it was given to the College, as I am informed by the Rev. J. W. Knight, the librarian.

D. In the library of St. John's College, Cambridge.—A distinctly written MS., on vellum, in double columns, of 232 leaves (excluding blanks), each column containing 49 lines, the initial letters handsomely illuminated, of the 14th century.



Begins (fol. 1): "In historico namque<sup>1</sup> contextu."

Ends (fol. 220, misnumbered 218, A.D. 1327) "Nam in ejus primordiis recepit terra fertilitatem, aer temperiem, mare tranquillitatem, Scotia concordiam, ecclesia libertatem. Et hic finis;" below which, in the same hand, "Qui scripsit librum, Ion. Lutton (sic) est sibi nomen."

After which follows the table of contents, to which additions have been made by other hands. On the first leaf are the following marks of ownership: "Joannes Dee, 1573, Nov. 13. W. Crashawe, 1609, Novemb. 17." The latter may have written also "Polychronica," the only title that appears in the body of the MS., which has, however, lost one fly-leaf at the beginning and a portion of another at the end, on the reverse of which is written: "Iste liber pertinet ad W. (?) Hidam." The book is now bound up with a MS. of Ægidius, and has W. C. (*i.e.*, William Crashawe) stamped on it, and it is probably in his hand that the following remarks are made on a blank paper leaf at the beginning:

"Polychronica, per Ranulphum Higden Cestrensem; Johannes Lutton monachus scripsit circa annum 1386." Purchased of W. Crashawe (brother of R. Crashawe, the poet), by Thomas Wriothesley, earl of Southampton, and presented with many other books to the library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked A. 12. It has been described by the Rev. B. M. Cowie in the *Catalogue of MSS. and Scarce Books of the Library of St. John's*.<sup>2</sup>

These four MS., A., B., C., D., had been selected, with the approbation of the Master of the Rolls, by my

<sup>1</sup> The MS. might be thought to commence imperfectly, but this is not so; several other MSS. begin similarly (*e.g.*, Univ. Coll. Oxon. 177; Mert. 118). Such an open-

ing indicates that the work in this shape is an abbreviation of a larger work.

<sup>2</sup> P. 4 (*Publ. Camb. Ant. Soc.* for 1842).

lamented friend the Ven. Archdeacon Hardwick, who had examined a great number of MSS., and made notes upon them, as the materials upon which the Latin text<sup>1</sup> in this edition should be formed, special preference being given to MS. A. It appeared, however, desirable to take in an additional MS. for the *longer* form of the chronicle, which is exhibited in a very pure form in the following MS., our E., whose readings, however, are sometimes corrected from the other MSS., A. and B., and occasionally also from C. and D., which exhibit the chronicle in the *shorter* form, and differ but very little from each other.<sup>2</sup>

E. In the University Library, Cambridge.—A folio, on vellum, of 276 leaves (a fly-leaf at the end having been cut away), each page containing between 30 and 40 lines (or a little more than 40 in the last two books), the initials very elaborately ornamented, well written, in the latter part of the 14th century.

Begins (fol. 11, after the table of contents, entitled *Kalendarium Cronicorum*): “Prologus primus. Incipit “prologus in historiam policronicam Ranulphi. Post “præclaros,” etc.

Ends (fol. 275, under A.D. 1352): “circa maritimas “urbes Angliæ et Hiberniæ.”

<sup>1</sup> I should perhaps say here, that the marginal summaries are not a part of the Latin text: they vary much in the different MSS. Usually I have taken them from E., but sometimes from other sources, and have occasionally added them myself, and more often omitted them. The headings of the chapters, however, are in all cases taken from MSS.; these also vary, but not in an equal degree.

<sup>2</sup> So similar are C. and D., that I have often thought it desirable to say “C., not D.,” of particular readings. Where, however, it is

only recorded that D. has a particular reading, it is less certain that C. has it not. The MSS. A., D., E., the standard MS. of Trevisa (called MS.), and Caxton's edition, have been always under my eye in preparing the sheets for the press, the other MSS. have not. With regard to B., when its readings are not recorded, they may be presumed to agree with those of E., with whose text the other Latin MSS. have been collated, and which has been *generally* followed in this edition.

After which this note (in the same hand): "Usque  
" hic scripsit Ranulphus Hykedoun monachus Cestren-  
" sis, istorum cronicorum compilator, qui obiit in senec-  
" tute bona —," where a later hand has added "Anno  
" Do. 1363."

However, at fol. 273 *b*, in the original hand, under  
A.D. 1327, after "ecclesia libertatem," is written "Ex-  
" plicit historia."

Inside the cover, in a hand of the 17th century,  
probably Mr. Lorton's, "Ranulphi Hikeden monachi  
" Cestrensis Chronica;" at fol. 2, probably in Wheelock's  
hand, "Ranulfi Cestrensis Polychronicon." At fol. 11,  
also in a somewhat late hand: "Gramata (sic) dant  
" prima capitalia nomen agentis." On the reverse of  
fol. 276 (written in a hand of the 15th century):  
"Iste liber constat J. Broke monacho ecclie Xi Cant."  
(i.e., Canterbury Cathedral).

Described in the *Catalogue of MSS. in the Cam-  
bridge University Library*, where it is marked II.  
3. 1. (vol. iii. p. 401). It came into the library  
shortly before 1600.<sup>1</sup>

One other valuable MS. has been consulted for the  
first three chapters. It was given to Winchester  
College by William of Wykeham, with a continuation  
to the end of the reign of Edward III. About the  
continuation we must defer our remarks, and only  
now say that, in common with others, this MS. has  
a note at the end of the year 1342: "Huc usque  
" scripsit Ranulfus." Its readings are mentioned above.

For the version of Trevisa,<sup>2</sup> which ends with an MSS. of  
account of the treaty of Bretigny in the year 1360, <sup>Trevisa</sup>  
two MSS. and Caxton's edition have been employed. <sup>used in this</sup>  
edition.

<sup>1</sup> Some points in the descriptions  
of these MSS. belonging to the  
University have been kindly  
brought to my notice by H. Brad-  
shaw, Esq., M.A., Fellow of King's  
College, who has the charge of them.

<sup>2</sup> The following account of Tre-  
visa, principally derived from  
Tanner's *Bibliotheca* and Dibdin's  
enlarged edition of Ames' *Typo-  
graphical Antiquities*, may not be  
unacceptable. John Trevisa was a

One of these MSS. is followed very closely, and adopted as the standard, and therefore designated in the notes simply as "MS." It is preserved in the

native of Cornwall, born 'at Caradok, according to Fuller, sometime in the 14th century, entered the university of Oxford first at Exeter College, then at Queen's College, of which he became fellow. He afterwards became vicar of the parish of Berkeley in Gloucestershire, and chaplain to Thomas, fourth Lord Berkeley of Berkeley, (who died in 1416, of whom we have a large account in Collins' *Peerage* by Brydges, vol. iii. p. 606,) and, in fine, canon of the Collegiate church of Westbury on Severn in Gloucestershire, or, according to Dugdale, *Baronage*, vol. ii. p. 360, of Westbury in Wiltshire. He seems to have resided principally in Gloucestershire (his notes on the *Polychronicon* having especial reference to that part of England), and to have occupied a great part of his time in translating various Latin works into his mother tongue. He had, however, also seen foreign countries, and mentions the hot baths of "Akon in Almayne and Egges in "Savoye," in which he also bathed, "and assayed them." (*Polychron.*, lib. 1, c. 47.) Being no friend to the monks, he finds great favour with Bale. He was living in 1398, when he concluded his translation of Bartholomæus' *De Proprietatibus Rerum*, and most probably as late as 1408, when the translation of Vegetius was concluded; for it would appear that Trevisa is author of that work. According to Tanner, he died in 1412. He is said to have been buried in the chancel of the church

at Berkeley. Some ancient pieces of almost obliterated writing, partly in Norman French, partly in Latin, remaining in the church at Berkeley in 1805, when Mr. Hughes, at Dibdin's request, examined them, are thought to be by Trevisa, or of Trevisa's day; but Mr. Hughes informed Dibdin that "not one certain vestige of him remains here, nor is even his grave in the church "known."

The following works by Trevisa are extant:—

*A Dialogue on Translation between a lord and a clerk* (i.e., his patron and himself). Printed by Caxton with the *Polychronicon*.

This dialogue is composed as an introduction to the *Polychronicon*, which is directly mentioned in the following words: "And so Ranulphus, monke of Chestre, wrote in "Latyn his bookes of Cronykes, "that descryueth the worlde aboute "in lengthe and in breede, and "maketh mencion and mynde of "doynge and dedes of meruaylles "and of wondres, and rekeneth the "yeres to his last dayes fro the first "makynge of heuen and of erthe; "and so therinne is grete and "noble information and loore to "hem that can therein rede and "vnderstande." (Sig. 1, 2, Caxton's edition.)

Also another *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which Trevisa translated from the Latin of William of Occam, which is published (in the original) by Goldastus, *Mon. S. Rom. Imp.*, vol. i. pp. 13-18, and

library of St. John's College, Cambridge, where it is marked H. 1.

This superb MS. is on vellum, and contains 280 leaves, one at each end being blank. (See facsimile.)

The first 18 leaves contain Occam's *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum* (occupying nearly nine pages), and

treats "De Potestate Ecclesiastica  
"et Sæculari."

Trevisa's translation of a sermon by Fitzralf, archbishop of Armagh, preached in 1357 at Oxford against the mendicant friars, is contained, together with the preceding, in both the MSS. of the *Polychronicon* used for this edition, and in a Harleian MS. (n. 1900).

The last-named MS. contains also his translation of a spurious production, *On the Beginning and End of the World*, ascribed to Methodius, from which Higden in this volume gives extracts. (See Harleian Catalogue.)

Trevisa's translation of Bartholomæus de Glanvilla *De Proprietatibus Rerum* was finished, as he tells us, in 1398. Wynkyn de Worde printed it (about 1494), and it was more than once reprinted in the following century. (See Tanner.)

His translation of the *Polychronicon* was concluded (as he tells us at the end) April 18, 1387, with a continuation by himself, and a dedication to Lord Berkeley (at whose request it was made), of which no more here.

In the Bodleian Library (Digby, 233) is a translation of Vegetius' *De Re Militari*, composed at Lord Berkeley's request, and finished in 1408. This is reasonably presumed to be executed by Trevisa, as wel

as a translation of Ægidius Romanus' *De Regimine Principum*, contained in the same volume.

Of his other translations, that of the Bible, said, by Caxton, Bale, and others, to have been made by Trevisa, and possibly still extant at Rome, is the most important on all accounts. It is not, however, certain, though at the same time by no means improbable, that Trevisa ever translated the Scriptures at all. (See Mr. Hughes' letter as above.) The remark of the lord to the clerk (Sig. 1, 3, b, Caxton): "Also thou wotest where the Apocalips is wryten in the walles and roof of a chappel both in Latyn and in Frensshe," has reference of course to the decorations of Berkeley church mentioned above, but it cannot safely be inferred that Trevisa was connected with them. They may have been earlier than his time.

Besides these works, his *Genealogy of David, King of Scotland*, is quoted from a MS. by Usher. (See Tanner.)

According to Bale, who has omitted some of these works of Trevisa, he also wrote or translated *Gesta Regis Arthuri, Britannie Descriptionem, Hibernie Descriptionem, De Memorabilibus Temporum, e alia plura fecit ac transtulit.*



*Sermo Domini Archiepiscopi Armachanani.* These works, done into English by Trevisa, (for which see the note,) are followed by a double index to the *Polychronicon*, one in Latin, one in English, without title, or colophon. They occupy 15 leaves. After this follows the *Polychronicon*, also without title or colophon. The name of Higden is not so much as mentioned in the MS. at all.<sup>1</sup> At the beginning is this note: "Ele-  
gantissimum hunc codicem manu scriptum bibliothecæ  
Collegii S. Johannis Evangelistæ donavit magister  
Baile de Newington, in agro Middlesexia, A.D.  
1674."

This was the only MS. used by Archdeacon Hardwick, (who, with great probability, supposes that it is the MS. formerly belonging to Mr. Forster, a member of St. John's, mentioned in the Harleian catalogue, n. 1900,) but it soon became evident that it was necessary to correct its errors and supply its defects by some better aid than Caxton's printed edition. The subsidiary MS. employed for that purpose, called *a.* in our notes, was formerly in Archbishop Tenison's library, and when that library was dispersed by public auction, in July 1861, it was purchased for the British Museum, where it is now marked as 24,194 of the Additional MSS.

It is on vellum, and now consists of 261 folio leaves, in double columns. An hiatus of eight leaves occurs between the 41st chapter of the third book and the beginning of the fifth chapter of the fourth book; and again, in the sixth book, the scribe appears to have jumped from part of the 14th chapter to part of the 26th. The volume is otherwise in the finest preservation, and contains many splendid illuminations.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Described in Cowie's *Catalogue* (u. s.), pp. 75, 76.

Sale Catalogue of Archbishop Tenison's MSS., lot 42, p. 11.

<sup>2</sup> See Sotheby and Wilkinson's

In the beginning is inserted this note, on a leaf of paper: "Archbishop Tenison's library, MS. No. 1. Higden's Polychronicon, translated by John de Trevisa, finished 1387. The arms upon the first page of this book are nearly obliterated, yet enough remains to show that they are those of Beauchamp and Warwick quarterly. The latter, being the arms sometimes fabulously ascribed to the famous Guy, earl of Warwick, appear to have been borne by the Beauchamps as feudal arms for the earldom. On the 33rd page the same arms occur separately, and in better preservation. This copy of Higden seems, therefore, to have been made, or at least illuminated, for one of the earls of Warwick of the family of Beauchamp." To this Sir F. Madden has added the following remark: "The earl of Warwick, for whom this MS. was executed, is Richard Beauchamp, who died in 1439, and who married Margaret,<sup>1</sup> sole daughter and heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley, for whom the translation was made by Trevisa. F. M." The MS. begins with the *Dialogus inter Militem et Clericum*, which is followed by the *Sermo Domini Episcopi Armacani* (both in English). To this succeeds the double *Tabula* of the *Polychronicon*, and after it the work itself; on the last leaf we have: "This translacioun is y-ended in a Thorsday, the eyztepe (sic) day of Aueryl, the zere of our Lord a powsand þre hondred foure score and seuene; þe tenþe zere of kyng Richard þe secunde after þe conquest of Engelonde; þe zere of my lordes age Sire Thomas lorde of Berkeley, þat made me make þis translacioun, fyue and þritty. Explicit."

The MS. in St. John's library concludes with the very same words, except that it reads "Thomas of Berkeley," and has *Deo Gratias* instead of *Explicit*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dugdale (*Baronage*, vol. i. p. 247) calls her Elizabeth, daughter and heir of Thomas, Lord Berkeley. See also p. 361.

<sup>2</sup> The Harleian MS. (1900) has xviiij. for *eyztepe*; and this is quite right. The Harleian Catalogue wrongly makes Tenison's MS. and

The name of a former owner occurs at the end of the tabula, "William Bradwell, A.D. 1610." We have also at the end of the volume, "Mr. John Knighton," "William Knighton," and on the last leaf, "Emanuel, anno Domini, 1570."

It will thus be seen that the contents of this MS. are precisely the same as in our standard MS. So very similar, indeed, are these two magnificent volumes to each other, that they appear at first sight to have been executed by the same scribe. I compared the two, however, in company with Mr. Bond, of the British Museum, and he pointed out differences in the form of the *s* and the *r* in the two MSS., which convinced us both that they are not by the same hand. Both, however, are certainly of the same period, namely, about the reign of Henry IV. Tenison's MS. was composed during the life of the first wife of the earl of Warwick, for whom it was made. He was contracted to her in marriage in 1393, and she died in 1422.<sup>1</sup> It appears, therefore, that both these MSS. are only a few years later than the date of Trevisa's translation (1387). To Mr. Bond's very practised eye the Tenison MS. appears slightly the older of the two.

the St. John's MS. read *eyghtenthe*; there is no *n* in either of them.

<sup>1</sup> Having in vain endeavoured to ascertain these dates from books, I consulted my learned friend, Mr. C. H. Cooper, who apprised me of the existence of a MS. *Life of the Berkeleys*, by Smyth, in the possession of the Earl Fitzhardinge. By his Lordship's kindness, and that of Mr. J. H. Cooke, who searched the volume, I am enabled to give the following information. "I am directed," says he, "by Lord Fitzhardinge to reply to your note to him asking some information from Smyth's Berkeley MSS., which are in my custody here. Smyth

"does not give the date of the marriage of Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of Thomas, Lord Berkeley (fourth of that name); but he states that the contract for the marriage (with Richard Beauchamp) was entered into in September, 17 Rich<sup>d</sup>. II., and the marriage, it is therein stated, was intended to be solemnized 'as soon as conveniently may be,' and that the bride was then under the age of 'seven yeares.' Smyth states that her death took place 28th December, 1st Hen. VI., and that she was buried at the monastery of Kingswood."

The orthography is substantially the same in both the MSS., the same word being written in several different ways in both. In some few cases, more especially where the *z* occurs, the variations in the spelling are recorded. The *z* and *z* are expressed in both MSS. by the same character; and unfortunately the *c* and *t* also, so that it is sometimes uncertain which letter is intended in such words as *nacioun*, *correccioun*, &c. The same clerical errors likewise frequently occur in both MSS., and can sometimes be corrected by the aid of Caxton, who certainly did not use either of them as his standard.<sup>1</sup>

As respects the text of Trevisa's translation, he followed the larger form of the chronicle, represented by A., B., E. The long passage about the diameter of the earth (p. 44), which occurs in E. only, is translated by Trevisa, but does not occur in the Harleian version, printed in this edition. The section relating to Brabant (p. 288) occurs in A. only of our MSS., but is translated in both the versions. It is clear that neither translation was made precisely from the text of any MS. used for this edition; there is, however, little or nothing in either of them which is not to be found in one of the three Latin MSS. above mentioned.

With regard to the merits of Trevisa's translation, Literary estimate of Trevisa's version. the following judgment is delivered by Mr. Hardy in the general introduction to Petrie's *Monumenta Histórica Britannica*. "This translation by Trevisa " is generally strict and literal, but sometimes confused " from a misapprehension of the author's meaning. " Occasionally short notices [to which Trevisa's name " is prefixed] are inserted by way of explanation. . . . " On the whole, Trevisa appears to have been shrewd " and well-informed " (p. 4). Trevisa appears to have

---

<sup>1</sup> A specimen of the orthography | ton's printed text, may be seen in  
of Tenison's MS., and also of Cax- | the Appendix.

been puzzled with the Latinity of Higden, which is, however, in general extremely good for the period, as appears by the following words which in his above-named *Dialogue* he puts into the mouth of his patron. "Though I can speke, rede, and vnderstande Latyn, "ther is moche Latyn in these bookes of Cronykes "that I can not vnderstonde nether thou, without "studyeng, auisement, and lokyng of other bookes." It must be owned that Trevisa has occasionally fallen into the most ludicrous errors, which a very little "avisement" might have avoided. Thus Higden writes: "Terra frugifera maxime tritici, unde et eam veteres "Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt;" which Trevisa renders thus: "Mesia is a prise lond of wine and of "whete, perfore *the olde cereris* cleped hit a berne" (p. 173). Again, Higden has in his text: "Justinianus "postmodum litteris et bellis egregius addidit tertiam "ecclesiam in honorem Divinæ Sophiæ, id est, Domini "Christi, quem 'hagiam sophiam' vocavit." The passage is thus misdone into English by our clerk: "Ius- "tinianus þe emperour bulde afterward the þridde "chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure "Lord Crist, *that Agia clepeþ Divina Sophia*, in "Englisshe þe Wisdom of God" (p. 181). Again, what reasonable excuse can we make for a man who can render "Consuluit Cecrops Apollinem Delphicum" thus, "Cecrops axede counsaile of *Appolyn* Delphicus?" (p. 193). The reader who is inclined to be malicious may find gratification in comparing the obscure Latin verses quoted by Higden with Trevisa's rendering of them (p. 237). It ought, however, to be borne in mind that the age of Trevisa was not an age of learning or of criticism; the errors which would be disgraceful in our time are in some degree venial in the fourteenth century.<sup>1</sup> Still it is impossible not to perceive that

---

<sup>1</sup> Trevisa seems to have suspected | accurate. In his *Dialogue*, the clerk  
that his translation was not always | says: "Yf a translacion were made



Higden's scholarship is very far superior to that of his translator. As one of the earliest specimens of English prose (A.D. 1387), containing many rare words and curious expressions, the version of Trevisa will be gladly welcomed by philologists, who will not be over severe upon his errors. All remarks on his language and idioms must be reserved for the glossary at the end of the work.

The edition of Caxton, which Archdeacon Hardwick had begun to collate for this edition, must now briefly be noticed. Besides Trevisa's translation, he gives, as has been already said, the Dialogue of the lord and the clerk, occupying four pages and a half, and also "The Epystle of Sir Iohan Treuisa, chapelayn vnto Lord Thomas of Barkley, vpon the translacion of Polycronycon into our Englysshe tongue," occupying about one page.<sup>1</sup> Caxton's own *Prohemye* occupies nearly

Caxton's  
edition of  
Trevisa.

"that myght be amended in ony  
"poynt, somme men it wold blame;"  
to which the lord replies: "Yf men  
"blame that is not worthy to be  
"blamed, thenne they ben to blame.  
"Clerkes knowe wel ynowgh that  
"no synfull man doth so well that  
"it (he?) ne myght doo better, ne  
"make so good a translacion that  
"he (it?) ne myght be better."  
(Sig. 1. 3, b.) This is quite true,  
yet all errors are not equally excusable.

<sup>1</sup> The following portions may interest the reader: "Welthe and worship  
"ship to my worthy and worshipful  
"lord sir Thomas, lord of Barkley,  
"I, Iohan Treuisa, youre preest and  
"bedeman, obedyent and buxom to  
"werke your wille, holde in herte,  
"thenke in thought, and meen in  
"mynde youre nedefful menyng  
"and speche that ye spak and sayde  
"that ye wold have Englysshe

"translacion of Ranulphus of Ches-  
"tres bookes of Cronykes; therfor  
"I wole fonde to take that traauyll  
"and make Englysshe translacion  
"of the same bookes as God  
"graunteth me grace. . . . In  
"somme place I shall sette word  
"for worde, and actyf for actyf,  
"and passyf for passyf arowe right  
"as it stonde withoute chaung-  
"yng of the ordre of wordes; but  
"in somme place I must chaunge  
"the ordre of wordes, and sette  
"actyf for passyf and ayenward;  
"and in somme place I muste sette  
"a reson for a worde, and telle  
"what it meneth; but for al such  
"chaungyng the menyng shal  
"stande and not be chaunged. But  
"somme words and names of coun-  
"treies, of londes, of cytees, of  
"waters, of ryuers, of montaynes  
"and hilles, of persons, and of  
"places muste be sette and stonde

four pages, the early part of which consists of a commendation of the study of history, after which he goes on to say that he "has delyvered to write "twoo bookes notable," viz., the Golden Legend and the Polycronycon, in which are comprised, *inter alia*, "the historial actes and wonderful dedes, syth the "fyrst makynge of heuen and erth vnto the begynnynge "of the regne of kyng Edward the fourth and vnto "the yere of our Lord MCCCCLX., as by the ayde of "Almyghty God shal folwe al a longe after the com- "posynge and gaderynge of dan Ranulph, monke of "Chestre, fyrste auctour of this book, and afterward "englisshed by one Trevisa, vycarye of Barkley, (which "atte request of one Sir Thomas Lord Barkley translated this sayd book, the byble, and Bartylmew de "proprietatibus rerum out of Latyn into Englyssh,) "and now at this tyme simply empyrnted and sette "in forme by me William Caxton *and a lytel embelysshed fro tholde makynge*, and also haue added "suche storyes as I coude fynde fro thende that "the said Ranulph fynysshed his book, which was "the yere of our Lord MCCCCLVIJ., vnto the yere of the "same MCCCCLX., whiche ben an honderd and thre yere. "... And where the sayd auctor hath alle his werke "in seuen bookes, I haue sette that whiche I haue "added to after a parte, and haue marked it the laste "booke."<sup>1</sup> Caxton elsewhere informs us more par-

"for hem self in her owne kynde, "as Asia, Europa, Affryca, and "Syrya; Mount Athlas, Syna and "Oreb, Marach, Iordan, and Arnon, "Bethleem, Nazareth, Iherusalem, "and Damascus; Hanybal, Rasyne, "Assuerus and Cyrus, and many "suche wordes and names. Yf ony "man make of these bookes of "Cronykes a better Englyssh translation and moore prouffitable,

"God do hym mede." (Sig. 1, 4. Caxton, who has taken his usual liberties with the orthography.)

<sup>1</sup> Caxton (fol. 389 b.) falsely makes Trevisa's translation end in 1357. "This translation is ended "on a Thursdaye, the eyghtenthe "daye of Apryll, the yere of our "Lord a thousand thre hundred "and lvij., the xxxj. yere of kyng "Edward the thyrd after the con-

ticularly what these little embellishments were: "I, William Caxton, a symple person, haue endeuyred me to wryte fyrst ouer all the sayd book of proloconycon (sic), *and somewhat haue chaunged the rude and old Englyssh, that is to wete certayn wordes which in these days,*" (i.e., in 1482), "*be neither vsyd ne vnderstanden,* and furthermore haue put it in empyrnte to thende that it maye be had and the maters therin comprised to be knowen."<sup>1</sup>

Nothing need be said here about Caxton's continuation of Higden, but a few words may be necessary about his manipulation of Trevisa. Not only are certain words replaced by others, but the whole orthography is changed, so that the English is no longer the language of the 14th, but of the 15th century. In particular the *ȝ* has vanished altogether; so also has the *p* in almost every instance; but this last is of less moment, as the MSS. of Trevisa are very inconstant in the use of the letter. A minute collation of Caxton's text, therefore, with that of the MSS. used for the present edition is well-nigh impossible; it must be sufficient to note in general those readings in which there is a difference of words, and not merely of forms and inflections. The reader is requested to observe in this place, that there are certain words in Trevisa which Caxton *in general* (but not uniformly) replaces by others, as will appear from the following

---

"quest of Englonde, the yere of my lordes age, Sir Thomas Lord of Berkley, that made me make this translacion fyue and thyrtty." The true date is 1387, and Caxton's error has been corrected in the Harleian MSS. Catalogue (n. 1900), and in the general introduction to the Monumenta Historica Britannica,

p. 4. The last date mentioned in Trevisa's text is 1357; hence, perhaps, Caxton's mistake; but the chronicle is continued to the year 1360.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. 390 a., where he again mentions Trevisa by name, but gives no information which has not been already set down.

able of variations in words and expressions taken from our first volume.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Trevisa's word or expression.	Carton's substituted word or expression.
clepeþ—i-cleped	- callith, p. 7 ; called, p. 31 (a frequent substitution, but see p. 111).
hiȝteres - - -	- embelysshers, <i>id.</i>
schulleþ fonge—feng -	- shall resseyue, <i>id.</i> (frequent) ; resseyued, p. 163.
vnwralle - - -	- vnwynde, p. 9.
wonder (adjective) -	- wonderful, <i>id.</i>
trauaille - - -	- laboure, p. 11.
ich - - -	- I, <i>id.</i> See <i>Addenda</i> .
lose - - -	- leese or gleyne, <i>id.</i>
eche - - -	- encrece, p. 15.
for me schulde hem knowe	- by cause men, &c., <i>id.</i> (frequent.)
lore - - -	- doctryne, p. 27 (frequent).
i-cleped - - -	- named, p. 31 (frequent, see p. 107).
woneþ - - -	- dwelle, p. 45 (frequent).
deleþ - - -	- departe, <i>id.</i> (frequent).
atweyne - - -	- a sounder, p. 49 (frequent).
pere - - -	- lyke, p. 49.
mulleþ - - -	- melte, p. 63.
to menyngre - - -	- to say, p. 69 (frequent) ; or, as moche to saye as, p. 103.
efte - - -	- after, p. 71 ; also, agayn, p. 173.
byname - - -	- teke away, p. 73.
welkeþ - - -	- fade, p. 77.
firen (adj.) - - -	- brennyng, <i>id.</i>
al arewe - - -	- al along, p. 79.
eneleþ nouȝt - - -	- wexe not seke, p. 81.
horeþ - - -	- wexe hore, <i>id.</i>
eyren - - -	- egges, <i>id.</i>
buxom - - -	- obedient, p. 87.
i-cast - - -	- disposed, <i>id.</i>
rese - - -	- fyghte, p. 91.
rather - - -	- to fore, p. 93 (frequent).
hatte—hiȝt - - -	- is named, p. 99 ; was named, p. 115. See p. 131.
defoule - - -	- fylthe, p. 109.
as me troweþ - - -	- as men suppose, p. 111.
steihe - - -	- ascended, p. 113.
wilneþ - - -	- wylleth, p. 119.
ouer (his lotte) -	- aboue, p. 125.
heleful - - -	- helthful, p. 127 ; holsom, p. 305.
teeldis - - -	- tents, <i>id.</i>
lesue, lese - - -	- pasture, p. 131.

It has not been deemed necessary to warn the reader every time that the more common changes

<i>Trevisa's word or expression.</i>	<i>Caxton's substituted word or expression.</i>
to scheden and to falleb	- departe and befallē, p. 133.
aȝe - - -	- agayn, <i>id.</i> (frequent).
meres - - -	- dyches, p. 137.
kynde - - -	- nature and kynde, <i>id.</i> See p. 359.
toke hem to rede -	- concluded, p. 139.
schenful - - -	- shameful, p. 141.
rediloker - - -	- redylyer, p. 145.
happed - - -	- happened, p. 151.
schrewednesse -	- ylle disposicioun, p. 153.
grisbaytynge -	- gruntynge, p. 159.
fette (to hem) -	- toke (with hem), p. 173.
auntrede - - -	- adventured, p. 177.
wem - - -	- hurtynge or wemme, p. 185.
nostrilles - - -	- nose thirles, <i>id.</i>
adraynt - - -	- drowned, p. 195.
ospringe - - -	- offsprynge, p. 203.
were twynnes -	- were born at one burthou, p. 211.
i-hiȝt - - -	- besette, p. 217.
(be bridde) deel -	- part, <i>id.</i>
chene - - -	- space, p. 223; also clyfte or hoole, p. 233.
corn hepe - - -	- corn hupple, p. 225.
ȝede - - -	- went, p. 227.
mynde - - -	- remembraunce, p. 233.
ȝetynge - - -	- milting, p. 235.
(sixty) wynter -	- yere, p. 247.
chast (verb) - -	- chastyse, p. 249.
fey - - -	- feyth, p. 251.
for to pey amende -	- vnto the tyme, &c., p. 253.
skymours - - -	- scommers or theuys, p. 261.
outakyn tyn - -	- reserued (i.e. <i>except</i> ) tin, p. 261. See p. 337.
mynystre - - -	- monasterye, <i>id.</i>
to wyfe - - -	- to marie, p. 263.
worschippe - -	- worship and reuerence, p. 265.
wood wroth - -	- sore wroth, p. 275.
a payed - - -	- paid and content, p. 283.
is swiȝe good -	- is right good, p. 293. See p. 343.
keste - - -	- purposed, p. 297.
copy and plente -	- plente, p. 301.
at be best - - -	- wel in the best wyse, p. 317.
sprankeleȝ - - -	- sperclyth, p. 319.
(as it is declared) wiȝynne	- after, <i>id.</i>
outlawed - - -	- exyled, p. 319.



have been made; but the words in the notes "*and so frequently*," "*and so elsewhere*," will sufficiently apprise him of the fact. Conversely it has been sometimes thought worth while to add that Caxton has in certain places, contrary to his more general usage, retained some of these words in particular passages of his text.

But besides these noteworthy changes by Caxton, there are likewise many others where a clause or even the greater part of a sentence has been re-cast more in accordance, it must be presumed, with the phraseology of his own day. In the more remarkable instances Caxton's text is given in the notes,<sup>1</sup> in others it has been considered enough to say "*slightly varied*

---

*Trevisa's word or expression.*      *Caxton's substituted word or expression.*

(men) myslyleued	-	-	oute of byleue, p. 323.
nesche	-	-	soft, p. 333.
vseþ	-	-	driuen, p. 339.
lederes	-	-	capitayns, p. 345. See p. 349.
nolles	-	-	hedes, p. 355.
awrekeþ	-	-	auenge, p. 357.
chepinge	-	-	markettis, p. 359.
wilewys	-	-	withges, p. 365.
i-heled	-	-	couered, p. 367.
piȝt	-	-	pight and stycked, p. 369.
wende	-	-	goo, p. 373.
i-loke	-	-	shette, p. 377.
biddeþ meny bedes	-	-	sayen many prayers, <i>id.</i>
battes	-	-	stanes, p. 381.
heste	-	-	comaundement, p. 383.
behote	-	-	promise, p. 391.
he and al his meyny	-	-	he and his men, p. 393.
gree	-	-	degree, p. 409.
splekked	-	-	spercked, p. 429.

These are by no means the only substitutions made by Caxton, but they comprise the principal ones, so far as this volume is concerned, and they will be quite sufficient to apprise the reader of the general cha-

racter of his embellishments. The subject will be more minutely handled in the Glossary.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 91, 141, 177, 179, 303, 305, 311, 313 (especially), 315, 333, 335, 369, 393 (especially).

*in Cc.*"<sup>1</sup> Without wishing to say anything in derogation of the great patriarch of English typographers, I am compelled to observe that his edition is not of much critical value,<sup>2</sup> and I could now almost wish that it had not been employed at all in this edition, but that another good MS. had been used in its place.<sup>3</sup> However, when the two MSS. differ, and when Caxton agrees with one of them, his authority is frequently sufficient to determine the true reading; and there is also some considerable interest in perceiving what words and phrases were falling into desuetude in Caxton's time, even though some of them be used by the poets, by Spenser in particular, in times much posterior to Caxton.

The Harleian MS., n. 2261, which contains the more recent English translation, now for the first time printed in this edition, is a moderate-sized quarto, on paper, and containing 449 leaves, having lost at the commencement two or three leaves, viz., that part of the tabula which contained the letter A. Each page contains from 30 to 40 lines, neatly written in a hand of the 15th century. The capital letters and headings of chapters and sections are rubricated, and various

The Harleian translation.

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 261, 313, 331, 333, 335, 349, 355, 359, 361, 363, 369, 371, 373, 375, 379, 381, 387, 391.

<sup>2</sup> Caxton, it has been very justly observed, "exercised the part of editor of his various publications, by no means after the fashion of Madden and Forshall. Lollard works were not patronized by the Royal Caxton press; or the Wycliffe Bible, the greatest authority for the history of old English, would have represented, as it came from his hands, the spelling and even the grammar of the reigns of Edward IV. and Henry VII. *He cared nothing*

*for philology; his books were printed for the sake of their matter, and he was not willing to allow the interest of the subject to suffer from the presence of instances of obsolete spelling, though he is strangely inconsistent in his orthography.*"—*Christian Remembrancer* (vol. 48, p. 220). These words suggest a true notion of his treatment of Higden.

<sup>3</sup> Such, for example, as that at Glasgow, which Mr. Hardwick has called in his MS. memoranda "the finest in existence." The Harleian MS. (n. 1900), and another in the Bodleian, are also very fine.

ornamentations occur at the ends of books, &c. A few remarks are added in later hands. The chronicle ends, fol. 445, with an account of the spoliation of the shrine of Hayles, and of St. Edward at Westminster. This appears to have taken place in the same year as the death of Edmund Langley, duke of York, and the expedition of Henry IV. to Wales, and the battle with the Scotch (A.D. 1401), which are mentioned just before.

The last words of the chronicle are: "And soone  
" after the shryne of Seynte Edward at Westmonastery  
" was spoylede of grete rychesse and iewells, and  
" specially of oon table of golde."

After this follows, in the same hand, some verses on the kings of England since the conquest, Henry VI. being the last named. It is evident, from the following lines, that they were composed in his reign.

In speaking of Henry VI., he says :

"The sixte Henry, brouz̃te furthe in alle vertu,  
"By iuste titulle borne to enheritaunce,  
"Afore provided by Criste Jhu,  
"To were ij. crownes, of Ynglonde and of Fraunce,  
"To whom God hathe z̃iffe souereigne sufficiaunce,  
"With vertuous life and chose hym to his knyȝhte,  
"Longe to reioyce and reigne here in his ryȝhte.  
"Amen."

After mentioning the exactions of Pope Benedict and the Statute of Provisions (1342), "that noo man  
" scholde brynge suche prouisions in to his realme fro  
" the pope in peyne of prisonment and of hongynge," the translator adds, "The cōpilator of this booke wrote  
" vn to this tyme" (fol. 389. b).

From this point the Harleian additions are much fuller than those of Trevisa, which occupy only two pages and a half, whereas those in the Harleian MS. go on to the time of Henry IV., filling 55 leaves (fol. 390-445).

The name of "Jacobus Ravenscroft" occurs on fol. 1.

Of the author of this translation I know nothing, and therefore will say little. It would appear that he executed his translation some time in the reign of Henry VI., between 1432 and 1450, and therefore some years before Edward IV. was raised to the throne.<sup>1</sup>

In this MS., as well as in both the MSS. of Trevisa, the *z* and *z* are expressed by the same character. The *p* also occurs, but less frequently. (See facsimile.)

This translator, like Trevisa, follows the longer form of the chronicle; numerous omissions, however, occur, and for some of these we need, I believe, seek no more profound explanation than this, that when he could not construe a sentence he passed on to the next. Thus he has wholly omitted to translate the verses quoted at p. 236, which occur in every MS. collated for this edition; and it must be owned that the temptation so to act was in this case not easy to overcome. The translation itself is often bombastic, and can hardly represent the spoken English of any period, being, in fact, frequently unintelligible to persons unacquainted with Latin. It seems scarcely necessary to dwell upon it at greater length.<sup>2</sup>

After the death of my lamented friend, Archdeacon Hardwick, the task of editing the *Polychronicon* was committed to me by the Master of the Rolls in terms very kindly expressed, and his MS. notes were placed in my hands by our common friend, the Rev. F. Procter, M.A., who did all in his power to facilitate my operations. The Rev. G. E. Corrie, D.D., Master of Jesus College, Cambridge, also liberally allowed me to keep a copy of

Archdeacon Hardwick's labours on Higden.

<sup>1</sup> Henry VI. was crowned in Nov. 1431 at Notre Dame; and by 1450 his power in France was completely broken.

<sup>2</sup> As only one MS. of this translation seems to be known, I have

been unable to correct its readings, except occasionally by conjecture. But I suspect it to be corrupt in many other places, where I have neither guessed nor said anything.

Macray's *British Historians*, full of MS. notes by the Archdeacon. He had proceeded but a little way, as far as p. 39, with the text and versions; and as the sheets were not struck off, I made such corrections and additions as seemed desirable, and must consequently be held responsible for any errors which may be discovered. It must be borne in mind that I have taken in two MSS. in addition to those which he used; viz. E. for the Latin text, and  $\alpha$ . for Trevisa. All the MSS. which he, after an inspection of a great number, selected, have been used for the present edition.<sup>1</sup>

It now remains that I should express my thanks to the Senate of the University of Cambridge for permitting me to take out of the University Library MSS. A. and E.; to the Master and Fellows of Caius College, Cambridge, for granting me the like privilege with respect to their MS. B.; to the President and Fellows of Magdalen College, Oxford, for allowing me to take out their MS. C., and to retain it for a long time till the collation was completed; to the

---

<sup>1</sup> A word or two may here be said in explanation of the mode of editing. In the Latin text the orthography has been freely corrected in accordance with common use, and false spellings are but occasionally recorded. In the English, except in the case of proper names, I have been very unwilling to change the text or orthography from conjecture; wherever letters or words are in brackets the reader will at once be apprised they do not occur in the standard MS., but are usually added from  $\alpha$ . or Cx., or both. The proper names in the versions have given me much trouble and perplexity. Whenever the word has been changed into an English dress, as Alisaundre, the MS. reading has of course always

been retained, and when it is in a manner naturalized, like Africa and Babiloun, it has been half reluctantly allowed to stand; in the case however of a Latin word merely barbarised, the MS. reading has been changed into the classical form, except that diphthongs are excluded, which I could wish were banished from the language altogether. Thus, in the English, I write (following the MSS.) "Cesar, Phenicia," &c. both of which are sanctioned by the authorized version of the Bible. Still in many cases it was difficult to judge what course was best to be followed, and the reader is informed in the notes what the MSS. read in all cases where it seemed necessary to mention their orthography.



Master and Fellows of St. John's College, Cambridge, for allowing me to retain in long continued possession their MS. D., as well as the standard MS. of Trevisa, and their fine copy of Caxton's edition; also to the Rev. J. B. Lightfoot, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity, and Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, for allowing me free access to MS. G.; and, in fine, to the Right Hon. S. H. Walpole, M.P., for calling my attention to the valuable Winchester MS. (W.); and to the Rev. G. Moberly, D.D., Head Master of Winchester College, for politely collating, at my request, certain portions of that MS.

Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the alleviation of my labours by S. A. Moore, Esq., of the Public Record Office, by whom the collation of MSS. B. and C. for the latter part of this volume, and for the remainder of the work, has been made, and who, in conjunction with T. Duffus Hardy, Esq., has much assisted me in various other ways. To E. A. Bond, Esq., of the British Museum, I am also under obligations for the ready aid of his great paleographical knowledge. In conclusion, I must beg the indulgence of the reader, who may detect errors and oversights which are in some degree unavoidable in the execution of a difficult and laborious undertaking.

St. John's College, Cambridge,  
October 21, 1864.



## SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

---

### BOOK THE FIRST.

#### *The Map of the World.*

##### CAP. I.

##### *The Prologue.*

Praise of the writers of history. Letters alone keep alive the memory of great actions in past times, and sustain laws and arts in our own. Emperors, philosophers, and apostles would be almost unknown but for written monuments. Of all kinds of writing, history is the noblest, and brings the most honour to its professors. Accordingly the author proposes to hand down the praises of his native land to posterity in a treatise culled from the labours of various historians. His friends urge him to enlarge his work into a general history of the world in regular chronological order. He distrusts his own powers and attainments. However, he will endeavour to be a gleaner after the reapers, through following them at a humble distance. Readers who may not have access to large libraries may at least be instructed by this compendium. Equal certainty in all its parts cannot be looked for in a history. At the same time all wonderful accounts are not to be discarded as incredible. Consequently the author cannot guarantee the accuracy of every statement, but only faithfully reports what he finds in his authorities. At the same time he makes their labours his own, by expressing their meaning in his own words. Their names precede the sentences which are derived from them; when the compiler himself speaks, he prefixes his own name. - - pp. 2-20.

##### CAP. II.

##### *The names of the authors alleged in this book.*

Catalogue of the writers and their works. - - pp. 20-26.

## CAP. III.

*The division of the work into seven books.*

The title *Polychronicon* indicates its character. Its sevenfold division follows the example of the work of Creation. The first book contains a map of the world, being a description of its principal divisions and countries, ending with Britain. The second book contains a brief summary of universal history from the Creation of man, till the destruction of the Jewish temple. The third book continues the history from the return from Babylon to the advent of Christ. The fourth book goes on to the arrival of the Saxons in England. The fifth thenceforward to the invasion of the Danes. The sixth thenceforward to the Norman conquest. The seventh proceeds from the conquest till the author's own time in the reign of Edward the Third. - - - pp. 26-28.

## CAP. IV.

*Preliminary observations useful to readers of the present work.*

On the descriptions of places, of which more hereafter; also on the states of the world; on the distinctions of dispensations; on the successions of empires; on the forms of religions; on the courses of ages; and on the qualities of actions; and on the various modes of computations of years. Modes of computing years among the Hebrews, Greeks, Romans, and Christians. The chronological systems of Dionysius Exiguus, and Marianus Scotus. Errors of Dionysius. The method of noting dates adopted in the present work. - - - pp. 30-40.

## CAP. V.

*On the dimensions of the world.*

The survey and description of the world undertaken by command of Julius Cæsar. The length and breadth of the habitable world. The diameter of the earth; distance of hell from the earth's surface. - - - pp. 40-46.

## CAP. VI.

*On the divisions of the Earth.*

Boundaries of Europe, Asia, and Africa. - - - pp. 46-48.

## CAP. VII.

*Description of the parts of the Earth.*

Population, temperature, and extent of Europe, Asia, and Africa. Some geographers reckon only Europe and Asia as the divisions of the world, counting Africa as a part of Europe. - - - - - pp. 48-52.

## CAP. VIII.

*The Mediterranean Sea.*

Description of the limits and extent of this sea; names of its bays, straits, and other parts. On the Euxine, Propontis, and Hellespont. - - - - - pp. 52-58.

## CAP. IX.

*The Ocean.*

The ocean encompasses the earth like a circle. The tides most felt near the shores. The probable causes of this. The three great bays of the ocean are the Mediterranean, the Caspian, and the Red Sea. The red dye of that sea derived from the shore. The Caspian gates; legendary stories about them. On whirlpools in the Mediterranean and in the Atlantic. pp. 58-64.

## CAP. X.

*The provinces of the Earth, and first of Paradise.*

Three points to be considered concerning Paradise; its existence, situation, and character. The four rivers of Paradise. Paradise is not, as some suppose, a region elevated above the surface of the globe. Astronomical considerations disprove this. Paradise is with probability placed in the extreme bounds of the east, and considered to be a large tract of country, not less than India and Egypt. Its name signifies a garden of delights; there beauty and loveliness, salubrity and security are perpetual. The waters of Noah's flood did not reach it. A fiery wall and cherubim above it guard Paradise against the approach of men and evil angels. - - - - - pp. 66-78.



## CAP. XI.

*Asia and its provinces.*

Asia, whence so called. India; its natural productions, climate, tribes. Habits of the people; institutions of caste. Monstrous and strange kinds of men: Pigmies, gymnosophists, cynocephali, &c. Trees of the sun and moon; they forbid Alexander to enter Babylon. - - pp. 78-84.

## CAP. XII.

*Parthia.*

Extent of Parthia. Signification of *Parthi*. The Parthians originally exiles from Scythia. Their history obscure till the Macedonian period. Manners of the Parthians. Dynasty of the Arsacidæ. The Parthian mode of warfare. pp. 84-90.

## CAP. XIII.

*Assyria and the adjacent regions.*

Etymology of Assyria, Media, and Persia. Their boundaries. Babylonia. Description of Babylon. Chaldea. Description of the Tower of Babel. Arabia, its boundaries and natural productions. Description of Mount Sinai. Mount Libanus described; its natural productions. Syria, its etymology and boundaries; notice of Damascus. - - pp. 92-102.

## CAP. XIV.

*The region of Judea.*

Judea, whence so called. Different significations of the word. Its extent; its length and breadth; its boundaries. Natural productions of Judea. Jerusalem, anciently called Salem. Also called by Solomon Jerosolima, and by poets Solyma. Afterwards called *Ælia* by Hadrian. St. Jerome thinks however, that Salem is Scythopolis or Bethshan. Situation of Jerusalem. Has no fountains. Mount Sion. Church of the Holy Sepulchre. The miracle of the Holy Fire. Ornamentation and fortification of the city by Solomon. The Mount of Olives. The brook Cedron. Gethsemane. Mount Calvary. The Dead Sea; its qualities. Pentapolis. Apples of Sodom. - - - - pp. 102-118.

## CAP. XV.

*The region of Canaan.*

Canaan, whence so called. Palestine, its limits. Idumea, its limits; the fountain Jobyn. Samaria formerly included in Palestine. It lies between Judea and Galilee; signification of *Samaritæ*, i.e., *keepers*. Sichem, now Neapolis. Historical notices of the city. Galilee lies between Judea and Palestine. Upper and Lower Galilee. Lake of Galilee. Ptolemais or Acre. Cedar, its position: seat of the Ishmaelites. Otherwise known as Hagarens or Saracens. Their habits. Phenicia; its boundaries. Phenicians the inventors of letters. - - - - - pp. 120-128.

## CAP. XVI.

*Egypt.*

Egypt, whence so called; its limits; its natural productions. The Nile. Cause of its overflowing. Various opinions on this subject. - - - - - pp. 130-134

## CAP. XVII.

*Scythia and the adjacent regions.*

Scythia partly in Europe, partly in Asia; its boundaries. Habits of the Scythians. They conquer Egypt, Persia, and the army of Alexander. They found the empires of Parthia and Bactria, and their women that of the Amazons. Their three conquests of Asia. The servile insurrection, and its suppression. Boundaries of Bactria. Description of Mount Caucasus. Boundaries of Hyrcania; its inhabitants and productions. Boundaries of Hiberia and Albania. The men and dogs of Albania. Boundaries of Gothia. Character of the inhabitants; their descendants in Europe, Asia, and Africa. Origin of the Armenians. Boundaries and extent of Armenia. Mount Ararat. - - - - - pp. 134-146.

## CAP. XVIII.

*Cappadocia and Asia Minor.*

Limits of Cappadocia. Definition of Asia Minor. The provinces of Bithynia, Galatia, Phrygia Minor or Dardania,

Lydia, Pamphylia or Isauria, Cilicia, including Lycia or Lycaonia. Amazonia partly in Europe, partly in Asia. Habits and government of the Amazons. Queen Thalestris and her correspondence with Alexander. - - pp. 146-154.

## CAP. XIX.

*Africa and its inhabitants.*

Etymology and definition of Africa. Its provinces enumerated. Ethiopia described; character and habits of its monstrous inhabitants; the Garamantes, Troglodytæ, &c.; the animals of Ethiopia; its fountains. Limits and etymology of Libya. Boundaries of the Tripolitana. Gætulia. - - pp. 154-162.

## CAP. XX.

*The same, continued.*

Boundaries of Numidia. History of the foundation of Carthage. Chronological difficulties about Virgil's account of Eneas and Dido. Dimensions of Carthage. Etymology of Mauretania. Its two divisions, Cæsariensis and Tingitana. Description of Mount Atlas. - - - pp. 162-168.

## CAP. XXI.

*Europe and its provinces.*

Europe, whence named. Its boundaries. The river Tanais. Boundaries of the lower Scythia. Short notices of Alania, Mœsia, Sclavia, and Pannonia. - - - pp. 168-174.

## CAP. XXII.

*Greece and its provinces.*

The ancient and modern names of the inhabitants of Greece. Degeneracy of the later Greeks. Enumeration of the provinces of Greece. Description of Thrace or Epirus, and of its metropolis, Constantinople. The churches erected by Constantine and Justinian. Reliques of the Saints preserved there. Notice of the Lacedemonians or Spartans; they found Tarentum. Boundaries of Macedonia. Description of Mount Olympus and Mount Athos. Boundaries of Dalmatia. De-

scription of Achaia, with notices of Corinth. Description of Arcadia, and notices of its products. Thessaly; its inhabitants and natural curiosities. The Lapithæ and Centaurs explained. Mount Parnassus. Tempe. Deucalion's flood. Helladia, whence so called. Comprises Attica, Bœotia, and Peloponnesus. Cecrops founded Acte, afterwards called Athens. Contest of Minerva and Neptune. Notice of the Hellespont. Early civilization of Athens. Notices of her kings. Etymology of Bœotia; its natural curiosities. Notice of Thebes. - - - - - pp. 174-196.

## CAP. XXIII.

*Italy and its provinces.*

Italy, anciently called Magna Græcia, Hesperia, Saturnia, and Ausonia. Why afterwards called Italy. Its boundaries; its rivers and natural curiosities. Enumeration of its provinces. Notice of Apulia, and its metropolis, Brundisium. Notices of Campania Major and Minor. Capua, Neapolis, and Virgil's baths. Ancient inhabitants of Italy before the Lombards enumerated. Origin and progress of the Lombards.  
pp. 198-206.

## CAP. XXIV.

*The city of Rome.*

Modern writers on Rome. Legendary accounts of the building of various parts of the city by Noah, Janus, Saturn, Italus, Hercules, and Evander. Romulus confined them all within the walls of one city. Date of his foundation. Enumeration of the city gates; circumference of the walls. The palaces of Rome. The central palace; the palace of peace, built by Romulus; the palace of Diocletian; the palace of sixty emperors. The Pantheon; the arch of Augustus; the arch of Scipio; the holovitreum destroyed by St. Sebastian. The temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. Origin of the word *flamen*. The magical wonders of the House of Gold. The statue of Bellerophon suspended in mid air. Notices of theatres, aqueducts, and baths. The giant Pallas and his epitaph. Statues of Jupiter and Venus in Rome. Pyramids of Romulus and of Julius Cæsar. The marble horses. Legend of Praxitellus and Fibia (Praxiteles and Phidias). Account of the statue variously said to represent Theodoric, Constantine, Marcus, and Quintus Curtius. Account of the Colossus removed from Rhodes. Its magical properties. How de-

stroyed by pope Gregory. Statue of the City of Rome ; its miraculous destruction. Palace of Vespasian, and verses inscribed on a tablet hard by. - - - pp. 206-238.

## CAP. XXV.

*On certain institutions of the Romans.*

A Roman triumph ; the ceremonies observed ; the licence permitted. Ceremony at an imperial coronation. Mode of proclaiming war among the Romans. The different kinds of toga worn by different persons. On the *dies fasti* and *nefasti*. The *Quinquatria*. The division of the Roman people into two classes by Romulus. Subsequent division into four classes. On the ides, Kalends, &c. On the *milites emeriti*. *Nonariæ*, why so called. The Proletarii. Origin of divorce among the Romans. Character of the Roman emperors and people. - - - - - pp. 238-252.

## CAP. XXVI.

*Germany and its parts.*

Limits of Germany, according to Isidore. Upper and Lower Germany. Their various provinces enumerated. The northern regions more populous and hardy than the south ; hence the vast swarms of barbarous tribes that have poured down from them, Huns, Goths, Vandals, Saxons, &c. Limits of Bohemia. Its natural productions. The Bison. Limits of Thuringia, of Franconia, of Bavaria, of Westphalia, of Suevia, of Saxony. Character of the Saxons. Natural productions of Germany. Ancient government of the Saxons. Limits of Frisia. Manners and government of the Frisians. Limits of Seland. Character of the country and its inhabitants. The Scribonii, a people of north-west Germany. The Seven Sleepers. - - - - - pp. 254-266.

## CAP. XXVII.

*Gaul, or France.*

Gallia, why so called. The Galli, the priests of Cybele, not named from Gallia, but from the river Gallus. Character of the Gauls. Limits of Gallia. Its divisions in the time of Julius Cæsar. Rivers of France. Its minerals ; plaster of Paris. Praises of Paris. The Franks, like most nations of



Europe, took their origin from Troy. Antenor, their ancestor, founded the city of the Sicambri in Pannonia. Their leaders after his death, Trogotus and Franco; whence the nation took their name. Another account makes Charlemagne the author of the name; he released slaves throughout Gaul in honour of St. Denys, and made them freemen or Franks of the saint. From that time Gallia was called France. Others say that the emperor Valentinian called the Sicambri *feranci*, from the ferocity of their manners. The succession of the French kings. The Merovingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Charles Martel; Pepin; Charlemagne. The Carlovingian dynasty, and notices of the separate kings. Hugh Capet, duke of Burgundy, and his successors reign in France. Charlemagne's successors reign in Italy and Germany till the time of Conrad. Enumeration of the tribes who successively occupied Gaul. The provinces of France recounted. - - pp. 266-286.

## CAP. XXVIII.

*Description of the Provinces of France.*

Brabant, famous for its wool. The waters of England not so favourable for dyeing; Lincoln however and London produce good scarlet. Flanders, how bounded; its inhabitants and natural productions. The limits of Picardy; Upper and Lower Picardy. Normandy, peopled by Danish and Norwegian sailors; its capital city Rouen. Brittany, twice occupied by Britons, once in the time of Belinus, and again in Vortigern's reign; how bounded. A marvellous fountain in Brittany. Poitou and Poitiers, how peopled; the character of the inhabitants. Aquitaine or Guienne, its boundaries defined. Anjou, its situation. Gascony, formerly counted to Guienne; the Vascones formerly located there by Pompey the Great; the inhabitants now known by the name of Basques. Burgundy, why so called; its inhabitants suffer from *goître*. - - - - pp. 288-298.

## CAP. XXIX.

*Spain.*

Limits of Spain defined. Hispania Citerior and Ulterior; formerly called Hesperia and Hiberia. Provinces of Spain enumerated. Notice of Carthago Spartaria. Occupation of Spain by the Carthaginians, Goths, and Saracens. The last now confined to the eastern districts of Spain. pp. 298-302.

## CAP. XXX.

*The Islands of the Mediterranean.*

Gades or Cadiz described. Signification of the name. Columns of Hercules. Majorca and Minorca. Notice of Sardinia; its marvels. Corsica, its situation described; its extent; named from a woman Corsa; fertility of its soil. Aradus, near Tyre, famed for its sailors. The Cyclades, why so called. Among them are Rhodes and Delos. Derivation of Delos; formerly called Ortygia. The island of Samos; historical notices. Samian ware. Cyprus described. Crete described; its natural productions, arts and sciences; the Labyrinth.

Sicily described; anciently called Trinacria and Sicania; formerly joined by land to Italy at Rhegium; derivation of Rhegium. Scylla and Charybdis. The plough first used in Sicily; comedy invented there. The country abounds in volcanic rocks. Description of Mount Etna; supposed by St. Gregory to be the place of tormented souls. Marvellous wells in Sicily. Crickets, which sing best when dead and without their heads. The city of Palermo. Sal Agrigentinus. The Æolian Islands.

Other islands in the Euxine, which is a part of the Mediterranean, as Colchos and Patmos.        "        "        pp. 302-318.

## CAP. XXXI.

*The Islands of the Atlantic.*

The Canaries or Fortunate Islands; considered by the heathen to be Paradise by reason of their extraordinary fertility. Denmark (Dacia) peopled by Goths; character of the inhabitants; Britain and Gaul invaded by them; they introduced habits of drunkenness into Britain. Wyntland, character of its inhabitants; they sell wind to sailors. Iceland, its situation described; its natural productions; character and occupation of its inhabitants. Island of Thule (Tile), or Island of the Sun; its climate described; six days' sail distant from Britain. Tilis not the same as Tile. Norway described; its climate and natural productions; its inhabitants hunters and pirates.        "        "        pp. 320-328

## CAP. XXXII.

*Ireland.*

Ireland largely described by Giraldus Cambrensis, the principal authority for this account, which embraces the following subjects: the position and character of the island; its productions and defects; its inhabitants, ancient and modern; its miracles and saints. Ireland, the last island of the West, called Hibernia from Hiberus, brother of Hermon (Hermoinus), a Spaniard, or from Hiberus the river. Also formerly called Scotia. Position of Ireland defined. The Irish sea rough and almost impassable. From the Brendan hills to St. Columba it contains eight days' journey in length, of forty miles each, and from Dublin to Connaught four days'. Mountainous and marshy character of the country. Great fertility of its pastures. Salubrity of the climate. Beef wholesome there, pork unwholesome. No poison produced there. The beasts, birds, and fishes of Ireland. The bernacle goose; its strange production from firwood; eaten by religious men on fasting days, as not being properly flesh. This opinion refuted. Errors of Bede and others respecting the natural productions of Ireland. The precious stones and pearls of Ireland. The defects of the country. The wheat produces very small corns; and in general most animals, man excepted, are smaller here than elsewhere. Fresh-water fish for the most part wanting. Certain kinds of falcons and of game and other animals also wanting. Venomous beasts said to have been expelled by St. Patrick. More probably the island never had any. Poisonous creatures die in Ireland; and poison as it approaches the Irish coast loses its force. Irish earth-mould kills venomous creatures. Irish cock-crowing. - - - pp. 328-338.

## CAP. XXXIII.

*Ireland, continued. The original inhabitants.*

Inhabitants of Ireland before the Deluge. Casera and her company. Arrival of Bartholanus, descended from Japhet, three hundred years after the Deluge. His family increased to nine thousand men, all of whom, except Ruanus, died from the stench of the carcases of the giants whom they slew. He lived for fifteen hundred years, till St. Patrick's time, and related to him the history of the nation. Scythian colony under Nimeth; its destruction by war and pestilence

after two hundred and sixteen years. Ireland without inhabitants for two centuries. Greek colony under five generals of Nimeth's posterity. They divide the land into five parts, and set up a pillar in the centre of the country; Sianius at length becomes the sole governor of the island. Spanish colony under Hiberus and Hermon, sons of king Milesius. Hermon kills his brother and becomes sole monarch. A hundred and thirty-one kings reign from his time to the arrival of St. Patrick. From the arrival of the Spaniards to the death of St. Patrick are eighteen hundred years. The Irish also called Gaitels and Scots. Gaytelus, a grandson of Phenius, married Scota, Pharaoh's daughter. Came to Ireland after the Confusion of Tongues, and composed the Irish, or Gaelic language. Afterwards Gurgentius, son of Belinus, king of Britain, introduced some Basques of Spain, whom he found in the Orkneys without a habitation, over whom he placed a governor. Consequently Ireland belongs, of right, to Britain. From the time of St. Patrick to Fedlimidius, thirty-three kings reigned in four hundred years. Turgesius, a leader of Norwegian pirates, then invaded and conquered the country. They construct many fosses and castles. This Turgesius was sent over from Britain by Gurmund, who reigned there by right of conquest. Gurmund known in England as the only conqueror of Ireland. Turgesius, in like manner, in Ireland. After Gurmund's death, Turgesius fell in love with the daughter of the king of Meath. The king murders him by stratagem, after he had reigned thirty years. Soon afterwards other Norwegians come to Ireland for trading purposes; they build Dublin, Waterford, and Limerick. They at length quarrel with the Irish. They introduce the *Sparth*. Seventeen kings in Ireland, from Turgesius to Rotherick, the last king of Connaught, whom Henry the Second conquered. From Hermon to Rotherick, eighty-one kings reigned, not crowned nor consecrated, but raised to the throne by lawless violence.

pp. 340-350.

#### CAP. XXXIV.

##### *Ireland, continued. The manners of the natives.*

The ancient Irish, according to Solinus, lawless, brutal, and idle barbarians. Their manners in the time of Giraldus Cambrensis not much better. Their dress, arms, music. Their dissolute habits; they refuse to pay tithes; their cowardice, perfidy, &c. In Ireland and Wales old hags change themselves into hares. Some Irish conjurers can change

dead matter into live swine; if they cross water, they revert to their original substance, and in no case last more than three days. Marvels always abound most in the extremities of the world; and for that reason in Ireland also.

pp. 350-360.

#### CAP. XXXV.

##### *Ireland, continued. The Marvels of the country.*

The island of immortality. Other marvellous islands. Island in a lake of Ulster containing the Purgatory of St. Patrick. Marvellous fountains in Ireland. Round towers visible below the surface of a lake in Ulster (Loch Neagh). In Ossory every seven years a man and woman are changed into wolves. Petrifying and other wonderful lakes. St. Colman's birds. Large account of the Purgatory of St. Patrick, and of the ceremonies observed by those who do penance therein.

pp. 360-376.

#### CAP. XXXVI.

##### *Ireland, continued. The Saints of the country.*

Irish saints more vindictive than others. Character of the Irish clergy; chaste, but deep drinkers. Their bishops almost wholly taken from the monastic orders; hence they are more given to contemplation than to the active duties. Many confessors, but no martyrs, in Ireland. The bishop of Cashel's satirical explanation of this. Bells and pastoral staves much venerated in Ireland. The staff of Jesus at Dublin, by which St. Patrick expelled snakes. Various ways of accounting for the appearance of animals in islands.

pp. 376-382.

#### CAP. XXXVII.

##### *Albania, or Scotland.*

Scotland, its boundaries. Anciently called Albania, from Albanactus, son of Brutus, or from Albania, a province of Scythia, whence the Scots also derive their name. Then called Pictavia, from the Picts, and then Hibernia. Its connexion with the Irish the reason of this designation. Proofs from Bede that Scotland is called Hibernia. Barbarous habits of the Scotch. Their soil and climate. Their kings not crowned. St. Andrew their chief saint. His his-



tory. Legend of his appearance to Ungus, king of the Picts, at Carcenan, and of the monastic foundations of Regulus in the same place. - - - - - pp. 382-394.

## CAP. XXXVIII

*Cambria, or Wales.*

The reason of the namè. Cambria derived from Camber, son of Brutus, who reigned here; afterwards called Wales, from Gwalae, daughter of king Ebrancus, who was married here. The praises of the country. It abounds in meat, fruit, and fish; horses, oxen, and sheep; all kinds of grain; metals, coal, minerals; honey, milk, meath, ale, &c. In a word, Wales is the pantry of the earth. Geographical and political divisions: Demetia, Venedocia: the three courts of Caermarthen, Anglesey, and Pengwern. The manners of the natives: their clothing, arms, food. Their character: fickle, intemperate, lazy, predatory, dirty. Their music, clan customs, superstitions. Their state improved of late by intercourse with the English. They now acquire property, and apply themselves to agriculture, and live in towns. The marvels of the country. A pool at Brechnock has strange sounds and forms of buildings below its surface. Birds sing in honour of the prince of the country, at his bidding. Goldcliff near Caerleon. The island of Barry, near Cardiff; strange sounds heard there in a crevice. Pembroke; its earthquakes produced by demons. A wonderful tumulus at Crucmaur. The island of Bardesey, its salubrity. Merlin Silvestris, who lived in Arthur's time, buried there. There was another Merlin, named Ambrosius, the son of a goblin, as it is said, in the time of Vortigern. Various particulars about the two Merlins. Snowdon and its lakes, a floating island in one of them; one-eyed perch and trout live in the other. The spring of Tegengil. Miraculous stone in Anglesey. The rock of Hearing, so called by the rule of contrary. An island near it, where mice eat the viands of discordant monks. Bells and staves here venerated as in Ireland. The spring of Basingwerk. The well of St. Winifrid. - - - - - pp. 394-430.

## ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

---

- Introd. p. xvi., note 4. Add: It is remarkable that Bale, in the earlier edition (1549) of the *Illustr. Scriptores*, does not mention Roger of Chester at all, and in his account of Hugo Vyrley (fol. 141 b.), says that he makes use of 'Ranulphus Cestriensis,' for whom in his later edition (1559) he substitutes 'Rogerus de Cestria.' I now very much doubt whether Virley ever quotes Roger *by name*, though he doubtless uses the shorter form of the *Polychronicon*.
- Page 2, line 2, *quo adviverent*] This is the reading of the MSS., and, except that *advivo* seems to be a new word, might well stand; but there is very little doubt that *quoad viverent* is the true reading. Compare p. 374, note 1. In Gale's MS. (G.) a later hand has joined *quo-ad*. Compare Trevisa's translation.
- Page 6, line 14. The various reading *quadrivialis*, supported also by G., is better, and should be read in the text.
- Page 8, last line, *Provide*] Read *Proinde*; both words make sense, and are usually undistinguishable in the MSS., but *proinde* is doubtless right, and is very distinct in G.
- Page 9, line 11, for *unwralle* read *vnwralle*; and similarly in note 11 for *unwynde* read *vnwynde*.
- Page 11, line 14, *ich*] Add in a note *I.*, Cx.
- Page 13, line 9, *the*] Read (with MS.) *be*, and so at p. 15, l. 14; p. 17, l. 7; p. 29, l. 11. But *the* at p. 29, l. 1; p. 41, l. 6; p. 59, l. 16, is correct. Our MS. is not constant in the use of the letter.
- Page 18, line 1, *veri*] Read (with the MSS.) *ubi*; the contraction (*i*/*v*) was misrendered.
- Page 24, *Wilhelmus*] I could wish that here and everywhere else the word were printed *Willelmus*, which is supported by most MSS., when given at length. In this edition it is sometimes (p. 178, &c.) printed *Willielmus*. All three forms are more or less supported by authority. Coins decidedly preponderate in favour of *Willelmus*.
- Page 44, line 16, *Ptolomæum*] Read *Ptolemæum*. (The barbarous reading retained *per incuriam*.)
- Page 54. Cancel note 13, and insert: The true reference is to Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. iii. c. 20, p. 131. Ed. Brewer.
- Page 64. These absurd stories about Alexander are told also by Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. b. iiii. Ed. Basil, 1504.
- Page 80. The reference to Pliny is correct according to the capitulation of some; but in Harduin's edition the chapter is numbered xxii.
- Page 84. Below cap. xii. insert in italics *De Parthia*.
- Page 93. Here and afterwards the marginal notes in the Harl. MS. had better be cancelled, except when they are in English.

- Page 106, l. 1, *hiu*] Read *hi*. The same barbarous orthography occurs at p. 126 (bis).
- Page 120, *Capitulum quintumdecimum*] This should have been printed uniformly with the other headings in the *Latin* text, CAP. XV.
- Page 121, line 10, *zerof*] Read *berof* (typ. error).
- Ibid.*, note 12, *Philisti*] Read *Philistym*.
- Page 126, line 11. See Pseudo-Methodius *Revel.* Sig. d. ii. The following reference (p. 128) to Methodius is erroneous: the information is substantially contained in Isidore, lib. xiv. c. 3.
- Page 162, line 4, for *xxi.* read *xx.*; and at p. 168, for *xxii.* read *xxi*; and at p. 174, for *xxiii.* read *xxii.*; at p. 206, for *xxv.* read *xxiv.*; and at p. 266, for *xxv.* read *xxvii.* The capitulation in the versions is correct in each case. The numbers of the chapters of the text are given correctly in the summary of contents.
- Page 166, note 10, add: Orosius also (lib. i. c. 2, p. 31, Hav.) has *Malua*.
- Page 174, last line (compare the versions), add this note on *Giraldus*, cancelling note 13 at p. 175): The true reference is to Girald. Camb. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. (or *dist.*) iii. c. 19, p. 129. Ed. Brewer. See also c. xii.
- Page 178, note 9, cancel *most probably*. See Will. Malm. *De Reg.*, lib. iv. p. 548, where the reference to Virgil shows that his text should be *Mysia*, not, as Mr. Hardy edits it, *Mæsia*.
- Page 183. Cancel note 11; *sede* is quite right, being the rendering of *sedem*.
- Page 197. Harl. version, line 7, Boetia] Correct the MS. reading to Beotia.
- Page 208, line 2. For 'secundum *Estodium*,' Martinus Polonus (lib. ii. c. 4.) has 'demonstrat *Methodius*.'
- Page 210, line 9. The true number, according to Martin, is not 454, but 432. See Mårt. Pol., lib. i. c. 2, and c. 4. The omission of a line drawn at an angle to three others makes the difference when written in Roman numerals (ccccliiij., cccxxxxij.)
- Page 222, line 10, *Ranulphus*] Taken from Mart. Pol. s. a. 1041.
- Page 292, note 3, add: Here, as usual, C.D. agree better with the original authority. Compare Girald. Camb. *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8. See c. 7 for the latter part of Higden's article.
- Page 300, line 1, add a comma after *plana*.
- Page 314, line penult., *septimo*] Higden should have written *octavo*.
- Page 316, *Giraldus in Topographia*] Made up from *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 8 and lib. i. c. 16.
- Page 362, note 4, add: In Camden's edition of Giraldus, *Top. Hib.*, lib. ii. c. 5, the same error occurs.
- Page 384, line 13, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: See Giraldus *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.
- Page 388, line 10, *Giraldus*] Add in a note: The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 13.
- Page 398. Cancel last sentence of note 6. *Tiwy* in the text is right. See Girald. *Descr. Camb.* c. 5.

---

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

---

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN  
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.<sup>1</sup>

---

LIBER PRIMUS.

---

CAP. I.

*Prologus.*<sup>2</sup>

1. Post præclaros artium scriptores, quibus circa rerum notitiam aut morum modestiam dulce fuit, quo adviverent, insudare, illi merito, velut utile dulci commiscentes, grandisonis sunt præconiis attollendi, qui magnifica priscorum gesta<sup>3</sup> beneficio scripturæ posteris derivarunt.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The title varies in the MSS. See the *Introduction*.

<sup>3</sup> *gesta*] om. A.

<sup>2</sup> This word is wanting in A.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> The whole of this sentence wanting in C.D.



TRANSLACION OF RANULPHUS OF CHESTRE'S BOOKES OF TREVISA.  
 CRONYKES BY SIR IOHAN TREUISA, CHAPELAYN  
 VNTO LORD THOMAS OF BARKLEY.<sup>1</sup>

1. AFTER solempne and wise writeres of arte and of science, pat hadde swettnesse and lykyng al hir<sup>2</sup> lyf tyme to studie and to traualle aboute konnyng and knowleche of kyndeliche<sup>3</sup> pinges and aboute sobernesse and redinesse of pewes, pey be worthy to be<sup>4</sup> hiȝeliche and solempliche<sup>5</sup> i-preysed,<sup>6</sup> as pey it were putting and medlynge to gidre profiztes<sup>7</sup> and swetnes, pat<sup>8</sup> write and left vs write<sup>9</sup> meruailles and wondres, greet berynge and dedes of oure forme fadres,<sup>10</sup> of stalworthe wyt,<sup>11</sup> wise and worthy, and of dyuerse manere men pat were in olde tyme.

RANULPHUS, MONKE OF CHESTRE, COMPILEDE THIS PRE-MS. HARL.  
 SENTE WERKE AND CRONICLE. 2261.

*The Firste Prolog bigynnethe here in to þis Story of  
 mony Cronicles.*

1. AFTER the nowble wryters of artes, to whom hit was a pleasure in this life presente to fixe their studies and laboures abowte the knowlege of thynges and virtues morale, thei ar to be enhaunsede and exaltede by merite with grete preconyes, as makenge a commixtion of a thyng profitable with a swetenesse mellifluous, whiche haue deriuede to men succedenge thro the benefite of scripture the excellent gestes of men precedenge.

<sup>1</sup> No title to Trevisa's translation in MS. or *a*. The title given above is supplied by parts of Trevisa's Dedicatory Epistle, printed by Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *her*, *a*., Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *kyndley*, Cx. (not *a*.)

<sup>4</sup> *ben*, Cx., where the same use of *n* is frequent, both in the infinitive and indicative.

<sup>5</sup> *and solempliche*] Wanting in Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *i-preysed*] *I preised*, MS., and *a*.; and similarly elsewhere. The prefix wanting in Cx., both here and generally.

<sup>7</sup> *profizt*, *a*.

<sup>8</sup> *pat*] Wanting in Cx., and placed in our MS. and *a*. immediately after 'pey' (though), just preceding.

<sup>9</sup> *i write*, *a*.

<sup>10</sup> *forn-faders*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *wight*, Cx.

2. In historico namque<sup>1</sup> contextu chronographorum nobis<sup>2</sup> diligentia<sup>3</sup> delegato relucet clarius<sup>4</sup> norma morum,<sup>5</sup> forma vivendi, probitatis incentivum, trivium quoque<sup>6</sup> theologiarum virtutum et quadrivium cardinalium trabearum, quorum notitiam apprehendere seu<sup>7</sup> vestigium imitari nostra modicitas non sufficeret, nisi sollicitudo scriptorum nostræ transfunderet imperitiæ memoriam transactorum. Siquidem vita brevis, sensus hebes, animus torpens, memoria labens, inutilis demum occupatio nos impediunt multa scire, novercante semper oblivione memoriæ inimica. Sed et<sup>8</sup> in præsentiarum artes et jura prorsus ruerent, spectabilium actionum exemplaria<sup>9</sup> non paterent, loquendi quoque tropi et schemata penitus deperirent, nisi in remedium imperfectionis humanæ litterarum usum divina miseratione providisset.<sup>10</sup>

3. Quis, quæso, Cæsares hodie sciret, philosophos miraretur, apostolos sequeretur, nisi eos insignirent

<sup>1</sup> *namque*] Wanting in C.

<sup>2</sup> *nobis*] After *diligentia* in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *diligentia*] om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *planius*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *norma morum*] *norma*, (only) D.; both words wanting in C.

<sup>6</sup> *que*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *seu*] aut, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *et*] Wanting in B.C., added above the line in D.

<sup>9</sup> *actionum exemplaria*] *actionum exempla*, B : *gestorum exempla*, C. D.; but in C. *exempla* is corrected into *exemplaria*.

<sup>10</sup> *prævidisset*, A.

2. For in þe makynge and<sup>1</sup> bookes of stories, þat is to vs TREVISA.  
i-sent and byqueþe by grete besynesse of þe writers of cron-  
icles,<sup>2</sup> blaseþ and schyneþ clerliche þe riȝt rule of þewes,  
ensample of leuyng, clensynge<sup>3</sup> of goodnes, þe metynge  
of þe þre waies of þe þre vertues of deuynyte, and þe  
metynge of foure weies of þe foure chief<sup>4</sup> vertues of þewes  
of real clopyng. Of þe whiche þinges our litel konnyng  
myȝte nouȝt take knowleche, noþer<sup>5</sup> folwe þe foure,<sup>6</sup> but  
besines of writers to oure vnkunnyng hadde i-holde and  
i-streyned<sup>7</sup> mynde of olde dedes. For why schort lyf, dul  
witte, and slowe vnderstondynge, and ydel occupacioun  
letteþ vs to knowe many þinges; forȝetingnes all wey  
kypinge þe craft of a stepdamme, he<sup>8</sup> is enmy of mynde.  
Also now, in our tyme, art, sciens and lawe al were i-falle,  
ensample of noble dedes were nouȝt i-knowe; nobilite and  
faire manere of spekyng were all i-lost; but þe mercy of  
God had i-ordyned vs of lettres in remedie of<sup>9</sup> vnparfȝt-  
nesse of mankynde.

3. I praye who schulde now knowe emperours, wonder of  
philosofres, oper<sup>10</sup> folwe þe apostles, but hir<sup>11</sup> noble dedes  
and hir wonder werkes were i-write in stories and so i-kept

2. For in the contexte historicalle the rewle off lyvenge MS. HARL.  
and forme of vertues moralle, and the incentiue of manhode, 2261.  
ȝiffe grete resplendence thro the diligence of croniclers. Also  
the triuiale of the vertues theologicalle and quadriualle of the  
cardinalle vertues, to comprehend the knowlege of whom oure  
insufficiencie sufficethe not, withowte the sollicitude of writers  
scholde transfude to vs the memory of thynges of antiquite.  
For schort lyfe, a slawe sawle, and a slipper memory lete  
vs to knowe mony thynges, obliuion schewenge helpe, an  
enmye alleweies and a steppe moder to the memory. For  
in this tyme presente artes and lawes scholde falle vtterly,  
thexemplares of acciones spectable scholde not be patent,  
the ornate eloquence scholde peresche, but that diuine mi-  
seracion hath provided vse of letters in to the remedy of  
the imperfecion of man.

3. What man scholde haue perfecte knowlege of em-  
perours, meruaile of philosophres, and folowe thapostles,  
but that the actes of writers made theym nowble? There-

<sup>1</sup> of, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> cronykes, Cx. a.

<sup>3</sup> knowyng, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> principal, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> ne, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> fourth, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> shadde and stremed, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> he] wanting in Cx. (not a.).

<sup>9</sup> of þe, a.

<sup>10</sup> or ellys, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> theyr, Cx., here and frequently;  
here, a.

monumenta scriptorum? Quis denique Lucilium cognosceret, nisi eum Seneca suis epistolis illustrasset?<sup>1</sup> Plus profecto scripta poetarum<sup>2</sup> Cæsareis laudibus addiderunt quam omnes mundi divitiæ quas tulerunt. Historia igitur, cum sit testis temporum, memoria vitæ, nuncia<sup>3</sup> vetustatis, dotes possidet præminentes, suosque quam plurimum prærogat professores. Historia namque quædam famæ immortalitate peritura renovat, fugitiva revocat, mortalia quodammodo perpetuat et conservat.

4. Cur<sup>4</sup> igitur,<sup>5</sup> inter cæteros trivialium tramitum protritores ac sesquipedalium verborum efflatores, qui non minimum<sup>6</sup> stadii<sup>7</sup> sui bravium sunt adepti, nostri non erunt laude digni<sup>8</sup> orbis quadrifidi dimensores, quadriviales<sup>9</sup> historiæ descriptores; immo proculdubio, velut<sup>10</sup> tetragoni, sine vituperio triumphalis erunt laureæ comprehensores?

5. Horum nempe merito provocatus et exemplo, non mea jactanter jaculans nec aliena joculante jugulans,<sup>11</sup> decrevi, ut potui, geniale solum meum profusioribus extollere laudum titulis, ac sic<sup>12</sup> tractatum aliquem, ex variis auctorum decerptum<sup>13</sup> laboribus, de statu insulæ Britannicæ ad notitiam eudere futurorum.

<sup>1</sup> Quis . . . illustrasset] Wanting in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> scripta poetarum] After laudibus in B.; scriptura prophetarum, E.

<sup>3</sup> nuncius, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Cur] Et ut, D.

<sup>5</sup> So B.C.D.; ergo, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> minimi, A.

<sup>7</sup> studii, B.

<sup>8</sup> digni laude, B.

<sup>9</sup> quadriviali, B.; quadrivialis, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> velut] Wanting in A.

<sup>11</sup> jaciens, C.; but jugulans written above; joculans, A.

<sup>12</sup> ac sic] et sic, C.D.; ac si, B.

<sup>13</sup> excerptum, C.D.; but corrected to decerptum in the former.

in mynde? Who schulde knowe Lucilium, but Seneca in TREVISA.  
his pistles hadde i-write his dedes? Writunge of poetes  
is more worthy<sup>1</sup> to preisyng of emperoures þan<sup>2</sup> al þe  
welve of þis worlde, and riches<sup>3</sup> þat þey welde<sup>4</sup> while þey  
were alyue. For storie is wytnesse of tyme, mynde of lyf,  
messenger of eldnesse;<sup>5</sup> story weldeþ passyng doynges, storie  
putteþ forþ hire<sup>6</sup> professoures. Dedes þat wolde be lost  
storie ruleþ;<sup>7</sup> dedes þat wolde flee out of mynde, storie  
clepeþ<sup>8</sup> aȝen;<sup>9</sup> dedes þat wolde deie, storie kepeþ hem  
euermore.<sup>10</sup>

4. Wherefore, among opere noble trauaillours of þe þre  
pathes<sup>11</sup> and faire florischers and hiȝteres<sup>12</sup> of wordes and of  
metre, þat haue of here trauaille greet pryse i-gete, we mowe  
nouȝt ful preyse hem, þat in stories<sup>13</sup> metep and discryueþ  
all þe worlde wyde. But wipoute eny drede þey schulleþ  
fonge<sup>14</sup> her mede of hym þat rewardeþ and quyteþ al þat  
wel worcheþ.<sup>15</sup>

5. By þe worþynesse and ensauple of so worþy writers  
i-spiȝt and i-egged,<sup>16</sup> nouȝt bostyng of myn owne dedes  
noþer skornyng ne blamyng of<sup>17</sup> opere men dedes, I haue  
ȝ-kast and ȝ-ordeyned, as I may, to make and to write a  
tretes, i-gadered of dyuerse bookes, of þe staat of þe ylonde  
of Britayne, to knowleche of men þat comeþ after vs.

fore a story is the testimony of tymes, the memory of life, MS. HARL.  
2261.  
haunge in possession dowerys preeminent, renewenge as  
thro immortalite thynges like to peresche, beyng as in a  
maner a conseruatiue perpetualle to thynges mortalle.

5. Wherefore y, wyllenge to folowe the descriptores of  
the storye quadriualle, and as provoke thro thexemple  
of theim, intende to compile a tretys of the state of the  
yle of Breteyne, excerpte of diuerse labores of auctores.

<sup>1</sup> worth, Cx., a.

<sup>2</sup> þat, MS.; than, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> rycheesses, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> welded, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> oldnesse, a.

<sup>6</sup> her, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> reneweth, Cx.; renweth, a.

<sup>8</sup> callith, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> aȝe, a.

<sup>10</sup> for euermore, a.

<sup>11</sup> Cx. here inserts instead of 'and'  
the clause 'arne mooste worthy to

ben prayed;' thus altering the con-  
struction of the sentence.

<sup>12</sup> embelysshers, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> historyes, Cx, here and fre-  
quently.

<sup>14</sup> schulleþ fonge] shall resseyue,  
Cx.

<sup>15</sup> werke, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> so worþy . . . i-egged] noble  
wryters that herto fore haue wreton,  
Cx.

<sup>17</sup> of] om. a.



6. Quod<sup>1</sup> dum sodalibus meis innotesceret, quibus familiare fuit semper<sup>2</sup> facta majorum<sup>3</sup> speculari, importuna eorum instantia sum pulsatus, ut etiam de famosioribus orbis historiis ab initio macrocosmi usque ad nostram ætatem non solum juxta temporum seriem,<sup>4</sup> verum etiam juxta singulorum annorum supputationem congruentem aliqua compilarem.<sup>5</sup>

7. Cujus negotii, velut Dædalini labyrinthi,<sup>6</sup> inextricabilem attendens intricacionem, rogata sum veritus attemptare. Nam, præter id quod soleat<sup>7</sup> grandia cogitantibus desidia quædam et segnities obrepere, animadvertēbam tamen ad tantum involucrum evolvendum ingenii mei disparilitatem, necnon et flagitatæ materiæ vastitatem, scribentium quoque in hac<sup>8</sup> materia numerum et auctoritatem, ac potissime subsecutam exinde modernorum saturitatem; qui devotionis obsequium minus, ut assolet, attendentes super isto cibo levissimo facile nausearent, quinetiam ad renovata seu reculcata, æmulorum more, linguas acuerent, supercilia arcuerent. De quibus Gregorius loquitur Nazianzenus, quod "aliena facillime carpunt, sed bona difficilius imitantur." Provide verebar plane ego<sup>9</sup> vir videns

<sup>1</sup> The rest of this chapter is, in C. and D., compressed into four short sentences, thus:—"Si quid vero a fide dissonum aut a moribus alienum hic reperiatur, hoc tempori potius quam viro ascribatur. Quamobrem in hac assertione . . . communico," (as at p. 18). After which: "Et quamvis . . . præscribitur," (as at p. 20). The first part is rendered in the Harl. MS.

<sup>2</sup> *semper fuit*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *majoris*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *temporum seriem*] These words transposed in B.

<sup>5</sup> *computarem*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Dædali in laberintho*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *solebat*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *hac*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *ego*] ergo, A.

6. þan special frendes<sup>1</sup> þat knewe myn entent [and]<sup>2</sup> had<sup>3</sup> likynge<sup>3</sup> to knowe greet men dedes, prayed me besiliche, þat I schulde also write þe famous stories and acounte þe zeres from þe bygynnyng of þe world anon<sup>4</sup> to oure tyme. TREVIS. —

7. þoo toke I hede þat pis matir, as<sup>5</sup> laborintus, Dedalus<sup>6</sup> hous, hap many hakes and hurnes, wonderful weies, wyndynges and wrynkelynge, þat wil nouȝt be vnwarled,<sup>7</sup> me schamed and dradde to fynde<sup>8</sup> so grete and so gostliche<sup>9</sup> a bone to graunte. For ydelnesse and sleupe letteþ grete werkes þat men wolde worche; my witt is ful luyte<sup>10</sup> to unwralle<sup>11</sup> þe wrappynge of so wonder<sup>12</sup> werkes: þe matire is large, writers þerynne bep<sup>13</sup> many, and greet for fulnesse þerof; now men bep<sup>14</sup> al sad and takeþ þe lasse hede and liztliche wolde flaterie<sup>15</sup> vpon pis symple foode,<sup>16</sup> and, as enemyes, whette her tunges and bende hire browes. Of suche men spekeþ Gregory Nazianzenus, þat willeþ liztliche blame defauȝtes of opere men, and goodnesse nouȝt soþelich<sup>17</sup> folwe. Al pis ich hadde in mynde, and also I

6. Whiche labore expressede to my felawes hauenge inop- MS. HARL. pinable appetite to beholde gestes of antiquite, y was 2261. movede thro the importune instance of theyme to compile somme thynges of the famos storyes of the worlde from the creacion of man vn to oure age, not oonly after the f. 17 b. ordre of tymes, but also after the supputacion of euery yere congruent.

7. Attendenge the intricacion inextricable of this labor presente as of the mase of Dedalinus [y] am preyede to attempte hit withowte drede; aduertenge ofte tymes slawthe to mete men thenkenge grete thynges, and the insufficiency of my wytte, and the obnubilous and clowdy processe of this mater y-desirede, perauenture men in these dayes attendenge but litelle the obsequy of deuocion as thei be wonte, scholde take disdeyne of this lizhte meyte. Of whom Gregorius Naz[i]anzen spekethe; seyenge, "Suche men reprove lizhtely "straunge thinges, but vnnethe with grete difficulte thei "folowe goode thynges." Wherefore y seenge the povert

<sup>1</sup> lordes, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx. and a.

<sup>3</sup> desyre, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> worlde vnto, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> as] was, MS. and a.; corrected from Cx.

<sup>6</sup> his hous, a.

<sup>7</sup> be unwarled] lyghtly be opened and shewed, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> fynde] take on me, Cx.; founde, a.

<sup>9</sup> ferdful, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> lytil, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> unwynde, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> wonderful, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> beþ, a.

<sup>14</sup> So also a.

<sup>15</sup> wolde flaterie] wolde fynde fawte, Cx.; flatþe, a.

<sup>16</sup> werke, Cx.

<sup>17</sup> so lizthliche, a.

paupertatem meam, post tantos tubicines, cum sterili eloquio "rancidulum quiddam balba de nare"<sup>1</sup> proferre, aut certe sycomoros<sup>2</sup> vellicans uvam acerbam proponere delicatis.

8. Quis enim non rideat, seu<sup>3</sup> potius irrideat, si post Herculeos labores, si post Olympicos agones plene consummatos, pygmæus se præparet<sup>4</sup> ad conflictum? Et me certe fragili modulantem avena quis non derideat, si, post tam grandisonos Boanerges, qui in tanto facundiæ cataclysmo præfixerunt satiræ periodum, stridulo soni sibilo decolorarem tantæ materiæ majestatem? Sed scio quid dixit Booz ille clemens paterfamilias ad Ruth verecunde colligentem spicas post terga metentium remanentes. "Nemo," inquit, "tibi sit molestus." Et iterum ait ad messoros, "Etiam si vobiscum metere voluerit, ne prohibeatis; et colligentem nemo corripiat." Poeta quoque Mantuanus, Maro Virgilius, ut ait<sup>5</sup> Isidorus Etymol.,<sup>6</sup> lib. x.,<sup>7</sup> sive Flaccus ille Horatius, ut vult Hugo<sup>8</sup> Pisanus in suis Derivationibus, capitulo præviso;<sup>9</sup> "Cum sibi improperaretur ab æmulis, quod versus quosdam

<sup>1</sup> Pers. Sat. i. v. 33.

<sup>2</sup> *sicomores*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *sed*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *præparat*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *vult*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Etymol.*] added from B.E.

<sup>7</sup> xi°, E. (wrongly): See § 44.

<sup>8</sup> *Hugucio*, E.

<sup>9</sup> Perhaps *prævio* is the true reading; E. has *provisio*; Cx. prints *perviso* at length.

knewe myn owne pouert, and schamede and dradde after TREVISA.  
so noble spekers, pat sownede as trompes, to putte forþ my  
bareyn speche, hosnes<sup>1</sup> and snochyng, as who so<sup>2</sup> roteþ<sup>3</sup>  
vp moolberyes and serueþ likerous men, pat lyueþ in lik-  
yng, wip soure grapes.

8. **Ȝ**if<sup>4</sup> after þe trauaille<sup>5</sup> of Hercules, and after þe strif,  
ioustes, and turnementis<sup>6</sup> of Olympy, a pigmey boskep hym  
to bataille and array hym to fȳte, who myȳte þanne leue  
to laughe? Also who wolde schoute to skorne, ȳif I pipe  
wip an otene reed, and vnhiȳte so noble a matire wip gris-  
baitinge,<sup>7</sup> gruntyng and whistelyng, after so noble spekers  
pat sownede at þe beste; and of hem faire facounde and  
resonable<sup>8</sup> speche, folowed and streynede<sup>9</sup> all her lyf  
tyme? But ich haue wel in mynde what Booz seide to  
Ruth pat was schamefast, and lase<sup>10</sup> vp þe eeres after his  
ripe men, "No man," he seide, "þe schall wrappe;" and  
to his ripe men he seide, "**Ȝ**if ȳe<sup>11</sup> wole wip ȳow rype,  
"forbedeþ hir nouȳt; and here fore to lose<sup>12</sup> no man schal  
"lette." Þe poet, also, Mantuanus Maro Virgilius, as Isi-  
dorus seiþ, Eth. libro decimo, and Horatius, as seiþ Hugutio  
Pisanus, In derivationibus<sup>13</sup> suis, capitulo peruiso: "Whan  
"enemyes despised Horacius and bere hym an<sup>14</sup> honde pat he

and insufficiencye of my connyng after so splendidious laboures MS. HARL.  
2261.  
dredde to proferre a raw thyng with bareyne eloquence  
and to purpose as a thyng bytter to so mellifluous delices.

8. What man wolde not laȳhe and also haue in derision, if  
that a pigmei scholde make him redy to conflicte after the  
labores of Hercules and after the actes Olimpicalle plenerly  
finischede? What man wylle not haue me in derision inten-  
dunge to decoloure the maieste of soe highe mater after so  
nowble wryters? Neuerthelesse y remembre the dicte of  
Booz to Ruth gedrenge cornes remaynenge behynde the  
backes of men scherenge, seyenge, "Noo man schalle be gre-  
"vous to the." Also the Poette Mantuan Maro Virgilius, as  
Isidorus rehersethe, Eth. liº decimo, or elles Flaccus Horatius,  
as Hugo Pisanus wylle in his Derivationes (capitulo perviso),  
when hit was seyde in obprobry to hym of his enmyes and  
aduersaries, that he scholde take some versus of that nowble

<sup>1</sup> hoose, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> om. a.

<sup>3</sup> recheth, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> For yf, Cx., a.

<sup>5</sup> laboure, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> tourneyes, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> mowing, Cx.; om. a.

<sup>8</sup> renable, Cx., a.

<sup>9</sup> folowed and streynede] flowed  
and stremed, Cx. (stremed also in a.)

<sup>10</sup> leese, Cx.; luas, a.

<sup>11</sup> she, Cx. (not a.), probably rightly.

<sup>12</sup> leese or gleyne, Cx.; lese, a.

<sup>13</sup> diuinacionibus, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> on, a.

“Homerianos transferens suis immiscuisset<sup>1</sup> carminibus,  
 “et ex hoc compileret veterum diceretur, respondit:  
 “Magnarum esse virium clavam de manu Herculis  
 “extorquere.”

9. Nullus igitur<sup>2</sup> me majorum<sup>3</sup> exulcetur,<sup>4</sup> quæso,  
 si sabuli cinerisque vicem gero, quæ, quamvis luce  
 carentia fuerint et impura, subjectas tamen attritu  
 materias puras solent reddere et fulgentes, sicut et  
 quædam alia, quæ<sup>5</sup> in se non habent, aliis<sup>6</sup> solent  
 ministrare. Unde<sup>7</sup> poeta satiricus ait:—

“fungar vice cotis, acutum  
 Reddere [quæ] ferrum [valet].”<sup>8</sup>

Et Gregorius in suo Pastoralis ait:—“Depinxi pulchrum  
 “hominem,<sup>9</sup> ego pictor fœdus.” Præsumens igitur de illa  
 caritate, quæ, secundum Gregorium in Homilia,<sup>10</sup> vires  
 ministrat, quas imperitia denegat, messuram aggrediar  
 lucubratione plenam, fastidiosis forsan despicabilem,  
 sed, ut arbitror, non<sup>11</sup> inutilem studiosis. Intrabo,  
 inquam, in agros priscorum, metentes subsequens si

<sup>1</sup> immiscuisset suis, B.

<sup>2</sup> ergo, F.

<sup>3</sup> me majorum] majorum me, B.

<sup>4</sup> exulceretur, A.; exulceret, B.

<sup>5</sup> quod, B.

<sup>6</sup> aliis, B.

<sup>7</sup> Unde et, B.

<sup>8</sup> Horat. Ars Poet. 304. The words in brackets are omitted by Higden, who thus falsifies the construction.

<sup>9</sup> ymaginem, B.

<sup>10</sup> B. adds s (= sua?).

<sup>11</sup> non] om. A.



" hadde i-take som of Omeres [vers],<sup>1</sup> and i-medled among his  
 " and cleped<sup>2</sup> hym a gaderere of old wrytynges, he answerde  
 " and seide, 'It were wel<sup>3</sup> greet strengþe to wreste a mace  
 " 'oute of Hercules honde,' "

TREVISA.

9. Þerfore I pray þat no man me blame, þei ich<sup>4</sup> fare as  
 sonnd and askes; <sup>5</sup> þat<sup>6</sup> þouȝ þei bēep<sup>7</sup> dym and foule hym  
 self, other þinges þey clenseþ and makeþ schyne<sup>8</sup> ful briȝt;  
 and meny oper þinges þat þey haueþ not in hem self,  
 ȝeueþ<sup>9</sup> to opere. So saip the prophete<sup>10</sup> Satiricus, "I fare  
 " as the whetston<sup>11</sup> þat makeþ yren sharpe and kene." Item,  
 Gregorius in suo Pastoralis seip, "I haue peynt a wel faire  
 " man, and am my self a foule peyntour." Þerfore I truste  
 on þat charite þat Gregorie spekeþ of in his Omelye, þat  
 wiþ<sup>12</sup> vertues and strengþe, þat vnkunynge denyþ; and  
 aunte me in to þe rype,<sup>13</sup> þat is ful of trauaille and wa-  
 kynges, oute caste,<sup>14</sup> despised of envious men and proude,  
 and ȝit I hope profitable<sup>15</sup> to good<sup>16</sup> studiers and meke. I  
 schal entre in to þe feeldes of oure forme fadres,<sup>17</sup> and folwe

and laureate poete callede Homerus, and adde or inmixe theym  
 vnto his werkes and labores, and callede by that a compiler  
 of olde thynges, he ansuerede seyenge that hit was a signe of  
 grete strenȝhte to take the mace from the honde of Hercules.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

9. Preyenge that noo man haue indignacion thauȝhe  
 y here asches or sonde, whiche semenge as thynges impure  
 and wontenge lyȝhte be wonte to yelde pure materes  
 and fulgent, lyke as somme thynges be wonte to ministre  
 to other thynges that thei haue not in theyme selfe.  
 Whereof the poete Satiricus seythe "I schalle vse to make  
 " a knyfe sharpe in the maner of a whetteston." And  
 Seynte Gregory in his Pastoralles, "Y a fowle peynter haue  
 " made a feyre man in picture." Wherefore y presumege of  
 that charite, whiche, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an Omely,  
 ministrethe strenȝhtes, schalle prosecute my processe, pera-  
 uenture contemptible to fastidious men, but as y iugge not  
 vnprofitable to goode studentes. Makege an entre in to  
 the feldes of olde men, folowenge the scherers after my

<sup>1</sup> *Homeres versis*, Cx. ; *vers* added  
 from a.

<sup>2</sup> *called*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *right*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *þeiȝ*, a.

<sup>5</sup> *ashes*, Cx. ; *askeþ*, a. (and MS.  
 originally).

<sup>6</sup> *for*, Cx. The true reading is  
 probably 'for þat.'

<sup>7</sup> *be*, a.

<sup>8</sup> *schene*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *ȝeueþ*] yet yeuen, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *poet*, a.

<sup>11</sup> *as a weston*, a.

<sup>12</sup> *wytte*, Cx. The sense requires  
*ȝeueþ*.

<sup>13</sup> *þe rype*] repyng, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *in caas*, Cx. ; *oneas*, a., probably  
 rightly.

<sup>15</sup> *profitable*] it shall be prouffy-  
 table, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *goode*, a.

<sup>17</sup> *forn-faders*, Cx.

potuero, quoquomodo colligens<sup>1</sup> mihi spicas remanentes, vel saltem micas cadentes de mensa dominorum, qui quondam saturati dimiserunt reliquias suas parvulis suis. Sed etiam<sup>2</sup> de fragmentis cophinorum, quæ superfuerunt prandentibus, minutias<sup>3</sup> recolligens, quippiam adjiciam laboribus auctorum, nanus residens in humeris giganteis, unde non solum minores ad rudimentum sed et majores ad exercitium provocentur, ut qui spatiosa illa materiæ hujus volumina tam<sup>4</sup> late digesta nondum<sup>5</sup> attigerunt, præsentī saltem compendio instruantur; ubi non dico sententiæ subtilitas neque<sup>6</sup> verborum venustas, sed devotionis sinceritas materiæ<sup>7</sup> militabit. In quo quidem compendio universa pæne problemata majorum sunt dicta; nonnulla vero, quæ in libris auctorum minime reperi, ex usu quotidiano et rerum experientia, quasi de quadam morum historia excerpsi. Enim<sup>8</sup> vero multorum notitia gestorum partim violentia hostilitatis, partim desidia scriptorum

---

<sup>1</sup> colligans, B.

<sup>2</sup> et, E.

<sup>3</sup> micas, B.

<sup>4</sup> tam] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> non bene, B.

<sup>6</sup> aut, E.

<sup>7</sup> maxime, B.

<sup>8</sup> Quum vero, A.

þe rype men, ȝif ich may any wyse leese and gadre me som eres þat rype men schedep and skapeþ of here hondes ; oper, nameliche, ȝif I myȝte<sup>1</sup> gadre somewhat of þe crommes þat falleþ of lordes bordes, þat somtyme were fulfilled and left hir<sup>2</sup> relif to hir children. And also ȝif I myȝt gadre eny scrappes of þe releef of þe twelf cupes,<sup>3</sup> and somewhat putt to and eche<sup>4</sup> writinge of auctours, as a dwerf sittynge on a geauntis nekke ; wher þoruȝ ȝongelynges<sup>5</sup> mowe bē brouȝt to lore and gretter men to vse<sup>6</sup> and to besynesse i-spyed,<sup>7</sup> þat þey mowe be enformed and i-tauȝt by þis schort tretys, þat haueþ nouȝt i-seie þe grete volyms and large, þat beþ of stories i-write, nouȝt sotilte of sentence, noþer faire florischynge of wordes, but swetnesse of deuocion of þe matire schal<sup>8</sup> regne in þis book. In the whiche book and tretys wel nyh al problemys and questiouns of þe wiseste men þat<sup>9</sup> beþ<sup>10</sup> i-planted ; also many pinges þat beþ nouȝt i-write in oper bookes, ich haue i-gadered of þe comyn, as þey it were of a storye, and i-write in þis tretis, for me<sup>11</sup> schulde hem knowe after oure time. For somdel by malice of enemys, somdele by sloupe<sup>12</sup> of writeres, know-

TREVISA.

power, gedrenge the eres of cornes remanent, or elles cromes fallenge from the table of lordes, whiche replete lefte fragmente to theire childre and successores, gedrenge the litelle partes to men hungre of the fragmentes of the cophinnes remanent, schalle adde somme thyng to the labores of auctores. Thro whiche labour lytelle men schalle not be inducede oonly to doctrine but also grete men schalle be prouocate to exercise, that men whiche haue not seen so large volumes of this mater may be instructe by this compendious labor, where y say not that subtilite of sentence or mellifluous eloquence schal be expressede in hit, but sinceritie of deuocion schalle schewe obsequy to the matere. In whom allemoste alle the problemes of grete men be seyde, and mony other thynges not founde in the bokes of auctores whom y have excerptede, as in a maner as a story by vse quotidian and experience of theyme ; in parte thro<sup>13</sup> the knowlege of mony thynges, parte thro the violence of hostile, and parte

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> and gadre me . . . I ȝif  
myȝte] wanting in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> here, a. (and so often.)

<sup>3</sup> vij. kipes or lepes, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> eche] enerece, Cx. (not a.)

<sup>5</sup> þoruȝ ȝong peple, a.

<sup>6</sup> vse] So Cx. ; vice, MS. ; vys, a.

<sup>7</sup> i-spyed] sette, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> that, Cx. (typ. error for that shal?)

<sup>9</sup> þat] wanting in Cx. The true reading is, perhaps, ' þat beþ, beþ i-planted.'

<sup>10</sup> beþ, a. (but also beþ elsewhere.)

<sup>11</sup> for me] by causemen, Cx. (not a.)

<sup>12</sup> þe sleupe, a.

<sup>13</sup> The text is corrupt.

est adempta, ita ut vix hodie nuda locorum nomina sint salvata.

Quod si figmenta gentilium, si dicta ethnicorum, si miranda locorum in hoc opusculo interdum inserantur, Christianæ tamen religioni famulantur. Licuit enim Virgilio aurum sapientiæ in luto Ennii poetæ quærere, et filiis Israel ad Terram Promissam<sup>1</sup> proficiscentibus Ægyptios spoliare. In quibus pæne cunctis aliunde membratim excerptis, sed hic lineamentaliter concorporatis, ita seriosis ludicra,<sup>2</sup> ita religiosis<sup>3</sup> ethnica vicissim sunt admixta, ut succinctis tritis laxatisque exoticis<sup>4</sup> processus series<sup>5</sup> observetur, et integra pro posse veritas non vacillet; æqualis tamen utrobique per<sup>6</sup> omnia teneri non poterit certitudo. Nam divina miracula, secundum Augustinum, De Civitate Dei,<sup>7</sup> admiranda sunt et veneranda, non disputatione discutienda: mirabilia vero non sunt omnino discredenda; cum dicat Hieronymus, "Multa  
" incredibilia reperiēs et non verisimilia, quæ nihilomi-  
" nus vera sunt. Nihil enim contra naturæ Dominum<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *promissionis*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *ludibria*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *reliosis*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *exitūs*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *cereos*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *per*] *et per*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *Dei*] Added from B., wanting in A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *Dominum naturæ*, A.

leche of greet dedes<sup>1</sup> is so nyh loste and forȝet, pat skars-liche bare names of places we haueþ now<sup>2</sup> in mynde. TREVISIA.

10. þey feynynge and sawes of mysbileued and lawles<sup>3</sup> men, and wondres and merueillis of dyuerse contrees and londes be i-planted in pis book, suche seruþ and is good to be knowe of Cristen men. Virgile souȝt gold of wit and wisdom in the fen of Ennii þe poete, and þe children of Israel, in hire goynge into þe londe of byheste, spoiled þe Egipcians. Þat is in oper bookes i-write welwyde and parcel mele i-plaunted, here it is i-putte togidre in rule and in ordre; so merþe to sadnesse and hepen to Cristen, euerich among opere, pat straunge stories beþ so abregged, schorted and i-lengped pat þe storie is hool,<sup>4</sup> in soopnesse nouȝt i-chaunged. Neuerþeles<sup>5</sup> more certeyn som is i-holde þan opir. For Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, seith: "We schul trowe and worschippe þe miracles of God and nouȝt hem despreue by despitusoun."<sup>6</sup> Wondres beþ not al to be vntrowed: for Hieronymus seiþ,<sup>7</sup> "Meny wondres þow schalt fynde þat þou woldest nouȝt bileue,<sup>8</sup> and ȝit þey beþ ful soop: kynde may not doo aȝenst God, Lord of

is adempte and loste þro the slawthe of wryters, so that vnnethe the bare names of places be saluede. Thauȝhe the figmentes of gentiles and dictes of ethnikes be inmixe to this werke thei do seruȝce to the Cristen religion and feyth. For it was lawefulle to Virgille the nowble poette to seche the golde of sapience in the cleye of Ennius the poete, and to the childer of Israel goenge in to the londe of promission to spoile men of Egipte. In whom alle thinges excerpte of oper men ar<sup>9</sup> broken in to smalle membres, but concorporate here lina-mentally; thynges of disporte be admixe with saddenes, and dictes ethnicalle to thynges religious, that the ordre of the processe may be obseruede, that to my power the integrite of trawthe schalle not feynte. For egalle certitude may not be holden by alle thynges and in alle thynges. For after Seynte Austyn, de Civitate Dei, diuine miracles ar to be meruailde and to be worschipped, not worthy to be discussede by disputacion. Thynges to be meruaylede be not in alle maneres to be taken to discredecence, sythe Seynte Ierom seythe, "Thow schalle<sup>10</sup> fynde mony thynges incredible" and not lyke, and neuerthelesse thei be trewe. Truly there "is noo thyng more preualent ageyne the dominy of nature

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> So a.; *dedes*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *not*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx. and a.; *lawes of*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *and*, Cx.; *hool and soþnesse*, a.

<sup>5</sup> *notheles*, a.

<sup>6</sup> *disputacion*, Cx.; *despitesoun*, a.

<sup>7</sup> *Hieronymus seiþ*] *somme telle*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So Cx.; *i leue*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *ar*] *as*, Harl. MS.

<sup>10</sup> So Harl. MS.



“prævalet ipsa natura.” In multis quoque veri certitudo nullatenus vacillare videretur, probabiliter tamen dubitatur. Dicit enim Isidorus, *Etymol.* [lib.] xv<sup>o</sup>. : “Si de constructione urbis Romæ certa ratio non appareat,<sup>1</sup> non est mirum si in aliarum opinione dubitetur.” Unde nec historicos nec commentarios<sup>2</sup> varie loquentes condemnare debemus, quia antiquitas ipsa creavit errorem. Illorum igitur dictis, secundum Hieronymum, quorum religio fidei [et] moribus non<sup>3</sup> præjudicat, nec veritati agnitæ contradicit, fidem convenit adhibere.

Quamobrem in hac assertione historica periculum veri statuendi per omnia mihi non facio, sed quæ apud diversos auctores legi<sup>4</sup> sine invidia communico. Nam et apostolus non, “Quæcunque scripta sunt vera sunt,” ait; sed, “Quæcunque scripta sunt, ad nostram doctrinam scripta sunt,” inquit. Et quamvis alienum sit quod assumo, meum tamen facio quod meis ali-

---

<sup>1</sup> *apparet*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *conjectarios*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *nec*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *lege*, A.

"kynde." Also of many pinges that seemep ful soop, TREVIS.  
 nopeless skilfulliche me douteþ.<sup>1</sup> Isidorus, Eth., quinto  
 decimo, seiþ: "3if resoun is vncertayne of þe buildynge of  
 "the citee of Rome, what wonder þey men be vncerteyn of  
 "the buldynge of oper citees and townes? Wherefore we  
 "schulle not blame<sup>2</sup> makeres and writeres of stories, pat  
 "dyuersliche spekeþ and writeþ; for longe passynge of tyme  
 "and elde of dedes makeþ hem vnknowe and writers to  
 "erre." Perfore Hieronymus seiþ, "It is semeliche to trowe<sup>3</sup>  
 "her sawes pat wipseiþ<sup>4</sup> nouȝt oure byleue noþer soop-  
 "nesse that is knowe."

Wherefore in þe writynge of pis storie I take nouȝt vppon  
 me to aferme for soop<sup>5</sup> all pat I write, but such as I haue  
 seiþ<sup>6</sup> and i-rad in dyuerse bookes, I gadere<sup>7</sup> and write wip  
 oute enue, and comoun to opere men. For þe apostel seiþ  
 nouȝt, "All pat is write<sup>8</sup> to oure lore is soop," but he seiþ  
 "Al pat is i-write to oure lore<sup>9</sup> it is i-write." And þei I  
 take it of oper menis, I clepe pis storie myn; and for pat

"then that nature." Neuerthelesse a dubitacion may be MS. HARL. 2261.  
 moveþ probably in mony thynges, where certitude dothe  
 not appere to be variaunte. Isidorus seythe, Eth. libro xv<sup>o</sup>,  
 "If that certeyne reason appere not of the construccion of f. 18 b,  
 "the cite of Rome, hit is not mervayle if a dubitacion be  
 "moveþ in the oppinion of theyme. Wherefore we awe not  
 "to condempne commentatores and wryters of storyes spekenge  
 "diuersely, for the antiquite þer of causethe erreure. For hit  
 "is conueniente to ȝiffe feithe and credulite to the dictes of  
 "those men, after Seynte Ierom, the religion of whom schew-  
 "ethe not preiudice to vertues neiþer seythe contrary to  
 "the trawthe y-knowen."<sup>10</sup> If eny thyng be founde dissona-  
 naunte to feithe auþer diuerse or straunge to vertues in  
 this werke, hit schalle be ascribede raper to the tyme  
 then to man. Wherefore y make not to me by alle thynges  
 perelle of trawthe to be ordeynede in this spekenge of  
 storyes, but takenge parte withowte enuey thynges of diuerse  
 auctores whom y haue redde. For Seynte Paule seythe,  
 "That alle thynges wryten be not trewe, but alle thynges  
 "wryten be wryten to oure doctrine." And thauȝhe y take  
 the wordes of other men, y make hit myne that y pro-

<sup>1</sup> me douteþ] it is to be doubted,  
 Cx.

<sup>2</sup> make blameres, a.

<sup>3</sup> beleue, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So a.; wip seiþ. MS.; gaynsaye,  
 Cx.

<sup>5</sup> trouthe, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> y-seiþ, a.

<sup>7</sup> So a, and Cx.; gadered, MS.

<sup>8</sup> y-write, a.

<sup>9</sup> to oure lore] for oure doctryne  
 and loore, Cx. (a has various words  
 omitted.)

<sup>10</sup> y known, Harl. MS., and simi-  
 larly elsewhere; here always print-  
 ed conjunctim.

quando verbis antiquorum sæpe<sup>1</sup> sententias<sup>2</sup> profero, adeo ut quos auctores in capite libri præscripsero,<sup>3</sup> illis utar pro clypeo contra sugillantes. Quum<sup>4</sup> vero compilerator loquitur, sub hac figuratione [R] littera<sup>5</sup> præscribitur.<sup>6</sup>

## CAP. II.

*Nomina auctorum in hoc opusculo allegatorum.*<sup>7</sup>

RECITANTUR hic<sup>8</sup> auctorum nomina de quibus hæc<sup>9</sup> potissime abstracta<sup>10</sup> est Chronica :

Josephus Judæorum historicus<sup>11</sup> insignis,<sup>12</sup> qui ab initio sæculi usque ad XIV<sup>m</sup>. annum Domitiani libros antiquitatum XX., necnon et de subversione urbis Hierosolymæ<sup>13</sup> gentisque suæ<sup>14</sup> captivitate VII. libros<sup>15</sup> conscripsit.

Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, quem transtulit Ambrosius.<sup>16</sup>

Plinius, in XXXVII. libris de Naturali Historia.

Trogus Pompeius, in XLIV. libris de cunctis pæne Orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus<sup>17</sup> Justinus.

Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus XI. sunt libri.

Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus tres sunt

<sup>1</sup> *semper*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *sententias*] So B. (where the word *profero* is written twice); *sententiis*, A.E.

<sup>3</sup> *scripsero*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Quum*] Quando, E.

<sup>5</sup> *littera*] om. D.

<sup>6</sup> *præscribetur*, D.

<sup>7</sup> Heading (here and usually) as in B. *Præfatio secunda ad historiam*, E. In A.C.D. is no heading.

<sup>8</sup> *Sunt autem hæc*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *hic*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *extracta*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *historiographus*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *insignis*] om. E.

<sup>13</sup> *Hierosolymæ*] So D.E.; *Hierosolymitanæ*, A.B.

<sup>14</sup> *suæ*] om. C.

<sup>15</sup> *libros* 7, B.

<sup>16</sup> D.E. add *doctor*.

<sup>17</sup> *suus*] Added from B.D.E. In C. the reading is *ejus*.

I write oper whiles myn owne wordes and sentens of olde men, þe auctores þat<sup>1</sup> in the firste bygynnyng of þis booke I take for schelde and defens, me for to saue and schilde<sup>2</sup> aȝenst enemyes þat me wolde despise strongly<sup>3</sup> and blame; first for my self and for myn owne name I write þis letter [R].

TREVISA.

*Capitulum secundum.*

HERE I write and rehearse þe auctours names of þe whiche þis cronycle is nameliche<sup>4</sup> i-gadered and i-drawe: Josephus Judeorum historicus insignis, qui ab initio sæculi usque ad quartum decimum annum Domitiani libros Antiquitatum viginti, necnon et de subversione civitatis Hierosolymæ, gentisque suæ captivitate septem conscripsit. Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis quem transtulit Ambrosius. Plinius in XXXVII. libris, de Naturali Historia. Trogus Pompeius, in XLIV. libris, de cunctis pene orbis historiis, quem abbreviavit discipulus suus Justinus. Eusebius, in Historia Ecclesiastica, cujus XI. sunt libri. Historia Ecclesiastica Tripartita, cujus

ferre other while of the sentence of olde men by my wordes, vsenge the auctores whom I schalle wryte in the begynnenenge of the booke as a schelde and defense ageyne men movenge contrarious thynges. When the compiler spekeþe, the letter shall be proscribede in this forme folowenge [R].

MS. HARL.  
2261.

Explicit Præfatio prima.

*Capitulum Secundum.*

THE names of the auctores been rehersed here, of whom f. 19 a. thys presente cronycle is abstracte. Iosephus, the nowble wryter of storyes of the Iewes, whiche dide wryte xx<sup>ti</sup> bookes of antiquite, and vij. bookes of the subuersion of the cyte of Ierusalem and of the captiuite of the peple per of, from the begynnenge of the worlde vn to the xiiij<sup>the</sup> yere of Domician themperoure. Also Hegesippus, de Excidio Urbis, whom Seynte Ambrose translate. Plinius, in hys xxx<sup>ti</sup> vij. bookes of Naturalle Storyes. Trogus Pompeius, in hys xl<sup>ti</sup> iiij. bookes, allemoste of alle the storyes of the worlde, whom Iustinus his disciple did abbreviate. Eusebius, in his Story Ecclesiasticalle, in whiche story xj. bookes be conteynede. Also the Ecclesiasticalle Story tri-

<sup>1</sup> I sette, or something similar, seems to be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> kepe, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> strangely, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> special, Cx.

auctores, *sc.*<sup>1</sup> Eusebius, Hieronymus, et<sup>2</sup> Theodorus episcopus.

Augustinus, de Civitate Dei, potissime in xvii<sup>mo</sup>.<sup>3</sup> et<sup>4</sup> xviii<sup>mo</sup>.

Orosius Hispanus, Terraconensis presbyter,<sup>5</sup> in libro de Ormesta<sup>6</sup> Mundi.

Isidorus Hispalensis episcopus, in libro Etymologiarum.

Solinus, de Mirabilibus Mundi.

Eutropius, in Historia Romana.

Paulus Diaconus, in Historia Longobardorum.

Cassiodorus,<sup>7</sup> de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum.

Methodius martyr et episcopus, cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio,<sup>8</sup> et fine.<sup>9</sup>

Suetonius, de Gestis Romanorum.

Valerius Maximus, de Gestis Memorabilibus.<sup>10</sup>

Macrobius, in Saturnalibus.

Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia.<sup>11</sup>

Petrus Comestor,<sup>12</sup> in Historia Scholastica.

Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ.<sup>13</sup>

Beda, de Gestis Anglorum.

*Item*, Beda, de Naturis Rerum.

*Item*, Beda, de Temporibus.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Added from D.

<sup>2</sup> *et*] Added from C.D.

<sup>3</sup> 16. D., which places *De C. Dei* at the end.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] *et in*, E.

<sup>5</sup> C. and D. add *et discipulus beati Augustini*.

<sup>6</sup> In all the MSS. Respecting the orthography and probable import of this title, see Smith's *Dict. of Greek and Roman Biogr.*, vol. iii. p. 59, Lond. 1849.

<sup>7</sup> C. and D. add *Senator et historicus*.

<sup>8</sup> *principio*] Added from B.E.: *in principio*, C., but *in* is cancelled: *a principio*, D.

<sup>9</sup> C. and D. insert, at this point, *Herodotus, Quintilianus, Agellius* (i.e. 'Aulus Gellius.' D. has *Augelius*.)

<sup>10</sup> A. adds, here also, *et fine*, but the words are run through by some corrector of the MS.

<sup>11</sup> *sua*, add C.D.; in *Cosmographia* om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *Trecensis* (?) *presbyter*, add C. D., which last has *Cretensis*.

<sup>13</sup> *Magister Gregorius in libro de*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> The two last works of Bede are omitted in D., and added in C. by a later hand.



tres sunt auctores, Eusebius, Hieronymus, et Theodorus episcopus. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, potissime xvii. et xviii. Orosius Hispanus Terraconensis presbyter, in libro de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis in libro Etymologiarum. Solinus de Mirabilibus Mundi. Henricus Huntynghdonensis<sup>1</sup> archidiaconus. Eutropius [in]<sup>2</sup> Historia Romana. Walterus archidiaconus Oxoniensis. Paulus Diaconus in Historia Longobardorum. Alfridus Beverlacensis thesaurarius. Cassiodorus de Gestis Imperatorum et Pontificum. Galfridus Monamutensis, in Historia Bretonum. Methodius etiam<sup>3</sup> martyr et episcopus, cui incarcerato revelavit angelus de mundi statu principio et fine. Willelmus<sup>4</sup> Ryvallensis. Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione. Suetonius, de Gestis Memorabilibus.<sup>5</sup> Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Johannes Salisburiensis in suo Polycraticon, quem intitulavit, de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum. Priscianus Grammaticus, in Cosmographia. Petrus Comestor in Historia Scholastica. Hugutio Pisanus episcopus in Magnis Derivationibus<sup>6</sup> suis. Gregorius, de Mirabilibus Romæ. Vincentius Belluacensis, in Speculo Historiali. Beda, de Gestis Anglorum. Ivo Carnotensis episcopus. Beda, de Naturis Rerum. Historia Francorum. Beda, de Temporibus. Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.

TREVISA.

partite of whom be iij. auctores, Eusebius, Ierom and Theodorus the byschoppe. Seynte Austyn de Civitate Dei, and specially in the xvij<sup>the</sup> and xviii<sup>the</sup> books. Orosius Hispanus, in his booke de Ormesta Mundi. Isidorus Hispalensis, in his Ethimologies. Solinus, of the Meruayles of the Worlde. Eutropius, in his story of Romanes. Paulus Diaconus in his Story of Longobardes. Cassiodorus, of the Gestes of Emperoures and Byschoppes. Methodius, martir and byschoppe,<sup>7</sup> to whom, beenge in prison, an angelle schewede of pe state of the worlde, begynnenge and ende. Suetonius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Valerius Maximus, of the Gestes of Memorye. Macrobius, in Saturnalibus. Priscianus Grammaticus, in his Cosmographye. Petrus Comestor, in his Storye Scolasticalle. Gregorius, of the Meruailes of Rome. Bede, of the Gestes of men of Englonde; also, Bede, of the Natures of Thynges; also, Bede, of Tymes.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Hontingdon, a.*<sup>2</sup> *in]* Added from *a*, and *Cx*.<sup>3</sup> *etiam]* om. *Cx*.<sup>4</sup> *Willmus*, MS., and so a little below.<sup>5</sup> *Romanorum, Valerius Maximus de gestis memorabilibus, a.*<sup>6</sup> *diuinacionibus, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *byschoff*, Harl. MS.

Gildas,<sup>1</sup> de Gestis Britonum.<sup>2</sup>

Marianus Scotus.

Wilhelmus<sup>3</sup> Malmesburiensis monachus, de Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum.<sup>4</sup>

Henricus Huntindonensis<sup>5</sup> archidiaconus.

Walterus Oxoniensis<sup>6</sup> archidiaconus.

Alfridus Beverlacensis<sup>7</sup> thesaurarius.<sup>8</sup>

Galfridus Monemutensis<sup>9</sup> in Historia<sup>10</sup> Britonum.

Wilhelmus Rievallensis.<sup>11</sup>

Giraldus Cambrensis, qui descripsit Topographiam Hiberniæ, Itinerarium Walliæ, et Vitam regis Henrici Secundi sub triplici distinctione.

Johannes Salisburiensis,<sup>12</sup> in suo Polycraticon,<sup>13</sup> quem<sup>14</sup> intitulavit de Nugis Curialium et Philosophorum.

Hugo<sup>15</sup> Pisanus episcopus, in Magnis<sup>16</sup> Derivationibus.

Vincentius Beluacensis, in Speculo Historiali.

Ivo Carnotensis episcopus.

Historia Francorum.<sup>17</sup>

Titus Livius, de Gestis Romanorum.

Martinus pœnitentiarius domini papæ in Chronicis suis de Imperatoribus et Pontificibus.<sup>18</sup>

Et Florentius Wigornensis monachus, quem in

<sup>1</sup> Item Gildas, B.

<sup>2</sup> C. and D. add *Nenninius* (*Nenninus*, C.) *Brito Eldugi* (read *Elvoldugi*) *discipulus, presbyter*.

<sup>3</sup> *Wilhelmus*] So B. Various written and abbreviated in the MSS.

<sup>4</sup> C. and D. omit the title of the book. B. has *de regibus Angliæ et pontificibus*.

<sup>5</sup> *Hunteyngdonien.*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Eron.*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Blewerlacen*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *thesaurius*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Munemutensis*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *historiis*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Rivalensis*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Salesbur*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Polychronicon*, B. (*Polycraticon* in marg. in later hand), E. A con-

fusion of names which is often repeated in the titles of the present work.

<sup>14</sup> *qui*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *Hugutio*, B. (*Hugo* in marg.), C.D.E. Both forms are good.

<sup>16</sup> *Magnis*] *suis*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> The allusion is most probably to the work of Gregory of Tours, although in some MSS. the punctuation seems to imply that the writer intended the *Chronicon de Regibus Francorum* of Ivo of Chartres. (Hardwick's note.) C. has '*Ivo Carnotensis Episcopus, Historia Francorum, T. Livius*,' all in the margin. D. omits them entirely.

<sup>18</sup> *in cronicis de pontificibus*, C.D.

Gildas, de Gestis Britonum. Martinus pœnitentiarius do-  
mini papæ, in Chronicis suis de Imperatore et Pontifice.<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
Marianus Scotus. Willelmus Malmesburiensis Monachus de  
Gestis Regum Angliæ et Pontificum. Florentius Wygor-

Gildas, of the Gestes of Briteynes. Marianus Scotus, MS. HARL.  
Willelmus<sup>2</sup> Malmesburiensis monachus, of the Gestes of the 2261.  
Kynges of Englonde and of the Byschoppes. Henry, Archi-  
diacon of Huntyngedon. Waltere, Archidiacon of Oxford.  
Alfride, Treasurer of Beuerlaye. Galfridus Monomutensis,  
in his Story of Britones. Willelmus<sup>2</sup> Riualensis. Giral-  
dus of Wales, which describete Topographie of Irlonde,  
Itinerary of Wales, and the Lyfe of Kinge Henry the  
Secunde, under a triuialle distinccion. Iohannes Salesburi-  
ensis, in his Policraticon, whom he intituled de Nugis Curi-  
alium. Hugo Pisanus Byschoppe, in his Deriuaciones.  
Vincentius Beluacensis, in his Myrroure Historicalle. Ivo f. 19 b.  
Byschoppe Carnotense, of the Storye of Frensche men.  
Titus Liuius, of the Gestes of Romanes. Martinus, the peni-  
tentiary of the Pope, in his Cronicles of Emperoures and  
Byschoppes. Also Florentius, monke of Wurcestre, whom

<sup>1</sup> *de Imperatoribus Pontificibus*, Cx. | <sup>2</sup> *Willms*, Harl. MS. (twice).

annorum supputatione una<sup>1</sup> cum Mariano Scoto<sup>2</sup> potissime sum secutus.

## CAP. III.

*Divisio hujus Opusculi in septem libros.*<sup>3</sup>

Et quia præsens chronica multorum temporum continet gesta, idcirco eam *Historiam Polychronicam*,<sup>4</sup> a pluralitate temporum quam continet, censui nuncupandam. In cujus negotii pertractatione, exemplo primitivi Opificis sub senario cuncta condentis et in septimo<sup>5</sup> quiescentis, cujus actio nostra est<sup>6</sup> instructio, subtractum opus in septem libellos<sup>7</sup> subdistingxi. Quorum primus describit orbis loca, reliqui sex orbis gesta juxta<sup>8</sup> numerum sex ætatum. In primo tamen<sup>9</sup> hujus operis<sup>10</sup> libro, more divisi generis in species,<sup>11</sup> mappa mundi describitur. Deinde, orbis in suas partes<sup>12</sup> principales dividitur. Tertio, provincia quæque partialis percurritur, donec perveniatur ad omnium novissimam<sup>13</sup> Britanniam, tanquam ad speciem<sup>14</sup> specialissimam,<sup>15</sup> cujus gratia tota præsens lucubrata est historia.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> una] om. B., which arranges the words of the sentence differently.

<sup>2</sup> C. and E. omit *una cum Mariano Scoto*. D. omits all after *monachus*. The order in which this catalogue of authors appears is not quite the same in all the Latin MSS. The text is as A.B.E.

<sup>3</sup> *Præfatio tertia ad historiam*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *Policraticam*, C., (not D.): and similarly in the colophon of the same MS.

<sup>5</sup> *septenario*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *est*] sit, B.

<sup>7</sup> *libellos*, B.E.

<sup>8</sup> *juxta*] secundum, B.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *hujus operis*, om. C.D.; *hujus partis*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *more . . . species*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *partes* interlineated in later hand after *principales* in A.

<sup>13</sup> *omnium novissimam*] So B.C.E.; *omnium novissima*, A.; *omnem novissimam*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *spem*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *tanquam . . . specialissimam*] om. C.

<sup>16</sup> *l. p. h.*, C. (omitting *est*).

nensis, quem in annorum supputatione, una cum Mariano, TREVISA.  
potissime sum secutus.

*Præfatio secunda ad Historiam.*

AND for pis cronicle<sup>1</sup> conteyneþ berynges and dedes of meny tyme,<sup>2</sup> perfore I clepe<sup>3</sup> it *Pollicronicon*, pat is pe<sup>4</sup> cronicle of meny tymes. In pe whiche work, by pe ensaample of pe firste Worchere, pat wrou3hte alle his werkes in sixe dayes and reste in pe seuenpe (for his doynge is oure lore<sup>5</sup>), pis werke I departe and dele in seuene bookes. Pe firste booke descryueþ placis and contrees and londes and alle pe worlde wyde.<sup>6</sup> Pe opere sixe bokes, by pe noumbre of vi. ages, pat conteyneþ berynge and dedes from pe bygynnyng of pe world vnto oure tyme. Nepeles in pe firste booke of pis werk, as who<sup>7</sup> descriueþ general, comoun and special, mappa mundi is purtrayed and i-peynt, pat is pe clope pat pe schap of pe worlde wide is i-peynted ynne. Panne in his cheef parties pe world is i-deled; and for pis storie is bytrauailled<sup>8</sup> by cause of Brytayne, eueriche prouince and londe is descryued for to me<sup>9</sup> come to Britayne pe laste of alle, as most special; and pere ynne is i-conteyned

y folowe specially with Marianus Scotte in the supputacion MS. HAR  
of yeres. 2261.

*The secunde Preface vn to the storge. Capitulum tertium.*

AND for cause that this cronicle presente conteynethe the gestes of mony tymes, I haue studiende that hit schal be called *Policronicon* of the pluralite of tymes whom it dothe conteyne. In whiche werke y haue subdiuidede in to vij. bookes, after the exemple of the firste Maker makenge alle thynges vnder the nowmbre of vj. and restenge in the vij<sup>th</sup>. The firste boke of whom describeth the places of the worlde, other vj. bookes describe the gestes of the worlde after the nowmbre of vj. ages. Mappa mundi is describe in the firste boke of this werke, in the maner of a diuision genericalle in to a diuision specificalle. After that the worlde is diuidede as in to his partes principalle. In the thrydde euery parcialle province is discussede, till hit be comen to Breteyne the last prouince, as vn to a specialite moste specialle for

<sup>1</sup> for as moche as this cronkye, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> tymes, Cx. (not a.)

<sup>3</sup> So Cx. and a.; cleped, MS.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx. and a.; in, MS.

<sup>5</sup> doctryne, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> wyde world, Cx., and so just below, with other slight variations.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; first who, MS.; first as who, a.

<sup>8</sup> is traauaylled, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> for to me] vntil we, Cx.



Quo<sup>1</sup> in loco quindecim contexta<sup>2</sup> sunt capitula, summariam<sup>3</sup> quidem sed necessariam insulæ Britannicæ notitiam continentia, velut isagogæ quædam<sup>4</sup> primæ ad majores categorias in libris reliquis subsequentes, ut cui fortassis plenam ponendorum cœnam gustare non libuerit, his saltem<sup>5</sup> præviis acruminibus<sup>6</sup> delectetur. Deinde<sup>7</sup> secundus liber aggreditur<sup>8</sup> gesta sæculi, cum descriptione minoris mundi; verum quia gesta uniuscujusque ætatis non sunt æque multa et librorum quilibet<sup>9</sup> æquilibratam portionem vendicat in contentis, ea propter secundus liber quatuor ætatum sæculi<sup>10</sup> continet gesta, a plasmatione scilicet protoplasti usque ad<sup>11</sup> incensionem templi Judaici. Tertius a transmigratione populi usque adventum Christi. Quartus a Christo usque adventum Saxonum. Quintus abinde usque adventum Dacorum. Sextus abinde usque adventum Normannorum. Septimus abinde<sup>12</sup> usque ad ævum nostrum, quod est sub regno Edwardi Tertii post Conquæstum. Et sic, juxta vaticinium Isaïæ præloquentis, immensitas historiæ profluentis percussa est in septem rivis, ut jam<sup>13</sup> per eam transeant calceati, pateatque via residuo populo Dei.

<sup>1</sup> Quo . . . delectetur] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> contexta] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> non summariam, Gale's MS. (G.), (but *non* is interlineated), and so the Winchester MS. (W.) and Harl. version; badly.

<sup>4</sup> ysagoge quidam, A.; isagoge quædam prima is probably the true reading. See Trevisa.

<sup>5</sup> B. adds *descriptionibus*.

<sup>6</sup> acruminibus] So B., apparently, and G., quite distinctly; compare p. 404; a *criminibus*, A.E.W.; and so Trevisa, absurdly.

<sup>7</sup> Thus abridged in C.D.: *Deinde secundus liber gesta seculi cum descriptione minoris mundi aggreditur: quatuorque (secundus liber quatuor, C.) ætatum continet gesta, sc. ab Adam usque incensionem templi.*

<sup>8</sup> aggreditur before *secundus* in B.  
<sup>9</sup> quilibet] *queliter*, A. (without sense.)

<sup>10</sup> sæculi] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> ad] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> abinde] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> ut jam] ita quidem ut, C.D.

xv. chapitres nedful to þe knowleche of the ylond of Britayne, TREVISA.  
 as þei<sup>z</sup> it were an<sup>1</sup> in-bryngyng to gretter knowleche in  
 oþer<sup>2</sup> bookes þat folowep; þat who þat may nouȝt come to  
 ful knowleche of þe ful storie, mowe by such forledyng  
 haue [lykyng]<sup>3</sup> to leue schrewednes and synne. Þe secunde  
 book auntrep<sup>4</sup> forto telle beryng and dedes wip descrip-  
 cioun of the lasse world; and for þe ages of þe world  
 beep nouȝt all euene of beryng and of dedes, and euery  
 book is euene and conteyneþ i-liche; perfore þe secunde  
 book conteyneþ þe beryng and dedes of the foure ages  
 from the makyng of oure formest fader to þe brennyng of  
 þe temple of Iewes. Þe pridde book from þe transmygra-  
 cioun of þe peple to the comyng of Crist. Þe fourþe from  
 Crist to þe comyng of Saxouns. Þe fifte from Saxons to  
 þe Danes. Þe sixte from þe Danes to þe Normans.<sup>5</sup> Þe  
 seuene fro Normans to oure tyme, þat is, reigntyng<sup>6</sup> of  
 kyng Edward þe pridde after þe Conquest. And so by  
 þe prophecie of Isay, þis grete storie is departed in seuene  
 streemes, so þat boþe i-hosed and i-schod Goddes peple may  
 passe perby.

whom his present storye was made. In whiche place xv. MS. HARL.  
 chapitres bene contexte, not as summary, but as conteyn- 2261.  
 eng necessary the knowlege of the yle of Bryteyne. The  
 secunde boke tretethe of the gestes of the worlde, with a  
 description of the lesse worlde. Sythe the gestes of euery  
 age be not egalle in multitude, and euery booke chalang-  
 ethe his particion in contentes, perfore the secunde boke  
 conteynethe the gestes of the iiij. ages of the world, from the  
 plasmacion of Adam vn to the incension of the temple of  
 the Iewes. The thrydde boke conteynethe from the trans-  
 migration off the peple to the commenge of Criste. The  
 iiij<sup>the</sup> from Criste to the commenge of Saxones. The v<sup>the</sup>  
 from theym to the commenge of Danes. The vj<sup>the</sup> from  
 that to the commenge of Normannes. The vij<sup>the</sup> from  
 theyme to our age. And soe this presente story is smyten  
 in to vij. ryuerers, after the prophecy of Ysay that men  
 y-schoede may goe by hyt, and þat the weye may be patente  
 to the residu peple of God.

<sup>1</sup> and, MS.; txt, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> þe oþere, a.

<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx. and a.

<sup>4</sup> auentureth, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> fram (sic) Danes to Normans, a.

<sup>6</sup> vnder þe reigntyng, a.; vnder the  
 regne, Cx.

## CAP. IV.

*De quibusdam præambulis utilibus ad opus subsequens.*<sup>1</sup>

SATAGENTIBUS<sup>2</sup> igitur plenam historiæ notitiam apprehendere utile foret<sup>3</sup> octo scire, videlicet descriptiones locorum, status rerum, distinctiones temporum,<sup>4</sup> successiones regiminum, variationes rituum, decursiones ætatum, qualitates actionum; et<sup>5</sup> in his<sup>6</sup> omnibus varias prorsus supputationes annorum.

Primum istorum in primo libro, reliqua in reliquis sunt expressa.

Quoad secundum est notandum, quod<sup>7</sup> duo sunt status; unus ab exordio mundi usque ad Christum, qui dicitur<sup>8</sup> *deviationis*; secundus, a Christo usque in finem, qui dicitur<sup>9</sup> *reconciliationis*.

Quantum ad tertium, nota<sup>10</sup> quod tria sunt tempora; unum ante legem scriptam, secundum, sub lege scripta, tertium, sub gratia.

Quantum ad quartum, nota quod licet quatuor fuerunt aliquando<sup>11</sup> regna principalia, Assyriorum, scilicet,<sup>12</sup> Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum, tamen,<sup>13</sup> quoad mundi cursum et Sacræ Scripturæ seriem,

<sup>1</sup> *Præfatio quarta ad historiam, E.*

<sup>2</sup> *Satagentibus*] cupientibus, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *utile foret*] necessarium erit, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *temporum*] om. A.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *his* added from C.D.; om. A.B.

<sup>7</sup> *est notandum quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *qui dicitur*] et hic fuit, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *est*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> C.D. om. *nota quod*, and so below.

<sup>11</sup> *aliquando fuerunt*, B.

<sup>12</sup> C. om. *scilicet*.

<sup>13</sup> *tamen*] After *mundi* in C.D.

*Præfacio Tertia ad Historiam.*

TREVISA.

To hem pat will haue ful knowleche of stories nedep<sup>1</sup> eypte pinges [to knowe: descrypcions of places, states of thynges],<sup>2</sup> distinccion<sup>3</sup> of tymes, aftir followynge of kyngdoms, dyuerste of liuyng, passynge of ages, maner of doynge, and in all pese verray acountynge of zeres.

Pe firste of pese in pe firste booke, and pe opere in pe oper bookes beep oponliche i-write.

Touchynge pe secounde take hede of tweie states, oon from pe bygynnyng of pe world to Criste, and is i-cleped<sup>4</sup> pe staat of mysgoynge; the secounde staat from Criste to pe worldes end, and is i-cleped<sup>5</sup> pe state of grace and of mercy.

For pe pridde, take hede of pre tymes, oon to fore lawe i-write, pe secounde vndir pe lawe i-write, and pe pridde vnder grace and mercy.

For pe fourthe, take hede pat somtyme pere were foure principal kyngdoms<sup>6</sup> Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, Romanorum. Neuerpeles touchynge the<sup>7</sup> cours of the worlde and pe processe of Holy Writt, pe firste kyngdom was

*The thrydde Preface to the storye. Capitulum quartum.*MS. HARL.  
2261.

Truly viij<sup>the</sup> thynges be profitable to men willenge to haue plenerly knowelege of this story presente, that is to say, descripciones of places, states of thynges, distinccones of tymes. Successiones of gouernaunce, variaciones of customes, decursions of ages, qualites of acciones and trewe supputaciones of yeres in alle these thynges. The firste of these is in the firste booke and oper<sup>8</sup> in other<sup>8</sup> books be expressede. As vn to the secunde hit is to be attendede that per be ij. states; oon state from pe begynnenge of the worlde to Criste, whiche is the state of deuiacon. The secunde is from Criste to the ende of the worlde, whiche is the state of reconsiliacion. As vn to the thrydde hit is to be attendede that there be iiij. tymes; oon afore the lawe y-wryten. The secunde vnder the lawe wryten. The thrydde vnder grace. As vn to the iiij<sup>the</sup>. hit is to be attendede, thauze per were oper while iiij. principalle realmes, as men of Assiria, of Persia, Grekes, and Romanes, neuerpelesse as after the course of the worlde and ordre of Holy Scripture the firste gouernayle was from Abraham

<sup>1</sup> *it nedeth*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> [ . . . ] added from Cx., and a.<sup>3</sup> *distinccon*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *i-cleped*] called, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *i-cleped*] named, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Cx. has "that is to wete of the  
" Assyryens, Perces, Greeks, and  
" Romayns."<sup>7</sup> So the MS. See p. 63, note.<sup>8</sup> *oper*, *other*] See p. 63, note.

primum regimen fuit sub Patribus ab Adam usque ad<sup>1</sup> Moysen; secundum sub Judicibus<sup>2</sup> a Moyse usque ad Saulem, tertium sub Regibus a Saule usque ad Zorobabel, quartum sub Pontificibus, a Zorobabel usque ad Christum.

Quoad quintum, nota quod quinque ritus fuerunt: primus in prima ætate<sup>3</sup> sub lege naturæ communis erat omnium hominum;<sup>4</sup> secundus in secunda ætate inolevit ritus gentilium, quando sub Nino orta est idolatria: tertius in tertia ætate sub lege scripta surrexit<sup>5</sup> ritus Judæorum, quando lex et circumcisio Judæos a cæteris distinguebat gentibus:<sup>6</sup> quartus sub Christo ritus cœpit Christianorum, quando fides et gratia sacramentorum informabat vitam eorum: quintus<sup>7</sup> sub Machometo ritus cœpit Saracenorum, sicut inferius in quinto libro, post tempora Heraclii imperatoris, plenius ostendetur.<sup>8</sup>

Quoad sextum, nota quod sex sunt ætates, prima ab Adam usque ad Noe, secunda a Noe usque ad Abraham, tertia ab Abraham usque ad David, quarta a David usque ad transmigrationem Babylonis,<sup>9</sup> quinta a transmigratione Babylonis usque ad Christum, sexta

<sup>1</sup> C. omits *ad* after *usque* in each case, except before *Christum*.

<sup>2</sup> *judicibus*] *ducibus*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *fuerunt*; *a prima ætate*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *hominum* added from C.D.E.

<sup>5</sup> *erat*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *gentibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *quinto*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *plenius ostendetur*] *plenius* wanting in B.C.D.; *tempore Heraclii continetur*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Babylonis*] om. C.D.E., and so below.



vnder oure fore fadres from Adam to Moyses; þe secunde vnder iuges<sup>1</sup> from Moyses to Saul; þe pridde vnder kynges from Saul to Zorobabel; þe fourthe vnder bisshoppis from Zorobabel to Crist. TREVISIA.

For þe fifte, take kepe of fyue manere of lyuing, þe firste was in þe firste age vnder þe lawe of kynde comyn to alle men; þe secunde in þe secunde age [was]<sup>2</sup> þe leuyng of mysbyleued men, whan mametrie bygan in Nynus tyme, kyng of Nynyue; þe [pridde in þe]<sup>3</sup> pridde age vnder lawe i-write, whan circumsisioun and lawe departed þe children of Israel from laweles<sup>4</sup> and mysbileued men: þe fourpe lyuyng of Cristen men bygan vnder Crist, whan byleue and grace of sacramente halwed hir lyf<sup>5</sup> þe fifte leuyng of Sarazynes bygan vnder Makomete as it is in þe fifte<sup>6</sup> book, and after þe tyme of Heraclius þe emperour, openliche i-schewed.

For þe sixte, take hede of sixe ages; oon is from Adam to Noe; þe secunde from Noe to Abraham; þe pridde from Abraham to Daud; þe [fourpe]<sup>7</sup> fro Daud to þe transmygracioun, þat was whan Israel was i-brouȝt into praldom of Babiloyne; þe fifte from þe transmygracioun to Criste, þe sixte from Criste to þe worldes

to Moysen. The secunde was vnder Iugges from Moyses MS. HARL. 2261.

to Saul. The thrydde vnder Kynges from Saul vn to Zorobabel. The iiij<sup>the</sup> vnder byschoppes, from Zorobabel vn to Criste. As vn to the v<sup>the</sup>, hit is to be attendede that pere were v. rytes. The firste was in the firste age vnder the lawe of nature commune to euery man. The secunde rite began in the secunde age, that was the rite of gentiles, when ydolatrie spronge vnder Nino. The thrydde ryte did aryse in the thrydde age vnder the lawe wryten, when þe lawe and circumcision made a distinccion betwene the Iewes and other folke. The iiij<sup>the</sup> ryte is of Cristen men that began vnder Criste, when feithe and grace of sacramentes informede the life of theyme. The v<sup>the</sup> rite is of Saracenys, whiche began under Machomete, as hit schalle be schewede after the tyme of Heraclius themperoure more plenerly. As vn to the vj<sup>the</sup>, hit is to be attendede that there be vj. ages; the fyrste from Adam to Noe; the secunde from Noe to Abraham; the thrydde from Abraham to Daud; the iiij<sup>the</sup> from Daud to þe transmigracion; the v<sup>the</sup> from the transmigracion to Criste; the vj<sup>the</sup> from Of v. rytes. Of vj. ages.

<sup>1</sup> *under iuges*] wanting in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx. (not in a.)

<sup>3</sup> Added from a, and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *lawes*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *self*, Cx

<sup>6</sup> So a, and Cx.; *firste*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a, and Cx.

a Christo usque ad finem mundi.<sup>1</sup> Ubi est sane advertendum quod ætates sæculi non distinguuntur penes æqualitatem annorum, sed penes aliquod mirabile contingens in principio ætatum;<sup>2</sup> utpote quod prima ætas incipit a creatione mundi, secunda ab inundatione diluvii, tertia a circumcisione mirabili, quarta ab inchoatione regni, quinta a transmigratione populi, sexta ab Incarnatione Christi.

Quoad septimum, nota quod septem leguntur personæ, quorum gesta<sup>3</sup> crebrius in historiis memorantur, videlicet, principis<sup>4</sup> in regno, militis<sup>5</sup> in bello, iudicis<sup>6</sup> in foro, præsulis<sup>7</sup> in clero, politici in populo, œconomi in domo, monastici in templo. Ex quibus proradiant<sup>8</sup> correspondenter septem famosa actionum genera, quæ sunt constructiones urbium, devictiones hostium, sanctiones iurium,<sup>9</sup> correctiones criminum, compositio rei popularis, dispositio<sup>10</sup> rei familiaris, acquisitio meriti salutaris,<sup>11</sup> et in his jugiter<sup>12</sup> relucet præmiationes proborum et punitiones perversorum.

Quoad octavum, est sciendum quod octo fuerunt

<sup>1</sup> The whole of the following sentence occurs lower down in B.; and is omitted altogether in the shorter class of chronicles, represented by C. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *ætatis*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *facta*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *principes*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *milites*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *iudices*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *præsules*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *corradiant*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *virium*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *dispositio rei familiaris*] om.

C.D.; *depositio*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *singularis*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *jugiter*] om. D.

ende. And here take hede, pat ages of þe world beep TREVISA.  
nouȝt to-deled<sup>1</sup> by euenes of ȝeres, but by meruayles pat  
byfel in her bygynnyng; as þe firste age bygan from  
þe bygynnyng of the wor[l]de;<sup>2</sup> þe secunde from Noes  
flood; þe þridde from þe circumsicioun; þe fourþe from  
þe bygynnyng of kynges; the fift from þe transmi-  
gracioun; þe sixte from the Incarnacioun of Crist.

For the seuene, take hede of seuene persones whos  
dedes me writen<sup>3</sup> in stories, pat beep,<sup>4</sup> kyng in his  
rewme, knyȝt in bataile, iuge in plee, bisshop in clergie,  
lawefulman in þe peple, housbond in hous, religious man  
in chirche. Of þe whiche springen out seuene manere of  
famous doynge, buldynge of citees, victorie of enemyes,  
makyng of lawes, correccioun<sup>5</sup> of trespas, help of þe  
comyn profiȝt, gouernynge of meyny<sup>6</sup> and of householdes,  
getynge of blisful mede, in þe whiche blasen and schynen  
rewardynge of gode men and punyschyng of euil men.

For the eyȝte, take hede of eyȝte dyuerse manere of

---

Criste to the ende of the worlde. Hyt is to be attendede MS. HARL. 2261.  
that the ages of the worlde be not diuersificate as  
anendes the equalites of yeres, but anendes somme mer-  
uellous thynges happenge in the begynnyng of that age;  
as the firste age began from the creation of man; the  
secunde of a meruellous invndacion of water; the  
thrydde of a meruellous circumcisioun; the iiij<sup>the</sup> from  
the begynnyng of reigne of kynges; the v<sup>the</sup> of the  
transmigration of peple; the vij<sup>the</sup> of the incarnation off  
Criste. As vn to the vij<sup>the</sup> hit is to be attended that  
vij. persones be redde whose gestes be remembrede ofte-  
tymes in storyes; that is to saye, the person of a prynce  
in his realme, of a knyȝte in batelle, of a iuge in his  
seete, of a byschoppe in the cleregye, off a politike  
man in the peple, of a howsebonde man in a howse, of  
a contemplatif man in the chirche. From whom vij.  
generalites of acciones doe procede corespondent to  
theyme, whiche be construcciones of cytes, victoryes of  
enmyes, sanccones of lawes, correcciones of crymes, com-  
posicion of a commune thyng, the disposicion of a thyng  
familier, the adquisicion of a hollesom merite in whom  
the rewardes of goode men schyne, and the peynes of  
ylle men. As vn to the viij<sup>the</sup> hit is to be attendede

---

<sup>1</sup> *delid*, Cx. °

<sup>2</sup> *world*, a.

<sup>3</sup> *me writen*] ben wreton, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *beep*] is to wete, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> In this and in other places *cor-*  
*reccioun* or *correctioun* suits the MS.  
equally well.

<sup>6</sup> *meyne*, Cx.

modi annos calculandi, tres apud Hebræos, tres apud Græcos, unicus apud Romanos, et unicus modo<sup>1</sup> apud Christianos. Hebræi namque tripliciter annum sumunt: est enim apud eos annus usualis a<sup>2</sup> Januario incipiens, quo utuntur in contractibus: <sup>3</sup> est et annus legitimus a Martio incipiens, quo utuntur in cæremoniis suis: est et apud eos annus emergens, a Maio incipiens, quando egressi sunt de Ægypto, quo utuntur in chronicis et calculationibus. Græci quoque tripliciter annos notaverunt: primo enim ad gloriam victoriæ suæ annos connotaverunt<sup>4</sup> a captivitate Trojæ; deinde, incepta Olympiade, notaverunt annos<sup>5</sup> juxta numerum Olympiadum<sup>6</sup> earundem: tertio, quando cceperunt super orbem dominari, notaverunt isto modo,<sup>7</sup> anno regni<sup>8</sup> Græcorum tali vel tali, sicut patet<sup>9</sup> in libris<sup>10</sup> Machabæorum. Demum Romani florentes ab urbe condita quotaverunt. Novissime vero Christiani ab Incarnatione Domini annos supputarunt.<sup>11</sup>

Ubi erit advertendum cum ad id<sup>12</sup> loci ventum<sup>13</sup> fuerit, quod calculatio<sup>14</sup> secundum Dionysium Exiguum,<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> modo] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> in, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> contractionibus, A.

<sup>4</sup> So A.; cotaverunt, B.; quotaverunt, C.E. (which is perhaps the true reading); notaverunt, D.

<sup>5</sup> annos] om. D.

<sup>6</sup> Olympiadum] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> isto modo] sic, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> regni] om. D.

<sup>9</sup> patet] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> libro, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> supputaverunt, B.C.D.

<sup>12</sup> id] illud, C. (in marg.); cum id loci fuerit, B.

<sup>13</sup> om. A.B.

<sup>14</sup> computatio, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> Exiguum] om. C.D.

accountynge of *zeres*. Pre pe Iewes vseþ, pre pe Grees, TREVISA.  
oon Romaynes, and Cristen men oon. For pe Iewes in  
tretys and couenautes haueþ a *zere* vsual, and bygineþ  
in Ianuarie.<sup>1</sup> In deuocioun and sacrifice pei haueþ a *zer*<sup>2</sup>  
laweful, and byginneþ in Marche. Also pey haueþ a  
*zere* of apperynge þat pey vseþ in calculynge and in  
cronicle, and bygynneþ in May, whan þey passed out of  
Egipte. Also pe Grees in pre manere wise accounteþ hir  
*zeres*; first, for ioie of pe victorie pey accounteþ hir  
*zeres* from pe takynge of Troye; afterward pei accounted  
here *zeres* by Olympades, þat beep pe tymes of here  
iustes and tornementis; but after þat pey reignede, pei  
accounted here *zeres* by here reignynge, in pis manere  
“anno regni Græcorum, quinto vel tertio, tali vel tali,”  
sicut patet in libro Machabæorum. Whan pe Romaynes  
wax<sup>3</sup> in hir floures pey accounted hir *zeres* by here reign-  
ynge in pis manere, from pe buldynge of citee,<sup>4</sup> “ab  
“urbe condita.” But Cristene men from pe<sup>5</sup> Incarnacioun  
of Crist accounteþ her *zeres*.

But whan me comeþ to þat place, me mote<sup>6</sup> take hede

that þer were viij. maneres to calcle yeres; iij. anendes MS. HARL.  
men of Ebrewes, thre anendes the Grekes, oon at the 2261.  
Romanes, and oon now at Cristen men. Men of Ebrewes  
take theire yere in thre maneres. The vsualle yere is  
begynnege from Ianuary anendes theyme whom thei  
vse in contractes. Also a lawefulle yere begynnege  
from Marche, whom thei vse in cerimonyes. Also there  
is a yere emergente as anendes theyme begynnege from  
May when thei wente from Egipte, whom thei vse in  
cronicles and calculaciones. The Grekes note theire yeres  
in thre maneres:—In the firste they cotede yeres at the  
glory of their victory from the captiuite of Troye. After  
that pe Olimpias begunne, thei assignede the nowmbre of  
peire yeres after the nowmbre of theyme. In the thrydde  
maner, when thei began to haue dominacion, thei notede  
their yeres in thys maner:—In suche a yere in the  
reigne of men of Grewe, or in suche a yere, as hit is  
expressede in the bookes of Machabes. At the laste pe  
Romanes floryschenge ascribede theire yeres from the  
begynnege of theire cite y-made. But nowe laste Cristen  
men suppute theire yeres from the Incarnacion of Criste.  
Wherefore hit is to be aduertisede that the calculation of

<sup>1</sup> *Ianuere, a.*

<sup>2</sup> *azer*, MS., and similarly else-  
where the article and noun are  
sometimes written *conjunctim*.

<sup>3</sup> *waxed, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *þe citee, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *þe] om. a.*

<sup>6</sup> *me mote] men muste, Cx.*



quem communiter sequitur Gallia et Anglia minus habet quam computatio<sup>1</sup> Hieronymi secundum evangelicam veritatem numero XXII.<sup>2</sup> annorum. Refert enim Wilhelmus Malmesburiensis, lib. iv. de Pontificibus, quod Marianus Scotus. et monachus,<sup>3</sup> apud Mogenciam,<sup>4</sup> urbem Germaniæ, inclusus circa annum gratiæ<sup>5</sup> MLX.,<sup>6</sup> sub longo solitudinis suæ otio chronographos sit scrutatus, dissonantiamque cyclorum Dionysii Exigui contra evangelicam veritatem vel solus vel primus animadvertit. Nam ab initio sæculi annos singulos recensens XXII. annos,<sup>7</sup> qui cyclis prædictis deerant, superaddidit, magnam et diffusam chronicam commentatus. Cujus quidem<sup>8</sup> librum Robertus<sup>9</sup> Herefordensis<sup>10</sup> episcopus splendide postmodum defloravit. Inde est quod vulgares chronici, quæ Dionysium prædictum<sup>11</sup> sequuntur, titubant tota die. Nam, teste Hieronymo in transferendo chronicam Eusebii, decem anni deficiunt inter passionem Domini et tempora<sup>12</sup> Vespasiani, et<sup>13</sup> iterum<sup>14</sup> quatuordecim anni deficiunt circa tempora Decii,<sup>15</sup> sicut inferius patebit sub sexta seculi ætate. Hunc autem errorem plurimum adauget,<sup>16</sup> quod

<sup>1</sup> *habet a computatione*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *xxv.*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Scotus et*] wanting in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Magontiam*, D. ; *Mogonciam*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *Domini*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> 1068, C.

<sup>7</sup> *annos*] *annis*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *quidam*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *i.e.* Robert Lorrayne, who died in 1095.

<sup>10</sup> *Herefordensis*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *prædictum*] om. B.D.

<sup>12</sup> *tempora*] *tempus*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *et*] om. C.

<sup>14</sup> *iterum*] *item*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> B. adds *Cæsaris*.

<sup>16</sup> *adauget*] *auget*, C.D.

pat þe calculynge of Denys, pat Engeland and Fraunce fol-  
 weþ, hap lasse by xxii. ȝere þan þe calculynge of Ierom, TREVISA.  
 pat folweþ þe gospel. William Malmesbury, libro quarto  
 de Pontificibus,<sup>1</sup> seip þat Marianus, Scotus and monok,<sup>2</sup>  
 i-prisoned in Maguncia, a towne of Almayne, aboute þe  
 ȝere of grace a powsand and pre score and sixtene,  
 loked besiliche in bookes and accounted<sup>3</sup> pat Dionysius  
 Exiguus acordeþ nouȝt with þe Gospel in acountynge of  
 ȝeres. For þis Scot, Marianus, accounted all þe ȝeres  
 from þe bygynnyng of þe worlde, and putte hit<sup>4</sup> to  
 xxii. ȝere, pat lakkede of Dionysius accounts, and wroot  
 a grete cronicle and huge;<sup>5</sup> þe whiche book Robert Bis-  
 shop of Herforde deflored, and perfore<sup>6</sup> hit is pat þe  
 comyn cronicles pat folweþ<sup>7</sup> Denys faillep al day. For<sup>8</sup>  
 Ierom, in transferendo chronicam Eusebii<sup>9</sup> seip þat ten  
 ȝeres<sup>10</sup> lakkep be tweyne Cristes passioun and Vespasianus  
 tyme. And also xij.<sup>11</sup> lakkep aboute Decius Cesar his<sup>12</sup>  
 tyme as it is i-schewed in þe sixte age. Þis errour byfalleþ,

Dionysius, whom Englonde and Fraunce doe folowe, hathe MS. HARL.  
 lesse then the computacion of Seynte Ierom by the 2261.  
 nowmbre of xx<sup>viij</sup>. yere. Also William Malmesburye dothe  
 reherse in his booke of byschoppes the iiij<sup>the</sup> that Ma-  
 rianus a Scotte and a monke, included at a cyte called  
 Mangotia in Almeyne, abowte the yere of grace m<sup>lxxxvj</sup>. f. 21 a.  
 serchede cronicles thro grete study and labour, aduertenge  
 firste or sole the dissonaunce of the cicles after the cal-  
 culation of litelle Dionise ageyn the trawthe of the Gos-  
 pelle, whiche accomptenge euery yere from the begynnenge  
 of the worlde addede to the foreseide cicles xx<sup>viij</sup>. yere,  
 makege a harde and a diffusede cronicle, whose booke  
 Roberte Byschoppe of Herefforde onornede splendidiously;  
 wherefore commune cronicles folowenge Dionysius fayle and  
 stumble alle day, Seynte Ierom wyttene in the translacion  
 of the cronicle of Eusebius, where x. yeres wonte betwene  
 the passion of Criste and tyme of Vaspasian, and also  
 xiiij. wonte abowte the tymes of Decius themperoure, as  
 hit schalle be schewede under the vj<sup>the</sup> age of the worlde.  
 That erreure is moche encreased in so moche, that dayes

<sup>1</sup> *Pontificis*, MS. and *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *and monok*] and the monke, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *accountede and fonde*, *a*.

<sup>4</sup> *hit*] wanting in Cx. and *a*.

<sup>5</sup> *an huge*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *that for*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *foloweden*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So Cx. ; *From*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *in translatyng the cronyke of Eu-*  
*sebii*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *that yeres*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *xij. ȝeres*, *a*.

<sup>12</sup> *Cezars*, Cx.

frequenter prætermittuntur dies et menses quibus super integros annos reges regnaverunt. Negliguntur etiam intervalla temporum inter fines regnantium et primordia subsequen-<sup>1</sup>tium. Quapropter unumquodque, qualiter suo contigerit anno, notabo pro viribus in hoc scripto. Ita sane quod columnarum margines juxta gestorum capita aliquando cum duplici nonnunquam cum triplici annorum serie purpurabo. Ab Abraham etenim usque ad urbem conditam, annus ætatis sæculi et ducis conferetur. Ab urbe vero <sup>2</sup> usque ad Christum, annus ætatis et urbis<sup>3</sup> inseretur. A Christo autem<sup>4</sup> in antea, annus gratiæ et principis pariter<sup>5</sup> conscribetur.<sup>6</sup>

## CAP. V.

*De orbis dimensione.*<sup>7</sup>

*Priscianus in 'Cosmographia.* Ex senatus consulto censuit<sup>8</sup> Julius Cæsar, dum consulatus sui fascēs ageret, omnem orbem per prudentes viros dimetiri.<sup>9</sup> Igitur

<sup>1</sup> *qualiter unumquodque*, B.E.

<sup>2</sup> *vero*] *Romana condita*, added in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *ætatis urbis et ducis*, B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *autem*] *vero*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *pariter*] om. C.

<sup>6</sup> After this follows in C. a paragraph of nineteen lines, which is wholly out of place here, beginning :—"Servitia quinque portuum  
"domino regi per mare debita.

"Villa de Hastyngge 3 naves.  
"Aqua de Peuenesse 1 navem."  
Curiously enough, a space of 16 lines is left blank in D.

<sup>7</sup> Title wanting in A.; added from B.E.; C. and D. begin thus :—  
*De orbis divisione.* Julius Cæsar divinis humanisque rebus singulariter instructus cum consulatus, etc.

<sup>8</sup> *censuit*] *fecit*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *admetiri*, D.; *demetiri*, B.

for dayes and monthes were vurekened pat kynges reignede ouer ful 3eres. Also dayes and monpes pat voydede bytw[e]ne tweie kynges were forgendred.<sup>1</sup> Wherefore in pis booke I schal marke as I may how and in what<sup>2</sup> 3eres such defautes fille; so pat I schal hi3te pe margyns by pe hedes of the stories som wip double and som wip treble rewes 3eres.<sup>3</sup> From Abraham to pe citee i-bulde, I sette to gidres pe 3ere of pe age of pe worlde and of pe ledere; from pe cite i-bulde to Crist, I sette to gidre pe 3ere of<sup>4</sup> pe citee and of pe ledere; and from Crist forwarde, I write to gidre pe 3ere of grace and of pe prince pat regnep.<sup>5</sup> TREVISA.

*De orbis dimensione. Priscianus in cosmographia.  
Capitulum quintum.*

IULIUS CESAR, by counsaile of pe senatoures and elder men<sup>6</sup> of Rome, lokede<sup>7</sup> and serchede stories<sup>8</sup> and bookes of his 3eres of doynge and dedes, [and]<sup>9</sup> ordeyned wyse men

and monethes be ouerskippe in whom hit is seyde kynges MS. HARL. 2261.  
haue reignede by holle yeres; and also other spaces of tymes be neglechte betwene or amonge the endes off men reignenge and begynnenges of men folowenge. Wherefore y schalle ascribe how euery thyng hathe bene in the yere per of after my powere in this presente wrytenge. In so moche that y schalle purpulle the mariantes nye the hedes of pe gestes with a dowble ordre of yeres. From Abraham vn to the cite off Rome y-made, the yere of the age of the worlde and of the duke and gouernoure schalle be wryten. From the cite y-made to Criste, the yere of the age of the cite and of the transmigracion schalle be wryten. From Criste, the yere of grace and of the prynce reignenge that tyme schalle be wryten to gedre.

*Priscian in his Cosmographie of the Dimension of the Worlde. Capitulum quintum.*

Iulius Cesar ordeneide by the counselle of the senate sette in pomposite alle the worlde to be dimencionate by men discrete and prudente. Wherefore messangers were sende

<sup>1</sup> forgotten, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> and what, Cx. a.

<sup>3</sup> treble 3eres, a.

<sup>4</sup> pe 3ere of the age of, a.

<sup>5</sup> regned, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> aldermen, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> sought, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> historyes, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Added from Cx.

a consulatu Julii usque ad consulatum Saturnini per triginta duos annos missi sunt legati<sup>1</sup> dimensores, viri docti, arte gnomonica periti, per omnem terram ad præsides, duces, et judices provinciarum; ut describerent et mensurarent<sup>2</sup> terras, aquas, nemora, plana, concava, montes, colles atque<sup>3</sup> itinerarium maritimum, quæ etiam<sup>4</sup> loca navigaturi tangere deberent.<sup>5</sup> Et si forte aliquod prodigium in his<sup>6</sup> locis occurreret, illud senatui reipublicæ scripto nunciarent. *Ranulphus*. Hoc attestatur Hieronymus in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo secundo, ubi dicit quod Pilatus præses Judææ nunciavit Tiberio Cæsari de mirabilibus quæ fecit Jesus in terra Judææ, et Tiberius nunciavit senatui, verum quia talia non fuerant senatui prius nunciata,<sup>7</sup> illa respuerunt.<sup>8</sup> *Priscianus*. Et sic repertum est per tales præsidum denunciationes<sup>9</sup> quod omnis orbis habet famosa maria triginta, insulas septuaginta duas, montes famosos quadraginta,

<sup>1</sup> *legati sunt*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *et mensurarent*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *atque*] om. D.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam*] om. A.

<sup>5</sup> *deberent*] debuerunt, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *his*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *senatui prænunciata*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Hoc . . . respuerunt*] om. A. C. D.; added from B.E. See also the versions.

<sup>9</sup> *per . . . denunciationes*] om. A. B.C.D.; added from E.



and redy to mete and discreue all þe worlde aboute. Pan TREVISA.  
 from Iulius his tyme to Saturnus tyme, two and pritty  
 zere, messangeres, wise men and wel i-tauzt<sup>1</sup> in þe practike  
 of gemetrie,<sup>2</sup> konnyng and profitable to mete<sup>3</sup> and to gesse  
 hiżenesse and lowenesse, lengþe and brede and depnesse  
 also, were rediliche i-sent into<sup>4</sup> euery londe aboute to iuges  
 and<sup>5</sup> to cheueteynes,<sup>6</sup> to lederes<sup>7</sup> of londes, for þey schulde  
 mete<sup>8</sup> and discreue londe and water, woodes and landes,  
 valeies and pleynes, downes and hules,<sup>9</sup> and þe see stronde  
 and euery place where eny man myzt goo oper<sup>10</sup> ride oper<sup>10</sup>  
 schip seily; and write and certifie þe senatoures where and  
 what wondres were i-founde. R. Þis witnessith Hieronymus,  
 in transferendo historiam Eusebii, libro secundo, capitulo  
 secundo. Pere, he seith, pat Pilatus, iuge of Iewerye,<sup>11</sup> cer-  
 tified Tiberius Cesar of meruayles and wondres pat Criste  
 wrouzte in þe Iewerie, and Tiberius certified þe senatoures,  
 but þe<sup>12</sup> senatoures trowed<sup>13</sup> nouzt, for þey had nouzt  
 herd [afore]<sup>14</sup> of so wonder werkes. *Priscianus*. And so,  
 by warnyng and certefieng of cheueteynes<sup>15</sup> of londes, it  
 was i-founde and i-knowe pat al þe worlde aboute hap name  
 kowthe<sup>16</sup> sees<sup>17</sup> pritty, ylondes pre score and twelue, famos

from the consulate of Iulius Cesar vn to the consulate of MS. HARL.  
 Saturnius, by xxxij<sup>ti</sup> yere, þro alle the worlde, to presidentes, 2261.  
 dukes, and iuges of prouinces, that thei scholde describe  
 and measure londes, waters, woodes, playnes, concauites,  
 hilles, and the itinerary of the see to whiche places thei  
 scholde sayle, and towche hyt if they myzhte fynde eny  
 meruellous thyng there that myzhte be schewede to the  
 senate. R. Seynte Ierom testifieth that in the trans-  
 lacion of þe cronicle of Eusebius, libro ij<sup>o</sup>, capitulo secundo, f. 21 b.  
 where he saythe that Pilatus presidente of the Iewery  
 schewede to Tiberius themperour of the meruayles whom  
 Iesus did amonge the Iewes. And Tiberius schewede theyme  
 to the senate, whiche despisede theyme in that they were  
 not schewede a fore to the senate. *Priscian*. And soe hit  
 is founde by the denunciaciones that alle the worlde hathe  
 xxx<sup>ti</sup> famose sees, lxxij<sup>ti</sup> yles, xl<sup>ti</sup> famose hilles, lxx<sup>ti</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> tauzht, a. (not Cx.).

<sup>2</sup> So MS. and a; geometrye, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> mesure, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> redyly sente to, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> a omits and.

<sup>6</sup> capytayns, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> gouernours, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> mesure, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> montaynes and downes, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> or, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> þe Iewery, a.

<sup>12</sup> a omits þe.

<sup>13</sup> byleued, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> Added from Cx.; not in a.

<sup>15</sup> capytayns, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> couth, a.

<sup>17</sup> hath sees of dyuerse names, Cx.

provincias septuaginta octo,<sup>1</sup> urbes insignes trecentas septuaginta, flumina quinquaginta septem, gentes centum viginti quinque. Cujus orbis ambitus est trecenties<sup>2</sup> quindecies centena millia passuum. Longitudo vero terræ habitabilis ab ortu<sup>3</sup> usque ad occasum, id est, ab India usque ad columnas Herculis in Gaditano freto habet<sup>4</sup> octies quinquies centena septuaginta octo milliaria. Cujus quidem longitudinis dimensio compendiosior est per mare quam per terras. Latitudo autem terræ ab<sup>5</sup> australi littore oceani Æthiopici usque ad ostium Tanai fluminis in septentrione pene dimidio minor est quam prædicta longitudo, et continet quinquagies<sup>6</sup> quatuor centena sexaginta duo milliaria. Repertum est etiam quod profundissimus locus maris<sup>7</sup> Mediterranei continet spatium quindecim stadiorum in perpendiculo.<sup>8</sup> *Ranulphus.* Secundum Ptolomæum circulus continet quantitatem diametri ter, et septimam partem tertiæ partis; unde proportio circuli ad diametrum est sicut proportio XXII. ad VII. Ex quo colligitur quod rotunditas circuli terræ continet viginti millia et quadraginta milliaria; quæ quidem summa, cum divisa fuerit per tria et septimam partem unius tertii, quantitas diametri terræ erit, sex millia quingenta fere

<sup>1</sup> *septuaginta octo*] 68, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> So E.; *trecentas*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *ab ortu . . .*] est ab ortu et habet, C.

<sup>4</sup> *et habet*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *ab*] est ab, C., which places a

full stop after *septentrione*. So also D., punctuation excepted.

<sup>6</sup> *quinquagies*] quinquagesies, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *profundissimum mare*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *perpendiculo*] The remainder of the chapter (*Secundum . . . terræ*) is omitted in A.B.C.D.; added from E.

hullys<sup>1</sup> fourty, prouinces pre skore and eyztene, noble citees TREVISA.  
 pre hundred pre skore and ten, grete ryueres seuene and  
 fifty, dyuers naciouns sixe skore and fyue.<sup>2</sup> Þe roundenesse  
 of þe worlde aboute is pre hundred sipes and fiftene sipes  
 an hondred powsand paas. Þe lengþe of þe erþe þat men  
 woneþ<sup>3</sup> ynne from þe est to þe west, þat is from Ynde to  
 Hercules is<sup>4</sup> pilers in þe see Gaditan is eyzti sipes and  
 fyue sipes an hundred pre score and eyztene mile. But þe  
 wey from oon<sup>5</sup> ende to þat oper is wel<sup>6</sup> lasse by water þan  
 by londe. Þe brede of þe erþe from þe souþe to þe north,  
 þat is from þe clyue<sup>7</sup> of ocean in Ethiopia, þe londe of  
 Blomen<sup>8</sup> to þe mouþe of þe ryuer Thany wel nyh haluendel  
 lasse þan þe lengþe, and conteyneþ foure and fifty hundred  
 and two and sixty myle. Also it was i-founde þat þe dep-  
 pest place of þe see of myddel erþe conteyneþ doun riȝt fif-  
 tene furlonge depe. [R.]<sup>9</sup> Tholomeus seiþ þat þe rounde-  
 nesse of a cercle<sup>10</sup> aboute conteyneþ pre<sup>11</sup> so moche as þe  
 brede [and the seuendele of the brede],<sup>12</sup> so þat þe propor-  
 cioun of þe roundenesse aboute of a cercle is<sup>13</sup> to þe brede  
 as is þe proporcioun of two and twenty to seuene. So it  
 is accounted þat þe roundenesse of þe erþe aboute conteyneþ  
 twenty powsand and fourty myle. 3if we deleþ<sup>14</sup> þe<sup>15</sup> somme  
 on pre and þe seueneþe parte of þe pridde, þe piknesse of þe  
 erþe þorw oute is almost sexe pousand and fyue<sup>16</sup> hondred

viiij. prouinces, nowble cites cccclxx., floodes l<sup>iv</sup>vij. The MS. HARL.  
 compasse of whiche worlde is iij<sup>c</sup>. tymes xv. tymes a c.m<sup>i</sup> 2261.  
 of passes. The longitude of the erthe habitable from the  
 este to the weste, that is from Ynde to the Pillers of  
 Hercules in the see Gaditan, hathe viij<sup>th</sup>e tymes v. tymes  
 a clxx<sup>ti</sup> myles and viij<sup>th</sup>e. The dimension of the longitude  
 of whom is more compendious by the see then by the  
 londe. The latitude of the erthe from the este syde of  
 the ocean of Ethioppe vn to the durre or begynnege of  
 a floode callede Thanay in the north is lesse in the halfe  
 then the longitude a foreseyde, and hit conteynethe l<sup>ti</sup>  
 tymes iij<sup>c</sup>. lxij. myles. Also hit is founde that the depeste

<sup>1</sup> montaynes, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> an c. and fyfe and twenty, Cx.  
 (Similar variations of expressing  
 numbers occur elsewhere often.)

<sup>3</sup> dwelle, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So also a; pylers of H., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> that oon, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> moche, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> clyf, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> blak men, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Added from a.

<sup>10</sup> acercle, MS., and similarly in  
 many other places.

<sup>11</sup> thryes, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Added from a and Cx. (There  
 is some variation in expressing the  
 words following.)

<sup>13</sup> a, MS., but cancelled by a dot.

<sup>14</sup> So also a; departe, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> þat, a.

<sup>16</sup> and fyue] foure, a.

milliaria, quia novem ad minus desunt de hoc numero. Et sic erunt sex millia quadringenta nonaginta unum. Proinde si hoc diametrum dimidiaveris, erunt a centro terræ usque ad superficiem ejus tria millia ducenta quadraginta quinque milliaria et quædam minuta. Ex quo liquet quot sunt milliaria a superficie terræ usque ad infernum, secundum quod infernus dicitur esse in medio terræ.

## CAP. VI.

*De orbis divisione.*

*Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro xvi. cap. viii.* Nota<sup>1</sup> quod orbis terrarum universus oceano cinctus in tres dividitur partes, Asiam, Europam et<sup>2</sup> Africam. Quem si in tres partes<sup>3</sup> dividas, Asia secundum numerum erit tertia, secundum magnitudinem erit dimidia; quæ tendens a meridie per orientem usque ad septentrionem oceano undique clauditur,<sup>4</sup> sed ab occidente mari magno finitur. *Beda, de Naturis rerum.*<sup>5</sup> Suntque<sup>6</sup> termini ejus ostium Nili fluminis in austro et

<sup>1</sup> C. begins thus: — [O]rbem igitur si in tres partes dividas, Asia secundum numerum, &c. So also D., omitting *igitur*.

<sup>2</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *partes*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *clauditur*] concluditur, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *rerum*] wanting in A.B.; added from E. The whole extract from Beda wanting in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *que*] So E.; *quia*, A.

myle,<sup>1</sup> for nyne myle lakkep at pe leste of pat somme. So pere schal be sexe powsand foure<sup>2</sup> hondred four<sup>3</sup> score and elleuene myle. Pan half pe piknesse of pe erpe inward and doun riȝt is pre powsand two hundred and fyue and fourty myle and somewhat ouer, as it were half a myle. So ȝif helle is in<sup>4</sup> myddel of pe erpe doun riȝt, me myȝte knowe how meny myle is<sup>5</sup> to helle. TREVISIA.

*De orbis divisione. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto-decimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.*

FOR pe delynge<sup>6</sup> of pe worlde take hede pat pe grete see of ocean byclippep al pe erpe aboute, and pe erpe is i-deled<sup>7</sup> in pre<sup>8</sup> grete parties. Asia is pat oon,<sup>9</sup> Europa pat oper, and Affrica pe pridde. But pese<sup>10</sup> pre parties beep<sup>11</sup> not alle euene and yliche moche;<sup>12</sup> for Asia, oon of pe pre, conteynep half pe erpe, and strecchep from pe south by pe est anon to pe<sup>13</sup> north, and is i-closed aboute with pe see of ocean; but he<sup>14</sup> endep westwarde at pe grete see. *Beda, de Naturis.*<sup>15</sup> His endes beep pe mouth of pe ryuer

place in the see Mediterrany or ocean conteynethe the space of xv. forlonges by a plumme of ledde. MS. HARL. 2261.

*Of the diuision of the worlde. Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo. Capitulum sextum.*

ALSO hit is to be attendede that alle the worlde cincte to the ocean is diuided in to iij. partes, Asie, Europe, and Affryke; whiche diuidede in to thre partes, Asia after nowmbre schalle be the thrydde part, and after magnitude the halfe, whiche goenge from the meriden or sowthe by the este vn to the northe, is compassede on euery syde with the ocean, and in the weste hit is finischede with the grete see. *Beda, de Naturis.* The termes of whom be the begynnenge and durre of a floode callede Nilus in the sowthe, descendenge by the northe ocean and water

<sup>1</sup> fyue hondred four score and enleuen myle, Cx. (also he omits all that follows, till *Thenne half, &c.*)

<sup>2</sup> fyue, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; nyne, MS.

<sup>4</sup> in pe, a.

<sup>5</sup> it is, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> departing, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> departed, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> aþre yn þre, a.

<sup>9</sup> Asia that is oon part, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> the, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> ben, Cx., and similarly elsewhere.

<sup>12</sup> euen lyke moche, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> eeste vnto, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> it, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> nature, MS.



amnis Tanais in aquilone. *Isidorus, libro quarto-decimo, capitulo quarto.* Altera pars, Europa, a fluvio Tanai descendens per septentrionalem oceanum in fines Hispaniæ porrecta ab oriente et meridie, mari magno jungitur, et in Gades insula finitur. *Item, Isidorus, capitulo quinto.* Tertia pars, Africa, protenditur ab occidente in meridiem usque in finem Ægypti. Et hæ<sup>1</sup> duæ partes, Africa et Europa, inter se marino brachio distinguuntur. *Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* Cujus marini brachii<sup>2</sup> fauces originales<sup>3</sup> quindecim millia passuum habent in longitudine, et quinque millia passuum in latitudine,<sup>4</sup> a quibus faucibus mare mediterraneum exoriens per varia brachia introrsus versus terram distenditur.

## CAP. VII.

*De partium orbis descriptione.*<sup>5</sup>

*Plinius, libro sexto.* Tenendum<sup>6</sup> est quod Asia sit<sup>7</sup> quantitate maxima,<sup>8</sup> Europa<sup>9</sup> minor, sed par est<sup>10</sup> in populorum numerosa generositate; Africa vero et situ

<sup>1</sup> *Ægypti.* Et hæ] Ægypti protenditur. Hæ, &c., C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *marini brachii*] om. D.; interlin. in C.

<sup>3</sup> *originales*] om. C.

<sup>4</sup> B. omits *et quinque . . . latitudine.* C. reads thus after *latitudine*:—*Idem.* Mare mediterraneum surgens per varia brachia distenditur." D. has *indeque* for *idem*,

<sup>5</sup> The title added from E.

<sup>6</sup> C. and D. begin thus:—"Asia quantitate maxima, Europa minor, &c."

<sup>7</sup> *sit*] partium terræ, add. B.

<sup>8</sup> *magna*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Europa*] vero, add. B.

<sup>10</sup> *est*] om. C.D.

Nilus in þe souþ, and of þe ryuer Thanays in þe norþe. TREVISA.  
 [That other parte, Europa, stretcheth downward fro the  
 riuier Thanays by the northe]<sup>1</sup> ocean to þe costes of  
 Spayne, and ioynep to þe grete see by este and by south,  
 and endep in þe Ilond Gades. *Isidorus, libro quarto de-*  
*cimo, capitulo quarto.* Affrica, þe pridde parte, strecchep  
 from the west to þe southe, anon to<sup>2</sup> þe coste of Egipte,  
 and pese tweie parties, Affrica and Europa, bep departed  
 atweyne<sup>3</sup> by þe<sup>4</sup> arme of þe see. *Plinius, libro tertio,*  
*capitulo primo.* Þe mouthes of þe<sup>5</sup> arme conteyneþ fiftene  
 þowsand paas in lengþe, and fyue þowsand paas in brede;  
 and of pilke mouþes þe<sup>6</sup> see of myddel erþe bygynnep,  
 and by dyuers armes spredep and wexep inward the  
 londes.

*De partium orbis descriptione. Plinius, libro sexto;*  
*Priscianus in Cosmographia. Capitulum septimum.*

ASIA is most in quantite, Europa is lasse, and pere<sup>7</sup>  
 in noubre of peple; bot Africa is lest of alle þe pre

of Thanais in the northe. *Isidorus, libro 14, capitulo* MS. HARL.  
*quarto.* Europa, that other parte, from the floode callede 2261.  
 Thanay, descendenge from the northe ocean extendede from  
 the este and meriden in to the costes of Speyne is ioynede  
 to the grete see and finischede in an yle callede Gades. *Isi-*  
*dorus, capitulo quinto.* The thridde parte, which is Affrica,  
 is protendede from the weste in to the meriden in to the  
 coste of Egipte. And these partes, Europe and Affrike,  
 be. dividede a sundre thro an arme of the see. *Plinius, libro*  
*tertio, capitulo primo.* The chekes and begynnenges of f. 22 a.  
 those armes of the see haue in longitude xv. m<sup>l</sup> of passes,  
 and v. m<sup>l</sup> passes in latitude, from whom the see mediter-  
 ranee begynnege by diuerse armes is distendede towarde  
 londes.

*Of the Descripcion of Partes of the Worlde. Plinius,*  
*libro sexto. Capitulum septimum.*

Hir is to be holden that Asia is moste in quantite,  
 Europa lesse in quantite, but egalle in the numerous gene-  
 rosite of peple. Affrike is leste in quantite of partes in

<sup>1</sup> The words within brackets are  
 added from Cx. and a, which latter  
 reads *the ober*.

<sup>2</sup> *southe vnto*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *a sounder*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *an*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *that*, Cx. and a.

<sup>6</sup> *of þe*, MS. a; txt, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *lyke*, Cx.

et populis<sup>1</sup> partium est minima. *Priscianus*, in *Cosmographia*. Idcirco<sup>2</sup> qui res humanas evidentius agnoverunt duas tantum orbis partes accipiendas censuerunt,<sup>3</sup> scilicet Asiam solummodo<sup>4</sup> et Europam; Africam vero censuerunt Europæ finibus deputandam, quia et<sup>5</sup> spatio latitudinis eget et<sup>6</sup> malo climati subjacet, laborat quoque corrupto aere, feris, et venenis. Idcirco<sup>2</sup> qui eam tertiam orbis partem posuerunt,<sup>7</sup> non spatiorum mensuras sed divisionum rationes secuti sunt, et tanquam situ pessimo languidam partem ab optimis resekarunt. Itaque<sup>8</sup> Africa<sup>9</sup> natura sui<sup>10</sup> minus habet spatii, et inclementia cœli plus habet deserti. Et cum Africa sit modica, plus tamen<sup>11</sup> terræ in ea solis ardore quam in Europa frigoris rigore manet inhabitata. Cuncta namque animantia sive germinantia tolerabilius ad summum frigoris quam ad summum ardoris accedunt. *Item, Plinius, libro sexto.* Inde est quod Europa corpore majores, viribus fortiores, animo audaciores,

<sup>1</sup> *et situ et populis*] at the end of the sentence in C.D., which also omits *est*.

<sup>2</sup> *Idcirco*] *ideo*, C.D. (twice.)

<sup>3</sup> *censuerunt*] *suaserunt*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *solummodo*] *tantummodo*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *quia et*] *et quia*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *et*] *om.* D.

<sup>7</sup> *qui eam orbis terræ posuerunt tertiam partem*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Itaque*] *Ita*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Africa*] *om.* D.; added in later hand in C.

<sup>10</sup> *sui*] *sua*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *tamen*] *om.* B.

parties bope in place and in noumbre of peple; and perfore somme men, pat knowe<sup>1</sup> men and londes, acountede but tweie parties of pe erpe onliche, Asia and Europa; and pey acountede pat Affrica longeþ to Europa, for Affrica is narwe in brede; and yuel doers, corrupte ayre, wyld bestes and venemous woneþ<sup>2</sup> perynne. Perfore pey pat acountep Affrica pe pridde part acountep not by space and mesure of lengþe and brede, bot by dyuerse disposiciouns better and worse, and departep Affrica from Europa and Asia, as a sore membre pat is nouȝt from membres pat beep hole and sounde and in good poynt at pe beste. Also Affrica in his kynde hap lasse space, and for pe sturnesse of heuene he hap pe more wildernes. [And though Affryca be lytil, it hath more wyldernes]<sup>3</sup> and waste londe, for grete brennyng and<sup>4</sup> hete of pe sonne, þan Europa, for all pe chil and greet colde pat ofte<sup>5</sup> is perynne. For why all pat lyueþ and groweþ may better endure wip colde þan wip hete; bote mesure rule<sup>6</sup> bope. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Perfore it is pat Europa norischep and bryngeth forþ men huger and gretter of body, myȝtier of strengþe, hardier and bolder of herte, and fairer<sup>7</sup>

TREVISA.

site and in peple. *Priscianus, in his Cosmographie.* Therefore men that hade euidente knowlege perceyvede ij. partes of the worlde to be taken, that is to say, Asia and Europa, deputenge or ordeynenge the partes of Affrike to be added to the costes off Europa. For Affrike hath the nede to the space of latitude, subiecte to an ylle coste and laboreng with a corrupte aier, with wilde bestes, and venom. Perfore men puttenge hit the thrydde parte of the worlde folowede not the measures of spaces but reasons of diuision, departenge hit as a wailenge parte in the wurste site and ordre from the beste places. Also Affrike of his nature hathe leste space and moste of deserte in the clemency of heyn. And with owte dowte thauȝhe Affrike be leste in quantite, ȝitte þer is moore grownde inhabitable in hyt thro the heete of the sonne then is in Europe thro rigornesse of colde. Truly alle thynges lyffenge or groenge accede moore tollerably to the hieste colde then to the hieste heete. *Plinius, libro sexto.* Perfore the cause is that men in Europe be more grete in body, more myȝty in strenghte, moore bolde in herte, more feire in beaute, then

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> kneve, α.<sup>2</sup> dwellen, Cx.<sup>3</sup> The words in brackets added from Cx. and α, which latter has he for it.<sup>4</sup> of, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Omitted in Cx.<sup>6</sup> ruleth, Cx. (not α.)<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; faire, MS.

specie pulchriores efficit populos quam Africa.<sup>1</sup> Nam radius solaris per continuam permanentiam super Afros exhauriendo<sup>2</sup> eorum humores efficit corpore breviores, cute nigriores, crine crispiores, et per evaporationem spirituum facit animo defectiores.<sup>3</sup> Et contra est<sup>4</sup> de septentrionalibus populis, in<sup>5</sup> quibus frigore exterius<sup>6</sup> poros oppilante pinguescunt humores; et inde fiunt homines corpulentiores, candidiores, et<sup>7</sup> interius calidiores, ac per hoc<sup>8</sup> audaciores.

## CAP. VIII.

*De mari magno sive Mediterraneo.*<sup>9</sup>

*Plinius, libro tertio, capitulo primo.* Est itaque<sup>10</sup> maris magni origo in<sup>11</sup> occidente apud Herculis columnas, ubi oceanus Atlanticus irrumpens<sup>12</sup> in terras facit Gadditanum fretum; (cujus longitudo in quindecim millia passuum<sup>13</sup> extenditur; latitudo vero in quinque millia expanditur;)<sup>14</sup> ad sui dexteram habens Africam,<sup>15</sup> ad lævam vero<sup>16</sup> Europam; indeque in maria interna diffunditur,<sup>17</sup> cujus termini sunt amnis<sup>18</sup> Tanais ad boream

<sup>1</sup> *Africa*] aut *Asia*, add. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *exhauriendo* after *humores* in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *animo defectiores*] *sicciores*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *est*] om. C.

<sup>5</sup> *de septentrionibus* in, C.; *de septentrionalibus* in, D.

<sup>6</sup> *exterius* after *poros* in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *ac per hoc*] et per consequens, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Title added from E.

<sup>10</sup> *Est itaque*] om. C.D.; *ita*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *in*] est in, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *irrumpens*] So, C.D.E.; *erumpens*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *millia passuum*] *milliaria*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *latitudo ... expanditur*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Africam habens*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *vero*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *infunditur*, D., and so C. originally, it would seem.

<sup>18</sup> *amnis*] *amnes*, C.D.



of schap, þan Affrica. For þe son beme al wey abideþ TREVISA.  
 vppon þe men of Affrica, and draweþ oute þe humours, and  
 makeþ hem schort of body,<sup>1</sup> blak of skyn, crips of heer,  
 and by drawing oute of spirites makeþ hem coward of  
 herte. Þe contrarie is of norþeren<sup>2</sup> men, in þe whiche<sup>3</sup>  
 colde wip oute stoppeþ smale holes and poorus, and holdeþ  
 the hete wip ynne; and so makeþ hem fatter, gretter, and  
 whitter and hatter<sup>4</sup> with inne, and so hardier and boldere  
 of herte.

*De mari magno medio, sive Mediterraneo. Plinius, libro  
 tertio, capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.*

THANNE þe grete see of myddel erþe bygynneþ in þe  
 west at Hercules pilers; þere þe see of ocean of Athlant  
 brekeþ out, and makeþ the see Gaditan. Þe lengþe of þat  
 see is fiftene þowsand paas, and þe brede fyue þowsand  
 paas, and hap in þe riȝt side Affrica, and in þe lefte side  
 Europa; and þerof springeþ þe ynnere sees. Þe endes  
 þerof is þe water Thany an þe norþ side, and Nilus in

in Affrike. For the beame of the sonne beenge continually MS. HARL.  
 by contynualle permanence on men of Affrike consumeþ 2261.  
 theire humores, causethe theyme to be more schorte of body,  
 more blacke of skynne, more crispedde in heire, also more  
 feynte in herte by the euaporacion of spirites: hit is  
 in contrary wyse of men beenge in þe northe partes; for  
 colde causenge opilation and stoppenge the poores ex-  
 terially causethe humores to be fatte, that makethe men  
 more of body, moore whyte, and moore hoote interially,  
 and by that moore bolde.

*Of the grete see or Mediterranye. Plinius, libro tertio,  
 capitulo primo. Capitulum octavum.*

THE begynnege of the grete see is in the weste, at  
 the pyllers of Hercules, where the ocean Atlantyke  
 brekenge vp to londes makethe the see Gaditan. The f. 22 b.  
 longitude of whom is protendede in to xv. m<sup>l</sup> of passes.  
 The latitude of hit is extente in to v. m<sup>l</sup> passes, hauenge  
 at the ryȝhte parte of hit Affrike, at the lyfte parte  
 Europe: after that hit is diffusede in to sees internalle.  
 The termes of whom be the water of Thanys at the northe,

<sup>1</sup> *bodyes*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *norþrene*, α.

<sup>3</sup> Omitted in Cx. (typ. error.)

<sup>4</sup> *and hatter*] omitted in Cx.

et Nilus ad austrum.<sup>1</sup> *Isidorus, libro nono, cap. vi.*<sup>2</sup> Mare magnum fluens ex oceanó vergit in meridiem, deinde in aquilonem,<sup>3</sup> ejus primus sinus Balearis funditur in Hispanias. Deinde sinus<sup>4</sup> Gallicus alluit<sup>5</sup> provinciam Narbonensem, mox Ligusticus urbem Januam. Post hoc<sup>6</sup> Tyrrhenus sive Ionius Italiam attingit; inde<sup>7</sup> Siculus, qui a Sicilia ad Cretam vadit; deinde Creticus, qui in Pamphyliam et Ægyptum tendit; inde Helle-spontus, qui versus septentrionem magnis anfractibus retortus; sed juxta Græciam apud Bosporum<sup>8</sup> in angustiam septem stadiorum restringitur, ubi rex Xerxes pontem fecit de navibus, ut Græciam invaderet.<sup>9</sup> *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.* Ibi tam strictum est mare inter orbes Asiæ et Europæ, ut alitum<sup>10</sup> cantus et<sup>11</sup> canum latratus, nisi ventus impediatur,<sup>12</sup> invicem audiantur. *Giraldus, distinct. prima, capitulo decimo.*<sup>13</sup> Mare illud strictum dicitur brachium Sancti Georgii quod urbem Constantinopolim præterfluit<sup>14</sup> ac

<sup>1</sup> *austrum*] lævam, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Sic E.; lib. xiv., A.B.C. The true reference is to Isid. *Orig.* lib. xiii. c. 16.

<sup>3</sup> *in aquilonem*] ad septentrionem, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *sinus*] om. D.; added in later hand in C.

<sup>5</sup> *alluit*] ambit, B.

<sup>6</sup> *hoc*] hæc, D.

<sup>7</sup> *inde*] deinde, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Bosporum*] Bosforum, A. &c., intending the incorrect form *Bosphorum*,

<sup>9</sup> *invaderet*] ingrederetur, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *alitum*] hominum, E.

<sup>11</sup> *et*] ad, B.

<sup>12</sup> *nisi ventus impediatur* after *audiantur* in C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *quarto*, B.C.D. The passage does not occur in the excerpts from either chapter, edited by Mr. Brewer. See Girald. *De instr. Princ.* pp. 186, 194. (Lond. 1846.) Unfortunately, the first book or *distinction* is not printed entire.

<sup>14</sup> *præterfluit*] præterluit, E.; prævaluit, B.

pe soup side. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto.* Pe grete see TREVISA.  
flowynge oute of ocean<sup>1</sup> turnep into pe soup, and pan into  
pe north. Balearis, pe firste greet hauen and passage of  
pat see,<sup>2</sup> schedep into Spayne. Pan pe oper mouth Gallicus  
passep by pe prouince of Narbon; pan Ligustius by Ianua,  
a citee; pan Tyrrhenus to Ytaly arechep;<sup>3</sup> pan pe hauen of  
Sicilia passep to Creta; pan pe passage of Creta strecchep  
in to Pamphylia and Egipte. Pere han pe streen<sup>4</sup> of pe  
grete hauene and moupe Hellespontus brekep oute abrode  
in greet wawes and stremes, and torneþ norþwarde. But  
bisides Grees at Bo[s]forum, he<sup>5</sup> wexep narwe and straiþte  
as pe space of seuen forlonge;<sup>6</sup> and pere Xerxes<sup>7</sup> pe kyng  
made ouer a brigge<sup>8</sup> of schippes for to passe in to Grees  
and werre pere ynne. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo primo.*  
Pere pe see is so narwe bytwene Europa and Asia, pat me<sup>9</sup>  
may hire in eyþer side oute of oper houndes berke, and  
foules synge, but<sup>10</sup> weder and wynde lette. *Giraldus, distinct.*  
*prima, capitulo decimo.* Pat narwe see<sup>11</sup> is i-cleped<sup>12</sup> Seint  
Georges Arme, and strecchep forþ by Constantinopolim,

and Nilus at the sowthe. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* MS. HARL.  
2261.  
The grete see flowenge from the ocean turnethe in to the  
sowthe, after that in to the northe, the fyrste end of whom  
is in to Speyne; after that hit floethe in to the prouince  
Narbonense; after that the bosom of pe water Ligusticus  
watrethe the cite callede Ianua; after that the see Tyren  
atteynethe to Ytaly. Then Siculus goethe from Sicille to  
Crete. Then the water callede Creticus in to Pamphylia  
and to Egipte. Then the see Elesponte retorte with grete  
passage turnethe to the northe, but abowte Grece, nye a  
place namede Bosforus, hit is restreynede in to the streyte-  
nesse of vij. forlonges where kynge Xerxes<sup>7</sup> made a brigge  
off schippes that he myȝhte goe in to Grece. *Plinius, libro*  
*sexto, capitulo primo.* The see is so streyte per betwene  
the costes of Asia and of Europe, that the singenge of  
bryddes and berkenge of dogges may be herde to gedre,  
with owte the wynde cause resistance. *Giraldus, distinct.*  
*prima, capitulo decimo.* That streyte see is callede the arme  
of seynte George, whiche flowethe abowte Constantinople,

<sup>1</sup> the ocean, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Cx. adds and.<sup>3</sup> archeth, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Sic MS.; stream, a. and frothens  
the streme, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Bofofnit, Cx.<sup>6</sup> furlonges, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Exerces, MS. and a.; Xerxes,  
Harl. MS. Here and elsewhere theclassical orthography is restored,  
when the word does not appear to  
be in a manner anglicised, e.g.,  
Affrica.<sup>8</sup> brydge, Cx.<sup>9</sup> men, Cx.<sup>10</sup> but yf, Cx.<sup>11</sup> place, Cx.<sup>12</sup> named, Cx.

orbis gemini<sup>1</sup> discrimen faciens tam Asiam quam Europam delambit. Ibi quoque est Insula Abydos.<sup>2</sup> *Isidorus, libro nono.*<sup>3</sup> Indeque pontus diffusus versus septentrionem facit Propontidem. Inde etiam stringitur<sup>4</sup> in secentos passus et fit Thracius; inde<sup>5</sup> Ponticus sinus amplissimus qui<sup>6</sup> ab aquilone allambens<sup>7</sup> Thraciam et Moesiam<sup>8</sup> extenditur versus<sup>9</sup> Mœotides paludes; ibique recipit fluvium Tanaim,<sup>10</sup> inde versus orientem expansus transit juxta Asiam minorem usque ad fines Iberiæ et Armeniæ, quod quidem mare dicitur Euxinum. *Isidorus, libro nono.*<sup>11</sup> Et est illud mare dulcius, brevius, nebulosius propter accurrentia undique<sup>12</sup> flumina. In quo quidem amplo<sup>13</sup> sinu sunt insulæ Colchos,<sup>14</sup> Patmos et aliæ.<sup>15</sup> *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo quinto.*<sup>16</sup> Nec refluit Ponticus sinus sicut<sup>17</sup> cætera maria, sed semper fluit in Propontidem et Hellespontum. *Ranulphus.*<sup>18</sup> Cujus rei causa poterit esse quod impetus fluminum a tergo labentium<sup>19</sup> urgent<sup>20</sup> pontum Euxinum<sup>21</sup> ad continuum fluxum. Nec valet æstus Helles-

<sup>1</sup> *gemini*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *Insula Abydos*] This is clearly Higden's text, whose error is due to Isidore (*Orig.* xiv. 6). C. and D. have *Aludos*, by a clerical error.

<sup>3</sup> B. does not notice that a new quotation begins.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam stringitur*] et constringitur, C.

<sup>5</sup> *inde*] Sic C.D.E.; unde, A.

<sup>6</sup> *qui*] Sic C.D.E.; quia, A.

<sup>7</sup> *aquilone*] occidente gyraus, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Moesiam*] Misiam, or Missiam, MSS., and similarly the versions.

<sup>9</sup> *extenditur versus*] ad aquilonem tangit, D., and so probably C. originally, in which corrections are made in a later hand.

<sup>10</sup> *et fluvium Thanay recipit*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> The title of the extract is omitted in C.D.E. B. has 14<sup>o</sup>. Neither the 9th nor 14th book seems to be had in view.

<sup>12</sup> *undique*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *amplo*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Chalcia* is probably intended. Trevisa has *Calchos*. Nothing in Isid. lib. ix. corresponds to this.

<sup>15</sup> *aliæ*] quædam aliæ, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> The book only (not the chapter) cited in A.B.C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *sicut*] ut, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> C. and D. omit *Ranulphus*.

<sup>19</sup> *labentium*, D.

<sup>20</sup> *urget*, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *Euxinum*] om. C.D.

and bytwene Europa and Asia; and in þat see is þe Ilond TREVISA.  
 Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þanne þe see schedep norþ-  
 ward, and makeþ þe see Propontides. Þenne he narweþ to  
 þe narwenesse of sex hondred paas, [and]<sup>1</sup> is þe se<sup>2</sup> Trach.  
 Þanne þe grete see<sup>3</sup> Ponticus þat passeþ by north by Thracia  
 and Mœsia, streccheþ to þe wateres and marys of Mæotides,  
 and fongeþ<sup>4</sup> pere þe ryuer Thanays. Þenne he streccheþ  
 estward, and passeþ by þe lasse Asia, anon to<sup>5</sup> þe endes of  
 Iberia and Armenye. And þat see is i-cleped<sup>6</sup> Euxinum.  
*Isidorus, libro nono.* And þat see is swetter, schorter,  
 and more mysty, for fresshe ryueres al aboute turneþ and  
 falleþ<sup>7</sup> þerto. In þat grete mouthe and baye<sup>8</sup> bep ilondes  
 Calchos, Patmos,<sup>9</sup> and opere. *Plinius, libro sexto.* And  
 þe see Ponticus floweþ not noþer<sup>10</sup> turneþ aȝen as opere  
 sees doop, but euere turneþ<sup>11</sup> into þe see Propontidem and  
 Hellespontum. R. Þe cause pere of is myȝte and strengþe  
 of ryueres and bakwateres, þat renneþ þerto, dryueþ forþ  
 þe see Euxinum alway in oon cours. And þe strengþe  
 and þe flood of þe see Hellesponticus, þat is fer from ocean,

compassenge abowte also as welle Affrike as Europe. There MS. HARL.  
 is an yle callede Abydos. *Isidorus, libro nono.* The see 2261.  
 callede Pontus, diffusede from þens towarde the northe  
 makethe the see callede Propontides. And from thens  
 hit is streynede also into vj<sup>c</sup> passes a[nd] causethe a water  
 named Thracius.<sup>12</sup> Then the see Pontike compassenge abowte  
 from the northe the londes of Thracia and Mœsia is ex-  
 tendede towarde Mæotides Paludes where hit receyveth the  
 floode named Thanay, which extendede towarde the este  
 goethe towarde Asia the lesse to the costes of Hiberia  
 and of Armeny, whiche is callede the see Eusyne. *Isidorus,*  
*libro nono.* That see is moore swete, more schorte for  
 floodes, accurrente on euery side. In the grete arme of  
 whom be yles callede Colchos, Patmos,<sup>9</sup> and oper. *Plinius,*  
*libro sexto.* The see Pontike reflowethe not as other sees,  
 but hyt dothe floe alle weies in to that see Propontides  
 and Elesponte. R. The cause may be assignede that im-  
 petuosites of floodes in the backe of hit constreyne the  
 the see Eusyne to floenge continualle, and Elesponte deriate

<sup>1</sup> Added from Cx., and α.

<sup>2</sup> þese, MS.; the see, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> the see, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> receyueth, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Asia vnto, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> named, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> renne and fallen, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So Cx.; bay, α.; þey, MS.,

which adds *and baye* after *opere* in the line following.

<sup>9</sup> Patmos] Pathmos, MS. and Harl. MS.

<sup>10</sup> ne, Cx., who omits *as opere sees* doop.

<sup>11</sup> renneth, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Tracheus, Harl. MS. Trevisa has also mangled the word.



ponticus, tanquam longius ab oceano derivatus, tam validum<sup>1</sup> impetum retorquere. *Isidorus, libro nono.*<sup>2</sup> Et sicut terra cum una sit pro diversis tamen locis et causis variis appellatur vocabulis, ita hoc mare magnum<sup>3</sup> pro diversis regionibus, insulis, oppidis, gentibus, quas allambit,<sup>4</sup> et eventibus diversimode nominatur.

## CAP. IX.

*De Oceano.**Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*<sup>5</sup>

MOLEM<sup>6</sup> terræ ambit oceanus in modum circuli oras terrarum circumplectens, alternisque æstibus accedit et recedit; respirantibus enim in profundum ventis aut revomit maria aut absorbet. *Plinius, libro secundo, cap. xcix.* Æstus oceani intumescit super Britanniam octogenis cubitis. Et magis deprehenduntur hi motus circa<sup>7</sup> littora maris<sup>8</sup> quam in alto pelago; quin et in<sup>9</sup> extremis corporum partibus<sup>10</sup> pulsus venarum magis sentiuntur quam in<sup>11</sup> medio corporum.<sup>12</sup> Omnis autem<sup>13</sup> æstus

<sup>1</sup> *tam validum*] tantum, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> 14<sup>o</sup>. B. The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 16.

<sup>3</sup> C. and D. add *sive Mediterraneum*.

<sup>4</sup> *quas allambit*] om. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *quarto decimo*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 15.

<sup>6</sup> C. and D. begin thus:—"Oceanus in circuli modum ambit orbem oras," etc.

<sup>7</sup> *circa*] juxta, B.

<sup>8</sup> *maris*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *et in*] om. A.; added from C. D.E.; *et*, om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *partibus*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *in*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> *quam in medio corporum*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *autem*] etiam, E.; quoque, C.D.

may nouȝt wiȝstonde þe course and þe strengþe of þe strong stremes þat rennep<sup>1</sup> þat course. *Isidorus, libro nono.* TREVISIA.  
 As þe erpe þat is oon haȝ dyuerse names by cause of dyuers [places, so the<sup>2</sup> grete see by cause of dyuerse]<sup>3</sup> kyngdoms, ylondes, peple, citees, and townes þat he<sup>4</sup> passeȝ by, and happes þat falleȝ perynne is dyuersliche i-nempned<sup>5</sup> and haȝ dyuers names.

*De oceano. Isidorus, libro decimo tertio. Capitulum nonum.*

THE see of ocean byclippeȝ al þe erpe aboute as a garlond, and by tymes comeȝ and goȝ ebbynge and flowynge, and sweloweȝ<sup>6</sup> in sees, and casteȝ hem vp; and wyndes bloweȝ perynne. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo 99.* Þe hiȝe flood of ocean ariseȝ vp<sup>7</sup> þe costes of Bretaine foure score cubitis hiȝe. And þat risynge and depnesse is better i-knowe by þe cleues þan in the hiȝe see; for betynge of veynes is bettre i-knowe in þe vttre parties of bodies<sup>8</sup> þan ynward and<sup>9</sup> in þe myddel wiȝynne. Euerich flood arist<sup>10</sup> more in ocean

so ferre from the ocean may not returne ageyne that huge impetuosite. *Isidorus, libro nono.* And neuerthelesse, sythe the erthe is oon or londe, and callede in diuerse names thro diuerse causes and diuerse places, soe in lyke wyse the grete see is namede in diuerse maners for diuerse regiones, yles, cites, and peple that hit compassethe. MS. HARL. 2261. f. 23 a.

*Of the Ocean. Isidorus Eth. libro tertio decimo. Capitulum nonum.*

THE ocean compassethe the erthe in the maner of a cercle, foldenge abowte the regiones of londes, commethe to, and recedethe; the wyndes respirenge and restenge in the profundite of hit, auȝer hit flowethe furthe or retractethe the sees in to hit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo 99.* The heete and feruence of the ocean swellethe on Breteyne viij<sup>c</sup><sup>11</sup> cubites and moore, the movenges be deprehendede raper abowte the sides of the sees then in an oȝer hie see. For the pulses of the veynes be felede moore in the extremities than in the myddes of the body. Euary heete and feruence hathe more invndacion in the

<sup>1</sup> eorneȝ, a.

<sup>2</sup> þis, a.

<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx. and a.

<sup>4</sup> it, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> named, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> floweth, Cx. (typ. error.)

<sup>7</sup> vpon, Cx., a.

<sup>8</sup> the body, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Om. Cx.

<sup>10</sup> aryseth, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> A blunder for 80.

magis inundat in oceano quam in mari magno, sive quia totum in universitate sua<sup>1</sup> animosius est quam in parte, sive quia magnitudo patens efficacius sentit vim sideris lunaris quam angustia<sup>2</sup> coarctata. Quamobrem nec lacus nec amnes eo modo moventur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo.*<sup>3</sup> Oceanus in varios sinus infusus versus terram plerisque in locis interna maria pene tangit, adeo ut sinus Rubri maris qui Arabicus dicitur centum quinquaginta millibus passuum vix distet ab Ægyptio mari; Caspius vero sinus trecentis septuaginta quinque millibus a ponto distet<sup>4</sup> Euxino.<sup>5</sup> *Beda de Naturis.* Inter omnes sinus quos oceanus versus terras procreat, tres sunt famosiores. Primus est fretum Gaditanum sive Atlanticum, quod ab occidente erumpens<sup>6</sup> mare magnum in medio terrarum facit. Secundus sinus dicitur<sup>7</sup> mare Caspium, quod a Vulturno ingrediens dividit borealem partem Indiæ a Scythia, ac versus Euxinum mare tendit.

<sup>1</sup> *sua*] om. D.; interlineated in C.

<sup>2</sup> *angustia*] in angus. (i.e. angustum?), C., which as well as D. arranges the words in this clause otherwise.

<sup>3</sup> The true reference is to lib. ii. c. 68.

<sup>4</sup> *distet* at the end of the sentence in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> C. and D. omit the extracts from Bede, Solinus, and Ranulphus, beginning again from Paulus: — *Sunt plures aquarum voragines.*

<sup>6</sup> *erumpens*] *irumpens*, B.E.

<sup>7</sup> *Secundus est*, B.

pan in þe grete see; þat is, for þe hoole to gidre is myȝtier and strengre pan any partie by hem<sup>1</sup> self, oper for þe hole ocean is grete and huge and fongeþ<sup>2</sup> more worchyng of þe mone pan eny partie by hym self þat is smallere and lasse. Þerefore lakus, ryueres, pondus, and opere fresche wates noþer<sup>3</sup> ebbep ne flowep as ocean dop. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo sexto*.<sup>4</sup> Ocean spredeþ and schedep in to dyuers mouthes and costes toward þe lond, and in many places wel nyh toucheþ þe ynner sees so nygh þat þe mouþe [þat is cleped Arabicus, and is þe mouþ]<sup>5</sup> and þe coste of þe Rede see [is fro the see of Egypte; but fifty thousand paas; also the mouth and see]<sup>6</sup> þat is i-cleped<sup>7</sup> Caspius is but þre hundred þre score and fiftene myle from þe grete see þat is i-cleped<sup>7</sup> Euxinus. *Beda, de Naturis*. Amonge alle þe mouthes and sees þat comeþ toward þe londe and out of ocean,<sup>8</sup> þre been most famous i-holde. Þe firste<sup>9</sup> mouthe and see haþ tweie names, and is i-cleped<sup>7</sup> Gaditanus and Atlanticus also. Þe secunde is i-cleped<sup>7</sup> Caspius, and entreþ toward þe norþ est,<sup>10</sup> and departeþ by twene þe norþside of Inde<sup>11</sup> and Scythia þat londe, and so<sup>12</sup> strecheþ toward þe grete mouþe and see þat is i-cleped

TREVISA.

---

ocean then in the grete see. The cause is for euery thyng MS. HARL. 2261.  
is of more animosite and audacite in his vniversalle then his parte parcialle. And also for the patente magnitude felethe by more efficacite the strenȝhte of þe moone then a see coartate; wherefore a lake and other waters be not y-movede in that maner. *Plinius, libro 2º, capitulo 7º*. The ocean infusede in to diuerse places towarde londes towchethe alle moste the entiere sees in many places, in so moche that a parte of the Redde see whiche is callede Arabicus is vnnethe distante from Egipte a c. lvi m<sup>l</sup> of passes. The see callede Caspius is distante by ccc. lxxv. m<sup>l</sup> passes from the see callede Eusyne. *Beda, De Naturis*. Amonge alle the armes of the ocean, that hit dothe cause, thre be of moste nowble fame. The firste is the see Gaditan, or Autlantike, whiche brekenge vp from the weste makethe the grete see in the myddes of the erthe. The secunde see is callede the see of Caspius, whiche goenge from the sowthe este, diuidethe the northe parte off Ynde from Scythia, and goethe from that to the see Eusyne. The thrydde is

<sup>1</sup> him, a.<sup>2</sup> receyueþ, Cx.<sup>3</sup> ne, Cx.<sup>4</sup> septimo, a. See the Latin text.<sup>5</sup> Added from a.<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx. and a.<sup>7</sup> called, Cx.<sup>8</sup> the ocean, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Om. Cx.<sup>10</sup> out of north east, Cx.<sup>11</sup> So a.; Inda, MS.<sup>12</sup> that, Cx.

Tertius sinus dicitur mare Rubrum, quod ab euro orbis intrans dividit australem partem Indiæ ab Æthiopia et Ægypto, indeque progrediens in duos sinus scinditur, quorum Persicus sinus aquilonem petit, Arabicus vero versus mare magnum petit occidentem. Hoc autem mare Rubrum nomen suum a roseo colore trahit, quem tamen non naturaliter habet, sed a vicinis littoribus, quæ sanguineo colore rubent, inficitur; ideoque minium acutum<sup>1</sup> et rubræ gemmæ inde leguntur. *Solinus*. Juxta mare Caspium sunt montes Caspii habentes in longum<sup>2</sup> VII. millia passuum, in lato<sup>3</sup> vix plaustro permeabiles; laterum saxa, liquentibus inter se salis venis, exundant humorem<sup>4</sup> affluentem. Qui constrictus vi caloris velut in æstivam<sup>5</sup> glaciem incorporatur, et ita labes nimia accessum vetat.<sup>6</sup> Præterea viginti octo millibus<sup>7</sup> passuum spatio tractus omnis peragitur. Humus arida sine præsidio sitit, et tunc serpentes undique confluunt,

<sup>1</sup> B. adds *est*.

<sup>2</sup> So A.B.E. Perhaps *longo* or *longitudine* (see Harl. MS.) may be the true reading.

<sup>3</sup> *latitudine*, B.

<sup>4</sup> A. has *et* before *humorem*.

<sup>5</sup> *æstivum*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *vetat*] *negat*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *millibus*] *milia*, E. *Millium* would be a better reading. See Trevisa.



Euxinus. Þe pridde moupe and see is þe Rede see, and comeþ of þe north est, and departeþ þe south side of Inde from Ethiopia and Egipte from pilke tweye londes. Þan þe Rede see streccheþ forþ, and departeþ in tweie mouthes and sees. Þat oon is i-cleped<sup>1</sup> Persicus, and streccheþ norþward, þat oþer is i-cleped<sup>1</sup> Arabicus, and streccheþ westward and toward þe grete see. Þe<sup>2</sup> Rede see is nouȝt rede of kynde, but aflascheþ<sup>3</sup> and wascheþ oon<sup>4</sup> rede clyues and stones, and so is i-died rede as a rose. Þerfore of þe clyues and strondes of þe Reed see is i-gadered vermylon and rede precious stones. *Solinus*. By þe see þat is i-cleped<sup>5</sup> Caspius beþp hulles, þat beþp i-cleped þe hilles of Caspi,<sup>6</sup> and haueþ in lengþe seuen þowsand paas, and in brede vnnep þe space of a cart wey. In þe sides of þe hulles of Caspii salt veynes mulleþ<sup>7</sup> and woseth oute humours, and moysture i-dried and i-clunge by hete of þe sonne ioynep and cleueþ to gideres, as is opere<sup>8</sup> glas; and somme<sup>9</sup> may nouȝt clymbe on þe hilles, þe wey is so slider. Also euerich drauȝt is ful drawe in þe space of eyȝte and twenty þousand paas; þe londe is drie wipoute socoure, and adders and serpentes falleþ

TREVISA.

callede the Redde see, which entrenge from the este parte of the worlde diuidethe the sowthe parte of Ynde from Ethiopia and Egipte, which takege his progresse from thens is departede in to ij. armes, of whom the<sup>10</sup> arme Persicalle, or of þe<sup>10</sup> cuntre of Perse, dothe aske the northe. The see of Araby askethe the weste towarde the grete see. That Redde see, takege his name of a redde color whom hyt hathe not naturally, but of nye places to hyt, whiche be redde like to the colour of bloode, where redde precious stones be founde. *Solinus*. The hilles callede Caspii be nye the see callede Caspius, as longenge to them, hauenge in longitude vij. m<sup>l</sup> of passes, in latitude vnnethe permeable with oxen, the stonys of whom as meltenge thro the veynes of salte mixte amonge theyme causethe an humor affluente; whiche compacte and constructe thro the heete of the sonne, is incorporate as in to yse, and see the slipper waye deneyethe commenge to theyme. That drye grownde thurstethe as with owte presidyde. Then the serpentes take

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> i-cleped] named, Cx. (twice.)<sup>2</sup> þis, a.<sup>3</sup> it flassheth, Cx.<sup>4</sup> on the, Cx.<sup>5</sup> called, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Caspii, a, and so MS. below.<sup>7</sup> mette, Cx.<sup>8</sup> as yse or, Cx.<sup>9</sup> so men, Cx.<sup>10</sup> þe . . . the] So Harl. MS., and similarly the MS. of Trevisa on this page has mulleþ and woseth; whence the inconstancy of the use of þ clearly appears, when they were written. See also p. 31.

ita ut nisi in hyeme accessus omnia negatur.<sup>1</sup> *Ranulphus*. Et secundum Marcianum portæ Caspiæ ferreis trabibus sunt obseratæ, quæ verno tempore serpentibus obcluduntur;<sup>2</sup> et secundum Magistrum in historiis<sup>3</sup> ad preces Alexandri Magni, hi montes invicem<sup>4</sup> cohæserunt.<sup>5</sup> *Paulus*, in *Historia Longobardorum*, libro primo.<sup>6</sup> Sunt etiam plures aquarum voragines sive vortigines juxta marium margines<sup>7</sup> e quibus duæ sunt in mari mediterraneo inter Italiam et Siciliam, Scylla scilicet et Charybdis, de quibus Virgilius loquitur —

Dextrum Scylla latus, lævum implacata Charybdis.<sup>8</sup> Sunt et aliæ voragines in oceano, quarum una in occidentali littore Britanniae minoris<sup>9</sup> umbilicus<sup>10</sup> maris dicitur; alia quoque inter Britanniam et Galliciam,<sup>11</sup> quæ bis in die naturali fluctus sorbere et rursus evomere navesque attrahere et rejicere tanta velocitate dicuntur, ut sagittarum lapsum imitari videantur.

<sup>1</sup> So A.B.E. The syntax requires *negetur*; but the error may be Higden's own.

<sup>2</sup> *obscinduntur*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Magistrum historiarum*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *ad invicem*, B.

<sup>5</sup> So B.E.; *sunt* (for *sibi*?) *adhæserunt*, A.

<sup>6</sup> The extract from *Paulus* is wanting in A.; down to *Charybdis*

added from E.; B. omits the title of the extract, and begins it (after Charybdis) thus: *Sunt et aliæ, &c.*

<sup>7</sup> *juxta marium margines*] om. D.

<sup>8</sup> *implicata*, E. (*Obsidet* governs these accusatives, *Æn.* iii. 421.)

<sup>9</sup> *minoris*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Sic C.; *umbilicum*, A.B.D.E.

<sup>11</sup> So the MSS.

perto; so pat, but it be wynter, pere may no man come perynne. R. Martianus seiþ pat þe<sup>1</sup> ȝates of Caspij beþ i-steke<sup>2</sup> wiþ yren barres, and in springyng tyme faste i-barred for serpentis and addres; and þe Maister<sup>3</sup> of þe stories sayth,<sup>4</sup> pat at þe prayeres of kyng Alisaundre Caspij hulles were i-closed and ioyned to gidres. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Pere beþ many swolwynges and whirlynges of wateres by þe see brynkes; tweyne beþ in þe see of myddel erpe bytwene Itali and þe londe<sup>5</sup> Sicilia. Dilke tweie swolwes beþ i-cleped<sup>6</sup> Scylla and Charybdis; of þe whiche spekeþ Virgil, and seiþ: Scylla is perilous in þe riȝt side, and Charybdis in þe lift side. Opere swelowes and periles of wateres<sup>7</sup> beþ in ocean; oon is in þe west clif of litel<sup>8</sup> Bretayne, and is i-cleped<sup>9</sup> þe nauel of þe see; þe toper<sup>10</sup> is bytwene Bretayne and Gallicia, and it is i-seide pat pese swelowes twyes in þe nyȝt and day sweloweþ ynne stremes and flodes, and casteþ hem vp aȝe.<sup>11</sup> Also he<sup>12</sup> draweþ in schippes, and casteþ hem vp aȝen,<sup>13</sup> as swiftliche as an arwe to a manis sight.<sup>14</sup>

TREVISA.

theire confluence to hyt on euery syde, in so moche that MS. HARL. 2261. commenge to theyme is denyede, but in wynter. R. And after Martian the ȝates of theyme be lockede with cheynes of yrne, whiche be stopped in the somer tyme with serpentis. And after the Maister in storyes, those hilles wente to gedre at the preyers of kyng Alexander. *Paulus, in historia Longobardorum, libro primo.* Also there be monye deiþe places of waters nye to the sydes of the sees, of whom tweyne be in the grete see betwene Ytaly and Sicille. Also there be other swaloes of the see in the ocean. Oon of theym is in the weste side of Briteyne the less, y-namede the navelle of the see. That oper is betwene Briteyne and Fraunce, whiche be seyde to deuoure waters and evomette theyme twyes in a day, drawenge to theyme schippes and puttenge theyme aweye with suche a swiftenesse, that thei appere to folowe the schote of an arowe.

<sup>1</sup> a. omits þe.<sup>2</sup> faste shette, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So Cx., (who has of historyes); maistres, MS.<sup>4</sup> sayth] Added from Cx. and a.<sup>5</sup> ilonde, Cx.<sup>6</sup> called, Cx.<sup>7</sup> water, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Om. Cx.<sup>9</sup> called, Cx.<sup>10</sup> other, Cx.<sup>11</sup> agayn, Cx. (not a.)<sup>12</sup> it, Cx.<sup>13</sup> casted hem agayn, Cx.<sup>14</sup> So the MS. (not, as usually, siȝt.)

## CAP. X.

*De provinciis Orbis. Et primo de Paradiso.*<sup>1</sup>

Quatuor  
flumina  
Paradisi.

CIRCA notitiam Paradisi terrestris tria potissime sunt advertenda ; primo namque quoad ejus existentiam seu conditionem quæritur an sit ; secundo quoad ejus positionem quæritur ubi sit ; tertio quoad ejus descriptionem quæritur qualis sit. De primo notandum est quod ejus existentia<sup>2</sup> attestantur quatuor ; videlicet narrationes historiarum,<sup>3</sup> quæ comparant Paradiso loca Sodomæ antequam subverteretur. Secundo, testimonia expertorum, qui se vidisse locum illum scripserunt. Tertio, quatuor flumina inde exeuntia, quorum origo in nostro habitabili nec in mari nec in fonte uspiam reperitur, cum tamen circa hoc per reges Ægypti et alios frequenter fuerit elaboratum. Idcirco, teste Isidoro,<sup>4</sup> XIII. Etymolog., Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum quam auctores tradi-

<sup>1</sup> *Paradiso*] E. adds in the title : —“ Et opinionibus circa ipsum locum.” C. omits all after *Orbis*, and all the early part of the chapter (see below) ; and the rest also is so much transposed that its readings can be but imperfectly represented. D. agrees exactly with C. in its arrangement, and has not a single

various reading of importance, and, indeed, very few deviations of any kind.

<sup>2</sup> *existentiam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *historiarum*] Om. B., which has also *loci Sodomæ* before *Paradiso*.

<sup>4</sup> This extract from *Isidore* is substantially the same in C.

*De provinciis orbis; primo de Paradiso. Capitulum* TREVISA.  
*decimum.*

For þe knowleche of erpelyche Paradys þre poyntes moste be i-knowe. Wherefore þre questiouns beþ i-axed: þe firste questioun axep,<sup>1</sup> 3if eny suche place is on erpe? þe secounde axip,<sup>1</sup> Whiderwarde or where is Paradys in erpe? þe þridde askep,<sup>1</sup> What contraye or what place<sup>2</sup> is Paradys in erpe? For þe firste, foure manere witnesses we haueþ þat Paradys is in erpe; first stories þat likenþ Sodom, or<sup>3</sup> hit were ouertorned, to Paradise; þe secounde witnes is of<sup>4</sup> hem þat assaiede and<sup>5</sup> write and seide, þat þey had i-seie<sup>6</sup> þat place; þe þridde witnesse beþ<sup>7</sup> þe foure ryueres, þat rennep out of Paradyse; for þe heed of pilke ryueres beþ nouȝt i-founde in see, noþer in fresche water, noþer in londe þat men-woneþ<sup>8</sup> ynne, þeyȝ kynges of Egipt and many oper trauailled wel ofte and souȝte pereafter. Perfore Isid[ore], xiii. Eth., seiþ þat Hieronymus<sup>9</sup> toke hede þat ouper vnderstondynge bihouep of þe ryueres of Paradys, þan auctours writenþ;

*Of the Prouinces of the Worlde, and firste of Paradise.* MS. HARL.  
*Capitulum decimum.* 2261.

THRE thynges ar to be aduertisede principally as abowte the knowlege of Paradise. Fyrste hit is inquirede as vn to the existence of hit other<sup>10</sup> condicion wheþer hit be. In the secunde hit is inquirede as vn to the posicion of hyt where hit is. In the thrydde hit is inquirede in what maner hit is. Of the fyrste, hit is to be attendede that iiij thynges bere wyttensse to the beenge of hit, that is to say, narraciones of storyes, the whiche do comparate the places of Sodomye to Paradise afore the subuersion of theyme. In the secunde, the testimonies of men experte whiche haue writen theyme to haue seen that place. In the thrydde, iiij. waters flowenge from hit, the begynnenge of whom was not founde in oure partes habitable, neiper in the see, neither in eny other welle whiche hathe be laborede by diuerse kynges of Egipte and other men ofte tymes. Therefore, Isidorus wyttensse xiiij<sup>o</sup>. Eth., Seynte Ierom perceyvethe other wise of the floodes of Paradise then other auctores

<sup>1</sup> *a.* has the same variations of spelling; Cx. has *axeth* in all three places.

<sup>2</sup> *contray and place*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *er*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *witnessip of*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *and*] om. Cx., who has *wrote*.

<sup>6</sup> *seen*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So *a.*; *wytnes ben*, Cx.; *wit-nessip that beþ*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *dvelle*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Ieronimus*, MS., and so often; *Iherom*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So the MS., but *or the* is probably the true reading.



derunt. Dicit<sup>1</sup> enim Basilius in Hexaemeron et Isidorus Etymolog., libro xiv., et Josephus, libro primo, quod de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ lacum efficiunt, de quo velut de fonte quatuor flumina nascuntur. *Petrus*,<sup>2</sup> *capitulo quartodecimo*. Quorum primus Phison qui interpretatur *inundatio* educitur in Indiam trahens secum aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangaro rege Indiæ, quod interpretatur *caterva*; eo quod decem flumina recipiat. Secundus fluvius dictus est Gyon, qui et Nilus, circuitque<sup>3</sup> Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius fluvius Tigris secundum Josephum dicitur Diglath,<sup>4</sup> quod sonat *acutum*, eo quod velox sit ut tigris, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus fluvius Euphrates, quod sonat *frugifer*, vadit contra Chaldæos.<sup>5</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*.<sup>6</sup> Salustius auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauniis<sup>7</sup> montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasi montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum flu-

<sup>1</sup> These extracts are more fully exhibited in C. and D., thus : *Basilius Hexaem.* Igitur de paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum, ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isid. lib. 4* (sic). De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat; dividitur quoque in quatuor flumina nascentia. *Josephus* li. 1. Nam Phison educatur in Indiam, Euphrates et Tigris in mare rubrum feruntur. Gihon vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit.

<sup>2</sup> The extract from *Petrus* is con-

tained in C. and D., but abbreviated. B. has 4 for 14.

<sup>3</sup> *que*] So B.; om. A.E.; *et circuit*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Diglath*] Dilath, E.; Diglat, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> The MSS. of text and versions omit *h* in the first syllable. In the former it is corrected.

<sup>6</sup> *quarto decimo*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 21. s. 10. This extract is also contained in C., but much altered.

<sup>7</sup> *Cerauneis*, MSS.

also Basilius, in Hexaameron, Ysid[ore], Eth. lib. quarto decimo, and Iosephus, libro primo, seiþ pat wateres fallynge of þe hizest<sup>1</sup> hille of Paradys makeþ a grete ponde, and out of þat ponde (as it were of a welle) þe foure ryueres springeþ. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* Of þe whiche foure ryueres þe firste is Phison, and is to menyng *ful wexynge of plente*; þat ryuer Phison passeþ into Inde, and draweth wip hym golden grauel. Phison hap anoper name, and is i-cleped Ganges of a kynge<sup>2</sup> of Ynde þat was i-cleped Gangarius; but Ganges<sup>3</sup> is to menyng<sup>4</sup> *felawschippe and companye*, for he fongeþ ten greet ryueres þat renneþ perto. Þe secunde is i-cleped Gyon and Nilus also, and goop aboute Ethiopia and Egipt. Þe pridde is Tigris, and, as Iosephus seiþ, Diglath also, þat is to menyng<sup>4</sup> *scharp*, for he<sup>5</sup> is swift as tigris, þat is a wel<sup>6</sup> swift best; and Tigris passeþ toward Assyria þat londe. Þe fourpe is Euphrates, þat is to menyng *fructuous and fruit berere*, and gop toward Caldea þat londe.<sup>7</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Þe moste certeyn auctor, Salustius, seiþ, þat pere comeþ a welle oute of Cerauneys, þe hulles of Armenye, and springeþ out at<sup>8</sup> þe foote of þe hulle þat is i-cleped Caucasus; and þat welle is

TREVISA.

have diffinede. Basilius in his Hexaameron and Isidorus, libro quartodecimo Eth., and Iosephus, libro primo,<sup>9</sup> that waters fallenge from Paradise make a lake, from whom iiij. flowedes hathe theire begynnege as of a welle. *Petrus, capitulo quarto decimo.* The firste floode of whom is calledde Phison, the invndacion of whom is educede in to Ynde, drawenge with hit grauelle of golde, whiche is callede Ganges off a kynge some time in Ynde Gangarius by name, whiche is called a cumpanye by interpretacion, in that hit dothe receyve x. floedes. The secunde is callede Gyon or Nilus, whiche compassethe Ethioppe and Egipte. The thrydde floode is callede Tigris, after Iosephus hit is called Diglath, whiche sowndethe scharpe, in so moche that hit is swifte as a tigre, and goethe ageynes Assiriones. The furthe is callede Euphrates, that sowndethe as plentucus of corne, whiche goethe ageyne men of Calde. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* Salustius, the moste certeyne auctor, seythe that a welle is sponse from the highe hilles of Armenye, at the foote of the hille callede Caucasus, whiche welle is the hede

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 24 a.

<sup>1</sup> of heyzeste, a.<sup>2</sup> So a.; MS. askynge.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; Gangus, MS.<sup>4</sup> to say, Cx., who has, however, to menyng above.<sup>5</sup> it, Cx. (and so often).<sup>6</sup> ryght, Cx.<sup>7</sup> þe fourpe . . . þat land] om. Cx.<sup>8</sup> of, Cx.<sup>9</sup> seien, or some such word, has been omitted.

minum Tigris et Euphratis ; qui <sup>1</sup> aliquotiens separantur, aliquotiens inter se commiscuntur.<sup>2</sup> Sæpe a terra <sup>3</sup> absorbentur, et iterum emergunt;<sup>4</sup> et tandem post longum circa Mesopotamiam circuitum descendunt in mare Rubrum. *Ranulphus*.<sup>5</sup> Et Nilus licet legatur <sup>6</sup> a Paradiso procedere, quidam tamen asseverant ipsum oriri in occidentali parte Æthiopiæ non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam descendit per Ægyptum. De cujus proprietate vide infra, capitulo *Ægyptus*. Quarto existentiae<sup>7</sup> Paradisi attestatur fama diuturna. Nam famæ diuturnæ et illesæ multum est credendum. Sed fama de paradiso stetit inconcussa per sex millia annorum et amplius, quia a principio mundi usque ad dies nostros. Fama autem de re falsa cadere consuevit aut per oblivionem aut per contrariam opinionem. De secundo, quod est ejus situatio seu positio ubinam sit, non est putandum secundum quosdam brevis intellectus et paucae experientiae Paradisum esse regionem longo-

<sup>1</sup> quia, A.

<sup>2</sup> So B.C.E. ; *intercommiscuntur*, A.

<sup>3</sup> a terra] terræ, B.

<sup>4</sup> et iterum emergunt] et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> The whole of this long extract from *Ranulphus* is omitted in C. and D., except so much as is contained

in the following sentence, which closes the chapter : "Inde est quod  
" de ortu eorum varia leguntur ;  
" quod Ganges dicitur nasci in locis  
" Caucasi montis ; Nilus non pro-  
" cul ab Atlante monte ; Tigris et  
" Euphrates in Armenia."

<sup>6</sup> licet legatur] legitur, B.

<sup>7</sup> existentiam, B.

þe hede of tweie ryueres [of Tigris and of Euphrates, þe  
 whiche tweie ryuers]<sup>1</sup> somtyme beþ i-deled atwynne<sup>2</sup> and  
 somtyme i-melled<sup>3</sup> to gidres, and ofte tyme þey beþ  
 i-swelewed into þe erþe, and efte<sup>4</sup> springeþ up aȝen, and  
 longe after goop aboute Mesopotamia<sup>5</sup> þat londe, and doun-  
 ward into þe Rede see. R. And þey me<sup>6</sup> rede in bookes  
 þat Nilus comeþ out of Paradys, ȝit som men affermeþ  
 and seiþ<sup>7</sup> þat Nilus springeþ in þe west side of þe londe of  
 Ethiopia, nouȝt fer from þe hil þat is i-cleped Atlas,<sup>8</sup> and  
 goþ aboute Ethiopia and downward by Egipt. Loke<sup>9</sup> þe  
 propurte of Nilus in þe chapitre Egiptus. Þe fourþe wit-  
 nesse and preef, þat suche a place is in erþe þat is i-cleped  
 Paradys, is olde fame and longe durynge; for me schal  
 trowe<sup>10</sup> olde fame, þat is nouȝt wiþseide; but fame of Para-  
 dys hap i-dured<sup>11</sup> wiþoute wiþseiege<sup>12</sup> sexe þowsand ȝere  
 and more; for from þe bygynnynge of þe world anon to  
 oure dayes [it hap endured. And]<sup>13</sup> fame þat is false dureþ  
 nouȝt so longe, for it falliþ out of mynde, oþer is des-  
 preued by sopenesse i-knowe. Of þe secounde questioun, þat  
 axeþ in whiche side of þe worlde and in what place  
 Paradys schulde be; þey<sup>14</sup> schort witted men and litel of

TREVISA.

of tweyne waters, that is to saye, of Tigris and Euphrates, MS. HARL.  
 whiche be other while separate and oþerwhile commixte, 2261.  
 oftetyme deuourede of the erthe; and at the laste thei descende  
 abowte Mesopotamy in to the Redde see. R. And thauȝhe  
 men say that Nilus dothe procede from Paradise, some men  
 afferme hit to haue his begynnenge in the weste parte of  
 Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche com-  
 passenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, of the properte  
 off whom beholde with in the chapitre Egiptus. In the iiij<sup>the</sup>,  
 the olde fame berrethe testimonye to the existence of Para-  
 dise. But trewely the fame of Paradise hathe stonde as  
 inconcussede by vj. m. yeres and more. The fame of a  
 false thyng is wonte to falle auer by obliuion, other by  
 oppinion contrarious. Of the secunde, where it is, hit is  
 not to take to credence after some men of pover and breue  
 intellecte, and also of lytelle experience, Paradise to be a

Paradisus.

<sup>1</sup> Added from *a.* and *Cx.* Here, and commonly, the versions write *Eufrates*.

<sup>2</sup> departed *a sonder*, *Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> medlid, *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> after, *Cx.*

<sup>5</sup> *Macepotanea*, MS. and *a.*; *Me-sopotonya*, *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> men, *Cx.*, and so in many other places, where MS. and *a.* agree in reading *me*, *aȝe*, &c.

<sup>7</sup> affermen and saye, *Cx.*, to whom this plural seems unknown.

<sup>8</sup> *Athlas*, MSS. and *Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *Seche*, *Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *bileue*, *Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> endured, *Cx.*, and endureth for dureþ, below.

<sup>12</sup> *gayn sayeng*, *Cx.*, but *withseyde* above.

<sup>13</sup> Added from *Cx.* (not in *a.*)

<sup>14</sup> though that, *Cx.*

maris tractu a nostro habitabili distantem ac<sup>1</sup> usque ad lunarem circulum elevatum; quia hoc nec natura patitur nec ratio; quia, si separaretur a nostro habitabili, nec aqua nec aer tantam molem sufferre posset. Item cum elementum ignis occupet<sup>2</sup> totum intermedium spatium inter aereum circulum et lunarem,<sup>3</sup> constat ibi non esse Paradisum; cum nihil vegetabile ibi vivere posset. Item hoc dato locus ille sic elevatus induceret aliquando eclipsim lunarem, maxime in partibus terræ orientalibus;<sup>4</sup> sed de tali eclipsi nihil audivimus hucusque. Item si Paradisus separaretur a nostro habitabili, quomodo<sup>5</sup> tunc pervenirent ad nostrum habitabile illa quatuor flumina prædicta per tam vastum mare vel per aerem intermedium? Si autem dicatur quod Paradisus sit aliquantulum contigua<sup>6</sup> nostro habitabili, videtur quod terra non sit sphærica, sicut communiter descripta est a doctis; immo tunc foret oblonga. Sed hoc stare

<sup>1</sup> *ac*] et, B.

<sup>2</sup> *occupet*] So A.; *occupat*, B.E.

<sup>3</sup> So B.E.; *aerem et circulum lunarem*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *in terris* or., E.

<sup>5</sup> So B.E.; *qualiter*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *contigua*] So the MSS. A.B.E.

(C. and D. do not contain the passage). Either the text should be altered to *contiguus*, or, more probably, *regio* should be added after *sit*. It is possible, however, that Higden himself may have regarded *Paradisus* as a feminine noun.



assay seie pat Paradys is longe seillynge out of erpe<sup>1</sup> pat TREVISIA.  
 men woneþ ynne, and also departed from þe erpe and<sup>2</sup> hiȝe  
 as þe mone,—hit is not to trowynge;<sup>3</sup> for kynde<sup>4</sup> and  
 resoun boþe wiþseieþ.<sup>5</sup> For ȝif Paradys were departed  
 atwynne from þe erpe pat men woneþ ynne, noþer<sup>6</sup> water  
 noþer<sup>6</sup> aier myȝte bere suche a burþen. Also þe fuyre<sup>7</sup>  
 occupieþ al þe myddel space bytwene the aier and þe  
 mone, þan Paradys is nouȝt þare; for þan noþing myȝte  
 lyue perynne. Also ȝif Paradys were so hiȝe, somtyme it  
 schulde byneme<sup>8</sup> þe liȝt, and make þe clips<sup>9</sup> of þe mone;  
 but of suche<sup>10</sup> eclipse herde we neuere. Also ȝif Paradys  
 were so hiȝe, and departed in sonder<sup>11</sup> from euery oper<sup>12</sup>  
 lond and erpe, how schulde þe foure ryueres pat springeþ  
 out of Paradys passe by þe aier and þe wide see and  
 come in to londes pat men woneþ ynne? And ȝif me  
 seiþ pat Paradys is so hiȝe and in oon<sup>13</sup> place contynued<sup>14</sup>  
 to þe erpe pat men woneþ ynne, þan þe erpe is euen longe<sup>15</sup>  
 and nouȝt rounde al aboute, as wise men descryueþ hit;  
 bot pat may not stonde: for it is i-knowe by experience

region in grēte distaunce from this worlde habitable, eleuate MS. HARL. 2261.  
 vn to the cercle of the moone. For nature wylle not suffre  
 that, neither reason. For if hit were separate in that  
 maner from this worlde habitable, neither the aier, neither  
 the water, myȝhte susteyne suche a burdon and hevynesse.  
 Also sythe the elemente of fyre occupyethe alle the mydelle  
 place betwene the cercle of the aier and of the moone, where-  
 fore hit may be concludede Paradise not to be there, sythe  
 noo thyng vegetable may haue lyfe per. That grauntede,  
 that place scholde induce otherwhile the eclipse of the moone,  
 and specially in the este partes of the erthe; but we haue  
 not herde of such eclipse vn to this presente tyme. Also  
 if Paradise were separable from oure places habitable, how  
 scholde the iiij. flowedes aforeseyde atteyne to oure habit-  
 aces by so grete a see other by the aier intermediate? If  
 hit be seyde that hit is in a maner contiguous to oure place  
 habitable, then hit scholde appere that the erthe were not  
 rownde, as hit is describete of discrete men, but longe,  
 and by consequent hit scholde yelde a schado inegalle in

<sup>1</sup> þe erpe, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. adds *is*.

<sup>3</sup> to be bileued, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> nature, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Cx. adds *it*.

<sup>6</sup> ne, Cx., twice.

<sup>7</sup> So a. and Cx.; *ferþe*, MS. (clerical error.)

<sup>8</sup> *bynyme*, a.; *take away*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *make eclips*, a., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Cx. adds *an*.

<sup>11</sup> *asonder*, a., Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Om. Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *oo* and *one*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *it contynueþ*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *is enlong*, Cx. (typogr. error?).

Paradisus  
in extremis  
finibus  
orientis  
situatur.

non potest, cum constet per juge experimentum, quod umbra. terræ in omni eclipsi lunari faciat pyramidem rotundam; quare liquet quod terra cum suis partibus sit rotunda. Unde concludunt docti quod Paradisus terrestris sit in extremis finibus orientis, et quod sit magna portio corporis terræ, non minor quam India<sup>1</sup> aut Ægyptus, utpote locus toti<sup>2</sup> generi humano, si non peccasset, deputandus. <sup>3</sup> De tertio, quod est ejus descriptio, qualis sit,<sup>4</sup> sciendum est<sup>5</sup> secundum Isidorum, libro xiv<sup>o</sup>. capitulo tertio, quod Paradisi vocabulum de Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ*, quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum*. *Ranulphus*. Nec mirum; habet enim locus ille quicquid vitæ congruit. *Isidorus*, libro quarto decimo. Habet<sup>6</sup> enim salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus sentit nec æstum, in tantum quod quicquid<sup>7</sup> ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui<sup>8</sup> attestatur quod Enoch et Helias adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus*.<sup>9</sup> Habet etiam<sup>10</sup> locus ille

<sup>1</sup> *Iudea*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *toti*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> C. and. D. begin the chapter thus: —*Isid.* li. 4 (sic), cap. 3. Paradisus locus est in oriente longo maris tractu à nostro habitabili segregatus; ejus vocabulum à Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, etc.

<sup>4</sup> *sit*] est, B.

<sup>5</sup> *est*] om. A.; added from E.

<sup>6</sup> This citation from *Isidore* occurs near the beginning in C. and D.

<sup>7</sup> *æstum*; et *quicquid*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Cui*] quod, B.; *cui rei*, C.

<sup>9</sup> This extract from *John Damascene* is contained in C. almost verbatim. B. omits the title of the extract.

<sup>10</sup> *etiam*] So B.C.D.; et, A.E.

and assay, pat in euery eclips of pe mone pe erpe makep TREVISA.  
 a rounde schilde. Perfore pe erpe, wip alle his parties,  
 mote<sup>1</sup> nedes be rounde. And so wise men concludep pat  
 Paradys is in pe vttermest ende<sup>2</sup> of pe est, and pat it  
 is a grete contray<sup>3</sup> of pe erpe no lasse pan Ynde oper<sup>4</sup>  
 Egipte;<sup>5</sup> a place large and couenable for al mankynde to  
 wone ynne, 3if mankynde had nouzt i-synned. Of pe  
 pridde pat axep of Paradys, What manere place<sup>6</sup> it schulde  
 be, Isid[ore] seip, libro quarto decimo, capitulo tertio, pat  
 pis name *Paradys* i-turned out of Grew in to Latyn is to  
 menyng<sup>7</sup> *an orchezerde*. But Paradys in Hebrewe<sup>8</sup> is  
 i-cleped *Eden*, pat is to menyng<sup>9</sup> *likyng*; pe whiche  
 tweyne i-putte<sup>10</sup> to gidres makep *an orchezerde of likyng*.  
 R. No wonder, for in pat place is al pyng pat accordep  
 to lyf. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo*. Pere is helpe, for  
 pe aier is in tempre<sup>11</sup> no per to hote no per<sup>12</sup> to colde, so pat  
 no pyng pat leuep may deie perynne: pat witnessip Ennok  
 and Ely, pat 3it beep pere on lyue.<sup>13</sup> *Iohannes Damascenus*.

euery eclipse; but that may not stonde, sythe hit is provede MS. HARL.  
 by experience that the schado of the erthe in euery eclipse 2261.  
 of the moone makethe a rownde schado. Wherefore hit is  
 schewede that the erthe with his partes is rownde. Where-  
 fore prudent men conclude that Paradise terrestrelle is in  
 the extreme partes of the este, and that a grete porcion of  
 the erthe is per, not lesse then Ynde or Egipte, as a place  
 deputate to alle mankynde if Adam hade not synned. Of  
 the thrydde, that is the discripion of hit, what maner a  
 place hit is, hit is to be attended that after Isidor, libro  
 14<sup>o</sup>, capitulo iij<sup>o</sup>, that this worde *Paradisus* turnede from  
 Grewe in to Latyn, is callede *a yorde* or *a gardyn*. In  
 Ebrewe hit is callede *Eden*, that sowndethe *delites*,<sup>14</sup> whiche  
 coniuncte makethe *a gardyne off delites*.<sup>14</sup> R. And noo  
 meruayle, for that place hathe euery thyng that is con-  
 gruente to lyfe. *Isidorus, libro 14<sup>o</sup>*. Hyt hath salubrite  
 and wholsomnesse, for hit iogethe in temperaunce, felenge  
 neither coldenesse ne heete, in so moche that a thyng  
 lyffenge there may not dye. A testimony perof Enoc and  
 Helias lyve 3itte there incorrupte. *Magister Iohannes Da-*  
*mascenus, libro quarto decimo*. That place hathe also

<sup>1</sup> *muste*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *endes*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *contrey*, Cx.; *contrary*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *or*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Cx. adds *and*.<sup>6</sup> *place*] Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>7</sup> *is as moch to say as*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Hebrewe*] Added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>9</sup> *to say*, Cx. (and so generally).<sup>10</sup> Cx. here, contrary to his cus-  
tom, retains *y put*.<sup>11</sup> *is attemperat*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *ne*, Cx. (and so often).<sup>13</sup> *a lyue*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> The reading of Harl. MS. may  
be *delices*.

amoenitatem, nam universæ pulcritudinis erat promptuarium, ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Habet et jocunditatem, cui<sup>1</sup> attestatur fructuum dulcedo, sicut in Genes. secundo dicitur:<sup>2</sup> Omne lignum pulchrum visu<sup>3</sup> et ad vescendum suave. Habet et<sup>4</sup> securitatem cui attestatur loci altitudo.<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>6</sup> Ubi secundum Petrum, capitulo xiiij<sup>o</sup>, aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt; quod autem aliqui dicunt Paradisum attingere lunarem circulum, hoc dicit Alexander, non esse secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sic ejus incomparabilis altitudo et eminentia respectu nostri habitabilis excellens ostenderetur. Sed<sup>7</sup> heu quia, sicut dicit Isidorus, libro xiv.<sup>8</sup> capitulo tertio, loci illius aditus per peccatum primi hominis interclusus est. Septus est enim<sup>9</sup> undique rumphea flammea, id est,<sup>10</sup> muro igneo; ita ut ejus cum cœlo pene jungatur incendium ad

<sup>1</sup> *cui*] rei, add. C.D., and so below.

<sup>2</sup> In A., *dicitur* follows *pulchrum*, which gives a different construction. The versions agree with the text as printed.

<sup>3</sup> *visu*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>5</sup> C. and D. add here, *Beda*. Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum.

<sup>6</sup> The following sentence is much

altered in C. and D. B. omits the title *Ranulphus*.

<sup>7</sup> This and the following sentence are placed almost at the head of the chapter in C. and D., and very much altered.

<sup>8</sup> So B.E. This is the true reference. See lib. xiv. c. 3. A. and the versions give *ix*.

<sup>9</sup> *enim*] om. A.

<sup>10</sup> *id est*] So E. (and also C.); *et*, A.

Pat place hap faire weder and merpe, for it was pe celer TREVISA.  
 and place of all fairenesse: no manere of<sup>1</sup> tree leseþ pere  
 his leues; no floures pere welkeþ;<sup>2</sup> pere is merpe and  
 swetnesse; of fruyt and trees pat groweþ pere, Genesis,  
 secundo capitulo, it is i-write: Euerich tree perynne is  
 swete to ete and faire to siȝt. Perynne is sikernesse and  
 suerte, for pe place is hiȝe. R. Petrus, capitulo tertio  
 decimo, seiþ pat pe water of pe greet flood com<sup>3</sup> nouȝt in  
 Paradys. Ðei som men seiþ pat Paradys is hiȝe as pe  
 mone, pat is not soop in wordes and in dede; but pat  
 speche is i-saued by an excusacioun of spekyng, pat is  
 i-cleped yperbolica: so pat þei pat so spekeþ wolde mene,  
 pat Paradys in heyȝt passeþ all oper londes. *Trevisa.*  
 So we preiseþ a worldely<sup>4</sup> man Iordan or Iohan, and  
 seiþ pat he was pe beste man pat euere was; and ȝit he  
 was neuere so good as Crist. So in wordes pat sotil men  
 vole<sup>5</sup> deuyne, his menyng<sup>6</sup> trewe and good. But allas,  
 as Isidre<sup>7</sup> seiþ, libro nono, capitulo primo: Oure wey to  
 Paradys is faste i-stopped by cause of pe synne of oure  
 forme<sup>8</sup> fader; it<sup>9</sup> is i-closed al aboute wiþ a firen<sup>10</sup> wal, so  
 pat pe brennyng perof arecheþ to heuene, as som men

amenite. For hit is the pantre or place of alle pulcritude, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 where the trees of euery kynde loose not theire beaute,  
 floures fade not, hauenge in hit pleasaunte frute. As hit is  
 schewede in the secunde chapitre of Genesis, where hit is  
 seide, Paradise hathe in hit every tre feyre to siȝhte and  
 swete to cyte. Also hit hathe securite, to the whiche sey-  
 enge the altitude of the place berrethe testimonye. R.  
 Where, after Petrus, capitulo xiiij<sup>o</sup>, the waters of Noe floode f. 25 a.  
 atteynede not to hyt. That somme men seyde Paradise to  
 atteyn to the cercle of the moone, Alexander seythe that  
 not to be trawthe, but after a locucion iperbolicalle, that  
 the altitude and eminence scholde be schewede excellent,  
 and incomparable in the respecte of oure places habitable.  
 But allas, for as Isidorus seythe, lib. ix<sup>o</sup>, cap. iij<sup>o</sup>, the entre  
 in to that place was schut by the synne of Adam, whiche  
 is compassede abowte with a walle off fyre; in so moche that  
 the heete of hit is ioynede allemoste with heuyn, to remove

<sup>1</sup> a. and Cx. omit of.

<sup>2</sup> welwob, a.; fade, Cx., who has  
ne for no.

<sup>3</sup> cometh, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> erþe, MS.; erthly, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> wel, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> the menyng is, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Ysidorus, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> forn, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> a. omits it.

<sup>10</sup> brennyng, Cx.



arcendum homines; supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni, ad arcendum angelos malos.<sup>1</sup>

## CAP. XI.

*De Asia et ejus provinciis.*

*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* REFERT<sup>2</sup> Isidorus quod Asia ex nomine cujusdam mulieris Asiæ<sup>3</sup> illam quondam inhabitantis denominata sit. Continet<sup>4</sup> plures  
 De India. provincias de quibus hic per ordinem. India ab oriente ortu solis, ab austro oceano, ab occidente Indo flumine, a septentrione Monte Caucasio terminatur. In anno bis habet fruges, gignit homines tincti coloris, avem habet<sup>5</sup> psittacum, et elephantes,<sup>6</sup> piper, ebenum, ebur;<sup>7</sup> et lapides pretiosos, beryllos, chrysoprasos, carbunculos, adamantes,<sup>8</sup> et montes aureos,<sup>9</sup> quos tamen adire propter dracones et griphones et immensorum hominum monstra quasi impossibile est. Est autem India inter omnes

<sup>1</sup> C. and D. add, *rumphea autem arcet homines.*

<sup>2</sup> C. and D. begin thus :—Asia . . . denominata plures continet, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Asiæ] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> Continet] quæ continet, B.

<sup>5</sup> habet] om. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> Elephantes, gestantes ebur et lapides, etc., C.; elephantes, piper et calamus aromaticum, ebur, D.; elephantes, E.

<sup>7</sup> ebur] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> adamantos, A.

<sup>9</sup> C. and D. stop here till the extract from *Pliny* begins.

wolde wene. Paradys is i-closed wip pat wal to holde out mankynde; aungelles stondeþ on pat wal to kepe wel Paradys, pat none euel goostes mowe come perynne. TREVISA. —

*De Asia et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum undecimum.*

ISIDORUS seip pat Asia hap pe name, and is i-cleped after a womman pat woned perynne, pat was i-cleped Asia. In Asia beep many prouinces and londes, pe whiche I schal descriue and rekene al arewe,<sup>1</sup> and bygynne wip Ynde. Inde hap in pe est side pe sonne risynge, in pe south pe see ocean, in pe west pe ryuer of Inde, in pe north pe hulle pat is i-cleped Caucasus; and so Ynde is i-ended. In Ynde beep men of colour and hewe i-died. In Ynde is a brede pat is i-cleped phitacus, elephantis, peper, and a tree pat is i-cleped hebanus, euery, and precious stones,<sup>2</sup> berilles, crisoprassus, charbunculus,<sup>3</sup> adamantis, and goldene hulles, to pe whiche it is ful harde for to come for dragouns and grypes, and for dyuers manere of<sup>4</sup> men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Among alle pe londes of pis worlde Ynde is pe<sup>5</sup>

men, that thei comme not to hit, where cherubyn and other goode angelles be putte to remove ylle angelles from thens. MS. HARL. 2261. —

*Of Asia, and of the Prouinces of hit. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum undecimum.*

ISIDORUS rehersethe that Asia toke that name of the name of a woman, somme tyme inhabitenge in hit, whiche conteynethe mony prouinces, of whom hit schalle be expressede by ordre. Inde is terminate from the este with the rysenge of the sonne, of the sowthe with the ocean, of the parte weste with the floode of Ynde, and of the northe with the hille callede Caucasus. That lond berrethe twyes corne in oon yere, bryngenge furthe men of a spottedde colour, hauenge in hit nyzhtengales, elephauntes, pepir, precious stones, berilles, crisoprassus, carbuncles, adamantes, and hilles of golde. Neuerthelesse hyt is as impossible to go to theyme for dragones and grifynnes and other diuerse wonders of men. Ynde is moste amonge alle oper regiones

Of Ynde  
and of [the]  
mervayles  
of h[it].

<sup>1</sup> *al along*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *stones*] Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *charbonicles*, *a.*; *carbunclis*, Cx., who has *crisopassis* (sic) just before.

<sup>4</sup> *a.* and Cx. om. *of*.

<sup>5</sup> *a.* and Cx. om. *pe*.

De mon-  
struosus  
hominibus  
etpigmæis.

regiones orbis major, opulentior, potentior, populosior, et in stupendis mirabilior. Ibi enim ficus est tam expansa, ut sub unius fici latitudine multæ hominum turmæ possint<sup>1</sup> discumbere.<sup>2</sup> Hoc autem facit ubertas soli, temperies cœli, et abundantia aquæ. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo nono decimo.*<sup>3</sup> India multos habet reges et populos, quorum alii terram excolunt, alii merces evehunt, alii militiam<sup>4</sup> componunt. Alii sapientiæ et disciplinæ intendunt. Ibi sunt<sup>5</sup> arbores tam proceræ, ut cacumen<sup>6</sup> earum a jactu sagittæ vix pertingatur; internodium quoque arundinis in alveo navigabili ternos fert homines. Sunt et ibi homines quinque cubitorum, qui nec expirant<sup>7</sup> nec languescunt. Sunt<sup>8</sup> ibi satyri et homines monstrosi; sunt ibi et<sup>9</sup> homines cubitalis mensuræ,<sup>10</sup> pigmæi nuncupati, qui in quarto anno ætatis generant et in quinto<sup>11</sup> canescunt. Hi collecto agmine sedentes super arietes pugnant contra grues, quorum<sup>12</sup> nidos et ova confringunt, ne hostes contra se nimis

<sup>1</sup> So E.; *possunt*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibi . . discumbere*] placed in C. and D., with alterations, in the latter part of the extract from *Pliny*, ending thus: ut turmas hominum sub se recipiat.

<sup>3</sup> C. and D. contain first the extract from *Pliny*, as far as *intendunt*; then the extract from *Cicero*, then the remainder of the *Pliny* here given, a little altered and abbreviated. The authors of the extracts are not properly distinguished.

<sup>4</sup> *militiam*] A. adds *earum*.

<sup>5</sup> *sunt*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *cacumen*] acumen, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *expirant*] aspirant, B.

<sup>8</sup> *sunt*] sunt et, B.; sed ibi, D.

<sup>9</sup> *sunt ibi et*] So C. and D. (the latter omitting *ibi*); *quia sunt ibi*, A. B. E.

<sup>10</sup> *mensuræ*] staturæ, C. D., which have also other small variations.

<sup>11</sup> *quorum*] om. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *quinto*] *sexto*, D.

grettest and most richest,<sup>1</sup> strengest and most ful of peple, yn wonder and meruayles most wonderful. In Inde a crop of a figge tree is so huge<sup>2</sup> and so wide i-sprad, pat meny compaynes of men may sitte at pe<sup>3</sup> mete wel i-now pere vnder. Pat makep<sup>4</sup> goodnes of pe lond, temprure<sup>5</sup> of wedir and plente of watir. *Plinius, libro sexto, capitulo decimo nono.* In Ynde beep many kynges and peples; som of hem tilieþ<sup>6</sup> londe, som vseþ chaffare and marchaundise, som knyþthode and chyualrie, and som beep grete clerkes. In Ynde beep trees, pat haueþ coppis<sup>7</sup> as hiþe as me schal schete wip an arwe. Also of a gobet bytwene tweie knottes of a rede in Ynde me makeþ a boot, pat ouer depe watres<sup>8</sup> bereþ pre men at ones. In Ynde beep men of fyue cubites<sup>9</sup> long, pat euelep nouzt,<sup>10</sup> noþer<sup>11</sup> zildep vp pe breeþ. Also pere beep Satyri and oper dyuers men grisliche and wonderliche i-schape. Perynne bep men of a cubite longe, and beep i-cleped Pigmei; þese Pigmei geten children and gendrep<sup>12</sup> in þe fourþe zere, and horeþ<sup>13</sup> in þe fifte zere; <sup>14</sup> þei gadereþ a greet hoost and rideþ vppon wetheres and rammes to fiþte wip cranes, and destroyeþ her nestes and her eyren; <sup>15</sup> for þe cranes þat beep hir enemyes schulde not encrese and wexe to many. Pere beep

TREVISA.

moste plentuous, moste in peple, hauenge in hit moste mer- MS. HARL.  
uayles and wondres. There is a figge tre soe expande, that 2261.  
mony multitudes of peple may sytte vnder the latitude of oon figge tre. The plente of the sonne, the temperaunce of heuyn, and habundaunce of water do cause that. *Tullius de Tusculanis quæstionibus.* Ynde hathe mony kynges and peple. Somme peple tulle the erthe, somme vse marchandise, somme cheuallery, somme intende to sapience and discipline. There be trees of so semely stature that vnnethe the altitude of theym may be atteynede by the schote of an arowe, the space betwene ij. knottes of a reede makethe a bootte for iij. men. There be men also of v. cubites, whiche dye not, neither waile. Also there be men of the measure of a cubite called pigmeis, whiche gendre in the iiij<sup>th</sup>e yere of their age, and wexe hoore in the v<sup>th</sup>e: these men gedrede in a multitude, syttinge on wedres, fiþhte ageyne cranes, whose nestes and egges thei breke leste their enmyes be multipliede ouer hugely

<sup>1</sup> ryche, Cx.<sup>2</sup> grete, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Cx. omits þe.<sup>4</sup> causeth the, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So also a.; temperure, Cx.<sup>6</sup> tylleth the, Cx.<sup>7</sup> toppis, Cx., which may be right.<sup>8</sup> a depe water, Cx. (after at ones).<sup>9</sup> cubyte, Cx.<sup>10</sup> wexe not seke, Cx.<sup>11</sup> ner, Cx.<sup>12</sup> engenderen, Cx.<sup>13</sup> wexe hore, Cx.<sup>14</sup> a. and Cx. om. zere.<sup>15</sup> egges, Cx.

multiplicentur. Sunt<sup>1</sup> ibi gymnosophistæ philosophi, qui per diem<sup>2</sup> quasi immobiles irreverberatis oculis solem contemplantur. Alii quoque capita canina habentes dicti Cynocephali;<sup>3</sup> latratus edunt potius quam voces; ferarum pellibus vestiti, dentibus et unguibus armati venatu et aucupio vivunt. Alii sine ore frondium lanugine tecti solo odore narium vivunt.<sup>4</sup> Alii in juventute canescunt et in senectute nigrescunt. In quibusdam<sup>5</sup> Indiæ montibus sunt homines adversas plantas habentes et digitos octonos in manibus.<sup>6</sup>

Uxor sepe-  
lietur cum  
marito.

*Tullius, de Tusculanis quæstionibus.* Est quædam gens in India, ubi cuilibet viro licitum est plures habere uxores; sed mortuo marito conveniunt<sup>7</sup> omnes conjuges, et quæ ex illis comperta<sup>8</sup> est a vivente marito plus dilecta fuisse<sup>9</sup> illa cum marito mortuo sepelietur viva,<sup>10</sup> et hoc habet<sup>11</sup> pro solatio et præconio. *Petrus, capitulo cæcuj<sup>to</sup>.*<sup>12</sup> Arbores solis et lunæ sunt in India, de quarum pomis vescentes sacerdotes per quingentos annos vivebant. Dicebantur autem arbores solis, quia quamcito radius solaris sum-

De arbo-  
ribus Solis  
et Lunæ.

<sup>1</sup> *Sunt*] sunt et, B.

<sup>2</sup> *diem*] totum diem, C.D., which add et after immobiles.

<sup>3</sup> *Et alii cum caninis capitibus dicti Cynocephali*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Alii sine ore . . . vivunt*] Wholly omitted in C.; D. only omits *narium*.

<sup>5</sup> *quibusdam*] B. adds *vero*.

<sup>6</sup> *In quibusdam . . . manibus*] Wholly omitted in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> So A.B. (but the latter omitting *conjuges*), and D. (but omitting *omnes*); *convenient*, E.C.

<sup>8</sup> *comparata*, A.; *probata*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *a vivente plus dilecta extitisse*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *cum marito viva sepelietur*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *habet*] om. A.

<sup>12</sup> The extract from *Petrus* is omitted in C.D.



besy filosofres pat byholdep on pe sonne al pe day long. TREVISA.  
 Also somme hap hedes as it were houndes, and pe voys pat  
 pey makep is liker to an<sup>1</sup> houndes berkyng pan to a<sup>1</sup> manis  
 voys; pey beep i-cloped in wylde bestes skynnes and  
 i-armed wip hir owne teep and nayles, and lyuep by huntynge  
 and haukyng. Opere pere beep pat hauep no mouth, and  
 lyuep by odour and smelles, and bep i-cloped in mosse  
 and hery tuftes pat growep out of treen.<sup>2</sup> Oper horeth in  
 zonpe, oper<sup>3</sup> wexep blak in elde. In som hulles of Ynde  
 beep men pat hauep<sup>4</sup> soles of hir feet ouertorned and eyzte  
 fyngres in oon honde. *Tull. de Tusc.* 90.<sup>5</sup> In oo con-  
 tray of Ynde euerich man hap many wyfes; but whan  
 pe housbond is deed, pe wyfes schulle goo to gidres, and  
 loke whiche of hem was best i-loued of pe housbonde; and  
 sche schal be beried wip hym and putte<sup>6</sup> on erpe<sup>7</sup> quyk<sup>8</sup>  
 alyue; and in pat contray pat is acounted pe fairest hap  
 and [fortune, and also]<sup>9</sup> worschippe pat eny wyf myzte haue.  
*Petrus*, 196.<sup>10</sup> In Ynde beep trees pat beep i-cleped pe  
 trees of pe sonne and of pe mone; preostes pat ete of pe  
 apples of pilke trees lyued<sup>11</sup> fyue hondred zere. Pey were  
 i-cleped pe trees of pe sonne, for euerich of hem quaked

on theyme. Also there be men hauenge hedes lyke dogges, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 whiche be callede Cynocephali,<sup>12</sup> berkenge more like to dogges  
 then to the voices of men, clothede with skynnes of wylde  
 bestes y-armede with teithe and talaundes, lyffenge by haw-  
 kenge and huntenge. Also somme men lyve there onoly  
 by odour. Also somme of that cuntre wexe hoore in yowthe  
 and blakke in their age. Also in somme partes of Ynde  
 be men hauenge holowe fyngers in their hondes. *Petrus*,  
*capitulo* 196.<sup>5</sup> There is a peple in Ynde to whom hit is  
 lawefulle to haue mony wyfes; but, the man dedde, alle his  
 wifes comme to gedre, that wife that was luffedde beste  
 of hym schalle be buryede with hym, hauenge that for a  
 grete solace. *Petrus*, 196. The trees of the sonne and of  
 the moone be in Ynde, by the apples of whom prestes  
 lyffede by v<sup>c</sup>. yeres. Thei were namede the trees of the  
 sonne and of the moone, for as soone as the sonne sende

<sup>1</sup> a. om. an and a; Cx. has to  
 berkyng of houndes.

<sup>2</sup> trees, Cx., and so elsewhere.

<sup>3</sup> and, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Cx. adds the.

<sup>5</sup> The reference should be to Cic.  
*Tusc. Quæst.* lib. v. c. 27.

<sup>6</sup> i-put, a.

<sup>7</sup> in the erthe, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Cx. adds and.

<sup>9</sup> Added from Cx., who places  
 accounted after fortune.

<sup>10</sup> 19<sup>o</sup>, 6, MS. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> lyuen, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *Cenophali*, Harl. MS.

mitatem alicujus earum tangebatur, statim tota tremebat et responsa dabatur circumstantibus. Similiter et de arboribus lunæ fiebat. Per has arbores interdictum fuit Alexandro Magno, ne aliquando intraret Babylonem. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Ophir<sup>1</sup> est insula Indiæ, ubi est auri copia, ad quam de mari Magno<sup>2</sup> transitur per mare Rubrum.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. XII.

*Isidorus libro quartodecimo, capitulo octavo.*<sup>4</sup>

OSTENDIT Isidorus quod<sup>5</sup> Parthia regio propter invictam Parthorum virtutem, qui nomen suum Assyriis et Medis diffuderunt, solebat continere totam terram Assyriæ, Mediæ, Persidis,<sup>6</sup> Carmaniae; quæ extenditur in longitudine a mari Caspio usque ad mare Rubrum, et in latitudine ab Indo flumine usque ad flumen<sup>7</sup> Tigris, quod est principium Mesopotamiæ. *Trogus,*

<sup>1</sup> *Ophir*] *Offir*, A.B.D.; *Offyr*, E.; *Ofir*, C.—C. and D. omit the *est* following.

<sup>2</sup> *Mediterraneo*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *navigio*, add. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> The text and versions are both erroneous. The true reference is to *Isid. lib. xiv. c. 3. § 8.* (Op. vol. iv. p. 145. Ed. Arev.)

<sup>5</sup> The first three words omitted in B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Persidis*] *Persidæ*, A.C.E. This barbarous form occurs elsewhere in the MSS. of the text and versions, but is corrected in the text.

<sup>7</sup> So B.C.D.E.; *fluvium*, A.

and schoke as sone as þe sonne beem touched his cop;<sup>1</sup> and answered men þat stood aboute. Þe same doyng was of þe trees of [þe]<sup>2</sup> mone. By þese trees þe grete kyng Alexander<sup>3</sup> was forbode, þat he schulde neuere come in Babylon. *Isidorus libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an ylond of Ynde; þerynne is greet plente of golde, and þe passage þerto out of þe grete see<sup>4</sup> is by þe Rede see.

*De Parthia. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum duodecesimum.*

ISIDORUS scheweth þat Parthia<sup>5</sup> þat kyngdom, for myzt and strengþe of men of þat lond, þat her name spredde into þe londes Assyria<sup>6</sup> and Media, and<sup>7</sup> was i-woned<sup>8</sup> to conteyne al þe lond of foure contrees, of Assyria, of Media, of Persida,<sup>9</sup> and of Carmania; þe which lond Parthia streccheth in lengþe from þe see þat is i-cleped Caspius anon to þe<sup>10</sup> Rede see; and in brede from the ryuer of Ynde to þe ryuer þat is i-cleped Tigris. Þat is þe bygynnyng of þe lond þat is i-cleped Mesopotamia. *Trogus, libro decimo, capitulo*

further his beames and towchede the altitude of eny of theyme, alle the tre movede and safe answeres to men stondenge abowte. Hit was doen in lyke wyse to the trees of the moone. Hit was interdicted by those trees to kyng Alexander, that he schulde not entre in to Babylon. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Offir is an yle off Ynde, where is plente of golde, to whom hit is goen from the grete see by the Redde see.

*Of Parthia. Isidorus, libro 14º. Capitulum duodecesimum.*

ISIDORUS scheweth that the region callede Parthia for the vertu invincible of men of that region, whiche diffusede theire name to men of Assyria and of Media, was wonte to conteyne alle the londe of Assyria, of Media, of Persida, and of Carmania, whiche is extendede in longitude from the see Caspius vn to the Redde see, and in latitude from the floode of Inde vn to the floode of Tigris, whiche is the begynnyng of Mesopotamy. *Trogus, libro quinto.* Men of Parthia be

<sup>1</sup> *toppe*, Cx. (and possibly this may be the MS. reading.)

<sup>2</sup> *þe*] Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Alysandre*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *þe grete see*] *Grece*, Cx. (confusing *c* and *t*.)

<sup>5</sup> The MS. looks like *Parchia*, and so Cx. prints it; but *c* and *t*

are identical (or nearly so) in MSS.

<sup>6</sup> *cf Assyria*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *and*] Added from Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *wonnte*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Cx. omits *of* before *Media* and *Persida*.

<sup>10</sup> *Caspius vnto the*, Cx.

Parthi. *libro xlvj*.<sup>1</sup> Parthi Scythico<sup>2</sup> sermone *exules* dicuntur; nam in primis Scytharum exules fuerunt, et regno a Medis ad Persas translato quasi præda victorum extiterunt. Unde et inter orientales populos usque ad Macedonicum regnum obscuri mansere. Deinde triumphato per Macedones oriente Macedonibus servierunt, sed tandem cum Romanis imperium orbis<sup>3</sup> diviserunt. Hi mores Scytharum, de quibus pulsati fuerant, contraxerunt; unde et illis sunt arma plumæ,<sup>4</sup> ingenia tumida, seditiosa, fraudulenta. Quippe viris violentiam, mulieribus mansuetudinem deputant. Semper aut in domesticos aut in externos motus eorum sunt inquieti. Natura sunt taciti, ad faciendum magis quam ad loquendum prompti. Proinde secunda<sup>5</sup> sicut adversa silentio tegunt, principibus metu non pudore parent; in libidinem projecti varia uxorum libidine delectantur. Singuli plures uxores habent; nullum<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 44, A.; 45, D. The versions again differ from these. The text is correct. See Just. xli. 1, *sqq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Scythico*] Scitice (*i.e.* Scythicæ, for Scythiæ), A.

<sup>3</sup> *orbis imperium*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *plumæ*] *plumbata*, C.D. (Justin, xli. 2, has *loricæ plumatæ sunt*.)

<sup>5</sup> *secunda*] *prospera*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> C. and D. insert before this word, *Girald.*, d. 17.

*quingagesimo primo*.<sup>1</sup> Parthi,<sup>2</sup> þe men of Parthia, in þe language of þe contrey Scythia, beþ i-cleped outlawes;<sup>3</sup> for in the bygynnyng of men of Scythia Parthi, þat beþ men of Parthia, were outlawes; and whan þe kyngdom was i-take from þe men of Media to þe men of Persida, þan were þe Parthi as it were pray to þe victores, and were as it were vnknowe amonge men of the est londes, and anon<sup>4</sup> vnto þat<sup>5</sup> tyme þat men of Macedonia bycom<sup>6</sup> kynges and lordes of londes. Þan afterward þey serued þe Macedonyes, when þe Macedoynes were victours in þe est londes. But at þe<sup>7</sup> laste þey were partyners wip the Romayns, and deled lordschipe wip hem. Þese Parthi vseþ<sup>8</sup> þe maneres of men of Scythia, þat put<sup>9</sup> ham ouȝte som tyme; þefore her armes and wepene beþ verray<sup>10</sup> swellynge wittes, gileful aspies. Men þey accountþ violent and wommen mylde, and euere þei beþ vnesi to hir [owne]<sup>11</sup> neihebores oper to<sup>12</sup> strong men. Þey beþ comounliche stille and litel of speche, more redy for to doo þan for to speke. Þefore þey holdeþ pryue good happes and boonchief, as wel as yuel<sup>13</sup> happes and meschief. Þey beþ buxom<sup>14</sup> to here lordes for drede and not for schame. Þei beþ al i-cast<sup>15</sup> to leccherie wip hire owne wifes; eueriche

TREvisa.

called e owlawe after the speche of men off Scythia. For thei were firste owlawes in the realme translate from men of Media to men of Pers[i]a, beenge to theyme as a pray of victores. Wherefore thei dwellede obscurely amonge men of the este vn to the realme of Macedony inhabitate. After that, the victory hade by Macedones, thei did seruyce to theyme; but at the laste they diuidede the empire of the worlde with the Romaues. Thei exercisede the maneres and consuetudes of men of Scythia, from whom thei were expellede, the wittes of whom be timorous, fulle of fraude, deputenge violence to men and mansuetude to women, whiche be other in malice amonge theyme selfe, other with oper men. Styлле in nature, moore prompte to do ylle than to speke, couerenge thynges f. 26 a. aduersaunte with silence, proiecte in the lustes of lechery, [þei] haue grete delectacion in women. Euery man hathe

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *quinto*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Perchii*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> of *Scicia*, Cx., who omits all following till *were outlawes* (by clerical or typogr. error). The MSS. of both versions usually write *Scicia*.<sup>4</sup> and anon] om. Cx.<sup>5</sup> þat] the, Cx.<sup>6</sup> bycam, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Cx. omits þe.<sup>8</sup> vseden, Cx.<sup>9</sup> put] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>10</sup> *fethery*, Cx., probably rightly; the text, with which a. agrees, is corrupt; perhaps *þei ben* has been omitted.<sup>11</sup> *owne*] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> So a.; þe, MS.; to *straunge*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> So a. and Cx.; of *yuel*, MS.<sup>14</sup> *buxom*] obedient, Cx.<sup>15</sup> *disposed*, Cx.



delictum adulterio gravius puniunt. Quamobrem fæminis suis consortia, aspectus, et convivia virorum<sup>1</sup> interdiciunt. In cibis<sup>2</sup> sunt parci, nulla carne nisi venatica vescuntur. *Giraldus distinctio xvij.* Gens illa postquam a Seleuco Rege defecit sub Arsace mansit, a quo et Arsacidæ dicti sunt, qui illos primum legibus informavit,<sup>3</sup> milites<sup>4</sup> legit, castra munivit, urbes firmavit. Tandem Arsaces præfatus regnum Hyrcanorum suo adjecit imperio. Inter quos, succedentibus aliquot post hoc<sup>5</sup> regibus, Mithridates filius Mithridatis post interfectionem Crassi Romani consulis regnum per quadraginta tres<sup>6</sup> annos tenuit; in quibus multas claras victorias habuit,<sup>7</sup> sicut infra suo loco dicetur. *Trogus, libro xlvj.*<sup>8</sup> Parthorum gens inter Scythas et Medos media est; inter quos servi plurimum<sup>9</sup> abundant, quia nunquam manumittuntur; liberi eorum omni tempore

<sup>1</sup> *virorum*, om. B. ; *consortia virorum, convivia et aspectus*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *cibo*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *instruxit*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *milites*] militem, C.E.

<sup>5</sup> *hæc*, D.

<sup>6</sup> So A. (and the versions); lxij., B. ; xlvj., C.D.E.

<sup>7</sup> *habuit*] After this word E. adds *Ranulphus*.

<sup>8</sup> 14, C.D., wrongly. See Just. xli. 2.

<sup>9</sup> *plurimum*] om. C.

of hem hap many wifes; no trespass among hem is i-pun[i]shed TREVISA.  
 so grevousliche as spouse breche<sup>1</sup> by here lawe. [Perfore]<sup>2</sup>  
 pey forbedep hire wifes<sup>3</sup> siȝt festes and companye of oper  
 men; pei leueþ scarsliche and by litel mete, and etep no  
 flesche but venysoun. *Giraldus, dist. 17.* Pilke men, after  
 pey lefte þe kyng Seleucus,<sup>4</sup> woned vnder þe kyng Arsaces;  
 and perfore pey were i-cleped Arsacide. Þat kyng Arsaces  
 tauȝt hem first lawes; he gadered knyȝtes and bulde  
 castelles, citees, and strong walled townes; and at þe<sup>5</sup> laste  
 Arsaces þe kyng ioyned þe kyngdom of Hyrcania to his  
 emperie, and so men of Hyrcania longed to his empere.  
 Among þe whiche aftirward among oper kynges come Mi-  
 thridates.<sup>6</sup> Mithridates<sup>6</sup> sone after þe slauȝter of Crassus,  
 consul of Rome,<sup>7</sup> regned and helde þe kyngdom þre and  
 fourty ȝere, in þe whiche tyme he dede many viage, and<sup>8</sup>  
 many faire victories hadde, as hit is declared ynnere yn þis  
 place.<sup>9</sup> *Trogus, libro quadragésimo primo.*<sup>10</sup> Parthi, þe men  
 of Parthia, beþ in þe myddel bytwene þe Scitis,<sup>11</sup> men of  
 Scythia, and Medes, men of Media. That londe of Parthi  
 hap<sup>12</sup> many bonde men amonge hem, for pey beþ neuere  
 i-made fre; here fre men alwey rideþ on hors,<sup>13</sup> and hir

mony wifes. They punnysche noo synne more than advoutery, MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 therefore thei enterdite to their wifes felawship and festes  
 of men. Whiche be of litelle meyte, eitenge noo flesche but  
 that is geten with huntenge. *Giraldus, d. 17.* After that peple  
 failede vnder kynge Seleucus thai dwellede vnder kynge  
 Arsace, of whom thei be callede Arsacides; informenge theym  
 firste with lawes he gedredde a companee of knyȝtes, ma-  
 kenge castelles and citees. At the laste the foreseide Arsaces  
 adiecte to his empyre the realme of Hircanes. Amonge whom,  
 somme kynges succedenge after that, Mithridates the sonne of  
 Mithridatis holdede that realme by xliij. yere after the dethe  
 of Crassus, consul of Rome; in whom he hade mony clere  
 victories, as hit schalle be schewede in his propre place.  
*Trogus, libro 41.* The peple of Parthia is betwene the men  
 of Scythia and Medes, amonge whom seruauntes be habundante,  
 for thei haue not their manumission; the fre men of theym

<sup>1</sup> *aduoultre*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *open*, add. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Soleucus*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *þe*] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *Mithridates*] Added from *a.* and Cx. The MSS. of both versions write *Metridates* or *Mitridates*.

<sup>7</sup> MS. adds *he*. The scribe has misunderstood the sense.

<sup>8</sup> *viages and had*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *within forth in his place*, Cx.; *þis* (in text) seems a clerical error for *his*.

<sup>10</sup> 14, Cx. See note on text.

<sup>11</sup> *bytwene Scitas*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *that londe. And Parchii haue*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *riden alway on horsbak*, Cx.

equis vectantur ; servi pedibus<sup>1</sup> incedunt. Et in equis quidem<sup>2</sup> bella peragunt ; conviviaque<sup>3</sup> publica et<sup>4</sup> officia privata adeunt. Liberos suos equitare, sagittare<sup>5</sup> summa cura docent. Ut quisque eorum locuples<sup>6</sup> est, ita plures in bello equites<sup>7</sup> regi suo repræsentant. Comminus præliari aut urbes obsidere nesciunt ; pugnant enim<sup>8</sup> procurentibus equis aut terga dantibus. Sæpe enim in ipso fervore certaminis fugam simulant, et cito post pugnam repetunt, ut incautius insequentes vulnerent. Signum illis in prælium<sup>9</sup> non tuba sed tympanum.<sup>10</sup> Nec diu pugnare possunt ; intolerabiles quippe forent, si tanta illis esset vis et perseverantia quantus est impetus. Sepultura illis est bestiarum laniatus, et<sup>11</sup> ossa sola sepeliunt.

<sup>1</sup> B. omits *pedibus*.

<sup>2</sup> *quidem*] *quidam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> B. omits *que*.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. E.

<sup>5</sup> *et sagittare*, B.C.

<sup>6</sup> *locuples*] *locuplex*, A.C.D.E.

<sup>7</sup> B. omits *equites*.

<sup>8</sup> B. omits *enim*.

<sup>9</sup> *prælium*] So B.C.D.E. ; *prælio*, A.

<sup>10</sup> A.C.D. add *est*.

<sup>11</sup> *et*] unde *et*, E.

bonde men goop on foot.<sup>1</sup> And in bataile pey fiȝteþ on hors. Pey goop to priue offis and to comyn feestes, but pey techip besiliche here children to ride and to schete,<sup>2</sup> and euerich of hem by his richesse and power fyndeþ to hir power<sup>3</sup> horsmen<sup>4</sup> in bataile for to fiȝte. Pei konneþ nouȝt fiȝte in no<sup>5</sup> comyn manere, noþer pei konneþ nouȝt bysege castelles noþer strong walled townes; pey fiȝteþ on hors rennyng<sup>6</sup> in ful cours and turnyng aȝe, and ofte in hardest and strengest fiȝt pey feyneþ for to flee and sodeynliche turneþ and riseþ<sup>7</sup> aȝen, þat pey mowe þe slyloker<sup>8</sup> here enemies wyne and slee. In bataile pei vseþ taboures and no trompe, and pey mowe not dure<sup>9</sup> longe for to fiȝte. No men schulde hem awelde and wipstonde,<sup>10</sup> and<sup>11</sup> pey were as stronge and stalworpe to dure, as they beep angry<sup>12</sup> to rese;<sup>13</sup> hire burienge is wonderful; for bestes [al] to haleþ and tereþ and eteþ þe<sup>14</sup> flesch; and [pey] burieþ onliche þe bones.

TREVISA.

ryde alleweies on horses, the seruauentes goe on foote, vsenge horses in batayles, goenge to commune festes and priuate offices, techenge the childe libérale with grete attendaunce to ryde and to schote, amonge whom euery man schalle presente to the kynge certeyne men of armes in batelles after the extent of his rychesse. Whiche can not fiȝhte and put seges to cites, for thei fiȝhte their horses rennenge, other elles fleenge and schewenge their backes, feynenge oftetymes theym to flee, and after that repetenge fiȝhte, that thei may hurte men folowenge theym indiscretely. A tympan is a melody to theyme in batelles, and not a claryon, whiche may not fiȝhte longe. For thei scholde be intollerable and invincible, if they myȝhte haue the vertu of perseueraunce after their impetuosite. The deuourenge of bestes is a sepulture to theyme, and after that they do take their boones to sepulture or beryenge.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> a foote, Cx.<sup>2</sup> schote, Cx.<sup>3</sup> king, a.; kynde, Cx.<sup>4</sup> horsmen men, MS., by mere clerical error; (not a. or Cx.)<sup>5</sup> more, a.; in comyn, Cx.<sup>6</sup> ernyng, a.<sup>7</sup> fyght, Cx.<sup>8</sup> slytyer, Cx., who places their enemies after slee.<sup>9</sup> endure, Cx., and so usually.<sup>10</sup> wip stonde (and so frequently), MS.<sup>11</sup> yf, Cx.<sup>12</sup> and hasty, added in a. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> fyghte, Cx.<sup>14</sup> for beestes teren, eten, and al to halen their flessch, and they burge only but the bones, Cx., from whom the words in brackets, wanting also in a., are supplied.

## CAP. XIII.

*De Assyria et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*

Assyria. NOTANDUM est quod<sup>1</sup> Assyria ab Assur filio Sem dicta est, qui eam post diluvium primum inhabitavit. Hæc ab ortu habet Indiam, ab austro Mediam, ab occidente Tigrim fluvium, a septentrione montem Caucasum ubi sunt portæ Caspiæ. *Trogus, libro xliij<sup>o</sup>.* Media<sup>2</sup> condita est a Medo filio Ægei, regis Athenarum, qui æmulans virtutes Jasonis vitrici sui Mediam<sup>3</sup> urbem in honorem Medæ matris suæ constituit caput regni Medorum. Hæc Media ab aquilone tangit Parthiam, ab ortu Indiam, ab occasu Chaldaeam, ab austro Persida.<sup>4</sup> *Isidorus, libro xiiiij<sup>o</sup>.* Persis a Perseo nominatur qui<sup>5</sup> eam conquisivit et nobilem ex ignobili fecit.<sup>6</sup> Quæ habet ab ortu Indos, ab occasu sinum maris Rubri, ab aquilone Mediam; ab austro Carmaniam tangit. In qua

<sup>1</sup> *Notandum est quod*] om. C.D.; est only omitted in E.

<sup>2</sup> *Media*] Medea, A.B. In C. and D. the following sentences are compressed as follows: "Media et Persida a regibus Medo et Perseo cognominatæ sunt, qui illas provincias bellando aggressi sunt. E quibus Media ad occasum Parthiam tangit, a septentrione Armeniam, a borea Caspios, a meridie

"Persidam videlicet. Persida autem (D. omits autem) ab ortu tangit Indos, &c." as in text.

<sup>3</sup> *Mediam*] So E.; *Medam*, A. Justin (xlii. 4. Ed. Græv.) has *Medeam*.

<sup>4</sup> *Persida*] Persidam, MSS., and Persida for Persis below. See note on c. 12.

<sup>5</sup> *quia*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *fecit* after *nobilem* in B.



*De Assyriis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum* TREVISA.  
*tertium decimum.*

TAKE hede pat Assyria hap pe name of Asur Sem his sone, for he was pe firste pat woned perynne after Noes flood. Dis londe Assyria hap in pe est side Inde, in pe south Media, in pe west pe ryuer Tigris, and in pe north pe hille pat is i-cleped Caucasus. Pere bep pe zates of Caspy; pere pe hilles beep longe and narwe. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.* Egeus was kyng of Athenis; Medus was Egeus<sup>1</sup> sone, and folowed pe dedes of Iason pat was his owne stepfader, and belde<sup>2</sup> pe cheef citee of Media, and cleped pe citee Media also, in worschippe of his moder pat was i-cleped Media. Pat londe Media hap in pe north side Parthia,<sup>3</sup> in pe est Inde,<sup>4</sup> in pe west Caldea, in pe south Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persida is i-nempned and hap pe name of Perseus pat conquered pat londe, and made it a worpy lond pat was raper<sup>5</sup> vnworpy. Persida hap in pe est syde<sup>6</sup> Inde, and<sup>7</sup> in pe west pe Rede see, in pe norp Media, and<sup>8</sup> in pe south Carmania.

*Of Assyria, Isidorus, libro quarto decimo. Capitulum tertium* MS. HARL.  
*decimum.* 2261.

HIT is to be aduertisede that Assyria toke his name of Assur the sonne of Sem, whiche inhabite firste hit after Noe floode. Assyria hathe on the este parte of hit Ynde, of the sowthe Assyria. Media, of the weste parte the floode of Tigris, of the northe the grete hille callede Caucasus, where be partes of Caspius hilles. *Trogus, libro 42.* Media was made of Medo son of Media. Egeus kynge of Atheynes, which, folowenge the vertu of Iaso his victrix, made that cite callede Media in to the honor of Medee his moder, whiche cite he made the hede and princi- f. 26 b.  
palle place of that realme. That cuntre of Media towchethe Parthia of the northe parte, and of the este Ynde, of the weste Caldea, and of the sowthe parte Persida. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Persia was namede of a man callede Persius, Persia. that conquerede hit, whiche hathe of the este parte to hit men of Ynde, of the weste side parte of the Redde see, of the northe parte Media, towchenge Carmany of the sowthe parte: in

<sup>1</sup> *his*, add. in *a.* (not *Cx.*)

<sup>2</sup> *buyt*, *Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *the see*, *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *ende*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *rather*] to fore, *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *syde*] om. *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *and*] om. *Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *and*] om. *a.*

Mesopo-  
tamia.

Babylonia.

Perside exorta est primum<sup>1</sup> ars magica sub Nemproth gigante, qui post confusionem linguarum terram illam adiens docuit Persas ignem colere et solem,<sup>2</sup> qui lingua eorum El dicitur. Hujus<sup>3</sup> terræ metropolis aliquando<sup>4</sup> fuit Elam sic dicta ab Elam filio Sem, quæ postmodum<sup>5</sup> dicta est Elymais,<sup>6</sup> et nunc vocatur Persepolis;<sup>7</sup> de qua fit mentio in libro Machabæorum.<sup>8</sup> Et ab isto Elam Persæ<sup>9</sup> vocabantur Elamitæ, sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum.<sup>10</sup> Mesopotamia jacet inter Tigrim ab ortu et Euphraten ab occasu. Incipit autem a septentrione inter Montem Taurum et Caucasum quam a meridie sequitur Babylonia.<sup>11</sup> *Isidorus, libro xv.* Babylonia, quamvis<sup>12</sup> postmodum diceretur pars Chaldææ, primitus tamen tam insignis fuit<sup>13</sup> ut Chaldæa, Assyria, Mesopotamia, in ejus nomen transirent. Cujus caput fuit urbs Babylon, quam Nemproth gigas fundavit. Sed Semiramis regina<sup>14</sup> eam postmodum<sup>15</sup> ampliavit. *Petrus, c. xxxvij.*<sup>16</sup> Babylon est proprium<sup>17</sup> nomen civitatis; Babylonia est<sup>18</sup> nomen regionis, quamvis<sup>19</sup> unum pro

<sup>1</sup> primo, B.

<sup>2</sup> qui post . . . dicitur] qui docuit Persas colere ignem et solem, C. and D., which wholly omit from *Hujus* . . . *Apostolorum*.

<sup>3</sup> hujus] So A.B. (and Trevisa); *cujus*, E. (and Harl. version).

<sup>4</sup> aliquando] quondam, E.

<sup>5</sup> postea, B., and so below.

<sup>6</sup> Elymais] Elamaida, A.B.E.

<sup>7</sup> P. vocatur, A.B., which latter omits in before *libro*.

<sup>8</sup> A. adds *cap. vj.* See 1 Macc. vi. 1.

<sup>9</sup> E. adds *quondam* after *Persæ*.

<sup>10</sup> sicut . . . *Apostolorum*] om. A.B.; added from E.

<sup>11</sup> Babylonia] A.C.D. add *deinde Chaldaea, deinde Arabia*.

<sup>12</sup> quamvis] licet, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> C.D. add *regio*.

<sup>14</sup> regina] A. and C. add *Assyriorum*.

<sup>15</sup> eam postmodum] om. E.

<sup>16</sup> A. does not notice that a new citation begins. C. has *Petrus, cap. 174*.

<sup>17</sup> So A.; *Babilon proprie*, B.C. D.E. See Harl. version. Both readings are good.

<sup>18</sup> est] om. E.B., which last also omits *nomen*.

<sup>19</sup> quamvis] licet, D.

In pat Persida bygan first wiccheecraft in Nemproot<sup>1</sup> pe TREVISA.  
 geauntes tyme, pat after pe spredeinge of pe tyme<sup>2</sup> of many  
 langage<sup>3</sup> and tonges went into Persida, and tauzt men of  
 pat londe to worschippe pe fire and pe sonne, pat is i-cleped  
 in her langage El. Pe cheef citee of pat londe was i-cleped  
 Elam, after Elam Sem his<sup>4</sup> sone; pat citee was afterwarde  
 i-cleped Elamaide, and is now i-cleped Persipol.<sup>5</sup> Of pat  
 citee spekep Holy Writt in libro Machabæorum, and of pat  
 citee pey hadde pe name, pat<sup>6</sup> were sometyme i-cleped  
 Elamyte in Actibus Apostolorum. Mesopotamia lyth bytwene  
 Tigris in pe est side and Euphrates in pe west side, and  
 bygynnep out of pe north bytwene the tweye hulles Taurus  
 and Caucasus, and hap Babylon<sup>7</sup> in pe south side. *Isid.*  
*libro quinto decimo.* Pei Babylonia were afterward i-cleped  
 a parte of Caldea; hit was first so solempne pat it  
 conteyned<sup>8</sup> Assyria, Caldea, and Mesopotamia, pre londes. Pe  
 cheef citee of Babylonia was Babylon, pe citee pat pe geant  
 Nemprot<sup>9</sup> bulde;<sup>10</sup> and Semiramis pe quene aftirward made  
 pat citee more. *Petrus, capitulo 37.* Pe citee is i-cleped Baby-  
 lon, and pe londe Babylonia; pey pat oon be wel ofte i-take for

whiche Persia wycche crafte began firste under Nemproth the MS. HARL.  
 gigante, whiche goenge to that londe after the confusion of 2261.  
 tonges tauzhte men of Persia to worschippe fire and the sonne,  
 which is callede El in the langage of theyme. The chiefe Ars magi-  
 place of whom was callede Elam somme tyme, of Elam the ca incipit.  
 sonne of Sem whiche was callede afterwarde Elamadia, now  
 callede Persepolis,<sup>11</sup> of whom mencion is made in the booke of  
 Machabees. And of this Elam men of Persia were callede  
 Elamites, as hit is schewede in the Actes of Apostles. Mesopota-  
 Mesopotamy lyethe betwene Tigris of the este and Euphrates mia.  
 of the weste, begynnenge from the northe betwene the hilles  
 Taurus and Caucasus, whom Babylon folowethe from the  
 meridian. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Thauzhe Babylon Babylon.  
 was callede afterwarde a parte of Calde, fyrste hit was so  
 nowble that Caldea, Assyria, and Mesopotamia wente into the  
 names of hit, the hede of whom was that cite callede Babylon  
 whom Nemproth the gigante made, but the qwene Semi-  
 ramis made hyt more large. *Petrus, capitulo 37.* Babylon  
 is the propre name of the cite, and Babylonia<sup>12</sup> the name  
 of the region, thauzhe the oon be put ofte for that other,

<sup>1</sup> *Nemprot, a.; Nembroth, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cx. om. of pe tyme.*

<sup>3</sup> So MS. and a.; *langages, Cx.*,  
probably rightly.

<sup>4</sup> *Sem his]* Semmes, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Persipolis, a., Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *they, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> The MSS. of both versions  
usually have *Babilon* and *Babilonia*.

<sup>8</sup> *conteymeth, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *Nemport, a.; Nemproth, the geant,*  
*Cx.*

<sup>10</sup> *buylded, Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *Persipolis, Harl. MS.*

<sup>12</sup> *Babilonia, Harl. MS.*

altero sæpe ponatur; sed Babel<sup>1</sup> nomen est turris. *Orosius*,<sup>2</sup> *libro ijº*. Babylon more castrorum fuit mænibus paribus per quadrum disposita; quorum latitudo fuit quinquaginta<sup>3</sup> cubitorum, altitudo quater tantum. Longitudo muri ab angulo ad angulum sexdecim<sup>4</sup> miliaria tenuit, ambitus murorum quadringentorum octoginta<sup>5</sup> stadiorum fuit, hoc est sexaginta quatuor miliaria. Materia muri fuit ex cocto latere et bitumine interstrato,<sup>6</sup> ita quod neque igne neque aqua dissolvi posset. Portæ urbis centum, fossa extrinsecus late patens; fluvius<sup>7</sup> Euphrates per medium urbis fluxit;<sup>8</sup> quam tamen cepit et destruxit Cyrus rex Persarum, sicut infra dicitur.<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus*. De hujus<sup>10</sup> urbis reliquiis, secundum Hieronymum, ædificatæ sunt duæ urbes in Perside;<sup>11</sup> et<sup>12</sup> locus Babylonis nunc desertus est<sup>13</sup> et feris plenus.

Chaldæa.

Chaldæa, quasi Cassidæa, a Caseth filio Nachor fratris Abrahæ sic dicta,<sup>14</sup> regio est magna juxta Euphraten, in cujus campo Sennar ædificabatur<sup>15</sup> turris Babel. *Josephus*, *libro primo*.<sup>16</sup> Cujus altitudo ducentos sep-

<sup>1</sup> *Babel autem*, C.D.; *Babel est nomen*, B.

<sup>2</sup> So C.D.E.; *Oracius*, A.; *M. Orosius*, B. This extract is much compressed and in part transposed in C.D. In A. and B. there is some trifling variation and transposition, but little compression.

<sup>3</sup> 15, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *xlj*, A.

<sup>5</sup> B. omits *octoginta*; and (with A.) has *quinquaginta et unius* for *sexaginta quatuor* just afterwards, where C. and D. have 15. The text is right. See *Oros*. lib. ii. c. 6.

<sup>6</sup> *interstructo*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *amnis*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *fossa . . . fluxit*] Omitted in C., which also omits *cepit et*.

<sup>9</sup> The last part of the sentence stands thus in A. and B.: "Veruntamen hanc urbem demum destruxit Cyrus rex Persarum." Similarly C.D., omitting *veruntamen*.

<sup>10</sup> *hujus*] *cujus*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> The MSS. here have the correct form (not *Persida*).

<sup>12</sup> *et*] *ita quod*, E.

<sup>13</sup> So A.C.D.; *est* after *plenus* in B.E.

<sup>14</sup> *sic dicta*] *dicta est* (after *Cassidæa*), E.

<sup>15</sup> *ædificatur*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *secundo*, B.; no number attached in C.D. See *Joseph. Ant.* lib. i. c. 4. § 3.



pat oper; bote þe tour is i-cleped and hatte<sup>1</sup> Babel. *Orosius*,<sup>2</sup> TREVISA. *libro secundo*. Babylon was i-buld as a castel, and i-walled wip foure walles square al aboutes; <sup>3</sup> eueriche wal was fifty cubites in brede, and foure tyme<sup>4</sup> so moche in heiþe; þe lengþe of euery<sup>5</sup> wal from oon corner to anoper was sixtene myle. Þe walles were all aboute foure hondred and foure score forlong, þat is foure and fourty<sup>6</sup> myle. Þe walles were i-made of brend tile and of glewe in stede of morter, so þat [noper]<sup>7</sup> water noper fire myȝte ham to schifte noper to dele.<sup>8</sup> In þe<sup>9</sup> citee were an hondred ȝates and a diche wip oute, þat was fer i-seie; þe ryuer Euphrates ran by þe myddel of þe citee þorwoute. Neuerþeles Cyrus, kyng of Persida, tooke þat citee aftirward and destroyed hit, as it is inner more<sup>10</sup> i-write. Ierom seip þat of þe releef of þis citee were i-buld two grete citees in Persida, and þe place of Babylon is now wilderness and ful of<sup>11</sup> wyld bestes. Caldea, as Cassidea, hap þe name of Casseth, Nachor his sone. Nachor was Abraham his broþer. Caldea is a grete kyngdom bysides Euphrates; in Sennaar,<sup>12</sup> a hile<sup>13</sup> of þat kyngdom, þe toure Babel was i-buld. *Josephus, libro primo*. þe<sup>14</sup>

but Babel is the name of the towre. *Orosius, libro secundo*. MS. HARL. 2261. Babylon was disposede as with egalle walles after the maner of castelles by a quadrante, the latitude of whom was of l<sup>ti</sup> cubites, the altitude in iiij. tymes so moche, the lenghte of the walle from cornelle to corner holdede xvj. myles. The compasse of the walles was of iiij<sup>c</sup>. and lxxx<sup>ti</sup> forlonges, whiche dothe make lji<sup>ti</sup> myles. The mater of whiche walle was made of sodde tyle stones mixte with pycche, in so moche that thei myȝhte not be dissoluede with fire or water. Thro the myddes of whiche cite the floode Euphrates did flowe. Whom Cyrus kynge of Perse toke and destroyedede, as hit schalle be expressede in his place. R. Off the levenes of whiche cite, after the seyenge of Seynte Ierom, ij. cites were made in Persida, so that the place of Babylon is nowe deserte, and fulle of wilde bestes. Caldea is seyde as Cassidea, of Caldea. Casethe the sonne of Nachor broþer of Abraham, whiche is a grete region nye to Euphrates. In the filde of Sennar Turris Babellæ. f. 27 a. the towre of Babelle was edifiede. *Josephus, libro primo*.

<sup>1</sup> called and named, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Orocius, a.; Oracius, MS. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> aboute, Cx.<sup>4</sup> tyme] added from Cx<sup>5</sup> So also a.; both forms occur in both MSS.<sup>6</sup> fifty, a.<sup>7</sup> noper, a.; nether, Cx.; om. MS.<sup>8</sup> myȝhte hem schyfte ne departe, Cx.

this, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> inner more] afterward, Cx.<sup>11</sup> ful of] om. a.<sup>12</sup> Sennaar, MS., a., and Cx.<sup>13</sup> So a.; hild, MS., apparently;

felde, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> þat, a. and Cx.



septuaginta duo<sup>1</sup> passus tenet, latitudo vero tanta erat ut prope eam aspicientibus longitudo videretur minor. *Ranulphus*. Secundum quosdam hæc turris habuit in altitudine tria millia,<sup>2</sup> sed secundum Ivonem Carnotensem in chronica sua habuit in altitudine quinque millia et pene ducentos passus, in latitudine<sup>3</sup> quatuor millia.<sup>4</sup>

De Arabia. Arabia ad austrum Chaldææ posita, ab ortu habet Persida,<sup>5</sup> ab occasu sinum maris Rubri. Terra quidem thurifera, myrrham habens, cinnamomum, et avem phœnicem; cujus terræ portio versus Eurum dicitur Saba, quæ<sup>6</sup> a Saba filio Chus sic<sup>7</sup> nuncupata est, quam<sup>8</sup> a tribus lateribus mare Rubrum cingit. *Josephus, libro* Mons Sina. *secundo*. In hac Arabia in partibus Madian est Mons Syna, cujus pars est mons Oreb; mons quidem pabulosus<sup>9</sup> et excelsus, sed propter scopulos præruptos pene inaccessibilis. Illuc primus omnium Moyses greges duxit. Dicitur etiam mons terroris et fœderis; quia populo Israel,<sup>10</sup> circa radices ejus commoranti, Deus in-

<sup>1</sup> So B. (and the versions); 270, A.; duo millia centum lxxij. (so written), E.; 2272 passus continet, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> milia, A.

<sup>3</sup> A. adds vero.

<sup>4</sup> The whole of the previous sentence is omitted in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> ad austrum habet Persidem, C.D., omitting the rest of the sentence.

<sup>6</sup> quia, A.

<sup>7</sup> sic] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> hanc autem Sabam, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> babilosus, B.; scopulosus, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Israel] om. C.D.

toure Babel was i-buld two hondred pre score and twelf paas TREVISA.  
 hiȝe, þe lengþe somdel þe<sup>1</sup> lasse to hem þat byhelde it nyh,  
 for þe brede was so moche. R. Som men seiþ þat þis<sup>2</sup> tour was  
 pre myle hiȝe, but Iuo Carnotensis seiþ in his cronicle þat þis  
 toure was fyue myle and almost two hundred paas hiȝe and  
 foure myle brode. R. Arabia is i-sette by south Caldea, and  
 hap in þe est side Persida, and in þe west side þe Rede see.  
 In Arabia is store, mir, and canel; and a brid,<sup>3</sup> þat hatte<sup>4</sup>  
 fenix. Þe norþ est porcioun of Arabia hatte<sup>5</sup> Saba, [and  
 is i-cleped<sup>6</sup> Saba]<sup>7</sup> after Sabacus<sup>8</sup> his sone. Þis Saba is  
 i-clipped<sup>9</sup> in pre sides wiþ þe Rede see. *Josephus, libro*  
*secundo*.<sup>10</sup> In þis Arabia, in þe contray [of]<sup>11</sup> Madyan, is  
 þe hil<sup>12</sup> Syna. Þe mount of<sup>13</sup> Oreb is a partie of þe mounte  
 of Synay, and is hiȝe, and hap grete plente of gras and of  
 lese; but hit is harde to come perto for hiȝe rokkes and  
 skarres. Moyses was þe firste man þat ladde pyder bestes.  
 Hit is i-cleped also þe mount of couenaunt and of drede:  
 for God all myȝty pere vppon made þonderynge and liȝtynge,  
 and ȝaf þe lawe to þe folk of Israel, þat were at þe hulle

The altitude of whom was cclxxij. passes, the latitude of MS. HARL.  
 whom was so huge that hit apperede to men beholdenge 2261.  
 hit that hit was more brode than longe. R. After somme  
 men that towre hade iij. miles in altitude. But after Iuo  
 Carnotense, in his cronicle, hit hade v. miles in altitude  
 and allemoste ij<sup>c</sup>. passes, and iiij. myles in latitude. Araby,  
 y-sette at the sowthe parte off Caldea, of the este parte hathe  
 Persida, of the weste parte the<sup>14</sup> Redde see. A plentuous  
 londe of encense, hauenge myrre, cinamome, and a brydde  
 callede fenix. *Josephus, libro secundo*. The mownte of Fenix.  
 Synay is in that Arabye in the partes of Madiam, a parte Montes  
 of whom is callede Oreb, a plentuous hille and highe, but Syna et  
 now hit is allemoste inaccessible for schrubbes and broken Oreb.  
 stones. Moises brouȝhte his schepe to þat place firste  
 of men: hit is callede also the mownte of fere and of luffe;  
 for oure Lorde apperede to Moyses in hit with thundre and  
 liȝhtenge, the peple of Israel taryenge at the foote of hit  
 where oure Lorde ȝafe lawe. Wherefore men hade not

<sup>1</sup> þe] om. Cx.

<sup>2</sup> the, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> byrde, Cx., who writes *phenyx*.

<sup>4</sup> that is called, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> is named, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> called, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> [...] added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Saba Chus sone, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> byclipped, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> primo, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>12</sup> the mount of, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> of] om. Cx.

<sup>14</sup> the] of the, Harl. MS.

tonuit, coruscavit,<sup>1</sup> legem dedit. Unde non nisi mundi et purificati<sup>2</sup> accedere audebant.

Mons  
Libani.

In finibus etiam Arabiæ, versus circium, est mons Libani qui distinguit abinvicem<sup>3</sup> Arabiam, Judæam,<sup>4</sup> Phœnicem;<sup>5</sup> mons quidem summæ altitudinis, ita ut juges nives ex aliqua sui parte continens<sup>6</sup> navigantes in mari magno ad varios portus dirigat. Est etiam mons<sup>7</sup> salubritatis et fecunditatis; nam cypressi, cedri, arbores, et herbæ ibidem crescentes thus et gummi<sup>8</sup> distillant, redolentiam exhalant, quibus morbidi sanantur, venena<sup>9</sup> fugantur.

Syria unde  
dicitur.

Syria, a quodam Siro inhabitatore nepote Abrahæ sic vocata, jacet inter fluvium<sup>10</sup> Euphraten ab oriente et mare magnum ab occasu; habetque a septentrione Armeniam et Cappadociam, ab austro sinum Arabicum, et continet in se multas provincias, scilicet Commagenam, Palæstinam, Phœnicem,<sup>11</sup> Canaan, Idumæam, Judæam.<sup>12</sup> Hujus provinciæ caput quondam fuerat Damascus quam ædificavit Eleazer<sup>13</sup> servus Abrahæ, cujus

<sup>1</sup> *coruscans*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *ibidem*, add. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *abinvicem*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Judæam*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *et Phœniciam*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *continens*] in se tenens, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> C. and D. add *summæ*.

<sup>8</sup> *gummi*] *gumam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *venena*] et *venenosa*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *flumen*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Phœniciam*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> The chapter in A.C.D. ends here.

<sup>13</sup> *Eleazer*, B.

foot; so pat no man durste neyhe,<sup>1</sup> but he were purified and i-made all<sup>2</sup> clene. *Trevisa*. Fenix is a wonder brid, for of<sup>3</sup> al pat kynde is but oon alyue. R. In pe contray of Arabia toward Circius is pe hil pat is i-cleped Mons Libani. Pat hille departeþ pre londes atwynne,<sup>4</sup> Arabia, Iude, and Fenix.<sup>5</sup> Pat hul is ful hiþe, so pat snowe<sup>6</sup> lyeth all wey in som side of pat hille. [And it]<sup>7</sup> is certeyn merk and token to schipmen pat seileþ in pe grete see and ledeþ hem to dyuers mouþes and hauenes. Hit is an hille of helpe and of<sup>8</sup> plente; for cipres, cedres treen, and herbes groweþ peron, pat droppeþ gom and smelleþ swetely;<sup>9</sup> by pe whiche treen, gom, and swetnesse seke men beep i-heled and venyme destroyed. Syria hap pe name of Cirus Abrahams newew, and lieth bytwene pe ryuer Euphrates<sup>10</sup> in pe est side and the grete see in the west side, and hap in pe norþ side Armenia and Cappadocia, and in pe souþe side pe see pat is i-cleped Arabicus, and conteyneþ many prouinces pat beep Commagena, Palestina, Fenys, Canaan, Idumea, Iudea pat is pe Iuerie. Damascus was somtyme pe chief citee of pat prouince.<sup>11</sup> Eleazer<sup>12</sup> Abraham's seruauant

TREVISA.

audacite to attempte to goe to hit, but men devoute and clene in theire conscience. The mownte of Libanus is in the costes of Arabye abowte the sowthe weste, which dividethe a sundre Araby, Iewery, and Fenicea. Whiche is an hille of excellent altitude, in so moche that hit, counteynge grete habundaunce of snawe, directethe men saylunge in the see to diuerse portes. Hyt is also an hille of whollesomnesse and of fecundite. For trees of cipres, cedre trees, and oper yerbes groenge there, distille encense and gumme ziffenge mellifluous redolence, þro whom seke men be healede, and venomes be expellede. Syria, callede by that name by Sirus the inhabitator of hit, lyethe betwene the floode Euphrates<sup>10</sup> of the este parte, and the grete see on the weste parte, hauenge in the northe parte Armenye and Cappadocia,<sup>13</sup> on the sowthe parte the see of Arabye, conteynge in hit mony prouinces, Commagena, Palestina, Fenices, Canaan, Idumea, and the Iewery. The principal place of that prouince was Damascus, whom Eleazer the seruauante of Abraham edifiede. Rasyne

MS. HARL. 2261.

Mons Libani.

Syria.

<sup>1</sup> *approche to it*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *all*] om. Cx.<sup>3</sup> *of*] added from a. and Cx.<sup>4</sup> *a sonder*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> So also a.; *Fenys*, Cx., which is better; and so MS. below.<sup>6</sup> MS. repeats *þat* (clerical error).<sup>7</sup> Added from Cx<sup>8</sup> *of*] om. Cx.<sup>9</sup> *swete*, a., Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Eufrates*, MSS., as usual.<sup>11</sup> So Cx.; *prouinces*, MS. and a.<sup>12</sup> *Eleaser*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *Capodocia*, Harl. MS.

rex Rasyn semper præbuit opem decem tribubus<sup>1</sup> Israel contra reges Juda. Et interpretatur Damascus *fundens sanguinem*, quia ibi Cayn occidit Abel et abscondit eum in sabulo fluminis.

## CAP. XIV.

*De regione Judææ.*<sup>2</sup>

JUDÆA regio est Syriæ, sed pars<sup>3</sup> Palæstinæ, a Juda, filio Jacob, sic dicta; quæ tamen prius dicebatur Cananea,<sup>4</sup> a Cham, filio Noe, sive a decem Cananæorum gentibus per Judæos expulsis seu contritis.<sup>5</sup> *Petrus.* Judæa diversis modis accipitur. Quandoque pro tota terra promissionis, et tunc dicitur a Judæis, non a Juda; sub hoc sensu intelligitur<sup>6</sup> quod “Pompeius magnus fecit Judæam tributariam.” Quandoque sumitur pro regno Juda; ut ubi,<sup>7</sup> “Audiens autem quod Archelaus

<sup>1</sup> *tribibus*, E.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin title is found in the English versions and Cx.; but there is no heading to the chapter in B. C.D.E.; A. has *De Judæa*.

<sup>3</sup> A. adds *est*.

<sup>4</sup> *Canaan*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *seu contritis*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *intelligatur*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *ubi*] So E., distinctly; but the other MSS. seem to have *ibi*; *ut ibi, Audivit Joseph quod Archelaus*, C.D.



bulde and made pat citee Damascus. Rasyng kyng of Damascus<sup>1</sup> helpe<sup>2</sup> away þe tenþe lynage<sup>3</sup> of Israel aȝenst the kynges<sup>4</sup> of Iuda. Damascus is to menyng<sup>5</sup> *schedyng* blood, for þere Caym slowh Abel and hyd hym in þe sonde.

TREVISA.

*De regione Iudææ. Capitulum quartum decimum.*

IUDEA is a kyngdom of Syria a party of Palestyna, and hap þe name of Iudas Iacobus<sup>6</sup> sone, and was somtyme i-cleped Cananea of Cam Noe his sone, [o]þere<sup>7</sup> of þe ten manere of<sup>8</sup> peple pat þe Iewes putte oute of pat londe. *Petrus.* Iudea is i-take in many manere; oper whiles<sup>9</sup> for all þe lond of byheste, and þan he<sup>10</sup> hap þe name of þe Iewes and not<sup>11</sup> of Iudas; and so it is i-take in pis speche: "Þe grete " Pompeius made Iudea tributaries;" and oper while it is i-take for þe kyngdom<sup>12</sup> of Iuda; and so it is i-write of Ioseph, pat " whan þey<sup>13</sup> herde pat Archelaus regned in

the kyng of whom, ȝafe helpe alle weies to the x. tribus of Israel ageyne the kynges of Iuda. And Damascus is callede by interpretacion, *schedenge bloode*. For Caym did slee Abell þer, and hidde hym in the sonde of the floode.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the Region of the Iewery. Capitulum quartum decimum.*

IUDEA, whiche is callede the Iewery, is a region of Syria, Judea. but a parte of Palestine, callede Iudea of Iuda the sonne of Iacobe, whiche was callede afore Cananea of Cham the sonne of Noe, other elles of x. peple of Chananees expulsede and contrite by the Iewes. *Petrus.* Iudea is taken in diuerse maneres; hit is taken other while for the londe of promission, and then hit commethe of this worde, Iudeus, and not off this worde, Iuda; and so hit is vnderstonde in that sense that Pompeius Magnus made the Iewery tributary to hym. Other while hit is taken for the realme of Iuda, as Ioseph herenge that " Archelaus reignede in the

f. 27 b.

<sup>1</sup> Damaske, Cx., but Damascus below.

<sup>2</sup> halp, a. (not Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> ten lynages, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; kyng, MS.

<sup>5</sup> as moche to saye as, Cx. (who makes similar alterations everywhere).

<sup>6</sup> Iacobs, a. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> oper, a.; eyther, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> a. om. of.

<sup>9</sup> while, Cx., who omits all.

<sup>10</sup> it, Cx., and similarly often.

<sup>11</sup> Om. Cx. (typ. error?)

<sup>12</sup> royamme, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> þey] he, Cx.

Ambitus  
Judææ.

“regnaret in Judæa,”<sup>1</sup> &c. Quandoque sumitur pro sola sorte Judæ, ut ibi,<sup>2</sup> “Judæa et Jerusalem, nolite timere.” *Giraldus, distinctione tertia.* In hac Judæa est terra promissionis, cujus longitudo ad litteram intellecta<sup>3</sup> est a Dan usque<sup>4</sup> Bersabe,<sup>5</sup> et secundum Hieronymum in epistola ad Dardanum<sup>6</sup> vix continet centum sexaginta<sup>7</sup> milliarum terræ illius. Latitudo vero est a Joppen usque Bethleem, et vix continet quadraginta sex milliarum terræ illius.<sup>8</sup> Sed secundum librum Numerorum Judæa habet hunc ambitum; ad meridiem mare Salinarum quod Mortuum dicitur, et inde per Syna et<sup>9</sup> Cadesbarne usque torrentem Ægypti qui fluit in mare magnum<sup>10</sup> versus occidentem; inde ad aquilonem habet montem Taurum; ad orientem montem Libani et principia Tiberiadis et Jordanis, qui<sup>11</sup> ad radices montis Libani oriuntur. Inde Jordanis fluens in mare Mortuum facit limitem inter Judæam et Arabiam. Hæc autem terra Judæa fuit patribus nostris promissa, sed non omnino<sup>12</sup> possessa, teste Apostolo ad Hebræos, qui

<sup>1</sup> *Juda, A.*

<sup>2</sup> So the MSS., but *ubi* would be a better reading. See above.

<sup>3</sup> *intellecta*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> C.D. add *ad*; and so below.

<sup>5</sup> E. has *Daan* and *Bersabee*, but trivial variations of this kind will not always be noticed.

<sup>6</sup> *secundum... Dardanum*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> C.D. omit *centum*.

<sup>8</sup> *terræ illius*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Syna et*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> The text proceeds thus in C.D.: *Habet autem terra promissionis ad orientem montem Libani et flumina Tiberiadis et Jordanis, quæ, &c.*

<sup>11</sup> *qui*] So A.B.E.; *quæ*, C.D., which seems better.

<sup>12</sup> *omnino*] om. B.

"Iudea he dredde<sup>1</sup> for to goo pider;" and somtyme it is i-take onliche for pe lot of<sup>2</sup> pe lynage of Iudas, and so spekep Holy Writt and seip: "Iudea and Ierusalem drede "zow<sup>3</sup> nouzt." *Gir.<sup>4</sup> Dist. tertia.* In pis Iudea pe lond of byheste pe lengpe perof is from<sup>5</sup> Dan to Bersabe, and Ierom seip, in epistola ad Dardanum, pat it is scarseliche an hondred and sixty myle in lengpe, and pe brede is from Ioppen to Bethlem scarsliche sixe and fourty myle of pat lond. Bote, secundum librum Numerorum, Iudea is byclipped in pis manere aboute, and hap in pe soupe side<sup>6</sup> pe Dede se. And pan he strecchep forþ by Syna and Cades-barne noon<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> pe streem of Egipte pat zerneþ<sup>9</sup> westward in to pe grete see, and in pe norþ side pe hulle pat hatte mons Taurus,<sup>10</sup> and in pe est pe hille<sup>11</sup> mons Libany [and the bygynnyng of the see Tiberiadis, and of pe streem Iordan pat springeþ at pe foot of mont Libany],<sup>12</sup> bope Tiberiadis and Iordan. Pan Iordan rennep in to pe Dede see and departeþ Iudea and Arabia.<sup>13</sup> Pe<sup>14</sup> londe Iudea was byhote<sup>15</sup> to oure forme<sup>16</sup> fadres, but nouzt al i-had, as Poul seip, ad Hebræos, "Al

TREVISA.

"Iewery." *Gir. Dist. tertia.* The londe of promission is in the Iewery, the longitude of whom is vnderstonde after the letter, From Dan to Bersabe; and after Seynte Ierom, in his epistole to Dardanus, hit conteynethe vnnethe clx. myles of that cuntre. The latitude of hit is from Ioppen vn to Bethlem conteynenge vnnethe xlvj. myles of that region and cuntre. And after the boke of Nowmbres the Iewery hathe this circuite; at the meriden the Dedde see, and after that by Sina and Cades Barnee vn to the ryuer of Egipte, whiche flowethe in to the grete see. The londe of promission hathe the grete see to the weste parte of hit, and an hille callede Taurus at the northe, and on the este parte the mownte callede Libanus, and the begynnenges of that water callede Tiberiades, and of the water off Iordan, whiche haue their originale principle at the foote of the mownte callede Libanus. Then that floode of Iordan floenge in to the Dedde see makethe admision betwene the Iewery and Araby. This londe of Iuda was promisede to oure faderes, but not utterly possessedde,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *drad*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> So a. and Cx.; *for*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *ye*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Gregor.*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *from*] *fro*, Cx., and so below.<sup>6</sup> *side*] om. Cx.<sup>7</sup> *anon*, a.<sup>8</sup> *Cades berne vnto*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *corneþ*, a.; *renneth*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *is named mount*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *pe hille*] om. a.<sup>12</sup> Added from a.; and so Cx., nearly.<sup>13</sup> *Arabie*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *pis*, a. Cx.<sup>15</sup> *byhoote*, Cx.<sup>16</sup> *forn*, Cx.

dicit, quod "hii omnes mortui sunt, non acceptis pro-  
 " missionibus." Ex quibus liquet aliam esse terram  
 promissionis, in qua est cœlestis Jerusalem; et aliam  
 in qua terrestris Jerusalem, per quam cœlestis est figu-  
 rata.<sup>1</sup> Hæc itaque terra Judæa opulenta est, frugifera,  
 vinifera,<sup>2</sup> aromatica; cedris, cypressis, balsamis, olivis,  
 malogranatis, palmis, ficubus,<sup>3</sup> melle et lacte abun-  
 dans, quæ in medio sui velut in umbilico terræ<sup>4</sup>  
 urbem habet Jerusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo*  
*Jerusalem, primo.*<sup>5</sup> Hanc urbem asserunt Judæi Sem, filium Noe,  
 id est, Melchisedech, post diluvium fundasse, et Salem  
 nuncupasse,<sup>6</sup> quam postmodum tenuerunt Jebusæi; ex  
 quibus sortita est vocabulum Jebus, sicque ex duobus  
 vocabulis copulatis, Jebus et Salem, composita est Je-  
 rusalem, quæ postmodum a Salomone dicta Jerosolima.<sup>7</sup>  
 Hæc etiam<sup>8</sup> a poetis corrupte vocata est Solima. Et

<sup>1</sup> quæ figura est cœlestis, C.D., which have other trifling variations.

<sup>2</sup> vinifera] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> ficubus] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> terræ] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> D. (not C.) omits the heading of the extract.

<sup>6</sup> nuncupasse] vocasse, C.D., which also arrange some words differently, and contract the whole period.

<sup>7</sup> In this place the orthography of the MSS. (which fluctuate, how-  
 ever, as usual between *Ierosolima*

and *Ierosolyma*), is preserved in order to exhibit Higden's views respecting the derivation of the different forms of the word *Jerusalem*. For the matter itself, see Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 17. The ordinary Latin orthography (*Hierosolyma*, *Hierusalem*) arises from an error which is as old as the time of St. Jerome, if not of Josephus.

<sup>8</sup> autem a poetis corrupta, B., which is perhaps better.

"pey beep<sup>1</sup> deed and fenge<sup>2</sup> nouȝt pe byhestes." And so it moot<sup>3</sup> be, pat pere be tweye<sup>4</sup> londes of byheste, erpeliche and goostlyche. In pe<sup>5</sup> oon is heuenly Ierusalem; and in pe<sup>5</sup> oper, erpely Ierusalem; [by the whiche erthly Iherusalem]<sup>6</sup> pe heuenliche<sup>7</sup> is bytokened. Þis lond Iudea is riche and fruitful, and hap plente of wyne and of spicerie, of cedres, of<sup>8</sup> cipres, of baume, of olyues, of pomgarnet, of palmes, of figes, of mylk, and<sup>9</sup> of hony; and hap in pe myddel, as it were in pe navel of pe erpe, pe cite Ierusalem. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* Þe Iewes seip pat Sem, Noes sone, pat is i-cleped Melchesedek,<sup>10</sup> also made and bulde<sup>11</sup> pe citee Ierusalem after Noes flood, and cleped<sup>12</sup> hit Salem, but aftirwarde a peple pat were i-cleped Iebusei woned<sup>12</sup> perynne and cleped<sup>12</sup> pe citee Iebus. Of<sup>13</sup> pilke tweye names Iebus and Salem is i-made oo<sup>14</sup> name Ierusalem. Afterward Salamon cleped pe<sup>15</sup> citee Ierosolyma,<sup>16</sup> and poetis pat spekep<sup>17</sup> schortliche clepeþ pe citee Solyma

TREVISA.

thi apostle testifienge, that "thei diedde alle, the promissiones MS. HARL. 2261.  
"not accepte;" by the seyenge of whom hit may be concludede an other londe to be the londe of promission in whom heuenly Ierusalem is, and an other in whom terrestrial Ierusalem is, by whom heuenly Ierusalem is figurede. Also that londe of Iuda is plentuous of cornes, of wyne, of thynges aromaticalle, of cedre trees, cipre trees, bawmes, oliues, pomegranardes, palme tres, figge trees, habundaunt in hony and mylke, whiche hathe the cite off Ierusalem in the myddelle parte of hit. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo primo.* The Iewes afferme and say, Sem the sonne of Noe, other wyse called Melchisedech, to haue made that cite after the floode of Noe, whom the Iebuseis kepede after that tyme, by whom hit hade this name, Iebus; and so these ij. wordes, Iebus and Salem, copulate to gedre, this worde, Ierusalem, resultethe by composicion; whiche was callede afterwarde of Salomon, Ierosolima; callede also

<sup>1</sup> ben, Cx.<sup>2</sup> receyueden, Cx.<sup>3</sup> muste, Cx.<sup>4</sup> two, Cx.<sup>5</sup> that, Cx. twice, and so often.<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx., who modernises a little.<sup>7</sup> þe] a. and Cx. add *Ierusalem*.<sup>8</sup> of] So a. and Cx.; and, MS.<sup>9</sup> a. omits and, (not Cx.)<sup>10</sup> *Melchisedech*, Cx. (quid?), but *Melchisedech* below.<sup>11</sup> buylded, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *cleped, woned, cleped*] Replaced in Cx. by *called, dwelthd, named*, and so often.<sup>13</sup> *So of, a. and Cx.* (which is perhaps better).<sup>14</sup> one, Cx.<sup>15</sup> þat, a.<sup>16</sup> *Iherosolyma*, Cx., who also always prints *Iherusalem*.<sup>17</sup> a. adds *þerof*.



postea ab Imperatore Aelio Hadriano vocata est Ælia,<sup>1</sup> quam majori murorum ambitu ampliavit et dilatavit; ut sic locum Dominici sepulcri, quod olim extra urbem fuerat, includeret. *Ranulphus*. Verumtamen Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelum<sup>2</sup> presbyterum, videtur velle quod urbs Salem vel Salim quam incolebat Melchisedech, sit alia quam Jerusalem, ubi dicit Salem esse oppidum juxta Scythopolim, quod usque hodie dicitur Salem; et ostenditur ibi<sup>3</sup> palatium Melchisedech. De qua dicitur in fine Genesis quod transivit Jacob in Salem, civitatem Sichem, quæ est in terra Canaan. *Willelmus de Regibus*. Fons intra urbem nullus,<sup>4</sup> sed cisternis, ad hoc preparatis, latices colliguntur. Nam urbis ipsius situs ab austro<sup>5</sup> montem Syon habens, molli clivo versus boream<sup>6</sup> descendens,<sup>7</sup> sic disponitur ut pluvia stillans nequaquam lacum<sup>8</sup> faciat, sed instar rivulorum in cisternis excipitur,<sup>9</sup> vel saltem, per portas

<sup>1</sup> After this, C. and D. omit all before *Habet quoque in se regio*, which occurs near the end of the chapter. The MSS. have *Helio*, *Helia* (or *Helya*), and *Adriano*. Compare the English MSS.

<sup>2</sup> So B.E., rightly; but the name is blundered in E. and the versions.

<sup>3</sup> *ubi ostenditur*, B.

<sup>4</sup> B. adds *est*.

<sup>5</sup> *aquilone*, A.B. (and both the versions). These variations are instructive, and show that we have a later and better text in E., which

seems to be made from the author's final corrections. On the even now disputed point of the position of Sion, see Williams in Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.* vol. ii. p. 1009, who maintains in common with most modern writers that "Sion" proper is the S.W. hill of Jerusalem.

<sup>6</sup> *austrum*, A.B. (and the versions).

<sup>7</sup> *ascendens*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *lutum*, B. (and so Harl. version).

<sup>9</sup> *excipitur*, B.

in her schort speche. And after pat Aelius<sup>1</sup> Adrian pe Emperoure cleped pat citee Aelia,<sup>1</sup> and walled hit, and made it more aboute; so pat oure Lordes sepulchre, pat was somtym wip oute pe citee, is now<sup>2</sup> wip ynne. R. Neuerpeles<sup>3</sup> it semep pat Hieronymus, in epistola ad Evangelium<sup>4</sup> presbyterum, wil seie, pat Salem oper Salim, pat Melchisedek made and woned ynne, was anoper citee pan Ierusalem. Pere he seip pat Salem is a toun beside Scythopolim,<sup>5</sup> pat 3it hat<sup>6</sup> Salem; and perynne is i-seie pe paleys of Melchesedek and perof spekip Holy Writt, Genesis; and seip pat Iacob wente into Salem pe citee of Sichem, pat is in pe londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* No welle is wip ynne Ierusalem, but watres be i-gadred, and i-kept in cisternes; for pe citee is so i-sette pat he hap in pe north side pe mount<sup>7</sup> Syon, and is disposed pat pe water, pat fallep downward and soupward wip pe pendaunt<sup>8</sup> toward Ierusalem, takep no defoul,<sup>9</sup> but is clene i-now, and rennep into pe citee, and no fen makep, and<sup>10</sup> rennep into cisternes, as<sup>11</sup> it were lakes and welle stremes. And somme

TREVISA.

corruptely of poetes Solima; and afterwarde callede Aelya<sup>1</sup> MS. HARL. 2261.  
by Aelius<sup>1</sup> Adrian themperoure, whom he amplified with more circuite of walles, in so moche that he includede the place and sepulchre of oure Lorde, whiche was somme tyme withowte the walles of that cyte. R. But truly f. 28 a. Seynte Ierom in his epistole to Eugenius expresse the, seyenge that the cyte callede Salem or Salim, in whom Melchisedech dwellede, to be an other cite from Ierusalem, nye to Scythopolis,<sup>12</sup> whiche is callede Salem vn to this tyme presente, where hit is schewede the palice of Melchisedech, of whom hit is seyde in the ende of Genesis that Iacob wente in to Salem, a cite of Sichen, whiche is in the londe of Chanaan. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro primo.* There is noo welle within the cite, where waters be collecte, but in cestrens and veselles ordeynede perfore. For the site of that cyte, hauenge the mownte of Syon of the northe descendenge towarde the sowthe with a softe dependece, is so disposede that pe reyne reynenge makethe not clay, but as lytelle ryuers, whiche is receyvede in cestrens, or elles

<sup>1</sup> *Helius*, and *Helia*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *nowe closed*, Cx.; *now i-closed*, a.<sup>3</sup> *Netheles*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Evangelistum*, Cx. See note on text.<sup>5</sup> *Sitopolym*, MS.; *Sicopolim*, Cx. a.<sup>6</sup> *hat*] is called, Cx. (as usual).<sup>7</sup> a. and Cx. add *of*.<sup>8</sup> *dependaunt*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *fylthe*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *and maketh no fylthe, but, &c.*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *as pey, a.; as though*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *Sitopolis*, Harl. MS.

effluens, torrentem Cedron adaugeat.<sup>1</sup> Igitur in ipso vertice montis Syon<sup>2</sup> fuit arx seu turris pro decore et defensione. In declivo montis fuit templum quasi medium inter arcem et inferiorem urbem. Ideo<sup>3</sup> sæpe Scriptura vocat Jerusalem filiam Syon, quia sicut filia protegitur a matre et ei subditur, sic civitas inferior subdita fuit templo et arci. Constantinus magnus erexit aliquando in ea ecclesiam Sancti Sepulcri, quæ nunquam ab hostibus fidei<sup>4</sup> tulit injuriam; quod creditur contigisse pro igne cœlesti, qui quolibet anno in vigilia Paschæ<sup>5</sup> lampades ibidem illuminat; quod quidem miraculum, quando inceperit, incertum habetur. Hanc urbem cinxit aliquando rex Salamon muro triplici non solum ad munimentum, sed etiam ad distinctionem inhabitantium; ita ut infra primum murum circa montem

---

<sup>1</sup> *adaugēt*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Syon*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *Unde*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *fidei*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> B. adds *ibidem videtur et*.

perof rennep into pe brook pat is i-cleped torrens Cedron, TREVISIA.  
 and makeþ pe brook torrentem Cedron wexe and bewel<sup>1</sup>  
 pe more. In pe top<sup>2</sup> of mont Syon was a real<sup>3</sup> toure<sup>4</sup> for  
 feiren[e]s<sup>5</sup> and defens. In pe side of mont Syon was pe  
 temple as it were in pe myddel bytwene the toure and pe  
 citee; pe citee was lower þan pe toure, and perfore ofte  
 Holy Writt clepeth<sup>6</sup> Ierusalem pe douzter of Syon. For as  
 a<sup>7</sup> douzter is meyntheyned and defended by pe moder and  
 sogett<sup>8</sup> to the moder; so pe citee was lower and sogett to  
 pe temple and to pe tour. Also<sup>9</sup> pe grete Constantinus  
 arered þere somtyme pe chirche of pe Holy Sepulcre. Mys-  
 byleued men mysdede neuere pat chirche; and pat is, as  
 me trowep,<sup>10</sup> for euery 3ere an<sup>11</sup> Ester eue comeþ fire from<sup>12</sup>  
 heuene, and tendep and liþep pe lampes perynne; but whan  
 pat miracle bygan first, hit is vncertayne and vnknowe.<sup>13</sup>  
 Salamon pe kyng wallede þis citee somtyme wip pre walles  
 al aboute; neuerpeles nouzt onliche for strengþe, but for  
 distinccioun<sup>14</sup> of dyuers manere men pat woned þere; pe<sup>15</sup>  
 preostes and clerkes pat serued in pe temple, also<sup>16</sup> pe kyng

the water descendege by the ȝates of the cite increaseth the ryuer of Cedron. Therefore þer was a towre in the altitude of the mownte of Syon for worshippe and defence. In the dependence of whiche hille was a temple, as in the mydde part betwene the towre and the cite under hit, wherefore Scripture calleth ofte tymes Ierusalem the doȝhter of Syon; for like as a doȝhter is protecte of the moder, and subiecte to her, soe the cite inferior is subiecte to the temple and to the towre of Syon. The nowble and grete Constantyne made in hit a chirche off Seynte Sepulcre, whiche hath not suffrede iniury vn to this tyme of enmyes of the feithe, whiche men suppose to be causede for heuenly fyre, whiche dothe illumyne the lampes there of on the vigile of Pasche or Ester, whiche miracle is incerteyne as to the begynnege off hit. Kynge Salomon compassede that cyte with a threfolde walle not oonly for defence, but for the distinccion of men inhabitenge hit, soe that the temple of

MS. HARL.  
2261.

De cœlesti  
igne Jeru-  
salem in  
vigilia  
Paschæ.

<sup>1</sup> *be wel* (divisim), MS. and Cx.  
and *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *toppe* or *sommet of the*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *ryal*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *a*. adds *y-made*.

<sup>5</sup> *fayrenes*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> For this once Cx. has left *clepeth* in his own text.

<sup>7</sup> *a*. omits *a*. (not Cx.)

<sup>8</sup> *subgette*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>9</sup> Also] Given as the last word in the previous sentence in *a*. and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *as men suppose*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> an] *on*, Cx., who has *euen*.

<sup>12</sup> *fro*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *vnknownen*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *destruccioun*, MS.

<sup>15</sup> *þe*] So Cx.; *þat*, MS.; *a*. has some omissions here.

<sup>16</sup> *and also*, Cx.

Syon esset templum Domini, mansiones quoque hebdomadriorum<sup>1</sup> sacerdotum ac ministrorum, domus etiam regia<sup>2</sup> cum mansionibus domesticorum. In secundo ambitu habitabant potentes viri et prophetæ, unde legitur in libro Regum quod Olda prophetissa habitabat in Jerusalem in secunda, id est, in secunda distinctione. In tertio ambitu<sup>3</sup> habitabant opifices et plebes. *Ranulphus*.

Mons  
Olivet.

Juxta<sup>4</sup> Jerusalem, ad orientem templi, erat mons Oliveti, propter abundantiam olivarum sic vocatus; qui ab Augustino super Johannem vocatus est mons chrismatis et unctionis, mons luminis et pinguedinis, mons refectionis et medicaminis, eo quod fructus olivæ sit unctuosus, luminosus, deliciosus. Signanter autem dicebatur mons luminis, quia<sup>5</sup> oriente sole recepit<sup>6</sup> lumen a sole per diem, a luminaribus templi per noctem. In quo quidem monte Salamon aliquando, mulierum amore infatuatus, erexit delubra et excelsa, sicut patet ij. Regum x<sup>o</sup>. De quo etiam monte Christus coelos<sup>7</sup> ascendit, et in

<sup>1</sup> There is little doubt that this is the true reading, but the MSS. curtail the word strangely, thus: *ebdomadriorum*.

<sup>2</sup> *et ministrorum ac domus regia*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *distinctione*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Et juxta*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *eo quod*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *recipit*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *caelos*] om. B.



and his mayne woneþ<sup>1</sup> wip ynne þe firste wal by þe mount<sup>2</sup> TREVISA.  
 Syon. Wip ynne þe secounde wal woned prophetes and  
 myȝty men and stalworþe; so spekeþ Holy Writt, þat Elda<sup>3</sup>  
 prophetissa woned in Ierusalem in þe secounde distinccioun.<sup>4</sup>  
 Wip ynne þe þridde woned þe comoun peple and craftes men<sup>5</sup>  
 in þe wal.<sup>6</sup> [R.]<sup>7</sup> Faste by Ierusalem, in þe norþ side of þe  
 temple, is þe mount of Olyuete for plentee of olyues. Seynt  
 Austyn super Iohannem clepeþ it þe hulle of crisma<sup>8</sup> and of  
 vnccioun, þe hille of liȝt and of fatnes, þe hille of medicyne  
 and of fedyng; for þe fruit<sup>9</sup> of olyue is ful of liȝt, likyng,  
 and vnctuous; and it was specialiche þe hille and þe mont  
 of liȝt, for it was beschyne wip<sup>10</sup> liȝt of þe sonne al day  
 and wip liȝt of the temple al nyȝt. In þat hille Salamon,  
 whan he wax<sup>11</sup> mad and al by schrewed for loue of wommen,  
 he bulde temples in<sup>12</sup> hiȝe places for mametrie; so seiþ Holy  
 Writ, secundo Regum, decimo capitulo.<sup>13</sup> Out of þat mount  
 Crist steiþe<sup>14</sup> vp into heuene; and in þat mount he schal

oure Lorde was within the fyrste walle abowte the mownte MS. HARL.  
 of Syon, the mansiones also of the ebdomadaries, prestes, 2261.  
 and minstres, the kynges palice, with mansiones for his men.  
 Nowble men and prophetes inhabite within the secunde walle,  
 as hit is redde in the boke of Kynges that Olda prophetissa  
 dwellede in Ierusalem in the secunde distinccion. Men of  
 crafte and commune peple dwellede in the thrydde distinc-  
 cion and circuite of the walles. R. The Mownte of Oli- Mons  
 uete is nye to Ierusalem, at the este parte of that temple, Oleveti.  
 callede Oliuete for habundaunce of oliues, whiche is callede  
 by Seynte Austyn on Iohan,<sup>15</sup> the hille of creme and of  
 noy[n]tege, the hille of liȝhte and of fattenes, the hille of  
 refreschenge and of medicyne, in that the frute of oliues  
 is vnctuous, luminose, and delicious. Whiche was callede  
 significatiuely the mownte of liȝhte, for the sonne schynenge  
 hit receyvede liȝhte of hit, and of the temple by nyȝhte. f. 28 b.  
 In whiche mownte Salomon thro þe luffe of women made  
 hie places and chirches in hit, as hit is expressede Re-  
 gum xº. From whiche mownte Criste ascendede to heun,

<sup>1</sup> *dwelleden*, Cx. (the preterite seems right,) and similarly below.

<sup>2</sup> *mount of*, a. and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Olda*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; *destruccioun*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *men of crafte*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> a. and Cx. omit *in þe wal*.

<sup>7</sup> R. added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *crisma*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *fruyȝt*, a.

<sup>10</sup> *wip*] *by*, a.

<sup>11</sup> *wax*] *were*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *in*] and, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> So MS. and a.; but Cx. absurdly has *Romanos* 2º, 1º *capitulo*.

<sup>14</sup> *steiȝ*, a.; *ascended*, Cx., who omits *vp*.

<sup>15</sup> *Iohā.*, Harl. MS. (which elsewhere writes *Iohānes* for *Johannes*.)

fine ibidem judicabit orbem. In hujus montis pede oritur torrens Cedron qui fluit in vallem Josaphat, inter cujus ripam et montem fuit hortus ille quem Christus totiens intravit ad orandum, in quo etiam<sup>1</sup> horto<sup>2</sup> captus fuit. Juxta quem fuerat aliquando villula Gethsemane,<sup>3</sup> et in ipso monte<sup>4</sup> erat viculus sacerdotum qui dicebatur Bethphage, et in latere montis erat urbs Lazari, Marthæ, et Mariæ, nomine Bethania. *Hugutio.* Ad septentrionalem plagam montis Syon est mons Calvariæ, ubi crucifixus est Christus, qui, lingua Syra, dictus est Golgotha,<sup>5</sup> quod interpretatum sonat Calvaria, quæ est pars frontis patens supra supercilia, pro eo quod ibi decalvabantur ossa latronum, damnatorum, et decapitatorum. Cætera de mirabilibus templi require in libro Regum.

De mari  
Mortuo.

*Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.*<sup>6</sup> Habet quoque in se regio Judæa mare solitudinis, quod dicitur<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *etiam*] et, A.

<sup>2</sup> *horto*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *Gethsemany*, E. ; *Gethsemani*, A. B.

<sup>4</sup> *monte*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *Golgotha*, MSS., and so also in the MSS. of both the versions.

<sup>6</sup> *secundo*, B. Both references are false, and possibly Isidore is not the authority for this statement at all.

<sup>7</sup> *quod dicitur*] sive, C.

deme þe worlde at þe laste.<sup>1</sup> At þe foot<sup>2</sup> of þe<sup>3</sup> mount TREVISA.  
springeþ þe brook torrens Cedron, and eorneth<sup>4</sup> in to þe  
valey of Iosephat. Bytwene þe brynke of torrens Cedron  
and þe mount was þe orchezerde þat Criste went ynne ful  
ofte<sup>5</sup> for to bidde<sup>6</sup> and praye; in þat orchezerde<sup>7</sup> Crist  
was i-take, by þe whiche was a prope<sup>8</sup> þat hiȝt<sup>9</sup> Geth-  
semany. In þat mount was þe litel strete of preostes, þat  
heet<sup>10</sup> Be[th]phage.<sup>11</sup> In þe side of þe hille was þe yn<sup>12</sup> of  
Lazarus,<sup>13</sup> of Martha, and of Marie Mawdeleyn; þat toun  
hiȝt<sup>14</sup> Bethania. *Hugo.* In þe norþ side of mount Syon is  
þe mount Caluerie; <sup>15</sup> (þar<sup>16</sup> Crist deide on þe rode;) and is  
i-cleped Golgotha in þe longage<sup>17</sup> of Syria. Golgotha is to  
menynge a baar scolle. For whan þeues and mysdoeres were  
pere byheded,<sup>18</sup> þe hedes were i-left pere, and so at þe laste  
þe sculles wexen al bare. Opre wondres of þe temple loke  
in libro Regum. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo primo.*  
Also in þe reem<sup>19</sup> of Iuda is þe see of wildernesse þat is

where he schalle iugge also euery man in the day of iugge- MS. HARL.  
mente. In the foote of whiche hille the ryuer of Cedron 2261.  
is spronge, whiche flowethe in to the vale of Iosaphath,  
betwene the brynke of whom and the mownte was that  
gardyn in to whom Criste entrede ofte tymes to prey, in  
whom he was taken, nye to whom was a litelle towne  
callede Gethesemani, in whiche mownte was also the strete  
of prestes, whiche was callede Bethfage, and in the side  
of the mownte was the cite of Martha, of Lazarus, and of  
Mary, Bethania by name. *Hugo.* The mownte off Caluarie Mons  
is at the northe plage of the mownte of Syon, where Criste Calvaria.  
was crucifiede, whiche is callede, after the langage of men  
of Sire, Golgotha, soundenge by interpretacion, Caluaria, in  
hat the boones of men condempned and hedede were  
made bare there. As for other meruayles of the temple  
haue respecte to the bokes of Kynges. *Isidorus, libro quinto-*  
*decimo, capitulo primo.* The region of Iuda hathe in hit

<sup>1</sup> at laste, Cx.<sup>2</sup> atte foote, Cx.<sup>3</sup> that, Cx.<sup>4</sup> renmeth, Cx.<sup>5</sup> wel ofte, a.<sup>6</sup> bidda, a.<sup>7</sup> orchard, a.<sup>8</sup> a thorpe, Cx.<sup>9</sup> heet, a. and Cx.<sup>10</sup> heyght, Cx.<sup>11</sup> Bethfage, a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> toun, a. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> Lazar, Cx.<sup>14</sup> hiȝt] was named, Cx.<sup>15</sup> mont of Caluary, a. and Cx.<sup>16</sup> So a.; þat, MS.; there, Cx.<sup>17</sup> langage, a. and Cx.<sup>18</sup> byheueded, a.<sup>19</sup> royaume, Cx.

Mortuum, distans a<sup>1</sup> Jerosolimis stadiis ducentis, quæ reddunt<sup>2</sup> viginti quinque milliaria; dividitque Judæam, Palæstinam, et Arabiam. *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro xivj*<sup>3</sup>. Extenditur autem lacus ille a finibus Judææ non longe a Jerico usque ad Zoros Arabiæ stadiis septingentis octoginta, quæ faciunt milliaria nonaginta quatuor. Latitudo<sup>4</sup> ejus<sup>5</sup> stadiorum centum quinquaginta, usque ad vicinia Sodomorum. Dicitur autem lacus ille Lacus Salinarum, quia sales ibi fiunt. Dicitur<sup>6</sup> et lacus asphalti, quod est bitumen tenax, eo quod locus ille sit bituminosus, qua<sup>7</sup> de causa ventis non movetur, resistente semper bitumine, quo omnis aqua stagnatur. Neque ullam navem aut aliam<sup>8</sup> materiam sustinet nisi bituminatam.<sup>9</sup> *Petrus, capitulo quinquagesimo*.<sup>10</sup> Cujus loci bitumen seu<sup>11</sup> gluten nihil potest dissolvere,<sup>12</sup> nisi duntaxat sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus, libro tertio-decimo*. Dicitur etiam mare Mortuum, quia nihil vivum gignit aut recipit. Nam neque pisces, neque aves mersiles admittit. Sed et<sup>13</sup> quæcunque viva im-

<sup>1</sup> quod distat a, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> faciunt, C.

<sup>3</sup> xvj<sup>o</sup>, E., wrongly. See lib. xiii. c. 19.

<sup>4</sup> C. and D. add *vero*; D. omits the preceding words.

<sup>5</sup> ejus] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> dicitur] om. C., D.

<sup>7</sup> qua] hac, C., D.

<sup>8</sup> aliam] om. C., which places *sustinet* at the end.

<sup>9</sup> bituminata, B.

<sup>10</sup> 20, B. Both references seem to be false. Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Gen. c. 53*) has much in common with this chapter, but not the clause for which his authority is cited. Josephus (*Bell. Jud. lib. iv. c. 8. § 4*) is the authority for the statement.

<sup>11</sup> sive, B.

<sup>12</sup> dissolvere potuit, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> et] om. B.

pe Dede see, and from Ierusalem two hondred forlonges; TREVISA.  
 pat makip fyue and twenty myle, and departep Iudeam,  
 Palestinam, and Arabiam.<sup>1</sup> *Isidorus, Eth. libro tertiodecimo.*  
 Pat lake<sup>2</sup> streccheþ from pe endes<sup>3</sup> of Iudea noȝt fer from  
 Ierico anon to pe Zores<sup>4</sup> of Arabia seuene hondred forlonges  
 and foure score, pat<sup>5</sup> makip foure score myle and fourtene.  
 Pat lake is<sup>6</sup> in brede seuene score forlong and ten,<sup>7</sup> and  
 streccheþ nyh<sup>8</sup> to pe contrees<sup>9</sup> of Sodoma. Pat lake is  
 i-cleped lacus Salinarum, for salt is i-made pere. Also  
 pere is moche glew in pat contray; and perfore it meueþ<sup>10</sup>  
 nouȝt for wyndes, for pe glew wipstondeþ alwey: for water  
 pat hap glew stondeþ stille, and pat lake susteyneþ no schip  
 ne non opere matere, but it be glewed. *Petrus, capitulo*  
*quingagesimo.* Nopyng may vndo pe glewe of pat place, but  
 onliche pe blood pat is i-cleped sanguis menstruus. *Isidorus,*  
*libro tertio decimo.* It is<sup>11</sup> i-cleped also pe Dede see, for  
 pat see bryngeþ forth no ping pat is quyk and on<sup>12</sup> lyue;<sup>13</sup>  
 so pat he fongeþ noþer water foules, noþer fisshes; so pat  
 what quik ping<sup>14</sup> pat it be<sup>15</sup> pat duppeþ perynne, anon it

the Dedde see, beenge from Ierusalem iic. forlonges, whiche MS. HARL.  
 do make xxv<sup>ti</sup>. myles, diuidenge the Iewery, Palestine, and 2261.  
 Araby. *Isidorus, Eth., libro 13<sup>o</sup>.* That place is extendede  
 from the costes of the Iewery, not ferre from Ierico, to  
 Zores of Arabye vijc. forlonges and lxxx<sup>ti</sup>, whiche do make  
 xc. myles and iiij. The latitude of hit is of cl<sup>ti</sup>. forlonges  
 vn to nye places of Sodome. That place is callede the  
 place of salteneſſe, in that salte is made per. Also that place  
 is callede the place of pycche, for it is ful per of; whiche  
 water susteyneth not eny schippe, but if hit be welle  
 pycchede, or enny other mater. *Petrus, capitulo quinga-*  
*gesimo.* The pycche or glu of whiche place noo thyng  
 may dissolue, but the bloode of a woman suffrenge the  
 monethely infirmite: whiche place noryschethe not fysches  
 or fooles; but whikke thynges caste in to that water lepe

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Abraham*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx.; *lakes*, MS. and a.

<sup>3</sup> ende, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Ierico vnto zores*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *pat] the whiche*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So Cx.; *lakes is*, a. The MS. omits *is*, but has *lakes*.

<sup>7</sup> *an hondred and fyfthy furlonges*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *neyȝ*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *contrayes*, a.

<sup>10</sup> *moeueth not with*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> a. and Cx. place also after *is*.

<sup>12</sup> *olyue*, a.; *a lyue*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> a. adds also *pat se may fonge nobing pat is quyk and on lyue*. Cx. agrees with MS., except in having *it receyueþ for he fongeþ*.

<sup>14</sup> a. omits *ping*.

<sup>15</sup> *pat it be] om.* Cx., who has *dippeth*.



merseris statim prosiliunt, mortua vero absorbentur; adeo ut<sup>1</sup> lucerna accensa supernatet, extincta demergatur. *Josephus, libro primo.*<sup>2</sup> Hoc patuit in diebus Vespasiani principis de duobus hominibus qui, manibus post terga ligatis, ibidem projecti statim rejiciebantur.<sup>3</sup> *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo,*<sup>4</sup> *capitulo tertio.* Regio etiam<sup>5</sup> illa dicta est Pentapolis, a quinque urbibus<sup>6</sup> impiorum ibidem<sup>7</sup> submersis et incineratis. Terra quidem olim magis quam Jerusalem uberrima, (nam inter ejus lapides sapphiri et gemmæ pretiosissimæ inveniebantur, et aurum inter ejus glebas, sicut testatur Job xxiii<sup>o</sup>.)<sup>8</sup> sed nunc species et umbra ignis in ipsis favillis et arboribus videtur.<sup>9</sup> Nam poma virentia sub tanta specie maturitatis nascuntur, ut desiderium edendi gignant; quæ, si carpas manu, faticunt in cinerem, fumumque exhalant quasi adhuc ardeant. *Ranulphus.* Est autem<sup>10</sup> et alia Pentapolis, regio in Africa.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> in tantum etiam ut, C., D., which also have *supernatet*; C. (not D.) has *demergitur*.

<sup>2</sup> B. misplaces the extract from Josephus in the following chapter.

<sup>3</sup> *patiebantur*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. 3, § 24.

<sup>5</sup> *autem*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *civitatibus*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *ibidem*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *nam ... Job*] om. C., D. B. has after Job, *capitulo suo* 14. The passage intended is Job xxviii. 6.

<sup>9</sup> *videntur*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *tamen*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Est alia tamen Pentapolis regio in Africa*, A.

lepeþ vp aȝen; and alle dede pinges it swelewith<sup>1</sup> so fer forþ, þat a lanterne wip lyȝt fletþ and swymmeth aboue.<sup>2</sup> And ȝif þe liȝt is<sup>3</sup> i-queynt, it duppeþ doun and dryncþ. *Iosephus, libro primo.* Þat was assaied and i-knowe in þat grete princes tyme Vespasianus<sup>4</sup> be tweie men þat were i-bounde hir hondes by hynde hem and i-cast yn pere, but anon þey were i-cast vp aȝe. *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo tertio.* Þat kyngdom hatte<sup>5</sup> Pentapolis<sup>6</sup> also, for fyue wicked citees þat pere were a-dreynt and i-brent to asshes. Þat was<sup>7</sup> som tyme more riche and more plenteuous þan Ierusalem; for saphire<sup>8</sup> and oper wel precious stones and golde also were i-founde among þe cley of þat londe, as Iob witnessiþ, vicesimo quarto capitulo. But now pere semeþ somer schadue<sup>9</sup> and liknesse of fuyre boþe in ves-selles<sup>10</sup> and in trees. For apples<sup>11</sup> þat pere groweþ semeþ so faire and so ripe, þat who þat hem seep hym wilneþ<sup>12</sup> for to ete; but pilke apples þat<sup>13</sup> falleþ to asshes<sup>14</sup> anon as þey ben<sup>15</sup> i-handeled, and smokeþ<sup>16</sup> as þei afire were. R. But pere is anoper Pentapolis in Affrica.

TREVISIA.

furthe anon, dedde thynges be deuoured per anon; in so moche that a lawnterne y-lyȝhtede putte in to hit swymmethe above, and a lawnterne extincte is drowned in to hit. *Iosephus, libro primo.* Whiche thyng was experte, in the dayes of Vespasian prince, of ij. men, the whiche were caste in to that water, theire hondes y-bounde behynde theym, whom the water wolde not receyve. *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo tertio.* That region was callede Pentapolis, of the v. cites of wicked men drowned there. That londe was somme tyme more then Ierusalem in plentuousenesse; for f. 29 a. saphires and other precious stones were founde amonge the stones of hit, and golde, as Iob testifieth, capitulo xxiiij<sup>o</sup>. For now the similitude of fire apperethe in the trees. For apples be spronge per vnder suche a similitude of ripenes, that thei move the appetite of man to eyte of theyme; whiche apples y-taken be redacte vn to esches, as if thei brente, to this tyme. R. Also per is an other region callede Pentapolis in Affrike.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> he swolweþ, a.<sup>2</sup> aboue] om. Cx.<sup>3</sup> is] be, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Vespasianus, MS., a, and Cx.<sup>5</sup> hatte] is called, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Pentapolis*, MS., and so below.<sup>7</sup> was] were, Cx., who has no stop after *ashes*.<sup>8</sup> saphires, a.; *saphirs*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> schadowe, a.<sup>10</sup> herbis, Cx.<sup>11</sup> appolis, a.<sup>12</sup> wyllith, Cx.<sup>13</sup> þat] to, a. Probably the word should be simply cancelled.<sup>14</sup> thylke appels fallen anon to ashes, Cx.<sup>15</sup> beeþ, a.<sup>16</sup> So a.; *smoked*, MS.; *smoken*, Cx.

*De regione Canaan.**Capitulum quintumdecimum.*<sup>1</sup>

CANAAN regio est Syriæ<sup>2</sup> a filiis Canaan filii Cham post diluvium primitus possessa, septem in se continens nationes, quasi ex primo Cham filio Noë hæreditarie maledictas. Palæstina provincia est Syriæ, dicta quondam Philistea, cujus metropolis dicta est Philistiim, nunc vero<sup>3</sup> Ascalon, ex qua urbe tota illa provincia Palæstina seu Philistea vocata est, et incolæ ejus Palæstini seu Philistei, quia Hebreus sermo *p* litteram non habet sed pro eo utitur *ph*; inde Philistei, quasi Palæstini; qui tamen dicti sunt *allophyli*, id est *alienigenæ*, eo quod semper fuerint a filiis Israel alieni. Hæc regio habet ab austro Ægyptum, ab occasu<sup>4</sup> Tyrios, ab aquilone Ju-

---

<sup>1</sup> The descriptions of the provinces are thus arranged in C. and D.: Galilee, Palestine, Phenicia, Canaan, Cedar, Egypt.

<sup>2</sup> *Assyria*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *autem*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *ad occasum*, A.

*De Canaa terra. Capitulum quintumdecimum.*

TREVISA.

CANAAN is a reem<sup>1</sup> of Syria<sup>2</sup> and hatte Canaan, for Canaan<sup>3</sup> children were þe firste pat woned þerynne after Noes flood; and conteyned seuen<sup>4</sup> naciouns acorsed as it were by heritage of Cam,<sup>5</sup> Noes sone. *Trevisa*. Cham was Noes sone, and hadde his fader<sup>6</sup> cors; for he lowh<sup>7</sup> his fader to scorne, for he say<sup>8</sup> his priue harneys<sup>9</sup> al bare and vnhelēd, while he lay on slepe. *R*. Palestina<sup>10</sup> is a prouince of Syria, and pat hiȝte somtyme Philistea; þe cheef<sup>11</sup> citee ȝerof hiȝte Philistin,<sup>12</sup> and now hatte Ascalon.<sup>13</sup> And after pat<sup>14</sup> citee is þe prouince i-cleped Palestina oper Philistea. And men of pat contrey hatte Palestini and Philistei also; for in þe speche of Hebrewes<sup>15</sup> is no *p*, but instede of *p* þey useþ *ph*; þerfore Philistei and Palestini beþ all oon, and beþ also i-cleped *allophylī*, pat is to menyngē *aliens* and straunge men, for þey were alwey aliens and straunge to the folk of Israel. Pat prouince hap in þe south side Egipt, in þe west Tyrus, in þe north Iudea,

*Capitulum quintumdecimum.*HARL.MS.  
2261.

Canaan is a region of Syria,<sup>16</sup> possessede firste of the childre of Canaan, sonnes of Chayin, after Noe floode, conteynenge Canaan. in hit vij. naciones as cursede by enheritaunce of Cam the sonne of Noe. Palestina is a prouince off Syria, callede Palestina. somme tyme Philistea, the chiefe cyte of whom was called Philistea. Philistijm and now Ascalon, of whiche cite alle that prouince was callede Palestina or Philistea, and the inhabitatores of hit were callede Philisteis, for men of Ebrewe vse not this letter, *f*, but *ph* in the place of hit. Of whom the Philisteies were callede *alophili*,<sup>17</sup> that is to say *aliauntes*, in so moche that they were straunge alleweyes to the childer of Israel. That region hathe Egipte on the sowthe parte of hit and men of Tire at the weste, the Iewery at the northe, and

<sup>1</sup> *royamme*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Siria*, MS., which has also other slightly unclassical forms of proper names in this chapter.<sup>3</sup> So *a.*; *Caanes*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *vj.*, Cx., who has *alle* before *acursyd*.<sup>5</sup> þe *Cham*, *a.*<sup>6</sup> *faders*, Cx. (not *a.*)<sup>7</sup> *lowȝ*, *a.*<sup>8</sup> *sawe*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *membrys*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> oper *Phylistea*, added in *a.*<sup>11</sup> *chif*, *a.*<sup>12</sup> So *a.*; *Philisti*, MS.<sup>13</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Ascelon*, MS.<sup>14</sup> þe, *a.* and Cx.<sup>15</sup> *Hebrew*, Cx.<sup>16</sup> *Siria*, Harl. MS., and so throughout.<sup>17</sup> The translator's orthography, who evidently thinks ἀλλόφυλοι is Hebrew, has been allowed to stand. Just before he has wrongly written *f* for *p*.

dæam, ab ortu Idumæam, sic dictam ab Edom qui et Esau, quæ quidem Idumæa terra est fortis, montuosa, et calida, extendens se ad mare Rubrum.<sup>1</sup> *Isidorus, libro nono.*<sup>2</sup> In hac Idumæa est fons Jobyn quater in anno colorem mutans, ternis scilicet mensibus tenens colorem pulvereum, aliis tribus sanguineum, aliis tribus viridem, reliquis<sup>3</sup> tribus limpidum et aqueum colorem.<sup>4</sup> Palæstina etiam solebat in se comprehendere<sup>5</sup> Samariam regionem cujus metropolis Samaria, sed nunc Sebaste.<sup>6</sup>

Samaria.

Samaria siquidem, a Somer<sup>7</sup> monte dicta, jacet media inter Judæam et Galilæam; de qua ejectis aliquando et captivatis incolis introducti sunt Assyrii qui solam legem Moysis<sup>8</sup> admittunt, in ceteris vero a Judæis discrepant. Et dicti sunt Samaritæ, quod sonat *custodes*, quia populo terræ captivato ad custodiam deputabantur.<sup>9</sup> Sichem vel Sichima modica est terra in Samaria, a Sichem, filio Emor, qui eam incoluit, sic vocata. Et est Sichem urbs,

<sup>1</sup> *Palæstina provincia ... Rubrum*] C. and D. contract the text into one short sentence. A. omits *se* after *extendens*.

<sup>2</sup> 14, A., B., C., D. The place intended occurs at lib. xiii. c. 13. § 8. Isidore, however, has *Job* for *Jobyn*. The account of the Samaritans, indeed, a little below, is taken from lib. ix. c. 1. § 54., and that of Galilee from lib. xiv. c. 3. § 23.

<sup>3</sup> *et reliquis*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *colorem limpidum*, C. and D., in

which other trifling variations also occur.

<sup>5</sup> *Palæstina vero continet in se*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *sed nunc Sebaste*] om. in C., which adds *quondam vocabatur* before *Samaria*. D. has *et nunc ab Augusti nomine vocatur Sebasten* (sic).

<sup>7</sup> *Samar*, A.; *Samer*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Moysi*, MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *Et dicti...deputabantur*] om. C., D., in which the whole description of *Sichem* is also omitted. For *deputabantur* (so A. and B.) E. has *deputantur*.



in<sup>1</sup> þe est Idumea. Idumea hap þe name of Edom; Edom<sup>2</sup> and Esau is all oon, Iacobus broþer. Þat Idumea is a strong londe, hully and hoot, and strecchep to þe Redde see. *Isidorus, libro nono*. In þis Idumea is Iobus<sup>3</sup> welle. Þat welle chaunge[þ]<sup>4</sup> hewe and colors foure sipes<sup>5</sup> a ȝere by þe monthes; þe firste þre monþes pale as ashes; þe secounde þre monþes reed as blood; þe þridde þre monþes grene as gras; and þe fourþe þre monþes cleer as water.<sup>6</sup> Palestina was i-woned to conteyne þe lond Samaria. Þe cheef<sup>7</sup> citee of þat lond was somtyme i-cleped Samaria, but now he is i-cleped and hatte Sebaste. Samaria hap þe name of þe hille þat hatte Somer, and Samaria lieþ bytwene Iudea and Galilea. Men þat woned in Samaria were i-dryue oute, and Assyrii were i-brouȝt ynne. Assyrii holdeþ Moyses lawe, and in<sup>8</sup> oþer discordeþ from the Iewes, and hoteþ also Samaritæ, þat is to menyng *kepers*. For whan men of þe londe were i-take, þey were ordeyned wardeynes of hem.<sup>9</sup> Sychem, þat hatte Sichema<sup>10</sup> also, is a litel lond yn Samaria, and hap þe name of Sichem, Emor his sone,

TREVISA.

Idumea on the este parte. That londe is myȝhty, fulle of hilles, and hoot, extendenge hit to the Redde see. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo*. The welle of Iobyn is in that Idumea,<sup>11</sup> chaungege his colour iiij. tymes in oon yere; in thre monethes holdenge the colour of duste, in other thre the coloure of bloode, in oþer thre monethes a grene coloure, and in other thre a clere colour of water. Also Palestine was wonte to comprehend Samaria in hit; the chiefe place of that region was callede Samaria, but now hit is callede Sebaste. Samaria toke the name of hit of the mownte callede Samer, whiche lyethe in the myddes betwene the Iewery and Galile; the inhabitores of whom somme tyme cieete and put in captiuite, men of Assyria were introducte, whiche admitte oonly the lawe of Moyses. In other thynges they discorde from the Iewes and be callede Samaritanes, whiche sowndethe *kepers*, for they were deputate to the kepenge of that londe, the peple of hit putte in captiuite. Sichen or Sichenia is a lyttelle grownde in Samaria, namede Sichen. so of Sichem the sonne of Emor, whiche inhabite hit firste. f. 29 b.

Fons  
Iobyn.<sup>1</sup> and in, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Edom] added from Cx.<sup>3</sup> Jobyns, a.; Jacobs, Cx.<sup>4</sup> chaungeth, Cx.<sup>5</sup> a. has some omissions here.<sup>6</sup> a. and Cx. have some slight omissions in the foregoing sentence.<sup>7</sup> chif, a.<sup>8</sup> in] added from a.; Cx. has but in somme thynges they discorde.<sup>9</sup> ham, a.<sup>10</sup> Sychina, a.<sup>11</sup> Ydumea, Harl. MS.

quæ nunc Neapolis dicitur, quam Jacob aliquando pecunia et labore gravi comparatam dedit filio suo Joseph super sortem, sicut dicit Hieronymus supra Genesim XVIII. Et fuit hæc aliquando urbs refugii cum suburbanis suis in finibus montis Ephraim,<sup>1</sup> sicut patet Josuæ XX. Nam et illa terra fuit de tribu Ephraim, et ibi sepulta sunt ossa Joseph, postquam translata fuerant de Ægypto, ut patet Josuæ ultimo. In quo loco fratres Joseph paverant greges suos; quem tamen locum postmodum destruxit Abimelech, filius Jeroboal. Et interfectis habitatoribus seminavit ibi sal,<sup>2</sup> ne terra illa<sup>3</sup> denuo germinaret, sicut habetur Josuæ IX. Ibi quoque fuit fons Jacob, super quem Christus fessus ex itinere requievit.

Galilæa. Galilæa regio est inter Judæam et Palæstinam, quæ<sup>4</sup> et duplex est, superior et inferior, ad invicem contigue adherentes Syriæ et Phœniciæ.<sup>5</sup> Utriusque Galilææ

<sup>1</sup> *Eḡḡraym* or *Eḡḡrain*, MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *ibidem salem*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *illa*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *quæ*] om. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Fenici*, B.; *Phenici*, D.

pat first woned perynne. Also pere is a citee pat hatte Sychem, and now is i-cleped Neopolis. Pat citee Iacob bouzte som tyme wip money and grete trauaille, and ȝaf it to Ioseph his sone ouer<sup>1</sup> his lotte, so seiþ Hieronymus,<sup>2</sup> Genesis, octodecimo capitulo. And pis was a cite of refute<sup>3</sup> and of socour, so it is i-write Iosua vicesimo capitulo. For pat lond<sup>4</sup> was de tribu and of þe lynage of Ephraym; and pere were Ioseph is<sup>5</sup> bones i-buried, after pat<sup>6</sup> þey were i-brouzte ouzt of Egipte; witnesse of Holy Writt, Iosua ultimo capitulo. In pat place Ioseph his<sup>7</sup> breperen fedde and kepte flokkes<sup>8</sup> of bestes: but afterward Abymelech,<sup>9</sup> Ierobabel<sup>10</sup> sone, destroyed pat place, and slow þe men pat woned perynne, and sewe salt perynne, for þe lond schulde na more<sup>11</sup> bere fruit and corne; witnesse Iosua nono capitulo. Also<sup>12</sup> pere is Iacobus welle, pat<sup>13</sup> Criste reste by, whan he was wery of wey and of goynge. Galilea is a londe bytwene Iudea and Palestina, and is double, þe ouer Galilea and þe neper Galilea, and ioynep to gidres, and also to Syria and to Phenicia;<sup>14</sup> in eyþer Galilea is good lond

TREVISA.

And Sichem was a cite whiche is callede now Neapolis, whom Iacob bouzte for moneye and grete,<sup>15</sup> ȝifenge hit to Ioseph his sonne, as Seynte Ierom seyethe on Genesim ca°. xvijº, whiche was somme tyme the cite of refute with the suburbarbes of hit sette in the costes of the mownte of Effraym, where the bones of Ioseph were buryede<sup>16</sup> after that thei were translate from Egipte, as hit is schewede Iosua ultimo capitulo. In whiche place the breder of Ioseph kepede bestes: whiche place Abimelech destriede after the son of Zorobabel, sawenge there salte, the inhabitatores of hit y-sleyne, that the londe scholde not be plentuous, as hit is schewede Iosua nono capitulo. Where the welle of Iacob was, on whom Criste beenge feynte of labor did reste. Galile is a region betwene the Iewery and Galilea. Palestine, whiche is duplicate, the superior and inferior, drawenge to gedre as contiguate to Syria and to Phenicia;<sup>17</sup>

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *about*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Iherome*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *refuge*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; MS. adds *pat* (clerical error).<sup>5</sup> *Iosephs*, Cx.; *Ioseph his*, *a.*<sup>6</sup> *pat*] *om.* Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Iosephs*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *droues and flockes*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *Abimaleche*, MS.<sup>10</sup> *Ierobabels*, *a.* and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *nomore*, Cx. (not *a.*)<sup>12</sup> *and*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *pat*] *where*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *Fenicia*, MS. and Cx.<sup>15</sup> The Harl. MS. has omitted *trauaille*, or some such word.<sup>16</sup> The MS. had *translate* before *buryede*, but a pen is drawn through it.<sup>17</sup> *Fenicea*, Harl. MS.

gleba est fertilis; lacus<sup>1</sup> utiles et salubres qui pro sui<sup>2</sup> magnitudine et piscium multitudine maria nuncupantur, sicut patet de lacu Tiberiadis et Genesareth.<sup>3</sup> Item<sup>4</sup> in occiduis partibus Galilææ inferioris versus mare magnum juxta Ptolemaida (quæ est Acon civitas)<sup>5</sup> est fons quidam, quo metalla injecta<sup>6</sup> mutantur in vitrum.

Cedar.

Cedar est regio<sup>7</sup> in superiori parte Palæstinæ, quam incoluit Cedar primogenitus Ismaelis,<sup>8</sup> et post eum Ismaelitæ,<sup>9</sup> qui verius dicuntur Agareni quam Saraceni, quia<sup>10</sup> de Agar ancilla matre Ismaelis<sup>11</sup> sunt progeniti; sed nomen de Sara sibi<sup>12</sup> usurparunt.<sup>13</sup> *Methodius*. Hii domos non ædificant, sed per vastam solitudinem vagantes<sup>14</sup> tabernacula inhabitant, de prædis et venationibus victum<sup>15</sup> quærentes. Hii aliquando congregati exhibunt de desertis et occupabunt<sup>16</sup> orbem terræ per octo hebdomadas annorum, urbes subvertent,

<sup>1</sup> *Utriusque gleba fertilis. Lacus* habent, &c., C., D.

<sup>2</sup> *sui*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> So B.; *Genesar*, A., C., D., E.

<sup>4</sup> *Item*] om. C., D.

<sup>5</sup> *quæ est Acon civitas*] om. C., D.

<sup>6</sup> *injecta*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *nomen est regionis*, C., D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ismael*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Cedar, filius Ismaelis, et postmodum Ismaelitæ*, B.; *hanc* (tamen,

D.) *terram postremo* (postmodum, D.) *incoluerunt Ism.*, C., D.

<sup>10</sup> *qui*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *matre Ism.*] om. C., D.

<sup>12</sup> *ibi usurpant*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *sed ... usurparunt*] quasi usurpato nomine, C., D., which arrange the clauses differently.

<sup>14</sup> *vagantes*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *victum*] vitam, C., D.

<sup>16</sup> *occupabunt*] obtinebunt, C., D.

and greet plente of corne and of fruit, grete lakes and huge, profitable and heleful,<sup>1</sup> and som lake is so huge<sup>2</sup> and so ful of fische pat me clepep it a<sup>3</sup> see. So pe lake of Tiberiadis is i-cleped pe see of Tiberiadis, and Genosar pat lake is i-cleped also. Also in pe west side of pe neper Galilea toward pe grete see fast by pat citee Ptolemaida,<sup>4</sup> pat hatte Acon<sup>5</sup> also, is a welle pat tornep into glas<sup>6</sup> al metal pat is cast perynne. Cedar is a londe yn pe ouerside of Palestina, and hap pe name of pat Cedar pat wonede perynne,<sup>7</sup> pat Cedar<sup>8</sup> was Ismael his eldest sone. Pe ofspringe of Cedar and of Ismael were afterwarde i-cleped Ismaelitæ, and also Agareni more riȝtfulliche pan Saraceni,<sup>9</sup> for pey come of Agar pat was Ismael his moder and serued Sarra, but afterward for pryde pey toke wrongfulliche pe name of Sarra and cleped hem Saraceni. *Methodius.* Pese men hauep noon hous but walkep in wildernesse and woncp in tabernacles and in teeldis,<sup>10</sup> and lyuep by prayes<sup>11</sup> and by veynsoun. Pese men schole<sup>12</sup> somtyme gadere to gidres and goo out of wildernesse and occupie the londes aboute eiȝt wekes of ȝeres, pat is eiȝte siȝes seuene ȝere, and pey

TREVISA.

eiper of hit is plentuous, hauenge profitable waters and wholsome, whiche be callede sees what for the magnitude of theyme and for the copious multitude of fisches, as the water of Tiberiadis and of Genazareth. Also there is a welle in to whom metalles caste be turnede in to glasse in the weste partes of the inferior Galile, towarde the grete see nye to Ptolemaida,<sup>13</sup> whiche is the cite of Achon. Cedar is a region in the superior parte of Palestine, whom Cedar the firste son of Ysmael didde inhabite; after hym callede more truly Agareni then Saraceni; for the progenye of theyme descendede from Agar, seruaunte and moder of Ismael, vsurpenge to theyme the name of Sara. *Methodius.* Theye edifie noo howses, but, goenge by a waste wildernes, inhabite tabernacles, gettenge theire meyte thro preyes and huntenges. These men somme tyme congregate schalle goe furthe from deserte, and schalle occupye alle the worlde by viij. wekes off yeres, subuertenge citees and defilenge holy

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *helpful*, a. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *grete*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; *be*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *Ptholomaida*, MS., a., and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *Aces*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *aglas*, a.<sup>7</sup> *pat wonede perynne*] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Cedar*] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Sareceny*, MS.<sup>10</sup> *tentes*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *praye*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *schulle*, a.; *shal*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *Ptolomaida*, Harl. MS.



sacra loca polluent, sacerdotes<sup>1</sup> occident, ad sanctorum sepulera ligabunt jumenta sua; et hoc pro nequitia Christianorum.<sup>2</sup> *Ranulphus*. Ista videntur impleri sub ultimis temporibus Heraclii Imperatoris, quando<sup>3</sup> Machometus pseudo-propheta Persas occupavit, Ægyptum et Africam subjugavit, nefariamque sectam Saracenorum commentavit,<sup>4</sup> sicut inferius post tempora Heraclii planum erit.<sup>5</sup>

Phœnicia. *Methodius*. Phœnicia est regio in qua Tyrus et Sidon comprehenduntur<sup>6</sup> habens ab ortu Arabiam, ab austro mare Rubrum, a septentrione montem Libani, ab occasu mare magnum. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto*. Istis Phœnicibus tradidit Phenix filius Agenoris quasdam litteras vermiculatas, unde et color ille Phœnicus dictus est, et postmodum littera mutata Puniceus dicebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Phœnix*. Et quia Phœnicees fuerunt primi litterarum inventores adhuc litteras capitales rubeo colore scribimus, ut sic representemus eos fuisse litterarum repertoies.

<sup>1</sup> B. adds *autem*.

<sup>2</sup> *nequitiiis Christianorum quas facient*, added in C., D.

<sup>3</sup> *Hoc impletum est tempore Heraclii imperatoris quando*, &c., C., D.

<sup>4</sup> *commentavit*] *adinvenit*, C., D.

<sup>5</sup> *sicut infra sub tempore Heraclii continetur*, C., D.

<sup>6</sup> *regio est in qua sunt Sidon et Tyrus*, C., D., which omit the remainder of the chapter after *mare magnum*, as does also B.

TREVISA.

schullep<sup>1</sup> ouertorne citees and townes, and slee preestes, and defoule clerkes and holy places, and teie her<sup>2</sup> bestes to tombes of holy<sup>3</sup> seyntes; pat schal byfalle for wickednesse of euel lyuyng of Cristen men. R. Pis doynge semep fulfild in pe laste tyme of Heraclius pe emperour, whan<sup>4</sup> pat false prophete Machometys<sup>5</sup> occupied Persida<sup>6</sup> and made Egipte and Affrica sogett,<sup>7</sup> and wroot and brouzt yn pe false lawe and secte of Saracins, as it is innermore<sup>8</sup> pley n i-writ<sup>8</sup> after Heraclius tyme. Phenicia<sup>9</sup> is a lond in pe whiche is conteyned tweye londes, Tyrus and Sidon, and hap in pe est side Arabia, in pe soup pe Rede see, in pe norp pe hil pe mount Libany,<sup>10</sup> and in pe west pe grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto*. Phenix, Agenoris sone, by toke rede lettres to pe Phenices, pat beep men of Phenicia, and perfore pat colour was i-cleped *Phenicius*; and afterward pe lettre chaunged, and pan it was i-cleped *Puniceus*, pat is, *reed*. *Hugo, capitulo Phenix*. For Pheniciens<sup>11</sup> were pe<sup>12</sup> firste fynderes of lettres, 3it we writen capital lettres wip reed colour, in token and mynde pat Phenices were pe<sup>12</sup> firste fynders of lettres.

places schalle sle prestes makege faste their bestes at the sepulchres of seyntes, and this schalle falle for the wickidnesse and synne of Cristen men. R. These thynges seme to have bene fullefilled in the tyme of Heraclius themperoure, when Machomete the false prophete occupiede Persa, Egipte, and made Affrike subiecte to hym, commentenge the wickede secte of Saracenys, as hit schal be expressede after the tymes of Heraclius. Phenicia is a region in whom Tyrus and Sidon be comprehendede, hauenge of the este parte off hit Araby, of the sowthe the Redde see, of the northe the mownte of Libanus, of the weste parte the grete see. *Isidorus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto*. Phenix the sonne of Agenoris toke to these Feniceonnes somme redde letters, wherefore that colour was called *pheniceus*, and after a letter chaungede hit was *puniceus*. *Hugo, capitulo Phenix*. And for cause men of that cuntre were the firste fynders of letters we wryte vn to this tyme the capitalle letters with a redde color, that we may represente theyme to be the firste fynders of letters.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *shal*, Cx., as usual.<sup>2</sup> *here*, a.<sup>3</sup> a. omits *holy*.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *what*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *Machometes*, a.<sup>6</sup> So Cx. and a.; *Persidia*, MS.<sup>7</sup> *subgette*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *ynnere* more, a.<sup>9</sup> *Fenicia*, MS., but *Phenyx* and*Phenisia* just below; and so a., (nearly). Harl. MS. has *F* everywhere.<sup>10</sup> Perhaps this is meant for the genitive; and if so should be edited *Libani*, as Cx. has it, who omits *pe hil*; a. agrees with MS.<sup>11</sup> *Phenices*, a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> a. and Cx. omit *pe* (twice).

## CAP. XVI.

*De Ægypto.*<sup>1</sup>

AB Ægypto Danai fratre dicta est Ægyptus, quæ quondam<sup>2</sup> Aerea<sup>3</sup> vocabatur, ab ortu habens mare Rubrum, ab austro Nilum flumen et Æthiopes, a septentrione mare magnum et partem Syriæ superiorem, ab occasu Libyam. Est itaque Ægyptus regio imbri insueta,<sup>4</sup> a solo Nilo flumine irrigata et fœcundata, frugum et mercium copiosa. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.*<sup>5</sup> Ægyptus, contra naturam aliarum regionum, quando abundat frugibus,<sup>6</sup> sterilis<sup>7</sup> est in pascuis, et e contra. Nam diuturnior<sup>8</sup> mora Nili fluminis super terram tempora<sup>9</sup> culturæ<sup>10</sup> impedit vel sata extinguit, et tunc pas-  
cua nutrit. Ibi abundant cocodrilli,<sup>11</sup> et hippotauri, qui sunt equi fluviales.<sup>12</sup> Ægyptus ad ortum sui vastam habet eremum<sup>13</sup> varia monstra continentem, ad ejus oc-

<sup>1</sup> Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Egiptus* in margin.

<sup>2</sup> *Ægyptus ab Ægypto Danai fratre sic dicta quondam*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So the MSS. See Eus. *Chron. Can.* (vol. 2. p. 61., ed. Auch.) Isid. lib. xiv. c. 2. § 27., where it is written *Aeria*.

<sup>4</sup> *inconsueta*, C.; *mansueta*, D.

<sup>5</sup> 44, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *in frugibus*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *tunc sterilis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *Diuturnior enim*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *tempora*] tempore, E.; opus, B.

<sup>10</sup> *culturæ*] colendi, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> So all the MSS.

<sup>12</sup> *ypotauri* (sic) et *fluviales equi*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Ad orientem sui vastum* (sic) *habet eremum*, C.D.

*De Ægypti provinciis. Capitulum sextum decimum.*

TREVISA.

EGIPTE hap þe name of Egipt, Danay his broþer,<sup>1</sup> and hiȝte<sup>2</sup> somtyme Aēr[e]a,<sup>3</sup> and hap in þe est side þe Rede see, in þe south þe ryuer Nilus and Blomen,<sup>4</sup> in þe north þe grete see and þe ouere partie of Syria, and in þe west Libya. Egipt is silde bereyne,<sup>5</sup> and hap water and moisture onliche of þe ryuer Nilus, and is riche of corne and fruit and marchaundise.<sup>6</sup> *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* Egipte aȝenst kynde of oper londes hap plente of corn; he is bareyne<sup>7</sup> of lesue,<sup>8</sup> and whan he hap plente of lesue it<sup>9</sup> is bareyne of corn. For whan þe ryuer Nilus is vppe and ouer wexiþ and ouerfloweþ þe londe and abideþ longe in seed tyme, or<sup>10</sup> þe flood wiþdrawe, it letteþ sowynge and drenchep<sup>11</sup> þe seed; and so corne is destroyed, and lesue and gras growep after in tyme. Pere beep cokkedrilly<sup>12</sup> and hippotauri<sup>13</sup> also, þat beep water hors.<sup>14</sup> Egipt hap in þe est side a grete wilderness and dyuerse manere bestes wonderliche

*Capitulum sextum decimum.*

EGIPTE toke the name of hit of Egyptus, broþer off Danay, MS. HARL. which was callede somme tyme Aeria, hauenge on the este 2261. parte to hit the Redde see, of the sowthe Nilus and men — Ægyptus. of Ynde, of the northe the grete see and the superior parte of Syria, of the weste parte the mownte of Libanus. This region of Egipte is not vsede to reyne, hauenge water onoly of that floode callede Nilus, plentuous of corne and copious of marchandise. *Petrus, capitulo nonagesimo quarto.* When Egipte is plentuous of corne, hit is bareyne in pastures, ageyne the nature of other regiones and in contrary wyse; for the taryenge of þat floode callede Nilus on the londe lettethe the tymes of plowenge, other destryethe cornes and then hit noryschethe pastures. Cocodrilles be habundaunte there and horses of the floode, callede hippotauri.<sup>15</sup> Egipte hathe at the este parte of hit waste deserte, conteynenge

<sup>1</sup> *Danays broder, Cx.*<sup>2</sup> *highte, Cx., inconsistently. See p. 115.*<sup>3</sup> *Aerea, a.; Aeria, Cx.*<sup>4</sup> *So a.; Blomen, MS.; Blac men, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *is sylde bereyne, a.; is zelde be-raynd (so), Cx.; bareyne, MS.*<sup>6</sup> *of fruyt and of, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *barayn, a.*<sup>8</sup> *lese, a.; pasture, Cx., who omits two or three lines here.*<sup>9</sup> *he, a. (more consistently.)*<sup>10</sup> *ur, a.*<sup>11</sup> *adrenchep, a.*<sup>12</sup> *cocodrilly, a.; cocodrylly, Cx.*<sup>13</sup> *ipotauri, MS.; ipotaury, a.; ypotamy, Cx., which is nearer the truth, but may be his own correction.*<sup>14</sup> *hors] horses, Cx. (not a.)*<sup>15</sup> *ypotauri, Harl. MS.*

cidentem est regio Canopea, quæ quidem insula finis est Ægypti, et Libyæ principium. Ibiq̃ue est ostium Nili fluminis, ubi cadit<sup>1</sup> in mare magnum. *Ranulphus*. Nilus tamen qui et Gyon,<sup>2</sup> quamvis<sup>3</sup> legatur de Paradiso procedere, assëritur tamen oriri<sup>4</sup> in occidentali<sup>5</sup> fine<sup>6</sup> Æthiopïæ, non procul ab Atlantico monte, qui inde circuiens Æthiopiam, descendit per Ægyptum, cujus plana irrigat, atque ratione limositatis quam secum trahit terram fecundat. Et sic, secundum Hieronymum super Amos prophetam, Nilus Dei dispositione totam Ægyptum irrigat. Cumulis enim arenarum claudentibus ostium ejus ne cito in mare magnum descendat, post irrigationem præfatam solutis arenis redit in alveum suum. Et<sup>7</sup> tandem ad<sup>8</sup> mare tendens juxta Canopeam et Libyam a mari magno absorbetur. Vult tamen Isidorus, libro tertio decimo, quod Nilus aquilonis<sup>9</sup> flatibus repereussus<sup>10</sup> aquis sic retro luctantibus intumescit.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ubi cadit*] cadentis, D.

<sup>2</sup> *aut Gion*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *quamvis*] si, C. ; licet, D.

<sup>4</sup> *oritur tamen*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *orientali*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *ad occidentales fines*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Et sic*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *in*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ab aquilonis*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *repercussis*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *intumescit*] intumescat, C.D.



i-schape,<sup>1</sup> and in þe west Canopea, þe whiche ilond is þe ende of Egipte and bygynnyng of Libya. Þere is þe mouþ<sup>2</sup> of Nilus, for þere Nilus falleþ into þe grete see. R. Þey me<sup>3</sup> rede in bookes, þat Nilus, þat hatte Gyon also, renneþ out of Paradys; 3it it is i-seide þat Nilus springeþ vp in þe west<sup>4</sup> ende of Ethiopia nouȝt fer from þe hulle þat hatte Mons Atlas.<sup>5</sup> And þan Nilus goop forþ aboute Ethiopia and down into Egipt, and ouerfloweþ þe pleyne contraies of Egipt, and bycause of slym þat renneþ þerwith, he<sup>6</sup> makeþ þe londe fatte and good to bere good<sup>7</sup> corne and fruit. So, seiþ Hieronymus vpon þe prophete Amos, by Goddis owne ordenaunce Nilus ouerfloweþ and watereþ al þe lond of Egipte, for hepes of grauel stoppeþ his cours, þat he may nouȝt anon<sup>8</sup> falle into þe grete see; but after þat he haþ so biþlowe and i-watred þe lond, þe hepes of grauel to schedeþ and to falleþ;<sup>9</sup> and þan þe water falleþ into þe chanel aȝe, and so<sup>10</sup> renneþ into þe grete see. Neuerþeles<sup>11</sup> Isidre seiþ, libro tertio decimo, þat Nilus is i-dreue aȝe<sup>12</sup> and i-lette of his cours wiþ þe norþern wynde; and so þe water swelleþ, and<sup>13</sup> floweþ and wexeþ greet; but Beda in libro de

TREVISIA.

diuerse wonders, at the weste parte of whom is a region callede Canopia, whiche yle is the ende of Egipte and the begynnyng of Libia, where the durre of the floode callede Nilus is, where hit fallethe in to the grete see. R. Nilus or Gyon thauȝhe hit be affermede to haue begynnyng from paradise, hit is seyde to haue his originalle in þe weste partes of the end of Ethiop, not ferre from the mownte Atlantike, whiche compassenge Ethioppe descendethe by Egipte, the pleyne cuntres of whom hit dothe watre and makethe the londe plentuous thro slycche that hit drawethe with hit. And so, after seynte Ierom super Amos prophetam, that floode called Nilus thro the disposicion of God, watrethe alle Egipte, the grete hepes of gravelle schuttenge the durre of hit, that hit scholde not descende soone in to the grete see: after the seyde waterenge, the hepes of the gravelle loosede, hit descendenge nye to Canopea and Libia is receyvede of the grete see. Neuerþelesse Isoder wille, libro 13<sup>o</sup>, that Nilus swellethe thro northe wyndes waters makenge grete stryvenge behynde hit; but Beda, de Naturis

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *wrouȝt*, a.; *shape*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> So a.; and Cx.; *money*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *Though men*, Cx. (as usual); not a.<sup>4</sup> *est*, a. (not Cx.)<sup>5</sup> *Athlas*, MS., a., and Cx. (as usual.)<sup>6</sup> *he*] it, Cx. (and so often.)<sup>7</sup> Cx. omits *good*.<sup>8</sup> *anon*] lyghtly, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *departe and befall*, Cx., who prints, however, *to shedeth* below.<sup>10</sup> *so*] om. Cx.<sup>11</sup> *neþeles*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *dryuen agayn*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *and*] om. Cx.

Sed Beda, in libro de naturis rerum, dicit quod Zephyrus flans in mense Maio arenas cumulat quibus<sup>1</sup> Nili ostia præstruuntur. Sicque Nilus, ex repercussione et præstructione<sup>2</sup> intumescens, plana terræ irrigat, cessante autem vento solutisque arenis redit in alveum, per quem in mare magnum descendit.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. XVII.

*De Scythia.*<sup>4</sup>

MEMORANDUM est hic quod<sup>5</sup> Scythia duplex est, superior in Asia, inferior in Europa. Scythia ergo<sup>6</sup> superior regio magna est<sup>7</sup> in aquilone, plurimum inhabitabilis propter frigus. Ab ortu Indiæ,<sup>8</sup> a<sup>9</sup> septentrione oceano, a meridie Caucasus, ab occasu usque ad Germaniæ principium quondam<sup>10</sup> porrigebatur. Modo vero minor effecta ad sui occasum Hyrcaniæ copulatur. In qua terra sunt montes Hyperborei, griphes immanes, aurum, gemmæ, et smaragdi. *Trogus, libro secundo.*<sup>11</sup> Gentis illius agrorum<sup>12</sup> nulli fines distincti neque ex-

<sup>1</sup> ex quibus, B.

<sup>2</sup> So A.; *presticcione*, E. B. omits *et præstructione*.

<sup>3</sup> *Sed Beda . . . descendit*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Title wanting in the Latin MSS. B. has *Scythia* (Scicia) in margin.

<sup>5</sup> *Memorandum . . . quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ergo*] So A.B.D.E.; vero, C.

<sup>7</sup> *est magna*, A. D. omits *est*.

<sup>8</sup> *Judeæ*, A.; *Judeam*, B., which has also *oceanum*, and *Caucasum* just afterwards.

<sup>9</sup> *in*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *quondam*] om. D.

<sup>11</sup> *primo*, B. (at length), wrongly. See Justin, lib. ii. capp. 1-5.

<sup>12</sup> *agrorum*] om. C. (not D.)

naturis seip pat pis<sup>1</sup> northerne wynde bloweþ in May, and stoppeþ<sup>2</sup> þe cours of þe water of Nilus wip hepes of grauel; and so þe water ariseþ and ouerfloweth þe londe; but whan þe wynde ceseþ, þe grauel to schedeþ and þe water falleþ in to þe chanel, and so turneth<sup>3</sup> downward in to þe grete<sup>4</sup> see.

TR EVISA.

*De Scythia.<sup>5</sup> Capitulum septimum decimum.*

HERE take hede of tweie londes, eiper hatte<sup>6</sup> Scythia; þe ouere is in Asia, þe nepere in<sup>7</sup> Europa; þe ouere Scythia is a grete londe in þe north, and haþ moche wildernes by cause of greet colde and chele, and streccheþ<sup>8</sup> somtyme estward anon to<sup>9</sup> Inde,<sup>10</sup> northwarde to<sup>11</sup> ocean, southward to þe hille Caucasus, westward anon to Germania;<sup>12</sup> but now he is i-made lasse, and endep in þe west side to<sup>13</sup> Hyrcania. In þe whiche londe beþ þe hilles Iperborey, greet grypes, gold and smaragdes, and oþer precious stones. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Þilke men destingeþ nouȝt noþer to

rerum, seyethe in this wise, that the sowthe wynde blawenge in the monethe of May makethe hepes of gravelle, pro whom the dures of that floode callede Nilus be stoppedde, pro whiche stoppenge the pleyne growndes of Egipte be replete with water; that wynde seasenge and the gravelles y-loosedes hit returnethe in to his place, by whom hit descendethe in to the grete see.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Capitulum septimum decimum.*

HIT is to be attendede that Scythia is duplicate, the superior in Asia, the inferior in Europa. The superior Scythia is a grete region moche inhabitable in the northe parte of hit for coldenesse, coplete of the este parte to Ynde, of the northe to the ocean, of the sowthe the hille callede Caucasus, somme tyme porrecte in to the begynnenge of Germanye, now hit is made lesse, and copulate to the region of Hircany to the weste parte of hit. In whiche londe be the hilles Yperboreus, huge griphonnes, golde, gemmes, and smaragdis. *Trogus, libro secundo.* There be noo endes distincte of the

<sup>1</sup> pis] þe, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> stopped, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> turneþ] renneth, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; rede, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Both MSS., a. and Cx. here and below give *Scicia* or *Sicia*; other proper names are also a little corrupted.

<sup>6</sup> that eche of hem is named, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> is in, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> streiȝte, a.

<sup>9</sup> anon to] vnto, Cx., and so below.

<sup>10</sup> So a. and Cx.; þe ende, MS.

<sup>11</sup> to] toward, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Iermania, MS., and a.; but elsewhere (as p. 171) spelt correctly.

<sup>13</sup> So a., Cx.; of, MS.

culti. Nulla illis<sup>1</sup> domus. Uxores et liberos in plaustris vehunt. Coriis ferinis tecti, laneis vestibibus non utuntur. Lacte et melle pasti, aurum et argentum non curant. Nihil parant quod amittere timent. Nullum apud eos delictum furto gravius. Victores effecti<sup>2</sup> nihil præter gloriam concupiscunt. Nulli hominum unquam subacti,<sup>3</sup> Vesorem<sup>4</sup> regem Ægypti debellaverunt;<sup>5</sup> Darium regem Persarum fugarunt; Cyrum regem trucidarunt; Zephironem,<sup>6</sup> Alexandri magni ducem, cum suis copiis deleverunt, Asiam ter conquisierunt,<sup>7</sup> quæ eis postmodum per mille quingentos annos<sup>8</sup> vectigalis mansit.<sup>9</sup> Viri eorum Parthos et Bactrianos, feminæ eorum Amazonum regna condiderunt. Incertumque est apud illos quis sexus illustrior fuerit. In prima namque expeditione<sup>10</sup> Asiana, post Vesorem regem Ægypti fugatum, in

<sup>1</sup> *illis*] om. A. B has *eis*.

<sup>2</sup> *effecti*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *subacti*] subjecti, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Vesogem*, C.D. The name of this king is given as *Vexoris* in Grævius' edition of Justin (*u. s.*), where, however, the MSS. differ; Vossius conjectures *Sesosis*. B., by accident, has *victorie* here, but reads *Vesorem* below.

<sup>5</sup> So E., in full; *debellarunt*, A.B.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Zephironam*, A.B.C.D. The true form is *Zopyriona*. See Justin, lib. ii. c. 3.

<sup>7</sup> *conquesierunt*, MSS.

<sup>8</sup> *annos*] om. E.

<sup>9</sup> *quæ eis per multos annos vectigalis fuit*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *expeditione*] om. A.

sette her feeldes by boundes, noþer by meres;<sup>1</sup> þey haueþ non house yn for to wonye; her wyfes and here children þei ledeþ in cartes; and þey beep i-cloped in wylde bestes skynnes. Wollen clopes useþ þey nouȝt;<sup>2</sup> þey lyueth by mekk<sup>3</sup> and by hony; þey reccheþ nouȝt of gold, noþer of siluer;<sup>4</sup> þei greiþeþ<sup>5</sup> no þing pat þey dredeþ to lese, þey acounteþ no trespas gretter þan robberie; here werrioures<sup>6</sup> and victoures desireþ not<sup>7</sup> but worschippe: þey were neuere soget to no man.<sup>8</sup> Þey ouercome<sup>9</sup> Vesore þe kyng of Egipte in werre and batayle, Darius þe kyng of Pers<sup>10</sup> þey chasede and ferede, and made him flee. Cyrus þe kyng þey slowh. Also þei destroyed Zephirona and his riches; Zephirona was þe greet Alexander his ledere.<sup>11</sup> Þries þey conquered Asia, and Asia was afterwarde tributarie to hem a powsand ȝere and fyue hondred. Þe men of þis peple be<sup>12</sup> by hem selue and þe<sup>13</sup> women by hem self. Also þey made<sup>14</sup> kyngdoms of dyuerse londes; þe<sup>15</sup> men made of Parthia and Bactria, and þe wommen<sup>16</sup> made of Amazonia kyngdoms myȝty and stronge, and so it is among hem vncerteyn and vnknowe wheþer is more worpy and more noble in kynde,<sup>17</sup> men or wommen.<sup>18</sup> In þe firste iourney in Asia after pat þey hadde i-dreue and i-chased and i-pursewed Vasore þe kyng of Egipt in to þe<sup>19</sup>

TREVISA.

feldes of that peple. Thei haue noo howses, caryenge theire wyfes and children in waynes couerede with the skynnes of wilde bestes and not clothes of wolles, fedde with mylke and hony, ȝiffenge noo attendance to golde and siluyr, whiche ordeyne not eny thyng that thei drede to lose. There is noo trespas to theym more grevous than thefte, whiche beyng victoures desire no moore but glory; not subiecte to eny man, causenge Darius kyng of Persa to take flizhte, sleenge the kyng callede Cyrus, and Zephirona<sup>19</sup> the nowble duke of kyng Alexander with his hoste, conquerenge twyes Asia, whiche was tributary to theim by m<sup>l</sup>. and v<sup>c</sup>. yeres; the women of whom made the realmes of Amasonnes; hit is incerteine to theym wheþer kynde be more nowble. In the firste expedicion Azian,<sup>20</sup> after Vesour the kyng of Egipte

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> nether marke her felde by boundes, ne by dyches, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> none, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> melk, a.; mylk, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> seluer, a.

<sup>5</sup> make, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> men of warre, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> nothing, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> subget yet to any man, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> ouercame, Cx. (not a.)

<sup>10</sup> Regem Persarum, a.; fered Darius the kyng, Cx., who has sloughe Cyrus below.

<sup>11</sup> Alysaunders capytayn, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> be] Added from Cx. (absent from a.)

<sup>13</sup> om. þe.

<sup>14</sup> made] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>15</sup> So Cx.; þat, MS., a.

<sup>16</sup> wymmen, Cx. (bis).

<sup>17</sup> nature and kynde, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> in the, Cx.

<sup>19</sup> Sirus and Zephizona, Harl. MS.

<sup>20</sup> So Harl. MS. (z and ȝ are identical in this MS.)



redeundo circa Asiam pacandam quindecim annis viri immorati, querelis uxorum tantam moram non ferentium revocantur. In secunda expeditione, viris dolo interfectis, uxores debitam de hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. In tertia vero <sup>1</sup> expeditione, viris per quatuor annos absentibus, nupserunt conjuges serviis propriis ad custodiam pecorum domi relictis, qui simul vincti dominos suos post victoriam reversos bello excipiunt. Quibus vicissim <sup>2</sup> varia sorte sic bellantibus, monentur domini mutare genus pugnæ, tanquam non cum <sup>3</sup> hostibus sed cum servis conflicturi. Unde et depositis armis militaribus, flagella manu ferunt, et sic servos terrent <sup>4</sup> et abigunt. Qui vero capi poterant, una cum

---

<sup>1</sup> *vero*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *sic vicissim*, B., which has also the *sic* immediately following.

<sup>3</sup> *cum*] om B.; but which has it just afterwards.

<sup>4</sup> *terunt*, A. apparently.

TREVISA.

tornynge aȝe, pey abede<sup>1</sup> fiftene ȝere for to make pees in Asia. But wyfes made grete pleyntes and sorwes<sup>2</sup> pat hire housbondes were so longe from home,<sup>3</sup> and so pe men were of sent<sup>4</sup> and torned home to<sup>5</sup> dwelle wip hir wifes. In pe secounde iornay pe men were by traisoun i-slawe, and pe wifes took greet wreche of pe enemyes. In pe þridde iornay<sup>6</sup> pe men were oute and absent foure ȝere to gidres, and [pe]<sup>7</sup> wifes wedded hir owne seruauntes and bonde men pat were i-left<sup>8</sup> at home for kepyng of bestes. But whan here lordes and housbondes had pe victorie and torned home aȝen, pe wyfes and here<sup>9</sup> newe housbondes gadred hem to gidres and arrayed hem in a greet bataile to fiȝte aȝen hire olde lordes and housbondes pat were comyng home;<sup>10</sup> and whan pey mette to gidres hap<sup>11</sup> was vnstable and vnstedfast; ones<sup>12</sup> wip pat oon side, and eft wip pat oper. Panne<sup>13</sup> pe lordes bypouȝte hem, and toke hem to rede<sup>14</sup> operwise to fiȝte wip hir owne<sup>15</sup> bonde men þan wip<sup>16</sup> enemyes of straunge londes, and caste away hire owne armure and wepene of knyȝtis, and bere whippes in hir hondes; and so fered pe cherles,<sup>17</sup> and droof hem away, and made hem to fle. And afterward, al pat myȝte be i-take of pilke false cherles and of pe false wifes pat hadde

y-putte to flizhte, taryenge xv. yere to make Asia to their pleasure, were callede home ageyne thro the instaunces of their wifes wyllenge not to suffre the taryenge of theyme. In the secunde expedicion, the men sleyne by treason and gyle, their wifes toke dewe vengeance on their enemyes. In the thrydde expedicion, the men beenge absent by iiij. f. 31. a. yere, the wifes of them were maryede to their seruauntes leftie at home to kepe bestes, whiche ioinede to gedre receyved their lordes with batelle returnede after peire victory, whiche fiȝhtenge thro diuerse chaunce were movede at the laste to pütte awaye their armor of cheuallery, vsenge not to conflicte as with their enemyes but with their seruaundes, takenge a flayle in their honde, feringe their seruauntes and dryvenge theyme awaye. And somme of the seruauntes

MS. HARL. 2261.

<sup>1</sup> *abode*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *sorwe*, a.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *hire*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *sente fore*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *and dwellede*, a. and Cx.<sup>6</sup> So a.; *iorday*, MS.<sup>7</sup> Added from Cx.; absent from a.<sup>8</sup> *left*, a., Cx.<sup>9</sup> *the*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *homeward*, Cx.; *hoom*, a.<sup>11</sup> *fortune*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> So a. and Cx.; *unstedfastnesse* wip, MS.<sup>13</sup> *that*, Cx. (typogr. error ?)<sup>14</sup> *and toke hem to rede*] and concluded, Cx.<sup>15</sup> *owne*] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>16</sup> *with theyr*, Cx.<sup>17</sup> Cx. omits some words which follow down to *false wifes*.

adulteris uxoribus, partim ferro, partim patibulo, sunt perempti. Post hæc apud Scythas pax fuit<sup>1</sup> usque ad tempora<sup>2</sup> Darii regis Persarum, qui ab illis contritus in redeundo Macedones perdomuit et Athenienses debellavit.<sup>3</sup>

De Bactria. Bactria, quam primum incoluit Cham,<sup>4</sup> filius Noe, jacet a mari Caspio usque ad Indum<sup>5</sup> fluvium protensa, habetque ab occidente montem Caucasum, ab austro Parthos.

De monte  
Caucaso.

Hic autem Caucasus, inter omnes montes orientales prolixior<sup>6</sup> et formosior,<sup>7</sup> a finibus Indiæ<sup>8</sup> usque ad<sup>9</sup> montem Taurum<sup>10</sup> porrigitur. Unde<sup>11</sup> unus atque idem mons Taurus et Caucasus<sup>12</sup> reputatur. Sed volunt quidam<sup>13</sup> ut<sup>14</sup> occidentalis pars Caucasi versus Armeniam sit Taurus.<sup>15</sup> Habet autem Caucasus ab aquilone Caspium mare et Hyrcaniam,<sup>16</sup> ab austro Parthiam, Assyriam,<sup>17</sup> et Babyloniam.<sup>18</sup> Qui quidem mons pro varietate collimantium<sup>19</sup> regionum variis appellatur nominibus. Itaque<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> pax fuit apud Scythas, B.

<sup>2</sup> tempus, B.

<sup>3</sup> In prima namque . . Athenienses debellavit] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Sham, E.

<sup>5</sup> Nylum, C., distinctly (not D.); D.)

<sup>6</sup> Sulum, B.

<sup>7</sup> A. and B. add est.

<sup>8</sup> famosior, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Judeæ, B.

<sup>10</sup> ad] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> Taurum montem, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> Unde et, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> mons cum eodem, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> quidem, A.

<sup>15</sup> quod, B.

<sup>16</sup> Sed volunt . . Taurus] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> Hispaniam, C., distinctly (not

D.)

<sup>18</sup> Syriam, B.

<sup>19</sup> Babyloniam et Mesopotamiam tangit, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> Sic A.B.E. ; de proprietate habitantium, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> Ita, A.

i-broke spousaille hadde schenful<sup>1</sup> deth; for som were i-slawe with iren, and som were an honged ful hiȝe. After pis phare<sup>2</sup> was pees in Scythia for to Darij his tyme<sup>3</sup> kyng of Persida. Þanne Darius was ouercome of þe Scytes<sup>4</sup> men of Scythia, and in þe tornynge homward he ouercome Macedones, pat beep men of Macedonia of pat londe, and werede vpon Athenienses men of Athenis.

Bactria is a lond<sup>5</sup> pat Cham, Noe<sup>6</sup> sone, woned first ynne, and strecchep from þe see Caspius anon to þe ryuer of Inde, and hap in þe west side þe mount Caucasus, and in þe south Parthia. Þis hille Caucasus is lengest of alle þe est hilles, and most famous, and strecchep from þe endes of Inde anon to þe hille pat hatte Mount Taurus, so pat mont Taurus<sup>7</sup> and Caucasus is i-conteyned al oon hille; but som men seip pat þe westside of Caucasus, pat is toward Armenia, is and hatte mount Taurus. Pat mount Caucasus hap in þe northside þe see pat hatte Caspius and Hyrcania pat londe, and in<sup>8</sup> þe southside Parthia and Assyria and Babylon.<sup>9</sup> Pat hil, for dyuerse contrees and londes pat strecchep and rechep perto, hap<sup>10</sup> many and

TREVISA.

taken with their wives in advoutery were hongede and somme sleyne with swerde. After that tyme peace was amonge theyme vn to the tyme of Darius kyng of Persa, whiche ouer comen of theyme in returnenge from them hade victory of the men of Macedony and did fiȝhte also ageynes men of Atheynes.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

Bactria, whom Cham, sonne of Noe, inhabite firste, lyethe from the see Caspy to the floode of Ynde protendede, hauenge of the weste parte to hit the mownte Caucasus, and of the sowthe men of Parthia. This hille callede moste nowble in fame amonge alle other mowntes of the este<sup>11</sup> to the mownte of Taurus from the costes of Ynde, where the hille callede Taurus and Caucasus be reputate oon. But somme men wille that the hille callede Taurus is made of the weste partes of Caucasus towarde Armenye. This hille Caucasus hathe of the northe to hit the see Caspy and Hircany, of the sowthe Parthia, Assyria, and Babylon, whiche hille is callede in diuerse maneres and name for the diuersite of

Bactria.  
Mons  
Caucasus.  
Mons  
Taurus.

<sup>1</sup> *schendeful, a. ; shameful, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *fare, a. ; iourney, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *unto the tyme of Darius, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *So Cx. ; Cytes, MS. ; Cytees, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *and werede . . . a lond*] Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *Noes, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *so þat Mont Taurus*] Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> *a. adds in.*

<sup>9</sup> *Babiloun, MS. and a.*

<sup>10</sup> *That hille, by cause it stretcheth to dyuerse contreys and londes, hath, &c., Cx.*

<sup>11</sup> *The verb (= porrigitur) is omitted.*

versus orientem, ubi in celsiorem surgit<sup>1</sup> verticem, pro candore nivium ibidem jugiter morantium, Caucasus dicitur, quod sonat<sup>2</sup> candidum. Et, secundum fratrem Albertum, mons iste tantæ est altitudinis,<sup>3</sup> quod qui sub eo degunt vident super eum radios solis occidentis per tres horas infra noctem, et itidem<sup>4</sup> mane<sup>5</sup> per tres horas ante diem super orientalem partem montis.<sup>6</sup>

De Hyrcania.

Hyrcania regio<sup>7</sup> habet ab ortu mare Caspium, ab austro Armeniam, a septentrione Albaniam, ab occasu Hiberiam.<sup>8</sup> Jacet autem<sup>9</sup> sub jugo Caucasi montis, a sylva Hyrcania sic vocata,<sup>10</sup> regio quædam<sup>11</sup> feras fovens, tigrides et pantheras. Regio vasta et lata, habens gentes xlv., quarum quædam<sup>12</sup> terras colunt, quædam de<sup>13</sup> venatione vivunt, quædam humana carne<sup>14</sup> vescuntur. Ibi sunt aves Hyrcanæ, pennas habentes de nocte lucentes. Hiberia<sup>15</sup> est regio sub monte Tauro jacens, quæ<sup>16</sup> versus occasum et<sup>17</sup> juxta pontum jungitur Armeniæ.

De Albania.

Albania habet<sup>18</sup> ab ortu mare Caspium, descenditque per ora septentrionalis oceani usque ad Mæotides paludes; habetque<sup>19</sup> populum albo<sup>20</sup> crine nascentem cum

<sup>1</sup> *exsurgit*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *quod lingua eorum*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *mons . . . altitudinis*] om. A. B. omits *mons iste*.

<sup>4</sup> So B.E., distinctly; *iterum*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *de mane*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Et, secundum . . . partem montis*] om. C.D. A. and B. have *montis partem*.

<sup>7</sup> *regio*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Hiberniam*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Jacet autem*] Est itaque regio, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sic vocata*] nuncupata, C.D., which omit *regio . . . pantheras*.

<sup>11</sup> *quædam*] quidam, A.E.; quidem, B.

<sup>12</sup> *quidam*, A., and so below (twice).

<sup>13</sup> *de*] om. A.

<sup>14</sup> *carne humana*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> E. has for rubric: *De insula Hiberiæ!*

<sup>16</sup> *quæ*] om. A.

<sup>17</sup> C. and D. omit *quæ* and *et*.

<sup>18</sup> after *ortu* in C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *huncque*, E. (misreading the copy); *habet*, D.

<sup>20</sup> *cum albo*, B.



dyuers names. Pat hille is hiȝeste in<sup>1</sup> pe est side, and for whiȝtnesse of snowe pat lieȝ alwey peron he is cleped<sup>2</sup> Mons Caucasus, pat is to menyng<sup>3</sup> a white hille. Albertus seip pat hil is so hiȝe, pat men pat woneȝ perby seep pe sonne bemes<sup>4</sup> in pe west side pre houres wip ynne pe<sup>5</sup> nyȝt, and so meny houres to fore pe day in pe est side of pat<sup>6</sup> hille.

Hyrkania pat londe hap in pe est side pe see Caspius, in pe south Armenia, in pe north Albania, and in pe west Iberia pat lond; and lieȝ beside<sup>7</sup> pe mount Caucasus, and hap pe name of pat wode pat hatte Hyrcania. In pat londe beep dyuers wylde bestes and foules, tigris pat beeste,<sup>8</sup> and pantera also. Pat londe is wyde and large, and hap foure and fourty manere men. Som tiliep<sup>9</sup> lond, and som lyueȝ by huntynge, and som eteȝ manis flesche. Pere beep briddes pat hatte<sup>10</sup> hircane, hire fetheres schyne by nyȝte.

Hiberia pat lond lieȝ<sup>11</sup> vnder mont Taurus, and lith westward fast by Pontus, and ioynep to Armenye. Albania pat lond hap in pe est side pe see Caspius, and strecchep downward by pe mouthes of pe North Ocean anon to pe wateres pat hatte Meotides. And pe men of pat lond beep

men inhabitenge hit. For towarde the este, where hit dothe aryse in moste altitude, for the huge whitenesse of men that dwelle there, hit is callede Caucasus, whiche sowndethe whyte. And, after Alberte, hit is of so huge altitude that men lyffenge vnder hit see on hyt the beames of the sonne beenge in the weste by iij. howres with in the nyȝhte, and also in the mornenge iij. howres afore day on the este parte of hit. The region Hircany hathe on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, on the northe Albania, on the weste Hiberia, beenge subiecte to Caucasus, callede Hyrcania of a woode so namede, whiche is a region noryschenge wilde bestes, tigres, panteres, a waste region and brode, the peple of whom somme tyllen erthe, somme lyve by huntenge, somme of theyme do eyte the flesche of man. There be bryddes in that region hauenge fethers schynenge in the nyȝhte. Hiberia is a region vnder that hille Taurus, whiche is ioinede to Armenye towarde the este.

Albania hathe on the este parte to hit the see of Caspy, Albania. descendenge by the regiones of the northe ocean to Meotides paludes. That region hathe peple with white f. 31. b.

<sup>1</sup> on, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> i-cleped, a.

<sup>3</sup> the, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> beme, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Cx. omits pe.

<sup>6</sup> pe, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> by the syde of, Cx.; beside of, a.

<sup>8</sup> beeste] So Cx.; foul, MS., a.

<sup>9</sup> tyllen, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> birdes that ben called, Cx., who, however, has heyghte just before.

<sup>11</sup> lith, a.

oculis pictis<sup>1</sup> et glaucis, melius de nocte quam de die videntes.<sup>2</sup> Hujus terræ sunt canes tam immanes et<sup>3</sup> feroces ut tauros premant, leones<sup>4</sup> perimant, e<sup>5</sup> quibus unus, Alexandro magno missus, triumphavit in stadio de leone, elephante, et apro.

De Gothia. Gothia est regio Scythiæ inferior<sup>6</sup> versus circium, cui subjacet insula Gothlandia omni mercium genere copiosa. Habet<sup>7</sup> ab aquilone Daciam et oceanum septentrionalem. Dicitur autem Gothia a Gog filio Japhet,<sup>8</sup> ejus gentes potius Gothos quam Gogos nominaverunt. Gens quidem<sup>9</sup> fortis, ingens, terribilis, de quorum<sup>10</sup> stirpe processerunt Daci in Europa, Gætuli in Africa, Amazones in Asia.

De Armenia.

Armenia, quæ alio nomine dicitur Ararath, ab Armenio Jasonis milite<sup>11</sup> nuncupata est, qui<sup>12</sup> Armenius, amisso Jasone Thessalo rege suo,<sup>13</sup> recollecta<sup>14</sup> multitudine militum qui passim vagabantur,<sup>15</sup> Armeniam occupavit<sup>16</sup> et inhabitavit. Quæ quidem<sup>17</sup> regio protenditur

<sup>1</sup> *oculisque pictiis* (quid?), B.

<sup>2</sup> *adeo ut melius . . . videant*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *ingentes sunt canes tam f.*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *et leones*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *e*] *de*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> So A.E.; *inferioris*, B.C.D. C. and D. omit *versus circium*.

<sup>7</sup> *Habet autem hæc Gothia*, C.D. (the latter has *gens*.)

<sup>8</sup> *oceanum, a Gog (Goth, D.) filio Iaphet sic dicta, &c.*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *quarum*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *milite Jasonis*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *hic*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *amisso rege Jasone Thessalo*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *collecta*, A.

<sup>15</sup> *vacabantur*, B.; *multitudine ejus quæ passim vagabatur*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *cepit*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *hæc*, C.D.

i-bore wip white here and wip ȝelowe<sup>1</sup> eyȝen i-peynt, and seep better be nyȝte þan be daye. Þe houndes of þat lond beep so greet, so grym, and stronge þat þey prowep doun boles<sup>2</sup> and sleep lyouns. Oon of pilke houndes was sent to kyng Alexandre, and fauȝte wipynne lystes wip a leon and an olyfaunt, and wip a wylde bore, and hadde þe maystrie.

TREVISA.

Gotha is þe neper partie of Seythia toward Circium.<sup>3</sup> To þat lond Gothia liep þe ilond Gothlandia; þat ylond hap plente of al manere marchaundise, and hap in þe north side Dacia, and in þe southe syde<sup>4</sup> ocean, and hatte Gothea of Gos, Iaphep his sone. Þe<sup>5</sup> men of þat lond beep rediloker<sup>6</sup> i-cleped Gothy þan Gogi, and beþ wei stronge men and huge,<sup>7</sup> grym and sterne, and of hem com þe Dacies in Europa, Getuli in Affrica, Amazonas in Asia.

Armenia, þat hatte also Ararath, hap þe name of Armenius, Iasons knyȝt, the whiche Armenius, whan he hadde i-lost Iason,<sup>8</sup> kyng of Thessalia,<sup>9</sup> he gadered knyȝtes þat roiled<sup>10</sup> aboute, and toke Armenia, and woned þerynne.

heire, peyntede eien and ȝelowe, seenge better in the nyȝhte than in the daye. The dogges of whiche region be so greet and fereſe that thei depresse bulles and peresche lyones, of whome oon was sende to kyng Alexander, whiche hade the victory with in a forlonge of a bulle, an elephaunte, and of a boore. Gothia is a region of Seythia

MS. HARL.  
2261.

towarde the weste, to whom the yle of Gotlande is subiecte, copious of alle kyndes of marchandise, hauenge on the northe parte to hit Dacia and the northe ocean. That londe was callede Gothia of Gog, the sonne of Iapheth, the peple of whom be callede rather Gothos then Gogos, whiche be myȝhty men and terrible, of whom men of Denmarke, in Europe, come, Getuliones or Getules in Affrike, and the Amasonnes in Asia.

Armenia, whiche operwise callede Ararthe, toke the name of hit of Armenius, knyȝhte of Iason, whiche Armenius Iason his kyng loste gedreng a multitude of knyȝtes, whiche wente abowte as vagabundes, occupiede Armenye and inhabite hit, whiche region is protendede betwene

<sup>1</sup> ȝelew, a.<sup>2</sup> booles, a.; bulles, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; Circion, MS.

<sup>4</sup> southe syde] So Cx.; norþ, MS.  
Dacia and þe north ocean, a., which agrees with the Latin, and is probably right.

<sup>5</sup> So a.; þat, MS.<sup>6</sup> reedloker, a.; redlyker, Cx.<sup>7</sup> and ben right stronge men, grete, grym, and sturne, Cx.<sup>8</sup> a. and Cx. adds his.<sup>9</sup> Thessalia, MS., a. (not Cx.)<sup>10</sup> roilled, a.; royled, Cx.

inter montem Taurum et Caucasum a Caspio mari usque ad Cappadociam. Habet autem in longitudine undecies centum millia passuum, in latitudine vero septingenta<sup>1</sup> millia.<sup>2</sup> Ibi est mons Ararath,<sup>3</sup> ubi arca Noe<sup>4</sup> consedit post diluvium, et sunt duæ Armeniæ,<sup>5</sup> major et minor, superior et inferior, sicut duæ Pannoniæ.

## CAP. XVIII.

*De Cappadocia.*

CAPPADOCIA regio<sup>6</sup> equorum nutrix ab ortu habet Armeniam, ab occasu Asiam minorem, ab aquilone Amazones, ab austro Taurum<sup>7</sup> montem, cui subjacet Cilicia, Lycia,<sup>8</sup> et Isauria, usque ad Cilicium sinum qui prospicit<sup>9</sup> contra insulam Cyprum. Asia minor ab ortu tangit Cappadociam, a cæteris lateribus clauditur<sup>10</sup> mari magno. Nam a septentrione habet Pontum Euxinum, ab occasu Propontidem, ab austro Ægyptium mare.

De provinciis  
Asiæ  
minoris.

<sup>1</sup> So E. at length and rightly; *septuaginta*, A. (at length); *lxx<sup>ta</sup>*, B. The versions also differ.

<sup>2</sup> *Habet . . . millia*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Araratha*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Noë*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. add *sicut Pannoniæ duæ*, omitting the rest. E. omits *sicut*

*duæ Pannoniæ*. The text agrees with A.B. (which latter has *scilicet* before *major*), and the versions.

<sup>6</sup> *regio*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> C.D. add *habet*.

<sup>8</sup> *Lycia*] om. A.C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *spectat*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> D. adds *undique*.

pat londe strecchep by<sup>1</sup> pe mount Taurus and Caucasus TREVISA.  
 from pe see Caspius anon to Cappadocia,<sup>2</sup> and hap in lengpe  
 eleuene hondred powsand paas, and in brede seuene hon-  
 dred myle. Pere is pat hille mount Ararath, pere Noe is  
 schippe abood<sup>3</sup> after Noes flood, and pere is Armenyes  
 tweie,<sup>4</sup> pe more and pe lasse, pe ouer<sup>5</sup> and pe neper, and  
 so beep tweye Pannonyes also.

*De Cappadocia.<sup>6</sup> Capitulum octavum decimum.*

CAPPADOCIA pat londe norischep and fedep many hors,<sup>7</sup> and  
 hap in pe est side Armenia, in pe west side<sup>8</sup> Asia pe lasse, in  
 pe norp Amazonia, and in pe south mount Taurus. Perto  
 be-lyep<sup>9</sup> Cilicia<sup>10</sup> and Isauria anon to pe see Cilicius pat  
 strecchep toward the ilond of Cyprus. Pe lasse Asia ioynep to  
 Cappadocia in the est side, and is bi clipped and i-closed in pe  
 oper sides wip pe grete see. For he hap in pe north side pat  
 mouth and see pat hatte Euxinus,<sup>11</sup> in pe west pe mouth and pe<sup>12</sup>  
 see Propontides, and in pe south pe see of Egipte. Dis lasse

the hill Taurus and Caucasus, from the see Caspy vn MS. HARL.  
 to Cappadocia. This region hathe in longitude xjc. mī of 2261.  
 passes, in latitude lxx<sup>ti</sup> mī. There the mownte of Ararth  
 is, where the schippe of Noe remaynede after the floode.  
 Also per be ij. Armenyes, the moore and lesse, as per be  
 ij. Pannonyes.

*Capitulum octavum decimum.*

CAPPADOCIA is a region nutrix of horses, hauenge on the Cappadocia.  
 este parte to hit Armeny, on the weste the lesse Asia, on  
 the northe the Amasones, on the sowthe the hille Taurus, to  
 whom Cilicia, Lycia, and Isauria be subacte vn to the water  
 of Cilicia, which hathe prospecte ageyne the yle of Ci-  
 presse. Asia the lesse towcheth in the este parte Capa- Asia  
 docy, on other sides hit is schutte with the grete see. For Minor.  
 in the northe parte hit hathe the see Eusyne, and of the  
 weste Propontides, on the sowthe parte the see off Egipte,

<sup>1</sup> to, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *Cappadocia*, MS. and Cx., and  
 so below.

<sup>3</sup> *abode*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *ther be two Armenyes*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *ouerer*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> The proper names in this chap-  
 ter are more than usually corrupted  
 and distorted, in both versions, as

well as in the text. Their false spell-  
 ings will not in general be noticed.

<sup>7</sup> *horses*, Cx. (not *a.*)

<sup>8</sup> Cx. omits *side*.

<sup>9</sup> *bi liep*, *a.*; *ther by lyeth*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Scicilia*, MS. and Cx., which  
 have *Silicus* and *Sylycus* below.

<sup>11</sup> *Eusynus*, MS.

<sup>12</sup> *pe* omitted in *a.* and Cx.



Continet autem in se plures provincias. Nam primo  
 De Bi- ab aquilone habet Bithyniam in <sup>1</sup> Ponti exordio Thraciæ  
 thynia, sive  
 Phrygia adversam, quæ etiam <sup>2</sup> dicitur Phrygia major, cujus  
 majore.  
 De Galatia. metropolis est Nicomedia. Deinde Galatia, a priscis  
 Gallorum gentibus per regem Bithyniæ ad bellandum <sup>3</sup>  
 invitatis sic denominata et occupata. Sed tunc dice-  
 batur Gallogræcia, et populi ejus Gallogræci, tanquam  
 ex Græcis et Gallis mixti, <sup>4</sup> qui nunc dicuntur Galatæ,  
 quibus Paulus unam scribit epistolam. <sup>5</sup> Tertio est <sup>6</sup>  
 De Phrygia minor, sic dicta a Phrygia, filia Europæ, filiæ  
 Phrygia minore, sive Dardania.  
 Agenoris, quæ etiam dicitur Dardania, a Dardano filio  
 Jovis. In qua terra est civitas <sup>7</sup> Troja, <sup>8</sup> quæ et Ilium  
 dicitur. Dicitur autem Troja a Tros <sup>9</sup> filio Erichthonii, filii  
 Dardani, filii Jovis. <sup>10</sup> Cui regioni <sup>11</sup> ab oriente est Lydia,  
 De Lydia. ab occasu Hellespontus. Quarto est Lydia ad orientem  
 Phrygiæ minoris, <sup>12</sup> in qua rex ille dives Cræsus <sup>13</sup> quon-  
 dam regnabat, quæ quidem terra dum pro brevitate

<sup>1</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> *et*, B.; *dicitur etiam*, C.D.; *adversamque et dicitur*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *bellum*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *et populi . . . mixti*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *quibus . . . epistolam*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *est*] om. C.D., in which the following sentence is slightly altered.

<sup>7</sup> *civitas*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Troja*, E. not A.B.

<sup>9</sup> So the MSS.

<sup>10</sup> *Dicitur autem . . . Jovis*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *regioni*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *minoris*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Cræsus rex dives*, C.D., (which latter has *quondam* after *Cræsus*).

Asia conteyneþ meny prouynces and londes. For firste in pe TREVISIA.  
 norþ side he conteyneþ Bithynia in pe bygynnyng vppon pe  
 see aʒenst Thracia, and hatte also pe more Phrygia. Pe chief  
 citee of Bithynia hatte Nicomedia. Þanne is Galatia and hap  
 pe name of men þat were i-cleped Galli, þat come at pe prayere<sup>1</sup>  
 of pe kyng of Bithynia to helpe hym in his werres, and woned  
 in þat lond Galatia: but þo þat lond hiʒte Gallogrecia and pe  
 men of þat lond hiʒte<sup>2</sup> Gallogreci as men i-melled of Gallis  
 and of Grecis; but now þey beþ i-cleped Galate,<sup>3</sup> and to  
 hem Poule wroot<sup>4</sup> his pistel ad Galatas. Pe pridde is pe lasse  
 Phrygia and hap pe name of Phrygia, Europa his<sup>5</sup> douʒter,  
 Agenore his douʒter. And þat Phrygia hatte Dardania also<sup>6</sup>  
 of Dardanus Iupiter<sup>7</sup> sone. In þat londe is pe citee of Troye,  
 þat hatte Ilium also. Troye hatte after Tros,<sup>8</sup> Erichthonius  
 sone, þat was Dardanus sone, þat was Iupiter<sup>9</sup> sone. Þat  
 lond<sup>10</sup> hap in pe est side Lydia, and in pe west pe mouth and  
 pe see Hellespontus. Pe fourþe is Lydia, and is in pe est side  
 of the lasse<sup>11</sup> Phrygia. In þat Lydia regned somtyme pe  
 riche kyng Cresus, but whan þat lond was to litel for tweie

conteynenge in hit mony prouinces. For hit hathe firste MS. HARL.  
 in the northe Bithynia, in the begynnenge of Pontus 2261.  
 ageyne Thracia, whiche is callede also Phrygia maior, the  
 chiefe cite of whom is Nicomedia, afterwarde callede Ga-  
 latia, of peple desirede to fiʒhte by the kyng of Bithynia,  
 then callede Gallogrecia, and the peple of hit Gallogreci,  
 as peple mixte of Frensche men and of Grekes, whiche  
 be callede now Galate,<sup>3</sup> to whom Paule did wryte an  
 epistole. The thrydde is the lesse Phrygia, callede by that Phrygia  
 name of Phrygia the douʒter of Europa, the douʒter of Minor.  
 Agenoris, whiche was callede Dardania, of Dardanus the  
 son of Iupiter. In whiche londe is the cite of Troye, f. 32. a.  
 namede so of Tros, son of Erichthonius, son of Dardanus the Troja.  
 son of Iupiter. To whiche region Lydia is in the este  
 parte, and Hellespontus of the weste parte. Lydia is at the Lydia.  
 este parte of the lesse Phrygia, in whom Cresus, the ryche  
 kynge, reignede somme tyme, whiche londe for the litelle  
 quantite of hit myʒhte not suffre and suffice to ij. breper,

<sup>1</sup> *preiere*, *a*.<sup>2</sup> *Gallogrecia* . . . *hiʒte*] added from *a*. and *Cx*.<sup>3</sup> *Galathe*, MS, *a*., and *Cx*., and so the Harl. MS., as well as all the Latin MSS.<sup>4</sup> *wryteth*, *Cx*.<sup>5</sup> *Europaes*, *Cx*.; and *Agenors* below.<sup>6</sup> *also*] added from *a*.<sup>7</sup> *Iupiter his*, *a*.; *Iupytters*, *Cx*.<sup>8</sup> So *a*.; *Troos*, MS. and *Cx*.<sup>9</sup> *a*., adds *his*.<sup>10</sup> *lond*] added from *a*. and *Cx*.<sup>11</sup> *eeste*, *Cx*.

sui duos reges, fratres, Lydum et Tyrrhenum, ferre non posset,<sup>1</sup> Tyrrhenus, agitante sorte, cum multitudine egressus, locum in superioribus partibus Galliæ<sup>2</sup> occupavit, quem Tyrrheniam<sup>3</sup> nominavit. Ab isto Tyrrheno Tyrrhenum mare videtur denominari, sicut Lydia terra a Lydo, reliquo fratre, cujus metropolis est Smyrna, ad quam Johannes<sup>4</sup> Evangelista scribit in Apocalypsi. Et principalis fluvius Lydiæ dicitur Pactolus, aureas secundum poetas gignens arenas.<sup>5</sup> Quinta provincia Asiæ minoris dicitur Pamphylia,<sup>6</sup> quæ et Isauria, habens metropolim Seleuciam, quam Seleucus Antiochus fundavit.<sup>7</sup>

De Cilicia. Deinde est<sup>8</sup> Cilicia, in qua continetur Lycia sive Lycaonia, cujus urbes celebres erant Lystra et Derbe,<sup>9</sup> sicut patet in Actibus Apostolorum, per quas de<sup>10</sup> Syria ad Italiam navigatur. Harum omnium urbs metropolis erat Tharsis<sup>11</sup> inferius versus mare.<sup>12</sup>

De Amazonia. Amazonia regio est partim<sup>13</sup> in Asia, partim<sup>13</sup> in Europa. Albanie est vicina, et fuerunt Amazones primo Gothorum uxores, quæ, viris suis dolo<sup>14</sup> interfectis, debitamde hostibus ultionem sumpserunt. Nam spolia acceperunt,<sup>15</sup> masculos occiderunt, foeminas reservarunt.

<sup>1</sup> *potuit*, B.<sup>2</sup> *Galilee*, B.<sup>3</sup> *Tiream*, MSS.<sup>4</sup> B. prefixes *beatus*.<sup>5</sup> *quæ quidem terra . . . arenas*]

om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Quinto est Pamphylia*, C.D.<sup>7</sup> *quam . . . fundavit*] om. C.D.<sup>8</sup> *est*] om. A.<sup>9</sup> *Listris et Derben*, MSS., and similarly both the versions.<sup>10</sup> *de*] om. A.<sup>11</sup> The MS. reading is here best retained; in fact, Tarsus (not Tarsessus) is most probably the same as Tarshish.<sup>12</sup> C.D. thus contract the two last periods: *Deinde Cilicia, in qua est Tharsis*.<sup>13</sup> B. has *partim est* (twice.)<sup>14</sup> *dolo*] om. C. (not D.)<sup>15</sup> *ceperunt*, C.D.

breperen þat were kynges, þat hiȝte Lydus and Tyrrhenus, TREVISA.  
 hit by lott happed <sup>1</sup> þat Tyrrhenus went oute wip many men,  
 and gat hym a lond in þe ouer partie of Gallia, and cleped his  
 lond Tyrrhenia.<sup>2</sup> Hit semep þat þe see Tyrrhenus hap þe  
 name of þis king Tyrrhenus, as þe lond Lydia hap þe name of  
 his broþer Lydus. Þe chief cite of Lydia hat Smyrna, to  
 þat<sup>3</sup> citee Iohan þe euangelist wriȝet in þe Apocalips.<sup>4</sup> Þe  
 chief ryuere of Lydia hatte Pactolus, and bringep forth  
 goldene graule, as poetis tellip. The fifte prouince of þe lasse  
 Asia hatte Pamphylia and Isauria also. Þe cheef citee of þat  
 lond hatte Seleucia. Þat citee Seleucus Antiochus bulde and  
 arerede. Þan is Cilicia and conteyneþ Lycia, and þat hatte  
 Lycaonia. Þerynne were noble citees Lystra and Derbe,  
 as it is i-write in Actibus Apostolorum. By pilke citees me  
 seileþ<sup>5</sup> out of Syria to Italia, but þe cheef citee of alle pese  
 was Tharsis downward toward þe see. Amazonia þat lond  
 is som in Asia, and som in Europa, and is nyh to Albania.  
 Þe firste Amazones were þe wyfes of Gothes, þat took wreche  
 of hire housbondes dep þat were traytoursliche i-slawe.<sup>6</sup>  
 For þey toke prayes and slowe men and saued wommen, and

Lydus and Tyrrhenus, ij. kynges. Tyrrhenus enchaunce MS. HARL.  
 movenge goenge furthe with a grete multitude occupiede 2261.  
 a place in the superior parte of Fraunce, whiche londe he  
 namede Tyrrhenia,<sup>2</sup> lyke as that londe Lydia was namede of  
 Lydus his brother, the chiefe cite of whom is Smyrna, to  
 whom Seynte Iohn Euangeliste wrytethe in his Apoca-  
 lypsis: the principalle floode of Lydia is callede Pactolus  
 gendrenge gravel of golde. The v<sup>th</sup>e prouince of the lesse Pamphylia.  
 Asia is callede Pamphylia and Isauria, hauenge Seleucia  
 the chiefe cite of hit, whom Seleucus Antiochus causede to  
 be edifiede. After that is Cilicia, in whom Lycia or Lyca-  
 onia is conteynede, the nowble cites of whom were Lystra  
 and Derbe, as hit is expressede in the Actes of thapostles,  
 by whom hit is saylede from Syria to Ytaly. The now-  
 bleste cite off theyme alle was Tharsis, more inferialle Tharsis  
 towarde the see. urbs.

Amazonia is a region parte in Asia and parte in Europe, Amazonia.  
 nye to Albania, and the Amazones were firste the wives  
 of Gothes, the husbondes of whom sleyn by gyle, they  
 toke dewe vengeance on the enmyes of theym perfore.  
 For thei robbede, sleenge the male childer and reseruenge

<sup>1</sup> happened by lotte, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Tirea, MS.; Turea, Harl. MS.

<sup>3</sup> of Lydia . . . þat citee] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> seynt Iohan euangelyst wryteth in thapocalipsis, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> men saylle, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> traitourliche i-slawe, a.; traitourly slayne, Cx.

Diu sine viris vixerunt. Tandem duas<sup>1</sup> reginas stauerunt, quarum una exercitum extra ducebat, altera rempublicam domi regebat. Per centum fere<sup>2</sup> annos magnam Asiæ partem perdomuerunt.<sup>3</sup> Demum<sup>4</sup> ex finitimis locis maritos sobolis gratia sumpserunt,<sup>5</sup> certis temporibus coeuntes et<sup>6</sup> certis temporibus abstinentes.<sup>7</sup> Masculinos<sup>8</sup> foetus aut mactabant aut certo tempore ablactatos<sup>9</sup> patribus trans mittebant. Fœminas vero<sup>10</sup> reservantes ad venandum, ad sagittandum, ad militandum<sup>11</sup> informabant. Et ne mamillarum grossities sagittationem<sup>12</sup> impediret, septimo ætatis anno dextram mammam exurebant. Inde<sup>13</sup> dictæ sunt Urimammæ vel Amazones, quasi sine mamma. Quarum<sup>14</sup> feritatem primo perdomuit Hercules, deinde Achilles, et<sup>15</sup> tandem Alexander magnus. *Ranulphus*. Et<sup>16</sup> quamvis Isidorus, Etymolog. lib. xiv., dicat Amazones per Alexandrum magnum deletas, historia<sup>17</sup> tamen Alexandri dicit Thalestrem<sup>18</sup> Amazonum reginam Alexandro petenti tributa<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Duas tandem*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *ferre*, A.C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *m. p. A. subigebant*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Tandem*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *sumebant*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *coeuntes et iterum vacantes*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *masculos*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *ablactatos*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *et fœminas*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *ad venandum et militandum*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *sagittationi*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *et inde*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Harum*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *deinde Achilles et*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Et*] om. C.D. This sentence is blundered in B.

<sup>17</sup> *ostia*, A.

<sup>18</sup> *Thalestrem*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *tributa petenti*, D.



leued longe wip oute housbondes, and afterward made hem TREVISA.  
 tweie queenes; pat oon ladde pe oost and meyntheyned the  
 werre, and werred faste; pat oper quene was at home, and  
 ruled pe lond, and gouernede pe peple at home. And pese  
 wommen helde vnder hond a grete deel of Asia aboute an  
 hondred yere. And at pe laste<sup>1</sup> pese wommen wolde haue  
 children, and toke housbondes of pe next contrayes aboute,  
 and certeyn tymes lette [her]<sup>2</sup> housbondes ligge by hem, and  
 certeyne tymes absteyned hem. But pey slow<sup>3</sup> alle pe knaue<sup>3</sup>  
 children, oper certeyn tyme i-wened sent hem to pe fadres,  
 and saued alle<sup>4</sup> mayde children, and tauzt hem to schetynge,  
 and to<sup>5</sup> dedes of armes and of chyuallrie. And for grete  
 brestes schulde nouzt lette hem to schete, of eueriche maide  
 of seuen zere olde pey brende of pe riht brest; and perfore  
 pey were cleped Urimammæ, pat is to menyngre *brend*  
*bristes*; and pey were i-hote Amazones, pat is to menyngre  
*wipoute brest*. Hercules was pe firste pat chastised pe  
 schrewednesse<sup>6</sup> of pese wommen, and pan Achilles, and pan  
 at pe laste pe grete Alexandre.<sup>7</sup> R. And pci, Isid. Eth. 14,  
 seie pat pe grete Alexander destroyed Amazones, neuerpeles  
 pe storie of Alexander seiþ, pat whan pe kyng Alexandre  
 asked<sup>8</sup> of hem tribute, Thalestris pe quene of Amazones

the childer female, lyvenge longe with owte howsebondes. MS. HARL. 2261.  
 At the laste thei made ij. qwenes, oon of whom gouernede  
 the hoste, that oper kepede residence at home, hauenge vic-  
 tory ouer a grete parte of Asia by c. yere. At the laste  
 thei toke to theym men of ferre costes for cause of mul-  
 tiplicacion, vsenge the acte venerealie in certeyne tymes,  
 and absteynenge oper certeyne tymes, auther sleenge the  
 male childer other elles sendenge them to the faders after  
 a certeyne tyme, reseruenge the female childer, informenge  
 peym to hunte, to schote, and to vse cheuallery, brennenge  
 the ryzhte pappe of theyme in the vij<sup>th</sup> yere of theire age,  
 leste the grosenes of hit scholde lette theyme to schote.  
 Wherefore thei were callede Urimammæ, or Amazones, as f. 32. b.  
 with owte a pappe; the cruellenes of whom Hercules did  
 mitigate firste, after that Achilles, and at the laste kyng  
 Alexander. R. Thauzhe Isidorus, Eth. 14<sup>o</sup>, seye Ama-  
 zones to be destroyed by kyng Alexander, neuerthelesse  
 the story of Alexander seythe that Thalestris, qwene of

<sup>1</sup> *atte laste*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx., who has *theyr*; absent from a.

<sup>3</sup> *men*, Cx., who omits *other* . . . fadres.

<sup>4</sup> *alle*] *the*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *for to shote and to do*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *schrewednesse*] *ylle disposicion*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *and atte laste the grete Alysaunder*, Cx. *Alexander* and *Alexandre* are both so written in the MS. and a. *at length*.

<sup>8</sup> *asked*] *axede*, a.; *ared*, Cx.

*Littera  
missa  
Alexandro  
de regina  
Amazonum.*

rescripsisse in hunc modum : " De tua prudentia<sup>2</sup> in-  
randum est<sup>3</sup> quod cum fœminis congregari voluisti ; quia  
si favente nobis fortuna succumbere<sup>4</sup> te contingat,  
merito es confusus, cum a fœminis sis devictus.<sup>5</sup>  
Quod si, iratis nobis diis, nos deviceris, parum hono-  
raberis qui<sup>6</sup> de fœminis triumphasti." Placatus ex  
his Alexander libertatem illis concessit,<sup>7</sup> dicens quod<sup>8</sup>  
mulieres amore non terrore<sup>9</sup> forent<sup>10</sup> devincendæ.<sup>11</sup> *Tro-  
gus, libro secundo.*<sup>12</sup> Hæc autem Thalestris regina, post-  
quam concubitu Alexandri ad sobolem capiendam per  
quadraginta dies usa fuisset, in regnum reversa, brevi  
post tempore, cum gente sua, intercudit.<sup>13</sup>

## CAP. XIX.

*De Africa et ejus provinciis.*

*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*<sup>14</sup> Omnes historici  
astruunt quod<sup>15</sup> Africa sit dicta ab Afer,<sup>16</sup> filio Madian,  
filii Abrahæ ex Cethura progeniti ; proceditque<sup>17</sup> a fini-

<sup>1</sup> This is the rubric of E.

<sup>2</sup> *prudentia tua*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *est mirandum*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *occumbere*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *mulieribus sis dejectus*, C.D.  
(which latter has *devictus*.)

<sup>6</sup> *quia*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *donavit*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *per amorem non per t.*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sunt*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *fore devincendas*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> A. omits the reference ; which,

however, is correct. See Just. lib.  
ii. c. 4. in fine. B. has *libro primo*.

<sup>13</sup> *interiit*, B. *Trogus* . . . *inter-  
cidit*, om. C.D.,

<sup>14</sup> 13<sup>o</sup>, A. wrongly. Reference  
omitted in B. See Isid. lib. xiv. c. 5.

<sup>15</sup> *Omnes* . . . *quod*] om. C.D.,  
which, consequently, alter the con-  
struction below.

<sup>16</sup> So A. ; *Affer*, B.C.D.E., (but  
*Afer* below in E.) ; see also the  
versions. The Vulgate has *Opher*.

<sup>17</sup> *quia*, A.

Amazones, did wroot to kyng Alexandre in pis manere: "Of TREVISA.  
 "py wittes we wonder,<sup>1</sup> pat pou desirest to fize wip wommen;  
 "for 3if fortune fauerip<sup>2</sup> vs, and pou be ouercome,<sup>3</sup> it is<sup>4</sup>  
 "grete schame and vilonye, whan pou art ouercome of  
 "wommen. Also 3if<sup>5</sup> oure goddis beep wroop wip vs and  
 "pou ouercome vs, for to wynne þe maystrie of wommen  
 "pou getest but litel worschippe." Kyng Alexandre was  
 i-pleased wip pis, and graunted hem fredom, and seide:  
 "Wommen moste be ouercome with fairenesse and loue, and  
 "nouzt wip sternesse and drede." *Trogus, libro secundo.*  
 Pis queene Thalestris, after pat sche hadde be kyng Alex-  
 andre his lemman fourty dayes, sche torned aȝeyn in to  
 here owne lond, and afterward in schort tyme fil<sup>6</sup> yn wip  
 here peple.

*De Africa et ejus provinciis. Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*  
*Capitulum nonum decimum.*

ALLE auctors of stories witnessip pat Affrica hap þe name  
 of Affer,<sup>7</sup> Madians sone, Abrahams sone, pat was geten on

wryte to kyng Alexander in this forme.<sup>8</sup> "Hyt is to MS. HARL.  
 "meruayle of thy prudence wyllenge to make batayle with 2261.  
 "women: for if hit happe vs to haue the victory, fortune f. 32 b.  
 "schewenge fauor, thou scholde<sup>9</sup> be confused by merite,  
 "sythe that thou was<sup>9</sup> ouercommen with women; and thauȝhe  
 "thou haue the victory of vs, thou schalle<sup>9</sup> obteyne but  
 "lytelle worschippe, hauenge victory of women." Kyng  
 Alexander pleasede grauntede to theyme liberte, seyenge,  
 "Women ar to be ouercommen not with feere, but with  
 "luffe." *Trogus, libro secundo.* That qwene Thalestris,  
 after that sche had vsede the bedde of kyng Alexander by  
 xli<sup>th</sup> daies to haue a childe, returnenge to here realme felle  
 at variaunce soone after with here peple.

*Of Affrike and the prouinces of hyt. Isidorus, libro quarto*  
*decimo. Capitulum nonum decimum.*

ALLE scriptores historicalle and croniclers afferme pat  
 Affrica toke the name of hit of Affer, son of Madian, the son

<sup>1</sup> wytte is wonder, a, Cx., which is probably right.

<sup>2</sup> fauoure, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx. MS. adds of women.

<sup>4</sup> is] shal be, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> and yf, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> MS. adds ful, seemingly by a clerical error; a. and Cx. have it not.

<sup>7</sup> The MS. reading of the versions, though rather incorrect, is retained, because Africa is always written *Affrica*, or *Affrike* therein.

<sup>8</sup> fforme, Harl. MS., which commonly uses the ff merely as a capital letter.

<sup>9</sup> So the Harl. MS.

bus Ægypti juxta meridiem per Æthiopiam inferiorem usque ad montem Atlanticum,<sup>1</sup> ab oriente et septentrione mari magno clauditur, ab occasu vero habet oceanum occidentalem. *Rānulphus*.<sup>2</sup> Iste Afer, secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo octavo,<sup>3</sup> et secundum Isidorum, *Etymolog.* libro nono, duxit exercitum versus<sup>4</sup> Libyam, auxilioque Herculis majoris hostes superans, gentem et patriam ex suo nomine dictam Africam nominavit.<sup>5</sup> Cujus filiam Etheam Hercules desponsavit, ex qua genuit Dodorim, ex quo Pharon. Hæc regio Africa plures continet provincias, videlicet,<sup>6</sup> occidentalem partem Æthiopiæ, Libyam,<sup>7</sup> Tripolim, Gætuliam, Numidiam, Mauritaniam duplicem, de quibus hic per ordinem.<sup>8</sup>

De  
Æthiopia.

Æthiopia tres habet partes; prima namque<sup>9</sup> pars occidentalis montuosa est, quæ ab Atlantico monte celsissimo protenditur usque ad Ægyptum, media pars arenosa est; tertia, quæ orientalis est, pene deserta est.<sup>10</sup> Et illa<sup>11</sup> situatur inter australem oceanum et Nilum fluvium, habens ab ortu mare Rubrum. Dicta est Æthiopia a colore populorum, quos solis vicinitas torret.

<sup>1</sup> usque A. montem, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Reference added from A.B.

<sup>3</sup> The true reference is to *Antiq.* lib. i. c. 15., where the MSS. differ much in the forms of the proper names. Josephus is quoting Alexander Polyhistor, who again derives his account from Malchus.

<sup>4</sup> adversus, C.

<sup>5</sup> nuncupavit, D.

<sup>6</sup> scilicet, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Libyam] added from B.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> duplicem . . . ordinem] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> que, (q̄), B. apparently.

<sup>10</sup> quæ est orientalis, pene deserta, B.; tertia vero, quæ orientalis, est pene deserta, C.D., which also slightly alter the following sentence.

<sup>11</sup> C. adds autem; B. has que; D. has etiam.

Cethura. Affrica strecchep forþ from þe endes of Egipt by þe south by þe neyper Ethiopia anon to the hille<sup>1</sup> Atlas, and is i-closed yn wip þe grete see bope in þe estside and yn þe northside also; and hap in þe west side þe west ocean. R. Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo octavo, and Isidorus, libro nono, seip þat þis Affer ladde his oost toward Libya, and ouercome his enemyes by þe help of þe more Hercules; and nempned<sup>2</sup> þe men and the lond after his owne name, Affrica. Hercules wedded Ethea, Affer<sup>3</sup> is douȝter, and gat on hir Dederym; of Dederym com Pharon. Þis Affrica conteyneþ many prouinces and londes; first he conteyneþ<sup>4</sup> þe west dele of Ethiopia, þan Libya, Tripolis, Getulia, Numidia, and tweie Mauritania. Of alle pese now by ordre is oure speche. Ethiopia hap þre parties, þe firste is hilly and montuous, and strecchep from þe mount Atlas anon to<sup>5</sup> Egipt; þe myddel partie is ful of grauel; þe pridde, þat is þe est partie,<sup>6</sup> is almost alle wilderness. Þat partie is bytwene þe soupe ocean and þat<sup>7</sup> ryuer Nilus, and hap þe Reed see in þe estside, and hatte Ethiopia of þe colour and hewe of þe men of þe lond, þat bep blewe<sup>8</sup> men, and is for<sup>9</sup>

TREVISA.

of Abraham, geten of Cethura. Whiche procedethe from the costes off Egipte, nye the meriden by the inferior Ethiop vn to the mownte Atlantyke, schutte of the este parte and northe with the grete see, hauenge on the weste to hit the westerne ocean. R. This Affer, after Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo octavo, and also after Isidor, in his Ethimologies, libro nono, hade an hoste, ledenge hit towarde Libya, hauenge victory of his enmyes thro helpe of grete Hercules, namede that cuntre Affrica, after his name; whiche toke to his wife Editha, doȝhter to Hercules, of whom he gate Dodoris. This region of Affrike conteynethe mony prouinces, that is to say, the weste parte of Ethioppe, Libya, Tripolis, Getulia, Numidia, and tweyne Mauritanies, of whom hit schalle be seyde by ordre. Ethioppe hathe thre partes; the firste parte of it, that is in the weste, is fulle of hilles, whiche is protendede from that hie hille Atlantyke vn to Egipte. The mydde parte is fulle of gravelle. The thrydde parte, that is of the este, is alle moste fulle of deserte, whiche is sette between the southe ocean and the floode of Nilus, hauenge on the este to hit the Redde See. Hit is callede Ethiopia, of the colour of peple whom

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Cx. adds *of*.<sup>2</sup> named, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Affers*, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> MS. originally had *many* (clerical repetition).<sup>5</sup> *anon to*] vnto, Cx. (as usual.)<sup>6</sup> MS. and a. add *and*.<sup>7</sup> *þat*] the, Cx. (not a.)<sup>8</sup> *blac*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *for the*, Cx.



Et continet monstruosos populos, videlicet,<sup>1</sup> Garamantes, Troglodytas,<sup>2</sup> qui cervos cursu prætereunt, quorum aliqui maledicunt soli propter ejus nimium fervorem.<sup>3</sup> Aliqui<sup>4</sup> serpentes comedunt, aliqui<sup>4</sup> leones et pantheras venantur. Aliqui<sup>4</sup> specus excavant et inhabitant,<sup>5</sup> quibus stridor est potius in ore quam vox. Alii incedunt nudi, nullo exercitio occupati. Alii sine capitibus, os et oculos in pectore habent. Apud aliquos eorum quadrupedia nascuntur sine auribus, etiam et elephantes. Aliqui eorum canem habent pro rege, cujus motu augurantur. Aliqui solis locustis vivunt, sole vel fumo induratis. Ibi sunt chamæleon et basiliscus, rhinoceros, cameli, par-di,<sup>6</sup> et dracones, ex quorum capitibus et cerebro gemmæ extrahuntur. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Africa apud Troglodytas<sup>7</sup> est fons, cujus aqua potata canoras

<sup>1</sup> scilicet, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Trogoditas*, MSS., and similarly the MSS. of the versions.

<sup>3</sup> *Dicta . . . fervorem*] Slightly contracted in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Alii*, C.D. (thrice.)

<sup>5</sup> After this C.D. have; *ignes ibi de nocte videntur. Satyri quoque ac*

*pilosi: chamæleon et basiliscus . . . dracones.* After which the citation from Isidore.

<sup>6</sup> So all the MSS. and both versions; but *camelopardi* is in all likelihood the true reading.

<sup>7</sup> *apud Troglodytas*] om. C.D.

gret brennyngre and hete of the sonne, pat is hem<sup>1</sup> ful nyh.<sup>2</sup> TREVISA.  
 In Ethiopia beep meny dyuerse peple grisliche and wonder-  
 liche i-schape; som hatte Garamantes and som Troglodyte,  
 and beep<sup>3</sup> swifter pan hertes. And som curseþ þe sonne for  
 his grete hete; some eteþ serpentes and addres; som hunteþ  
 leouns and panterers. Some diggeþ caues and dennes, and  
 woneþ vnder erpe, and makip hir noyse wip grisbaytyngre<sup>4</sup>  
 and chirkyngre of teep more than wip voys of þe prote. Som  
 goop naked and no werk wircheþ,<sup>5</sup> some wip oute hedes  
 and haueþ moup and yzen in þe<sup>6</sup> breest. Among som of  
 hem beep foure foted bestes wipoute eren, and olyphantes  
 also. Som of hem hap an hound for hire kyng and deuyne<sup>7</sup>  
 by meuyngre and steryngre of hym, som<sup>8</sup> leueþ onliche<sup>9</sup>  
 by honysoukels i-dryed wip smoke oper wip þe sonne. Pere  
 beep also camelions and basiliscus, vnycornes, camels, pardes,  
 and dragouns, pat haueþ in here brayn and hedes many  
 precious stones. Camelion is a flekked best in colour liche  
 to a lupard; and so is pardus, and pantera<sup>10</sup> also, and som  
 dele of þe kynde; but pantera is frende to alle manere bestes  
 but to<sup>11</sup> þe dragoun al lone; for hym he hateþ as deth.  
 Basiliscus is kyng of serpentes pat wip smyl and siȝt sleep  
 beestes and foules. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In Affrica  
 amonge þe puple Troglodyte<sup>12</sup> is a welle pat makeþ hem pat

the nyȝhenesse of the sonne dothe brenne, whiche con- MS. HARL.  
 teynethe in hit peple to be meruaylede; that is to saye, 2261.  
 Garamantes, Troglodytes, which renne and turne hertes and  
 other bestes thro rennenge, somme of whom curse the sonne  
 for the grete feruent hete of hit. Somme do eite serpentes,  
 somme men of theyme hunte panteres and lyonnes. Somme Troglodyte.  
 of theyme make caves in the erthe, whiche berke rather f. 33. a.  
 then speke lyke men. Somme men of theyme goe nakede,  
 not occupyenge theyme in eny exercise. Somme with owte  
 hedes, hauenge their mowthe and eizen in the breste.  
 Somme of theyme haue a dogge to their kyngre, thro  
 movenge of whom thei vse wycchecraftre. There be also  
 cocatrice, cameles, cattles of the mownteine, and dragones  
 from the hedes of whom and breyne pannes gemmes be  
 extracte. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* There is a welle  
 amonge the Troglodytes in Affrike, the water of whom y-

<sup>1</sup> whiche is to hem, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> nyȝ, a.

<sup>3</sup> whiche ben, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> gruntynge, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> doo no werke, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> in þe] So a. and Cx.; wipoute,  
 MS.

<sup>7</sup> deuyneþ, a., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> MS. omits som. Added from a.

<sup>9</sup> So a.; nouȝht, MS.; somme lyue  
 only, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> panthera, Cx., who however has  
 panterers above.

<sup>11</sup> sauf to, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> peple that ben called (þat hatte,  
 a.) Troglodyte, Cx.

facit voces. Item apud Garamantes dicunt esse fontem ita argentem de die, ut bibi non possit; ita<sup>1</sup> calentem de nocte, ut<sup>2</sup> tangi non valeat.

De Libya.<sup>3</sup> Libya Cyrenensis habet ab ortu Ægyptum, ab austro Æthiopiam occidentalem, ab occasu Syrtes majores et Troglodytas, a septentrione mare magnum. Est autem Libya dicta vel quia Libs, id est ventus Africus,<sup>4</sup> inde flat, secundum Isidorum, libro xv<sup>o</sup>, vel a Libya, filia Epaphi, filii Jovis, ibidem regnante. Et gentes ibidem dicuntur Phutei a Phut filio Cham.<sup>5</sup>

De regione  
Tripoli-  
tana.

Tripolitana regio habet ab ortu<sup>6</sup> aras Philænorum inter Syrtes majores et Troglodytas situatas,<sup>7</sup> ab austro Gætulos et Garamantes, usque ad oceanum Æthiopicum protensus,<sup>8</sup> ab occasu habet Byzantium usque ad lacum Salinarum, a septentrione habet mare mediterraneum et Syrtes minores.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> et ita, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> quod, A.

<sup>3</sup> E. has for rubric, *De Libya insula*.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.; *Afrie* (for *Africa* ?), E.

<sup>5</sup> a septentrione . . . filio Cham] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> habet after ortu in A.

<sup>7</sup> situatas] om. C.D. (with other very slight omissions.)

<sup>8</sup> protensus, A.

<sup>9</sup> minores] om. A.B.

drynkeþ<sup>1</sup> perof to haue good voys, sch[r]ille,<sup>2</sup> and clere. TREVISA.  
 Also among þe opere peple Garamantes is a welle al<sup>3</sup> day  
 so colde þat no man may perof<sup>4</sup> drynke, and al<sup>3</sup> nyȝt so<sup>5</sup>  
 hote þat no man may it<sup>6</sup> touche. Libya Cyrenensis pat  
 lond hap in þe est side Egipt, in þe souþ side<sup>7</sup> Ethiopia, in þe  
 west þe perilous place of þe see þat hatte þe more Syrtes,<sup>8</sup>  
 and Troglodytas<sup>9</sup> also, in the norþ þe grete see. Isidorus,  
 libro quinto, seiþ þat [Libya hap þe name of pat wynd pat  
 hatte Libs, and is þe wynd pat bloweþ out of Affrica, oper]<sup>10</sup>  
 Libya hap þe name of Libya, Epaphies douȝter, pat Epaphi  
 was Iupiter his sone. Þat womman Libya reigned in þat  
 lond Libya, and þe peple of þat lond hitte Phutei<sup>11</sup> of Phut,  
 Chamys sone. Tripolitana pat regioun hap in þe est side  
 aras Philenorum, þe auters and wenedes<sup>12</sup> of pat peple pat  
 beep i-sette bytwene þe peple Troglodyte and þe more Syrtes.  
 Syrtes maiores beep perilous places faste by þe<sup>13</sup> see, þat is  
 mare Arenosum. And Tripolitana hap in þe south side  
 Getulos and Garamantes, pat streccheþ anon to þe ocean of  
 Egipt, and hap in þe west side Byzantium anon to þe lake  
 pat hatte lacus Salinarum, and in þe norþ side he hap þe  
 see of myddel erpe and þe perilous place þat hatte Syrtes  
 minores, þe lasse Syrtes. Getulia is þe myddel londe of

drunke yeldetle clere voices. Also thei seye an other welle MS. HARL. 2261.  
 to be amonge the Garamantes, the water of whom is soe  
 colde on the day that hit may not be drunke, and soe hote  
 in the nyȝte that hit may not be towchede. Libya Cy- Libya.  
 nensis<sup>14</sup> hathe of the este parte to hit Egipte, of the sowthe  
 parte the weste Ethioppe, of the weste the more Syrtes and  
 Troglodytes, of the northe the grete see. And Libya is  
 callede, for libs, the sowthe wynde, blawethe from thens, and  
 after Isidorus, libro xv<sup>o</sup>, hit is callede of Libya, the douȝter  
 of Epaphus, reignenge þer; and peple be namede there  
 Phutei of Phut, the son of Cam. The region Tripolitan Tripoli-  
 hathe of the este to hit the cuntre of Philenes, sette be- tana.  
 twene the grete Syrtes and the Troglodytes, and of the weste  
 parte Byzantium<sup>15</sup> vn to the Dedde see, hauenge of þe northe  
 to hit the see Mediterrany and the lesse Syrtes. Getulia Getulia.  
 is a litelle region of Affricke. Sothely Getulia toke the

<sup>1</sup> *drunggeþ, a.*<sup>2</sup> So Cx. (*shryll*); *schil, a.*<sup>3</sup> Cx. adds *the (bis)*.<sup>4</sup> *of, a.; drynke therof, Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *so*] *it is so, Cx.*<sup>6</sup> *it*] *om. Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *west, a.; Cx. omits side.*<sup>8</sup> *Cirtes, MSS. of both versions.*<sup>9</sup> So *a.* and Cx., but misspelt;*Troglodyte, MS.* Trevisa's usage is  
inconstant, see below.<sup>10</sup> The words in brackets added  
from *a.* and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *Putei, a.*<sup>12</sup> *wyndes, Cx.*<sup>13</sup> *a.* and Cx. add *gravelly.*<sup>14</sup> *Cretensis, Harl. MS.*<sup>15</sup> *Bisancium, Harl. MS.*

De Gætulia. Gætulia est media regio Africæ, sic denominata a Getis, qui a Gothis<sup>1</sup> processerunt. Et, ut dicit Gregorius in Homilia,<sup>2</sup> piscatores non habet.<sup>3</sup>

## CAP. XXI.

*De Numidia.*

NUMIDIA habet ab ortu Syrtes minores, ab austro Æthiopes, ab occasu Mauritaniam, a septentrione mare Siculum. Hæc regio habet in se Rusicadam<sup>4</sup> et Carthaginem magnam, quæ sic condita fuit secundum auctores.<sup>5</sup> *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo xiiij<sup>o</sup>.* Phœnices, a Rubro mari profecti, Sidonem et Tyrum in Syria, Uticam in Africa, Thebas in Bœotia,<sup>6</sup> Gades in fauce occidentalis oceani condiderunt.<sup>7</sup> Nam mos erat antiquis Phœnicibus mercandi causa a domo longius<sup>8</sup> proficisci, et cum alienigenarum animos commercio novarum rerum sibi conciliassent,<sup>9</sup> loca condendis urbibus apta capere.<sup>10</sup> *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.* Ex his profecta

<sup>1</sup> A space left for the word in B,

<sup>2</sup> *omeliis*, B.

<sup>3</sup> C.D. thus (after *Africæ*): *a Gothis qui eam occuparunt denominata; piscatores non habet.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ruscidam*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *secundum auctores*] om. C.

<sup>6</sup> C.D. add *duce Cadmo.*

<sup>7</sup> *et Gades insulam in ultima f. o.* C., C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *longius*] om. D.

<sup>9</sup> *reconciliassent*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *capere* (*carpere*, C.) *cæperunt*, C.D.; *sibi procuraverunt*, B.



Affrica, and hap þe name of Gethes; þat folk com of Gothes,<sup>1</sup> and in an omelie Seint Gregorie seiþ þat pilke men haueþ no fisheres. TREVISA —

*De Numidia.<sup>2</sup> Capitulum vicesimum.*

NUMIDIA hap in þe est side Syrtes minores, þe lasse Syrtes, a perilous place,<sup>3</sup> in þe southe Ethiopia, in þe west Mauritania, and in þe norþ þe see Siculus. In þat lond is Rusicada<sup>4</sup> and Carthago<sup>5</sup> þe grete citee, þat was in þis manere arered and i-buld, as auctors tellip. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Phenices, men of Phenicia, þat lond, wente from þe Rede see and bulde<sup>6</sup> pese citees: first in Syria þei bulde Sidon<sup>7</sup> and Tyrus,<sup>8</sup> in Affrica Utica, in Beotia Thebe, and in þe mowþ of þe west ocean Gades; for in olde tyme þe Phenices were grete marchaundes, and passed into dyuers londes wip marchaundise þat þei brouȝte, and feng<sup>9</sup> perfore londe and place to bulde on citees and townes. *Trogus, libro*

name of hit of Gothes, of whom Getuliones didde procede, and, as Seynte Gregory seythe in a<sup>10</sup> omely, that region hath no fischers in hit for the wontenge of fisches. MS. HARL. 2261. —

*Capitulum vicesimum.*

NUMIDIA hath on the este parte to hit the lesse Syrtes, Numidia. of the weste men of Ethiope, on the weste Mauritany,<sup>11</sup> and on the northe parte the see of Sicilia.<sup>12</sup> This region hathe in hit Rusicada<sup>4</sup> and Carthago,<sup>5</sup> whiche was edifiede in this Carthago. maner after auctores. *Isidorus, libro vicesimo quinto, capitulo tertio decimo.* Men off Phenicia, goenge from the Redde See, made the cites of Sidon and of Tyrus in Syria, Utica in Affrike, Thebas in Beotia, Gades in the mowthe of the ocean. For a consuetude was vrede amonge theyme somme tyme to goe in to ferre regiones from theire cuntres, and when thei perceyvede the hertes of straunge peple to haue theyme in fauour, thro the merchaundise of newe thynges thei toke places apte to make cites. *Trogus, libro*

<sup>1</sup> folke of the Gothes, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Numedia, MS. (not Cx.) Various other unimportant deflections from the classical forms will not be noticed.

<sup>3</sup> a. and Cx. add in the see.

<sup>4</sup> Ruscida, MSS. of both versions and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Cartago, MSS. of both versions and Cx., here and below. Cartage

has been retained below, as an English form.

<sup>6</sup> buylded, Cx.; who has buyld below.

<sup>7</sup> Sydoun, MS.

<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; of Tirus, MS.

<sup>9</sup> feng] resseyued, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So the MS.

<sup>11</sup> Mauritamy, Harl. MS., and so below.

<sup>12</sup> Silicia, Harl. MS.

Dido, quæ alio nomine Elissa vocabatur, electa secum robustorum juvenum multitudine, Cyprum insulam primo venit, ubi assumptis secum lxxx. virginibus ad sobolem propagandam Africam devenit. Ibique<sup>1</sup> empto loco pro refocillatione navigantium qui corio bovis circumduci<sup>2</sup> posset, corium in tenue<sup>3</sup> filum secari jussit,<sup>4</sup> locumque emptum<sup>5</sup> circumduci, quem Byrsam, id est *Corium*, vocavit. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo*. Sive Carthago. Carthadam,<sup>6</sup> quod sonat *villam novam*. Tandem<sup>7</sup> verso nomine locus ille Carthago vocabatur. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo*.<sup>8</sup> Sicque conditur Carthago lxxij. annis ante urbem Romam. *Ranulphus*.<sup>9</sup> Idem dicit Papias; cum ergo<sup>10</sup> secundum historicos Roma sit fundata quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,<sup>11</sup> si isti quatuor anni, et sedecim anni regis Joathæ, et quinquaginta duo anni regis Ozisë,<sup>12</sup> qui regem Achaz præcesserunt, simul numerentur, patebit quod circa primum annum regis Ozisë Carthago fuerit fundata. Veruntamen<sup>13</sup> Isidorus Etymolog., libro

<sup>1</sup> *Ubi*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *tegi*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *tenuissimum*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *jubet*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. add *eodem*.

<sup>6</sup> *Cartadam*, MSS.

<sup>7</sup> *deinde*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> The reference added from C.D. See Just., Lib. xviii. c. 6.

<sup>9</sup> In C.D. the article from *Ranulphus* stands thus: "Varius tamen æstimandum est, quod si (*si*, om. "D.") Carthago condita sit ab illa Didone quam Æneas reliquit, quod (*et quod*, D.) Carthago fundata sit 570 annis ante urbem Romam.

"Nam tot anni sunt inter Jair judicem et Romulum. Quod autem quidam dicunt Carthaginem fuisse conditam tempore regis David a Carthedone Tyrio, sive a filia (*fili*o, C.) ejus Didone, potius puto Carthaginem tunc fuisse ampliatam, et illam Didonem aliam fuisse a prima." After this the paragraph on Mauretania begins.

<sup>10</sup> *igitur*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *Juda*, added from A.B., which write *Jude*, though having *Judi* below.

<sup>12</sup> Azariah is intended.

<sup>13</sup> *Verumtamen*, A.B.E.

*octavo decimo.* Dido, pat hiȝte Elissa also, went oute of TREVISIA.  
Phenicia wip a grete companye of ȝonglynges i-chose, and  
seilede first into Cyprus.<sup>1</sup> And pere þis womman Dido  
toke wip hir foure score maydens for to brynge forþ chil-  
dren, and com into Affrica, and pere fore ese and reste of  
here men, pat were wery of seillynge, sche bouȝte as moche  
lond as sche myȝte byclippe wip an oxe hide,<sup>2</sup> and kutte<sup>3</sup>  
þe hyde into<sup>4</sup> a þong pat was ful long and ful<sup>5</sup> smal,  
and biclipped perwip a grete place, and cleped hit Byrsa,  
pat is a þwong. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* Oper Car-  
thada,<sup>6</sup> pat was a *neue town*. After pat þe name was  
chaunged and þe<sup>7</sup> place i-cleped Carthago.<sup>8</sup> And so Car-  
thago was i-buld þre score ȝere and twelue to fore þe citee  
of Rome. R. Papias seip þe same; and<sup>9</sup> stories telleþ pat  
Rome was i-bulde þe fourþe ȝere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda.  
þan ȝif we acounte rediliche and putte to giders foure ȝere  
of Achaz, xvi. ȝere of Iotham,<sup>10</sup> and two and fifty ȝere of  
Ozias, pat regned to fore Achaz, hit folweþ pat Carthago  
was i-founded aboute þe firste ȝere of Ozias þe kyng.  
Neuerþeles Isidorus, libro quinto Eth., and Magister, in<sup>11</sup>

*octavo decimo.* Dido goenge furthe from theyme, whiche MS. HARL.  
was callede by an other name Elissa, takenge a multitude 2261.  
of yonge men with here, come firste to the yle of Cyprus,<sup>1</sup> and f. 33. b.  
lxxx. virgynes to norysche multiplicacion, come to Affrike,  
whiche byenge a place per for noryschenge of men, trauayl-  
enge as ferre as the skynne of an ox myȝhte extende,  
causede hit to be kytte in as smalle partes, and so the  
grownde to be compassede abowte, whiche place was callede  
Byrsa,<sup>12</sup> that is to say, *leder*. *Isidorus, libro xvº.* Or elles  
that cite was callede Carthada,<sup>6</sup> and afterwarde Carthago,  
whiche cite was edifiede lxx<sup>ti</sup> yere afore the cite of Rome.  
R. Papias seythe the same, sythe after alle wryters histo-  
ricalle Rome was made in the iiij<sup>the</sup> yere of Achaz kyng  
of the Iewere. If these iiij. yere, and xvi. yere of kyng  
Ioachim,<sup>13</sup> and lij<sup>ti</sup> yere of kyng Ozias, whiche precedede  
kyng Achaz, be annumerate, hit is expressede that lij<sup>ti</sup>  
yere resulte pat Carthago was made in the iiij<sup>the</sup> yere of  
Achaz kyng of Iewery. Neuerthelesse Isidorus wille,

<sup>1</sup> Cipres, MS., a., Harl. MS.;  
*Cipris*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> oxe huyde, a.; oxes hyde, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> kytte, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> to, a.; vnto, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Cx. omits the second *ful*.

<sup>6</sup> *Cartada*, MSS. of both versions,  
and Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx. (*the*); to þe, MS.

<sup>8</sup> *thus*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *and*] added from a., and Cx.;  
the latter has *histories*.

<sup>10</sup> *Iothas*, MS., a.; *Ionathas*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *in*] added from Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *Birisa*, Harl. MS.

<sup>13</sup> So the Harl. MS., but *Iotham* is  
intended.

quinto, et Magister in<sup>1</sup> Historiis<sup>2</sup> Scholasticis, videntur sentire quod fundata sit<sup>3</sup> circa xxxiv<sup>m</sup> annum regis David. Marianus autem dicit quod circa quartum annum Amasiæ regis Juda. Non ergo poterit ad litteram stare quod<sup>4</sup> tradit Virgilius, et Phrygius Dares in historia sua de bello Trojano, quod scilicet<sup>5</sup> Æneas vidit Didonem, cum Æneas obierit ante foundationem Carthaginis, quam Dido fundavit, plus quam trecentis annis; vel erit dare aliam Didonem ab ista antiquiorem, vel quod Carthago prius fuerit<sup>6</sup> fundata. Proinde dicit Augustinus, primo libro Confessionum in fine, quod docti negabant<sup>7</sup> Æneam vidisse Carthaginem aut Didonem. Igitur secundum Orosium, libro quarto, Carthago in circuitu murorum habuit xxij. millia passuum. Altitudo muri quadraginta cubitus; latitudo triginta pedes; et tota pene mari cingebatur absque faucibus quæ tria<sup>8</sup> millia aperiebantur.

De Mauritania.

Mauritania duplex est. Prima Cæsariensis, quæ habet ad orientem Numidiam,<sup>9</sup> ab austro arenas oceani, ab occasu flumen Maluam,<sup>10</sup> a septentrione fauces maris magni. Mauritania Tingitana<sup>11</sup> ultima est provincia Africæ, habens ab ortu flumen Maluam, a septentrione

<sup>1</sup> *in*] om. A.

<sup>2</sup> So E. at length; A.B. abbreviate the words; the singular would be preferable. See the versions.

<sup>3</sup> *fuit*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *quod*] *sicut*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *scilicet*] om. A.B.

<sup>6</sup> So A.B.; *fuerat*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *negabunt*, A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *tria*] *in mil.*, B. The text runs awkwardly. See the versions.

<sup>9</sup> *Prima habet ab ortu Numidiam*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Apparently an error for *Mulucham*. Both versions have likewise *Malua* in all the MSS.

<sup>11</sup> *Tingitina*, MSS.

Historia Scholastica, seip pat<sup>1</sup> it semep pat Carthago was i-founded aboute pe foure and pritty zere of kyng David. Marianus seip pat Carthago was i-bulde aboute pe fourpe zere of Amazias, kyng of Iuda. Pan it may nouzt stonde pat Virgilius and Phrygius Dares in his storie of pe bataille of Troye seip, pat Eneas sih pat womman Dido, for Eneas was dede pre hondred zere and more or<sup>2</sup> Cartage was i-founded pat Dido foundede; oper pere was anoper Dido, an<sup>3</sup> elder pan sche; oper Cartage was raper<sup>4</sup> i-founded.<sup>5</sup> Perfore Seynt Austyn, libro primo Confessionum, seip pat wise men denyep pat Eneas si3 Carthago oper Dido pat womman. Perfore Orosius, libro quarto, seip pat Carthago<sup>6</sup> is al aboute two and twenty powsand paas, and euery wal is fourty cubites<sup>7</sup> hi3e, and pritty foot brood; and pe citee is byclipped wip pe see wel nyh al aboute, ou[t]<sup>8</sup> take faucibus quæ tria milia aperiebantur.<sup>9</sup>

Mauritania is pe name of twei londes, pe firste Cesariensis, pat hap in pe est side Numidia, in pe soup pe graucl of pe see<sup>10</sup> ocean, in pe west pe ryuer Malua, and in pe norp pe gewes of pe grete see.

Tingitana is pe laste prouince of Affrica, and hap in pe est side pe ryuer Malua, in pe north pe see Gaditanus, in pe west pe hulle Atlas, and the see

Ethimolog., libro v<sup>o</sup>, and the Maister in his story scholasticale, that Carthago was edifiede abowte the xxxiiij<sup>th</sup> yere of kyng David; wherefore the seyenge of Virgille and of Phrygius Dares in his story of the batelle of Troye, that Eneas see Dido; or elles hit is to 3iffe a more elder Dido then this. For Eneas dyede more then iii<sup>c</sup> yere afore the edifienge of Carthago, or elles hit wille folowe that Carthago was made a fore. Where of Seynte Austyn seythe in his booke of confessiones, libro primo, in the ende, that wyse men denye Eneas to have seen Carthago. Therefore after Orosius, libro iiij<sup>to</sup>, Carthago hade with in the circuite of the walles, xxij. ml. passes. The altitude of the walle was of xl<sup>th</sup> cubites, the latitude of xxx<sup>th</sup> foote alle moste compassede abowte with the water of the see. There be tweyne Mauritanies, that firste is Mauritany Cesariense, whiche hathe at the este of hit Numidia, at the sowthe the gravelles of the ocean, at the northe the floode callede Malua, of the weste the chekes of the ocean. Mauritania

TREVISIA.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

Mauritania.

<sup>1</sup> as, Cx.<sup>2</sup> ar, a. ; er, Cx.<sup>3</sup> and, Cx.<sup>4</sup> raper] added from a.<sup>5</sup> i-buld, a. and Cx.<sup>6</sup> pat Carthago] added from Cx.<sup>7</sup> cubit, a.<sup>8</sup> out, a. ; oute, Cx. Trevisa and the Harl. translator seem to have been puzzled with the Latin text.<sup>9</sup> that iij. m. were opend, Cx.<sup>10</sup> Cx. omits see.



fretum Gaditanum, ab occasu montem Atlanticum et oceanum. Dicitur autem Mauritania<sup>1</sup> a *mauron*, quod est *nigrum*, quasi nigrorum patria. In hac Africa est mons Atlas ad occidentem, non longe ab oceano,<sup>2</sup> ita supra montes alios<sup>3</sup> elevatus ut circulum lunarem credatur attingere; ubi de nocte crebri ignes, fauni et satyri videntur, tubæ, fistulæ, et cymbala frequenter audiuntur. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo.*<sup>4</sup> Atlas fuit astrologus, et<sup>5</sup> frater Promethei, qui ideo<sup>6</sup> portare cælum fingitur; a quo et<sup>7</sup> mons ille Atlas dicitur, quem<sup>8</sup> propter immensam altitudinem cælum portare vulgus credit. *Hugutio,*<sup>9</sup> *capitulo Phœnix.* Nota<sup>10</sup> quod Puni, Poeni, Punici, et Punices, dicuntur<sup>11</sup> tam Phœnices quam Afri sive Carthaginenses, quia Dido Carthaginensis fuit de terra Phœniciæ adventitia.<sup>12</sup>

## CAP. XXII.

*De Europa et ejus provinciis.*

*Ranulphus.*<sup>13</sup> PONIT Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, quod<sup>14</sup> Europa sit dicta ab Europa, filia Agenoris regis

<sup>1</sup> *q. n. p.* after *Mauritania* in C.D., which add: *alia Mauritania dicitur Casariensis.*

<sup>2</sup> *non longe ab oceano*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *alios*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> 19, E., wrongly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8. and c. 39. E. also heads the previous paragraph: *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviii.* likewise wrongly; for the two passages above named, which alone name *Atlas*, do not contain what is here said.

<sup>5</sup> *astrologus et*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *quia idem*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *cujus nomine Atlas dicitur mons ille, quem*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Hugo*, A.B. (a frequent variation).

<sup>10</sup> *Notandum*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *quod Punici et Punices dicuntur*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *de civitatibus Ph. veniens*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> So E.: the other MSS. omit the name.

<sup>14</sup> *Ponit . . . quod*] om. C.D., which also contract slightly the first two sentences throughout.

ocean. Mauritania hap pe name of *mauron*, pat is *blak*, as it were pe contray of black men. In pis Affrica is pe hulle Atlas in pe west side and ende, nouzt fer from ocean. And Atlas is so hiȝe ouer pe<sup>1</sup> hilles, pat lewed men wenep pat it rechep to pe mone. Pere is ofte by nyȝte i-scie fire, fauni, and satyri, pat beep spiritus<sup>2</sup> of pe<sup>3</sup> aier dyuersliche i-schewed. Also pere is ofte i-herde tymbers, pipes, and trompes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavo decimo*. Atlas was an astronomyour, Prometheus broþer; perfore<sup>4</sup> som men<sup>5</sup> feynep pat Atlas berep heuene. And of pis man Atlas pe hul hap his name and hatte Atlas also, and<sup>6</sup> is so hiȝe pat pe lewed peple wenep pat he<sup>7</sup> berep heuene. Take hede pat Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices also beep i-cleped Phenices, Afri, and Carthaginienses, as þei were men of Phenicia, of Affrica, oper of Cartage. For pat womman Dido,<sup>8</sup> pat founded Carthago, was a comlynge, and com of<sup>9</sup> Phenicia. TREVISA.

*De Europa et ejus partibus. Capitulum vicesimum primum.*

ISIDORUS, libro quarto, seiþ pat Europa hap the name of Europa, Agenores douȝter, king of Libya; and Iupiter,

takethe the name of hit of *mauron*, that is *blacke*, as the cuntre of blacke men. In whom is the mownte callede Atlas at the weste, not ferre from the ocean, whiche is so eleuate ouer other hilles that is ȝiffen to credence the altitude of hit to towche the cercle of the moone, where claryones and symbales be herde oftetyms in the nyȝhte. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo*. Atlas was an astronomier and the broder of Prometheus, whiche was feynede to berre heuyn, of whom this hille callede Atlas toke the name of hit, whom commune peple suppose to berre heuyn for the huge altitude of hit. Also hit is to be attendede that Puni, Peni, Punici, and Punices be callede as welle men of Phenicia of Affrike and of Carthago, for Dido dwellege in it was of the londe of Phenicia. MS. HARL. 2261.  
Mons Atlas.  
f. 34 a.

*Of Europe and of the Provinces of hit. Capitulum 21.*

ISIDORUS rehersethe, in his xiiij<sup>th</sup> boke, that Europa Europa. toke name of Europa, doȝhter of Agenoris, kynge of Libya,

<sup>1</sup> þe] other, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> spiritus, a.; sprytes, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> þe] om. a. (not Cx.)

<sup>4</sup> for, a.

<sup>5</sup> Cx. omits men.

<sup>6</sup> it is, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> it, Cx. (and so often.)

<sup>8</sup> Didoo, a.

<sup>9</sup> fro, Cx.

Libyæ, quam Jupiter Cretensis rapuit sibi. Hæc autem Europa, pars mundi tertia, incipiens a flumine Tanai et Mœotide palude, descendit per septentrionalem oceanum usque in fines Hispaniæ apud Gades insulam. Ab oriente et austro mari magno cingitur.<sup>1</sup> Plures continet provincias et insulas, de quibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda.<sup>2</sup> Est autem sciendum quod ex parte orbis septentrionalis Mœotides paludes et fluvius Tanais distinguunt Asiam majorem ab Europa.<sup>3</sup>

Fluvius  
Tanaïs  
unde  
dicitur.

Fluvius autem<sup>4</sup> Tanais dictus est a Thano primo rege Scytharum, qui fluvius exoriens<sup>5</sup> a Ripæis montibus<sup>6</sup> descendens intrat pontum Mediterraneum.

De  
Scythia.

Scythia inferior regio<sup>7</sup> frigida est<sup>8</sup> valde. Incipit a flumine<sup>9</sup> Tanai,<sup>10</sup> inter Danubium et oceanum septentrionalem usque Germaniam protenditur. Sed propter barbaras gentes quas continet generaliter Barbaria<sup>11</sup> appellatur.<sup>12</sup>

De Alania. Alania,<sup>13</sup> pars Scythiæ inferioris,<sup>14</sup> declinat a lacu Mœotidis usque Daciam.

De Mœsia. Mœsia<sup>15</sup> ab ortu clauditur ostiis Danubii; ab euro

<sup>1</sup> jungitur, D.

<sup>2</sup> aliqua . . . tangenda] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> et Europam, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> autem] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> S. et exoriens, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> apud R. montes, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> regio] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> est] om. A.B.C.

<sup>9</sup> fluvio, A.D.

<sup>10</sup> Thanays, B.

<sup>11</sup> So A.C.D.; barbarica, B.E.

<sup>12</sup> vocatur, D.

<sup>13</sup> Albania, B.E.

<sup>14</sup> inferioris] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> Misia, MSS. Mysia and Mœsia may be dialectical variations of the same name (Smith's *Anc. Geogr.* ii. 389): but to edit *Mysia* would only confuse. A little below A. has *Mesiam*, and this form has been adopted in the versions.

kyng of Creta, rauished Europa, Agenores douȝter. But TREVISA.  
 pis Europa is pe pridde deel of pis worlde wyde,<sup>1</sup> and  
 bygynneþ fro pe ryuer Tanais<sup>2</sup> and pe water Meotides, and  
 streccheþ downward by pe norþ ocean anon to pe endes  
 of Spayne at pe<sup>3</sup> ylond Gades, and is byclipped by pe<sup>4</sup>  
 est and also by pe<sup>4</sup> soup wip pe grete see. In Europa  
 beep many prouinces and ylondes, pe whiche now schal be  
 descreeued;<sup>5</sup> but firste take hede pat in pe north side of  
 pe world pe water<sup>6</sup> Meotides and pe ryuer Tanais departeþ  
 atwynne<sup>7</sup> pe more Asia and Europa. Pe ryuer Tanais  
 haþ pe name of Thanus, pe firste kyng of Scythia. Pat  
 ryuer Tanais bygynneþ from pe hulles Ripheis, and goop  
 doun to<sup>8</sup> pe see of myddel erpe. *Isidorus, libro quarto  
 decimo.* Pe lower Scythia pat lond is ful colde,<sup>9</sup> and by-  
 gynneþ from pe ryuer Tanais, and streccheþ bytwene pe  
 ryuer Danubius and pe<sup>10</sup> norþ ocean anon to<sup>11</sup> Germania  
 pat contray. Alania is a party of pe lower Scythia, and  
 streccheþ somdel from pe wateres Meotides toward Daciam.  
 Mesia<sup>12</sup> pat lond is i-closed in pe north est wip pe moup  
 of Danubius, and ioynneþ in pe soup est to Thracia,<sup>13</sup> and

whom Iupiter Cretensis raveschede to hym. That Europe, MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 the thrydde parte of the worlde, begynnege from the floode  
 of Thanay, descendethe by the northe ocean vn to the  
 costes of Speyne, compassede abowte with the see at pe yle  
 callede Gades, on the este parte and in the sowthe with the  
 grete see, conteynenge mony prouinces and yles, of whom  
 somme thynges schalle be towchede by ordre.

Hyt is to be attendede that of the northe parte the  
 marras of Meotides and the floode of Thanais diuiden  
 the lesse Asia from Europe. Floode of Thanais was  
 namede firste of Thanus, kyng of Scythia, which floode  
 descendenge entrethe in to the see Mediterrany. *Isidorus,  
 libro quarto decimo.* The inferior Scythia is colde, begyn- Scythia.  
 nenge from the water of Thanus, betwene Danuby and the  
 northe ocean is protendede to Germanye, which is callede  
 Barbarica for the men of Barbre that hit conteynethe.

Alania is a parte of the inferior Scythia declinege to the Alania.  
 water of Meotides vn to Denmarke.<sup>14</sup> Mesia is schutte of Mesia.  
 the este parte of it with the dures of Danuby, from the

<sup>1</sup> wyde world, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Thanai, MS., a.; Thanay, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> at pe] atte, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Cx. omits pe (twice).

<sup>5</sup> descryued, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> wateris, a.

<sup>7</sup> a sonder, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> into, a.

<sup>9</sup> ful of cold, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> pe] om. a.

<sup>11</sup> anon to] vnto the, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Misia, MSS. of both versions,  
and Cx., and so below.

<sup>13</sup> Tracia, MSS. of both versions,  
and Cx.

<sup>14</sup> The medieval use of *Dacia*  
and *Daci* has here misled the  
translator.

Thraciæ, ab austro Macedoniæ, ab occasu Istriæ, ab Africo Dalmatiæ jungitur.<sup>1</sup> Terra frugifera maxime tritici,<sup>2</sup> unde et eam veteres Cereris horreum nuncupaverunt.

De Sclavia. Sclavia pars est<sup>3</sup> Moesiæ, quæ<sup>4</sup> tamen duplex est, una major quæ proprie dicitur Sclavonia, et continet Dalmatiæ partem et Sarmatas. Feras habet gentes et piraticas. Alia, minor Sclavia, extenditur a Wandalis et Bohemis<sup>5</sup> usque ad Saxones, quæ gentem habet magis piam.<sup>6</sup>

De Pannonia.

Pannonia, a Penninis Alpibus quibus ab Italia secer nitur sic vocata, duplex est, major quæ in ulteriori Scythia est ultra Mœotides paludes, a qua Huni<sup>7</sup> primitus venationis gratia exeuntes, per longa paludum spatia cervorum vestigia insectantes,<sup>8</sup> ut dicit Herodotus,<sup>9</sup> tandem Pannoniam minorem invenerunt, qui reversi ad propria, collecto agmine, in illam redire, et, expulsis incolis, nomen patriæ Hungariam indiderunt. Cujus tamen pars Bulgaria dicitur, quæ habet ab oriente Moesiam, ab euro Istriam, ab Africo<sup>10</sup> Alpes, ab occidente

<sup>1</sup> *jungitur*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> So A.E.; *triticea*, C.; *tritico*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *est*] om. A., placing it after *major*; omitted entirely in B.D.

<sup>4</sup> *quæ*] C.D. contract a little here.

<sup>5</sup> *Boemiis*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *p<sup>i</sup>ann*, B., (possibly blundered for *placidam*, which is very likely the true reading).

<sup>7</sup> So the MSS., which form is

fully as good as *Hunni*, if less common.

<sup>8</sup> *insequentes*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ut dicit Herodotus*] om. C.D. Herodotus never names the Huns; and his remarks on the Scythians can hardly be the origin of this account.

<sup>10</sup> *austro*, B.



in þe south to Macedonia, in þe west to Histria,<sup>1</sup> and in þe south west to Dalmatia. Mesia is a prise<sup>2</sup> lond of corne and of whete, þerfore þe olde cereris<sup>3</sup> cleped hit a berne. Sclauia is a partie of Mesia; þere beþ also two londes, eiper hatte Sclauia. Þe more hatte properliche Sclauonia, and conteyneþ som of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, and hap wylde men and see þeues. Þe lasse Sclauia streccheþ from Wandalia and Bohemia anon to Saxone; and þere ynne beþ more mylde<sup>4</sup> peple. Pannonia hap þe name of Penninis Alpius, þat beþ<sup>5</sup> hulle,<sup>6</sup> þat beþ i-cleped Alpes, and pilke hilles departeþ Pannonia and Italia; þere is anoper Pannonia be ʒonde þe wateres Meotides in þe ʒonder Scythia. Out of þe more Pannonia Hunni<sup>7</sup> went an huntynge, and passed long by marys and wateres, and folwed þe trace of hertes, ut dicit Herodotus,<sup>8</sup> and so at þe laste<sup>9</sup> þei founde þe lasse Pannonia, and torned home aʒen, and fette to<sup>10</sup> hem grete strengþe and com eft<sup>11</sup> in to þe lasse Pannonia, and put out þe men þat were þerynne, and cleped þe lond Hungaria.<sup>12</sup> But a partie þerof hatte Bulgaria, and hap in þe est side Mesia, in þe souþ est Histria,<sup>13</sup> in þe west Alpes, (þe hilles þat so hoteþ,) in þe west Gallia Belgica, þat is

TREVISIA.

este of Tracia to the sowthe parte of Macedony; a plentuous region, and specially of whete, wherefore olde men namede hit the berne of God of corne. Sclauia is a parte of Mesia, of whom the nowmbre is duplicate, the more and lesse. The more is callede proprely Sclauonia, conteynenge a parte of Dalmatia and Sarmatas, hauenge ferse peple and schippemen. The litelle Sclauia is extendede from Wandalinges and men of Boemy vnto the Saxones, the peple of whom is more meke. Also Pannonye is duplicate, the more that is in the ferþer Scythia, ouer the waters of Meotides, from whom Hunes goenge furthe for cause of huntenge by ferre cuntrees folowenge hertes, as Herodotus seythe, at the laste founde the lesse Pannonye, whiche returnenge home, gedrenge a multitude of peple, returnede ageyne to hit, the inhabitatores of hit expulsede thei namede that cuntre Hungary. A parte of whom is callede Bulgaria, hauenge on the este to hit Mesia, of the weste Gallia

MS. HARL.

2261.

Sclavia.

Pannonia.

f. 34. b.

Hungaria.

<sup>1</sup> and in þe . . . Histria] added from a. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> pris, a.; good, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> This absurdity is found also in a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> a. and Cx. add men and after mylde.

<sup>5</sup> beoþ, a.

<sup>6</sup> hulles, a.

<sup>7</sup> Huni, MS.; Hinny, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> as Erodotus seyth, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> atte laste, Cx., and so often.

<sup>10</sup> toke with, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> agayn, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Hungaria, MS.; Hongaria, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> So a. and Cx.; Historia, MS.

Galliam Belgicam, a septentrione Danubium seu<sup>1</sup> Germaniam. Habet hæc terra venas aureas, et montes in quibus effoditur marmor et sal optimum.<sup>2</sup>

## CAP. XXIII.

*De Græcia et ejus provinciis.*

INNUUNT auctores quod Græcia, cum provinciis<sup>3</sup> suis, regnorum sit domina, militiæ nutrix, philosophiæ mater, magistra artium et inventrix; a quodam<sup>4</sup> Græco ibidem regnante<sup>5</sup> Græcia dicta est, quæ tamen generaliter dicitur Illyricus, cujus populi dicuntur Græci, Graii, Achæi, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii, sive Hellenes.<sup>6</sup> Sed quando Constantinus Magnus sedem Romani imperii in Constantinopolim transtulit, Græcorum gens Romania vocabatur quasi nova Roma, ut dicit Rabanus. Ideo usque hodie Græci<sup>7</sup> non se vocant Græcos vulgariter, sed Ramayses,<sup>8</sup> gens olim bellicosissima, sed regibus subdita.<sup>9</sup> *Giraldus, distinctione*

<sup>1</sup> *seu*] et, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Habet... optimum*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *insulis*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *quodam*] om. A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *regnante ibidem*, B.

<sup>6</sup> The opening sentence is much contracted in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Græci*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *sed Ramayses*] So E.; *Ramaysos*, A.; *Romanos*, B., which is perhaps right; though more probably the other readings mean to express 'Ρωμαίους. C. and D. omit the clause and all the preceding sentence.

<sup>9</sup> *gens... subdita*] placed in C. after *Hellenes*.

Fraunce, and in þe norþ þat ryuer Danubius and Germania TREVISA.  
 pat lond. Þis lond Bulgaria hap veynes of golde<sup>1</sup> and hilles  
 in þe whiche me diggeþ marbel and salt goode at þe best.

*De Græcia et eius prouinciis. Capitulum vicesimum  
 secundum.*

AUCTOURS telleþ þat Grees with þe provinces<sup>2</sup> þerof is  
 lady of kyngdoms, norice of knyȝthode and of chiuallrie,  
 moder of filosofie, fynder and mayster of art and sciens,<sup>3</sup>  
 and hap þe name of oon Grecus pat reigned þere somtyme.  
 Neuerpeles<sup>4</sup> pat lond is comounliche i-cleped Illyricus,<sup>5</sup> þe  
 men þerof bep i-cleped Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi,  
 Attici, Iones, Ionii, and<sup>6</sup> Hellenes. But whan þe grete  
 Constantyn made<sup>7</sup> Constantinopolim þe cheef sete of þe  
 emperour<sup>8</sup> of Rome, þan were þe Grees<sup>9</sup> i-cleped Romanij,<sup>10</sup>  
 as it were men of newe Rome, so seiþ Rabanus. And anon  
 to þis day þe Grees clepeþ nouȝt hem self Grees, but  
 Romayses,<sup>11</sup> and were somtyme stalworþe and orped and best  
 men of armes, and neuerpeles sugett<sup>12</sup> to lawes. *Isidorus*,<sup>13</sup>

Belgica, of the northe Danuby or Almayne. That londe MS. HARL.  
 hathe veynes of golde, and hilles in whom marbole is 2261.  
 diggede and goode salte.

*Of Grece, and of the prouinces of hit. Capitulum  
 vicesimum secundum.*

AUCTORES remembre and reherse that Grece is lady Grecia.  
 of other londes with his provinces, nutrix of cheuallery,  
 the moder of philosophy, maistresse of artes, callede  
 Grecia of a man named Grecus reignenge there, whiche  
 is callede generally Illyricus, þe peple of whom be callede  
 Greci, Graii, Achei, Achivi, Argivi, Attici, Iones, Ionii,  
 or Hellenes. But when grete Constantyne transferrede  
 the seete of the Roman ympyre to Constantinople, the  
 men of Grewe were callede as newe Romanes, as Rabanus  
 seythe; where fore men of that cuntre vn to this tyme  
 calle not theyme Grekes, but Ramoyses, somme tyme peple  
 moste victorious but subiecte to lawes. *Gir. de papa, ca-*

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; *colde*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *province*, MS. (not Cx.)

<sup>3</sup> *of science*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Netheles*, Cx. (and so often.)

<sup>5</sup> *Iliricus*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *and*] So Cx.; *et*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> *Constantyn made*] added from  
 a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *þe empere*, a.; *thempyre*, Cx.  
 This is nearer the Latin.

<sup>9</sup> *Grekes*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>10</sup> So MS., a., and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *the Grekes be but Romayses*,  
 Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *natheles subget*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Seemingly a clerical error for  
*Giraldus*. Cf. *Præf. Dist.* 1. p. 6.  
 (Ed. Brewer.) But the reference is  
 uncertain.

*secunda, capitulo nono decimo.*<sup>1</sup> In hac terra quondam Palladis et Minervæ studia musæ et militiæ<sup>2</sup> castra junctis dextris firmatisque foederibus sese comitabantur, ideoque respublica tunc prosperabatur; item multa Graii veteres et armis aggressi et studiis assecuti sunt. Sed virtus illa refriguit in posteris, et in orbem Latinum migravit, ut qui ante fontes fuerant<sup>3</sup> nunc rivuli, vel potius alvei arentes et exhausti. Virtutum siquidem successor nullus,<sup>4</sup> scelerum omnes. Namque Sinonis figmenta, Ulixis fallaciam, Atrei atrocitatem retinent. Arte non armis dimicant. Hæc itaque regio Græcia juxta mare magnum sita plures in se continet<sup>5</sup> provincias, quæ sunt Thracia, Lacedæmonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia,<sup>6</sup> Bœotia.<sup>7</sup>

De  
Thracia.

Thracia, quæ et Epirus, terra<sup>8</sup> quondam Epirotarum, habet ab austro Ægeum mare, ab occasu Macedoniam, quam quondam inhabitabant Massagetæ, Sarmatæ, Gothi. *Isidorus, libro xxv.*<sup>9</sup> In hac terra est fons extinguens faces accensas et iterum extinctas reaccen-

<sup>1</sup> So written at length (but as one word) in E. Higden or his scribes seem to have avoided the form *undevicesimus*.

<sup>2</sup> *militiæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *fuerunt*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *æmulus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *continet in se*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Elladia* or *Elladea*, MSS.; *Cal-*

*ladia*, B.; *Hellas* is of course intended.

<sup>7</sup> *Hæc itaque . . . Bœotia*] Slightly contracted in C.D. (the names excepted), which place the sentence before *Giraldus*; A. has *et Achaia* and *et Arcadia*.

<sup>8</sup> *tota*, B. (apparently).

<sup>9</sup> The true reference is to lib. xiii. c. 13.

*libro primo, capitulo septimo decimo.* In pis lond was somtyme pe studie and pe scole of Pallas and Minerua, of grettest art and sciens of knyȝthode and of chivalrie, and pe clergie and the chivalrie hilde<sup>1</sup> so to giders pat in pe comyn profiȝt was all way good spede. Also pe olde Graii auntrede<sup>2</sup> and gat many pinges by clergie and dedes of armes, but pat vertue keled<sup>3</sup> and wip drowe ynne ham pat com<sup>4</sup> afterward, and passede from pe Grees to pe Latyns, so pat pe raper welles beep<sup>5</sup> now but lakes,<sup>6</sup> oper more vereyliche dreye chanelis wip oute watir. For now pey holdep Sinonis<sup>7</sup> feynynge, Vlixis<sup>8</sup> gile, Atreuis cruelnesse, and fitep wip sleipe and wip cauteles and nouȝt wip armoure and wepoun. Pis lond Grecia is faste by pe grete see, and conteyneþ many prouinces, pat beep Thracia,<sup>9</sup> Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.<sup>10</sup> Thracia hatte Epirus also, for<sup>11</sup> Epirote woned perynne somtyme, and hap in pe soup side pe see Egeus,<sup>12</sup> in pe west Macedonia. In Macedonia woned somtyme dyuers men pat hiȝte Massagete, Sarmate, and Gothi. *Isidorus, libro quinto.*<sup>13</sup> In pis lond is a welle pat quencheþ brennyng brondes, and tendep brondes pat beep a

TREVISA.

*pitulo septimo decimo.* In whiche londe somme tyme were libraryes, studies, muses, and compaynes of cheuallery, where fore the londe stode that tyme in prosperite. But that vertu in theyme was refusede after and wente to the cuntre of men of Latyn, and thei that were somme tyme the nowble welles now be<sup>14</sup> as ryueres with owte water and consumede; noo folower of vertu per, but alle off vices. For thei reiteyne to them the figmentes of Sinonis, the fallace of Vlixes, fiȝhtenge by arte and not by armes. That region of Grece, sette nye the grete see, hathe mony prouinces in hit, whiche be Thracia,<sup>9</sup> Lacedemonia, Macedonia, Achaia, Arcadia, Thessalia, Helladia, Beotia.<sup>10</sup> Thracia, or Egiptus,<sup>15</sup> somme tyme the londe Epiratores, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Ege, of the weste Macedony, where the Massagetes inhabite somme tyme. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.* There is a welle in that londe qwenchenge brennenge brondes of fire and liȝhtenge theyme ageyne. The chiefe cite of

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> helde, Cx.<sup>2</sup> aventured, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; kelep, MS.<sup>4</sup> cam, a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> So a.; is, MS.<sup>6</sup> so that to fore where welles were, ben now but lakes, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Synonis, MS.<sup>8</sup> So a.; Vlixus, MS.; Vlixes, Cx.<sup>9</sup> pat beep Thracia] Added from a. and Cx. The MSS. have Tracia, as

usual; but Thessalia is correctly written in MS. (not Harl. MS.)

<sup>10</sup> Boecia, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.<sup>11</sup> for] added from Cx.<sup>12</sup> Egedeus, MS.<sup>13</sup> 15, a., Cx.<sup>14</sup> thei be, MS., but thei erased.<sup>15</sup> This is of course for Epirus; but the sentence is otherwise corrupt.



dens.<sup>1</sup> Hujus provinciæ metropolis est Constantinopolis<sup>2</sup> in orientali parte patens inter Ponticum mare et Propontidem, terræ marique pervia, caput quondam orientis, sicut Roma occidentis; et quondam vocabatur Byzantium.<sup>3</sup> De qua loquitur sic Willielmus de Regibus, libro quarto: <sup>4</sup> Hanc<sup>5</sup> urbem Constantius magnus constituit æquam Romæ, decernens imperatorem non debere Romæ principari, ubi principabantur apostoli coronati. Invexit quoque illuc innumeras Sanctorum reliquias, qui possent<sup>6</sup> contra hostium insultus<sup>7</sup> suffragari. Statuas etiam deorum et tripodes Delphicos ad ludibrium intuentium adduxit, gratum æstimans ibi urbem imperialem condere ubi esset soli ubertas<sup>8</sup> et cœli temperies, juxta regionem Mysiam<sup>9</sup> frugum feracem. Patet quoque undecumque<sup>10</sup> adnavigantibus ab Asia et Europa, undique pene mari magno cincta, ambitu murorum juxta situm pelagi angulosi<sup>11</sup> viginti millia<sup>12</sup> passuum muro complexa. Quapropter rupium molibus

<sup>1</sup> *accendens*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Constantinopolim*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *Thracia . . . Byzantium*] Much altered and transposed in C.D., which omit all that follows till the section on *Lacedæmon*.

<sup>4</sup> *in libro quarto Regum*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *Quapropter hanc*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *possunt*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *insidias*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *libertas*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Mesiam*, A.; but *Mysia* is most probably intended.

<sup>10</sup> *undique*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *angulosa*, B.E.

<sup>12</sup> *millibus*, B.

queynt.<sup>1</sup> Þe chief cite of pis lond is Constantinopolis in þe est side, openliche i-seie by twene þe tweie sees Ponticus and Propontides, and opounliche i-seie out of water and of lond, and was somtyme þe cheef citee of þe Est; riȝt as Rome was of þe West, and hiȝte som tyme Byzantium.<sup>2</sup> Of pis citee Willielmus, libro quarto Regum, spekep in pis manere: Þe grete Constantinus bulde and made pis citee euene and pere to Rome<sup>3</sup> and demed þat þe Emperour schulde nouȝt be chief pere; þe Apostles were cheef, and nameliche i-crowned. And he brouȝt pider also meny relikes of holy seyntes, þat myȝte hem helpe aȝenst hir enemyes. Ymages of false goddes and tripodes Delphicos þat were Apolynes ymages he brouȝte to byskorne<sup>4</sup> and bysmere<sup>5</sup> to hem þat byhelde hem and say.<sup>6</sup> So pis Emperour vouched sauf to bulde þe chief citee of þe empere in good corn contray, where pere is good temperure of heuene and of wedir, besides þe londe Mysia,<sup>7</sup> þat haȝ grete plente of corn and of fruyt. Þe<sup>8</sup> citee is i-seiȝe and i-schewed to alle schipmen þat seilleȝ pider ward out of what lond þat pey come of Asia and<sup>9</sup> Europa, and is wel nyȝ byclipped al aboute wiȝ þe grete see, and is cornered wiȝynne þe clippyng of þe walles faste by þe see side, and is<sup>10</sup> byclipped wiȝ a wal of twenty powsand paas. Pere wiȝ hupes of stones<sup>11</sup> and of grauel, i-caste

TREVISA.

that cuntre is Constantinople,<sup>12</sup> in the este part of hit, MS. HARL. 2261.  
betwene the see Pontyke and Propontides, the hede of alle the este, as Rome is of the weste, somme tyme callede Byzantium;<sup>2</sup> of whom Willielmus, libro iiiij<sup>10</sup>, de Regibus, spekethe: Constantine made that cite egalle to Rome, seyenge hit was not conueniente an Emperoure to kepe residence where thapostles crownede kepede the principate, bryngenge thider innumerable relikes of Seyntes whiche myȝhte schewe socoure to the cite ageyne the sawtes of theire ennyes, thenkenge hit fre to hym to make a cite imperialle where was the pleasure and liberte of grownde, temperaunce of heuyn, nye to the region callede Mysia,<sup>7</sup> plentuous of whete. Whiche is patente on euery syde to men sayleng from Asia and Europa, compassede alle moste with the grete see. The

<sup>1</sup> *acquenchyd*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Bisancium*, MSS.<sup>3</sup> *Rome*] So *a.* and Cx.; *Londoun*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *by skorne*, MS., and similarly often.<sup>5</sup> *busmere*, *a.*<sup>6</sup> *he brought to be scorned and spyght to them that behelde hem and saue*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Misia*, MSS. (of both versions).<sup>8</sup> *That*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *and of*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *I is*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)<sup>11</sup> *ther with heepes and huppels of stones*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *Propontides Constantinople*, MS., but *Propontides* erased.

et arenarum cumulis juxta urbem profundo injectis tellus dilatatur; Danubius etiam<sup>1</sup> fluvius (qui et Hister) occultis sub terra canalibus influit; urbi diebus constitutis, ablato pessulo, inductus centum plateas inundat. In qua urbe Constantinus erexit duas ecclesias famosas, sed Justinianus<sup>2</sup> postmodum literis et bellis egregius addidit tertiam ecclesiam in honorem Divinae Sophiae, id est<sup>3</sup> Domini Christi, quem "hagiam<sup>4</sup> sophiam" vocavit; opus, ut ferunt, omnibus per orbem aedificiis magnificentius, ita ut verba referentium vincat. Ibi per Helenam allatum fuit lignum dominicae crucis. Ibi quiescunt apostoli Andreas, Jacobus frater Domini, Matthias, prophetæ quoque Heliseus, Samuel, Daniel. Item Lucas Evangelista et martyres quamplures. Item confessores Johannes Chrysostomus, Basilius, Gregorius Nazianzenus. Item virgines Agatha et Lucia.

De Lacedæmonia.

*Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Lacedæmonia sive Spartania provincia est Græciæ juxta Thraciam, cujus incolæ vocantur Lacedæmones a Lacedæmone filio

<sup>1</sup> *etiam*] So A.B.; *et*, E.

<sup>2</sup> A. adds *imperator*.

<sup>3</sup> A. repeats *in honorem*.

<sup>4</sup> Trevisa's MS. must have had *Agia*, to judge by his translation.

into þe see besides þe citee, þe lond i-serched<sup>1</sup> and i-made more. Also þe ryuer Danubius, þat hatte Hister also, is i-lete and i-ladde in to dyuerse places of þe cite by goteres vnder erþe in þis manere. Whan þe water schal torne<sup>2</sup> in to þe citee men takeþ out a barre, þat þe water is i-stopped wip, and letteþ þe water renne, and stoppeþ whan hem likeþ. And so Danubius fyndeþ water i-now to an hondred stretis. In þis citee Constantinus arered and bulde tweie famous chirches; but Iustinianus þe Emperour bulde afterward þe pridde chirche in worschippe of Diuina Sophia, þat is, oure Lord Crist, þat<sup>3</sup> Agia clepeþ Diuina Sophia, in<sup>4</sup> Engliſshe, þe Wisdom of God. And men telleþ þat þe werk passeþ al þe buldyng of þe worlde, and is more noble þan men konne<sup>5</sup> telle. Þeder Seint Eleyne<sup>6</sup> brouȝte þe holy crosse þat oure Lorde Crist deied on; þere restep þe apostles Andrewe and Iames, þat is i-cleped Frater Domini;<sup>7</sup> þere restep Mathias and prophetes also, Heliseus, Samuel, and Daniel; and also Luke þe euangeliste, and martires ful many; also confessours, Iohan wip þe gilden<sup>8</sup> mouth, Basilius, and Gregorius Nazianzenus; and virgines, Agatha and Lucia.

Lacedemonia, þat hat Spartania<sup>9</sup> also, is a prouince of of Grecia faste byside Thracia. Men of þat prouince beep i-cleped Lacedemones of Lacedemon, Semelis<sup>10</sup> sone, and

TREVISA.

floode Danubius flowethe in to the cite in condettes vnder the erthe; in dayes ordeynede, a barre take a way, that water clensethe cl. weyes in that cite. In whom grete Constantine erecte ij. famose chirches; but Iustinian the Emperoure, instructe in letters and in armes, addede the chirche in the worschippe of oure Lorde Criste, moste nowble in worke of alle oþer chirches in the worlde. The crosse of oure Lorde was brouȝhte þider by Elene, where Seynte Andrewe, Seynte Iames broþer of oure Lorde, Mathias, Eliseus, Samuel, and Daniel reste. Also Lucas the Euangeliste, and mony other martires. Also Iohn Crisostom, Basilius, Gregory Nazanzene. Also Agatha and Lucia, virgines. Lacedemonia is a prouince of Grece, nye Thracia. The inhabitatores of whom be callede Lacedemones. Men of that

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> eched, Cx.<sup>2</sup> renne, Cx.<sup>3</sup> þa, MS. (not a.)<sup>4</sup> an, a.<sup>5</sup> kun, a.; can, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Helene, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Cx. adds: in Engliſshe, oure lordes broder.<sup>8</sup> golden, Cx. (not a.)<sup>9</sup> Spartania] So a. and Cx.; Speratonia, MS.<sup>10</sup> So Cx.; Samuclis, MS.; Samelis, a.

Semeles. Dicuntur etiam<sup>1</sup> Spartani.<sup>2</sup> *Trogus, libro tertio, capitulo secundo.* Hi aliquando<sup>3</sup> circa obsidionem Messenes<sup>4</sup> civitatis in Apulia per decennium immorati,<sup>5</sup> querelis uxorum fatigabantur, timentesque<sup>6</sup> ne diuturnitate praelii spem prolis amitterent, statuerunt ut eorum virgines cum juvenibus domi relictis promiscue concumberent, arbitantes per hoc sobolem maturiorem provenire si singulæ mulieres plures viros experirentur. Ex quibus nati, ob notam<sup>7</sup> materni pudoris, Spartani vocabantur. Qui cum tricesimum annum attigissent, metu inopiæ, cum nullum certum patrem haberent,<sup>8</sup> duce Phalantho filio Araci,<sup>9</sup> insalutatis matribus, per varios casus jactati tandem Italiam devenerunt, expulsisque veteribus incolis, sedem apud Tarentum statuerunt.

De Macedonia.

Macedonia, a Macedone<sup>10</sup> Deucalionis nepote sic dicta, quondam Emathia a rege Emathio vocabatur.<sup>11</sup> Ab ortu habet Ægeum mare, ab austro Achaiam, ab occasu Dalmatiam, a septentrione Moesiam.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *et*, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *Dicuntur etiam Spartani*] sive Spartani, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *aliquando*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Messene*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *x. annos morati*, B.

<sup>6</sup> A. and B. omit *que*.

<sup>7</sup> *notam*, A.D.; *naturam*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *haberent patrem*, A.B.D.

<sup>9</sup> Both the Latin and English MSS. have the form *Aracius*.

<sup>10</sup> *Macedo*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *dicebatur*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Misiam*, MSS.



beep i-cleped Spartani also. *Trogus, libro tertio.* Þese men TREVISA.  
somyte bysegged þe citee Messena ten ȝere to gidres, and  
were wery and i-greued<sup>1</sup> of pleyntes and grucehinge of  
her wyfes, and dradde also þat longe abidyng from home  
in werre and in bataille schulde make hem childrenlese<sup>2</sup>  
at hom, and ordeyned perfore þat þe<sup>3</sup> maydenes of her  
londe schulde take ȝongelynges þat were i-left at home; so þat  
euery mayde schulde take many ȝongelynges,<sup>4</sup> euerich after  
oper; for þey hoped to haue þe strengier childrenen, ȝif  
eueriche womman assayed many men. But for þe schameful  
doynge of the modres þe children þat were i-gete and i-brouȝt  
forþ in þat manere were i-cleped Spartani, and whan þey were  
þritty wynter<sup>5</sup> olde þey dredde sore of nede and of mes-  
cheef; for non of hem wiste who was his owne sire.<sup>6</sup> Perfore  
þey toke hem a ledere and a chifteyn<sup>7</sup> Phalanthus, Aracus<sup>8</sup>  
his sone, and toke no leue of hire modres, but wente forþ  
and were i-cast hider and pider by dyuers happes,<sup>9</sup> and  
at þe laste cam in to Italia, and dryue<sup>10</sup> oute þe men þat  
woned pere, and made þe cheef sede<sup>11</sup> at Tarentum.

Macedonia hap þe name of Macedo, Deucalions neuwe,  
and hiȝt somtyme Emathia of Emathius the kyng, and  
hap in þe est side þe see Egeus, in þe soupe Achaia,<sup>12</sup> in  
þe west Dalmatia, and in þe norþ Mesia.<sup>13</sup> In þis prouince

prouince taryenge abowte the sege of a cite callede Messene  
in Apulia, wexede feynte thro compleyntes of theire wives,  
dredenge to lose multiplicacion off childer by diuturnite of  
batelle, ordeynede that the childer of theyme lefte at home  
scholde folowe the luste of the flesche to gedre, supposinge  
the more multiplicacion to encrease; but the women experte  
the knowlege of diuerse men, the childer of whom were  
callede Spartani. Whiche childer atteynenge the age of  
xxx<sup>ti</sup> yere, not knowenge their faders in certitude, takenge  
to theyme a duke callede Phalax, sonne of Aracus, come  
to Ytaly, expellenge the olde inhabitatores of hit, made a  
mansion and a seete to theyme at Tarentum. Macedonia,  
callede by that name of Macedo, neuwe to Deucalion, some  
tyme [was] callede Emathia of kyng Emathius, hauenge on  
the este to hit the see of Egee, on the sowthe Achaia, of  
the weste Dalmatia, on the northe parte Mesia. The hille

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

f. 35. b.

<sup>1</sup> *agreued*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *childeren*, Cx. (typogr. error).

<sup>3</sup> *þe*] om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *þat were . . . ȝongelynges*] om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *yere*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *fader*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *capytayne*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Phalantis Aracius*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *fortunes*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *droof*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *cyte*, Cx. (not a.), which is probably right.

<sup>12</sup> *Achaie*, MS.

<sup>13</sup> *Misia*, MSS. of both versions; and so below.

De monte  
Olympo.

In hac provincia est<sup>1</sup> mons Olympus, qui dividit Thraciam et Macedoniam.<sup>2</sup> *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Mons quidem nubes excedens, in cujus vertice nec nubes nec venti nec pluviae sentiuntur, super quem litterae inscriptae in pulvere<sup>3</sup> post annum repertae sunt illibatae; ubi etiam pro nimia aeris raritate nec aves vivere queunt,<sup>4</sup> nec philosophi ibidem<sup>5</sup> ascendentes ad discendum cursum stellarum absque spongiis adaquatis manere potuerunt,<sup>6</sup> quas naribus suis apponentes<sup>7</sup> aerem trahebant crassiozem.

De monte  
Atho.

Est ibi etiam<sup>8</sup> mons Athos nubes pertingens, cujus umbra usque<sup>9</sup> ad Lemnum insulam<sup>10</sup> extenditur,<sup>11</sup> quae distat illo monte lxxvi. milliaribus.

De Dal-  
matia.

Dalmatia ab ortu habet Macedoniam, ab occasu Istriam, a septentrione Moesiam, ab austro Adriaticum sinum.

De Achaia. Achaia, ab Achæo rege sic dicta, tota pæne<sup>12</sup> est insula. Nam ab ortu habet Tyrrhenum mare, ab euro<sup>13</sup> Creticum mare, a meridie<sup>14</sup> mare Ionium, a solo<sup>15</sup> sep-

<sup>1</sup> *In ea est*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *et Macedoniam] a Macedonia*, A.B.C.D.; C. and D. omit the title of the following extract from *Petrus*.

<sup>3</sup> *scriptae in pulverem*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *possunt*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *ibi*, B.; om. D.

<sup>6</sup> *potuerant*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *apponentes suis*, B.; *suis* is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *etiam ibidem*, A.B.D.

<sup>9</sup> *usque]* om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *in L. insulam*, C.; *in L. insula* D.

<sup>11</sup> *protenditur*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *pæne]* fere, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *austro*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ab occasu*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *solo]* om. B. The other MSS. have *sola*.

is þe hil mons Olympus, and to delep<sup>1</sup> tweie londes, Thracia and Macedonia. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* Þe hul passeþ þe clowdes, in þe cop<sup>2</sup> of þat hil comeþ no clowdes, wynd, noþer reyn;<sup>3</sup> vppon þat hulle lettres<sup>4</sup> þat were i-write in poudre were i-founde wip oute wem<sup>5</sup> at þe ȝeres ende. Also foules<sup>6</sup> mowe not lyue<sup>7</sup> pere; for þe aier is to clere. And filosofres mowe not<sup>8</sup> dwelle pere to lerne þe course of sterres<sup>9</sup> wip oute sponges i-watred and i-holde at hir nostrilles<sup>10</sup> to make pikker þe ayer, þat þey draweþ to kele<sup>11</sup> wip here herte. Pere is also þe hille<sup>12</sup> mons Athos, þat reccheþ to þe clowdes; þe schadewe of þat hille arecheþ to the ilond Lemnum. Þat ilond is from þe<sup>13</sup> hul pre score myle and sixtene.<sup>14</sup>

Dalmatia þat lond hap in þe est side Macedonia, in þe west Histria, in þe norþ Mesia, and in þe souþ þe see Adriaticus.

Achaia hap þe name of Acheus þe kyng, and is wel nyh an ylonde i-closed in þe see: for he<sup>15</sup> hap in þe est side þe see Tyrrhenus, and in þe norþ þe see Creticus, in þe souþ þe

TREVISIA.

called Olimpus is in that prouince whiche diuidethe Thracia from Macedony. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo septimo.* That mownte is of suche altitude that the toppe off hit excedethe clowdes, where clowdes be not perceyvede, neither wyndes, neither reynes, in whom letters wryten were founde vnde-filde at the end of the yere, where bryddes may not lyve for rarite of the aier, neiper philosophres myȝte ascende to hit to knowe the courses of the sterres with owte sponges, whiche, puttenge theyme to theire noose, attracte more thicker aier to theyme. There is also an hille callede Athon, towchenge the clowdes, the schado of whom is protendede to the yle callede Lemnus, which is from that hille lxxvj. [myle]. Dalmatia hathe on the este parte to hit Macedony, of the weste Histria, of the northe Mesia, of the sowthe parte the see Adriatike. Achaia takenge the name of hit of a kynge callede Acheus,<sup>16</sup> is allemoste alle an yle. For on the este parte to hit hit hathe the see Tirene, of the weste the see Cretike, on the sowthe the see Ionius, of the

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> departeth, Cx.<sup>2</sup> vpprist, Cx.<sup>3</sup> reine ne wynde, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; lettre, MS.<sup>5</sup> hurtynge or wemme, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So fowles, Cx.<sup>7</sup> nouȝt libbe, a.<sup>8</sup> nouȝt, a.<sup>9</sup> the sterres, Cx.<sup>10</sup> her nose thirles, Cx.; nosetrils, a.<sup>11</sup> cole, Cx.<sup>12</sup> Cx. omits þe hille.<sup>13</sup> that, Cx.<sup>14</sup> lxx. myle, Cx.<sup>15</sup> it, Cx.<sup>16</sup> Echius, Harl. MS.

tentrione Macedoniæ et Atticæ jungitur. Hujus metropolis est Corinthus, ubi Alexander magnus<sup>1</sup> collegit exercitum, quando proposuit<sup>2</sup> expugnare orbem terrarum; quibus et Paulus scripsit.<sup>3</sup>

De Arcadia.

Arcadia, quæ et<sup>4</sup> Sicyonia, ab Arcade filio Jovis sic dicta, sinus est Achaïæ; inter mare Ionium et Ægeum velut<sup>5</sup> platani folium jacet.

De lapide Asbesto.

Hæc gignit Asbeston<sup>6</sup> lapidem,<sup>7</sup> qui semel accensus nunquam extinguitur. Gignit etiam<sup>8</sup> candidas merulas, cum tamen apud nos merulæ sint<sup>9</sup> nigræ.<sup>10</sup>

De Thessalia.

Thessalia ad austrum Macedoniæ jungitur, patria quondam Achillis et Lapitharum origo, qui primum equos frænis domuerunt et dorsis eorum insederunt, propter quod unum corpus cum equis quibus insidebant<sup>11</sup> a vulgo indocto<sup>12</sup> putabantur. Et inde centum Centauri. equites Thessalorum dicti sunt Centauri a centum

<sup>1</sup> *magnus Alexander*, A.B.D.

<sup>2</sup> *disposuit*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *duas scripsit epistolas*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] est, D.

<sup>5</sup> *velut*] quasi, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *albeston*, A.B.; *albesten*, C.D.E.

<sup>7</sup> *lapidem*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *etiam*] et, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *sint*] sunt, A.

<sup>10</sup> *cum apud nos omnes sint nigræ*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *quibus insidebant*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *indocto*] ignaro, C.D.

see Ionius, and onliche in þe norþ he<sup>1</sup> ioyneth<sup>2</sup> to Mace- TREVISA.  
donia and to Attica. Þe cheef citee of þat lond hatte  
Corinthus; pere kyng Alexandre<sup>3</sup> gadrede his oost for to  
wynne al þe world; peder Poul<sup>4</sup> wroot his pistil ad  
Corinthios.

Arcadia, þat hatte Sicyonia also, hap þe name of Arcas,<sup>5</sup>  
Iupiter is sone, and is an angul (þat is,<sup>6</sup> a corner) of Achaia,  
and lieþ bytwene þe tweie sees Ionius and Egeus, and is  
i-schape as is<sup>7</sup> a plane leef. Pere ynnē is Asbeston<sup>8</sup> þat  
wil neuere quenche, be it ones i-tend; pere beep also white  
wesels,<sup>9</sup> Þe<sup>10</sup> wesels<sup>9</sup> be blak among vs; pere þey beep  
white.

Thessalia ioynep in þe soup side to Macedonia, and was  
somytyme Achilles contray, and pere bygonne Lapithe;<sup>11</sup> pilke  
mæn chastisede<sup>12</sup> and temede<sup>13</sup> hors firste wiþ bridels, and  
sette<sup>14</sup> on hire bakkes; perfore þe lewed peple wende<sup>15</sup> þat  
it were<sup>16</sup> alle on<sup>17</sup> body, man and hors þat þey sitte<sup>18</sup> on.  
And perfore an hondred horsmen of Thessalia were i-cleped  
*centaury*. Þat name is i-gadered of tweyne, of *centum*, þat  
is, an hondred, and of *aura*, þat is, þe wynde. And so þat  
name was to hem i-schappe *Centauri*, as it were an hundred

northe oonly Macedony, ioynede to Attica. The chiefe MS. HARL.  
cite of whom is Corinthus, where kyng Alexander gedrede 2261.  
his hoste, intendenge to expugne alle the worlde, to whom  
Seynte Paule did wryte. Arcadia, whiche [is] operwise  
callede Sicyonia, was so namede of Arcas,<sup>5</sup> son of Iupiter,  
the bosom of Achaia, betwene the see Ionine and the see of  
Egee, lyenge lyke to the leef of a tree. In this cuntre is  
a ston callede Asbeston,<sup>19</sup> whiche accendede oonys is neucr  
extincte, and oper diuerse precious stones. Thessalia, at  
the sowthe parte of hit, is ioynede to Macedony, somme tyme  
the cuntre of Achilles, and the originalle of men callede  
Laphites, whiche made tame firste horses with bridelles, and  
rydenge on the backes off theyme, whiche were trawede to  
be of oon body with þe horses on whom thei did ryde of  
the commune peple, where fore a c. horse men of that

<sup>1</sup> *it*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx.; *ioyned*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Alysaunder*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Paule*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Archas*, Cx.; *Archades*, MSS.  
of both versions.

<sup>6</sup> [þat is] *or*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *is*] *om. a.* and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Albeston*, MS., *a.*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *ousels*, Cx. (twice).

<sup>10</sup> *þei, a.*; *though*, Cx., which seems  
right.

<sup>11</sup> *Laphite*, MS., Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *chastede, a.*

<sup>13</sup> *tamed*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *satte*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *supposed*, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *had be*, Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *oon, a.*; *one*, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> *sete, a.*; *satte*, Cx.

<sup>19</sup> *Albestos*, Harl. MS.



et aura quam agitabant sic equitando.<sup>1</sup> *Trogus, libro Parnassus, xxiv*.<sup>2</sup> In hac<sup>3</sup> provincia est mons Parnassus apud poetas famosus et celebris, saxo bicipiti dependens; in cujus vertice templum Delphici Apollinis situatur; et in anfractu planitiei mediæ puteus existit, ubi responsa dari solebant,<sup>4</sup> mentesque philosophantiam inspirari. Quamobrem si hominum aut tubarum sonitus in medio convallis personet, correspondentibus inter se rupibus multiplex echo resonabit.<sup>5</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertiodecimo*. In hac provincia duo sunt flumina, ex quorum uno bibentes oves efficiuntur nigræ, ex altero albæ, ex utroque fonte bibentes fiunt coloris varii.<sup>6</sup>

Fons. *Ranulphus*. In hac quoque terra sunt loca illa delectabilia ad spatiandum accommoda quæ dicuntur apud philosophos et poetas<sup>7</sup> Tempe florida, de quibus Ovidius et Theodosius<sup>8</sup> scribunt.<sup>9</sup> In hac quoque terra contigit illud tertium diluvium particulare<sup>10</sup> tempore Deucalionis ibidem principantis, qui confugientes ad eum<sup>11</sup> in ratibus salvabat, propter quod fingunt poetæ ipsum cum conjuge sua Pyrrha jactis lapidibus homines creasse.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> quam equitando sic agitabant, C.; also D., omitting sic.

<sup>2</sup> 14, B.; 34, C.D. The text is correct. See Just. xxiv. 6.

<sup>3</sup> hac quoque, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> solent, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> personabit, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> ex utroque vero bibentes vario colore fiunt, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> apud . . . poetas] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> Theodolus, A.B.D. Perhaps Herodotus (see vii. 173) is intended.

<sup>9</sup> scribunt] mentionem faciunt, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> particulare diluvium, A.

<sup>11</sup> ad eum] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> The two last sentences are transposed in B.

wynde waggers: for pey wagged wel<sup>1</sup> þe wynde faste in hir ridyng. *Trogus, libro vicesimo quarto.*<sup>2</sup> In þis prouince is þe hille Parnassus; (poetis accountep þat hil noble and famous;) and hongep with tweie copped stones. In þe cop<sup>3</sup> þerof is the temple of Delphicus Apollo;<sup>4</sup> and in þe wyndyng<sup>5</sup> of þe myddel playn is a pitte, oute of þat pitte filosofres were enspired; and dyuers answeres were i-zeue out of þat pitte. Þerfore ȝif noyse of men oper of trompes sownep in þe<sup>6</sup> valey, þe stones answerep euerich oper, and dyuers ecco sownep. Ecco is þe reboundyng of noyse. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* In þis prouince beep ryueres; scheepe þat drynkep of þat oon schulle worpe<sup>7</sup> blak, and schepe þat drynkep of þat oper schul worpe<sup>7</sup> whyte; and ȝif pey drynken of boþe, pey schulle worpe<sup>7</sup> spekked<sup>8</sup> of dyuers colour. Also in þis prouince beep pilke likyng places to walke ynne þat filosofres and poetes clepeþ *tempe*<sup>9</sup> *florida*, þat is, *likyng place wip floures*. Of þis place writep Theodolus and Ouidius. Also in þis<sup>10</sup> prouince of þat lond<sup>11</sup> was þe pridde particuler flood, and ful<sup>12</sup> in Deucalions tyme, prince of þat lond. Þat prince sauede men þat fleigh to hym in schippes and bootes; þerfore poetes feynede þat he and his wif Pyrrha cast stones and

TREVISA.

cuntre were callede centauri. *Trogus, libro secundo.* The hille callede Parnasus is in that prouince, a nowble mownte, and of grete fame after poetes, dependenge<sup>13</sup> by a dowble ston, in the toppe of whom a temple is sette lyke to the temple of Apollo Delphicus; and in the pleyne þer of is a pitte where thei ȝafe to viuificate the myndes of filosofres, *Isidorus, libro 13<sup>o</sup>*. There be ij. waters in that prouince, of that oon of whom schepe drynkenge be made blacke, of that other white, and schepe drynkenge of bothe waters be made of diuerse coloures. Also in that londe be places delectable, of whom Ouidius and Theodolus doe wryte. In that londe happede a particuler floode, in the tyme of Deucalion beyng prince there, whiche saluede men commenge to hym in schippes, wherefore poetes feyne hym, with Pyrrha his wife, to haue create men of stones. Helladia

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 36. a.

<sup>1</sup> wel] om. Cx.; placed before faste in a., which seems right.

<sup>2</sup> 14, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> toppe, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Appolyn, MS.; Appollyn, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> wendyng, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> þe] a, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> were, Cx. (thrice).

<sup>8</sup> splekked, a. and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> tempore, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So a. and Cx.; his, MS.

<sup>11</sup> of þat lond] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> fille, Cx. (not a.)

<sup>13</sup> portes depengenge, Harl. MS.

De Helladia.

Helladia,<sup>1</sup> a rege Hellene, Deucalionis et Pyrrhæ filio, sic dicta, a quo Græci Hellenes dicti sunt. Ipsa quoque est Attica terra, ab Atthide<sup>2</sup> filia Cranai<sup>3</sup> sic dicta, inter Macedoniam et Achaïam<sup>4</sup> jacet media, a septentrione jungitur Arcadiæ. Ipsa est vera Græcia, cujus duæ sunt partes, Bœotia et Peloponnesus, quarum metropolis est Athenæ,<sup>5</sup> ubi quondam vigeat studium litterarum; nationumque cunctarum<sup>6</sup> ad discendum<sup>7</sup> confluebat copia, quæ tali modo condita fuit. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo.* Ea tempestate qua Ægyptus percussa est plagis sub manu Moysis,<sup>8</sup> quidam Ægyptii<sup>9</sup> timentes<sup>10</sup> Ægyptum perituram egressi sunt.<sup>11</sup> Unde et<sup>12</sup> Cecrops egressus apud Græciam<sup>13</sup> urbem Acten condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. Isto modo secundum Varronem, cum apud Acten urbem subito apparuisset oliva, et aqua alibi repente erupisset, consuluit

<sup>1</sup> *Ellana*, A.; *Ellanda*, C. The MSS. generally omit the aspirate.

<sup>2</sup> *Athis*, MSS.

<sup>3</sup> *Grani*, MSS.

<sup>4</sup> *A. et M.*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Athenas*, MSS.

<sup>6</sup> *et ecclesiarum*, C., which omits *cunctarum* (not D.).

<sup>7</sup> *a discendi*, B. (without sense.)

<sup>8</sup> *Moysi*, MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *Ægyptiorum*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *tunc timentes*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *fugerunt*, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *apud Græciam*] *adveniensque Græciam*, C.D., which have other slight alterations.

made men. Helladia pat londe hap þe name of Hellen<sup>1</sup> þe TREVISA.  
 kyng, pat was Deucaliouns sone, and Pyrrha also. Of þis  
 Hellen þe Grees hatte Hellenes. þis lond hatte Attica  
 also, of Atthis, pat was Cranaus<sup>2</sup> his douȝter; and liep  
 by twene Macedonia and Achaia and ioynep in þe north  
 side to Arcadia. þis londe is verrey Grecia, and hap tweie  
 parties: Beotia<sup>3</sup> is pat oon, and Peloponnesus<sup>4</sup> pat oper.  
 Þe chief citee of þis lond hatte Athene:<sup>5</sup> pere was somtyme  
 a grete studie of lettrure<sup>6</sup> and of clergie, and men of all  
 nacions and londes come pider forto lerne. Athene pat  
 citee was i-bulde in þis manere. *Augustinus de Civitate,*  
*libro octavodecimo.* Pat tyme pat Egipt was i-smyte wiþ  
 God all myȝties wrethe vnder Moyses hond, som seiȝe<sup>7</sup>  
 Egipt schulde be lost, and flowe oute of Egipt in to<sup>8</sup> oper  
 londes. And so Cecrops<sup>9</sup> fleigh<sup>10</sup> out of Egipt into Grecia,  
 and pere he bulde þe citee Atthen, pat was i-cleped after-  
 ward Athene. In þis manere, as Varro<sup>11</sup> seiȝ, an olyue  
 was sodeynliche i-seie in pat citee Atthen, and a water brak  
 oute sodeynliche in anoþer place. Þanne Cecrops axede

toke the name of hit of Hellen,<sup>12</sup> son of Deucalion and of MS. HARL.  
 Pyrra, of whome Grekes be callede Elenas. That is the londe 2261.  
 callede Attica, of Atthis, doȝhter of Graius, lyenge betwene  
 Macedony and Achaia, as in the myddes, ioynede to Arcadia  
 in the northe: that is verrey Grece, of whom be ij. partes,  
 Beotia<sup>3</sup> and Peloponense, the chiefe cite of whom is Athenas,  
 where study was somme tyme multiplycate, to whiche cite  
 grete multitude of peple made confluence for cause of eru-  
 dicion from diuerse regiones. *Augustinus, De civitate Dei,*  
*libro octavodecimo.* Somme Egypciannes dredenge Egipte  
 to peresche in that grete tempeste, what tyme hit was gre-  
 vede with mony diseases vnder the powere of Moises, wente  
 furthe from hit. Wherefore Cecrops, goen furthe to Grece,  
 made a cite, namenge hit Athen, whiche was callede after  
 Athenas. After Varro, hit was made in this maner, when  
 at that city callede Athen an oliue apperede sodenly, and  
 the water brake vp also sodenly in an other place, Cecrops

<sup>1</sup> Ellena, MS., a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Gramys, MS., a.; Grauius, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Boecia, MSS. (as usual).

<sup>4</sup> Pelopenensis, MS.

<sup>5</sup> Athenes, Cx., and so below.

<sup>6</sup> lecture, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> som Egipcians dredde lest, a.;  
 somme Egypciens dradde leste, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> in to] to, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Sicrops, MS.; Cicrops and Sy-  
 crops below. Similarly the rest,  
 nearly.

<sup>10</sup> fledde, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So Cx.; Pharro, MS., and a.

<sup>12</sup> Ellanda, Harl. MS.

Cecrops Apollinem<sup>1</sup> Delphicum in<sup>2</sup> monte Parnasso, quid de hac re foret accitandum.<sup>3</sup> Ille respondit quod olivæ deam Minervam significaret, unda vero<sup>4</sup> Neptunum. Et quod esset<sup>5</sup> in civium potestate ex cuius nomine duorum deorum civitatem vellent denominare.<sup>6</sup> Hinc cives omnes utriusque sexus conveniunt, sicut mos erat tunc, ita fœminas sicut mares publicis consultationibus interesse; mares igitur pro Neptuno, fœminæ<sup>7</sup> pro Minerva tulerunt sententiam. Et quia una plus inventa est fœminarum quam virorum<sup>8</sup> vicit Minerva, ita ut civitas nomine ejus vocaretur Athenæ. Nam<sup>9</sup> Minerva Græce dicitur Athena.<sup>10</sup> Tunc Neptunus iratus terras Atheniensium marinis fluctibus operuit, quod non est difficile dæmonibus facere. Cujus ut iracundia facilius placaretur, fœminæ dupliciter sunt afflictæ; ita ut nulla deinceps fœminarum publicis consultationibus interesset,

<sup>1</sup> *misit rex Cecrops ad Ap., D.*

<sup>2</sup> *in] de, A.*

<sup>3</sup> *Sic A.E.; accidendum, B.; agendum, C.D.*

<sup>4</sup> *vero* added from C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *esset* after *potestate* in B.

<sup>6</sup> *Et quod . . . denominare]* In C. thus: "Tunc facta est dissensio in

"civitate ex cuius nomine duorum

"deorum civitas potius vocaretur."

D. agrees with C. in the last three words only.

<sup>7</sup> B. adds *vero*.

<sup>8</sup> *quam virorum]* om. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Nam]* om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *Nam . . . Athena]* om. C.D.



counsaille of Appolyn<sup>1</sup> Delphicus, pat maumet, in þe hil mount Parnassus, and axede what þese þinges schulde be to menyng;<sup>2</sup> and he answerde and seide þat þe olyue bytokened þe Goddes Minerua<sup>3</sup> and þe water bytokened Neptunus; and seide þat it was in power and choys of þe citeceyns after wheþer of þe tweie goddes þe citee schulde hote.<sup>4</sup> Þerfore þe citee,<sup>5</sup> þoþe men and wommen [gadred hem to gyders, as it was the manere that tyme; that bothe men and wymmen]<sup>6</sup> schulde come to comoun counsaile; þanne in þat counsaile<sup>7</sup> men ȝaf þe dome for Neptunus and wommen for Minerua; and for þere was o<sup>8</sup> womman more<sup>9</sup> þan were men, Minerua hadde þe maistrie, and þe citee was i-cleped by here name Athene;<sup>10</sup> for Minerua in þe speche of Grewe hatte Athena. Þan was Neptunus wood wroop,<sup>11</sup> and made þe flodes of þe see arise<sup>12</sup> and ouerflowe and hele þe londes of þe men of þat citee Athena,<sup>13</sup> as deueles mowe liȝtliche doo suche chekkes. Þan for to plese Neptunus and for to abathe his wreppe and his anger wommen were i-punsched with double payne; þat oon was þat no womman schulde aftirward come

TREVISA.

takenge cownselle of Apollo Delphicus what scholde be doen in that matere, he ȝafe an ansuere that the oliue signifiede that goddesse Minerua and the water Neptunus, and that cause was after the name of whom of theyme the cite scholde have name. Then the cite synnes of either kynde were gedrede to gedre as the consuetude was in that tyme women to be at cownselles amonge the men. The women ȝafe sentence for Minerua, and men for Neptunus, and for cause the nowmbre was moore in women then in men by oon person, Minerua hade the victory, in so moche that the cite scholde be namede aftere here Athena, for Minerva in Grewe is callede Athena. Then Neptunus beenge wrothe, couerede the growndes of men of Atheynes with waters, whiche thyng is not harde to deuelles to performe and to do. The women of whiche cite were afflicte in ij. maneres, that Neptunus myȝhte rather take pleasure, soe that a woman scholde not be at cownesailes afterwarde,

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> So MS. Trevisa seems to have considered this the nominative of *Apollinis*.

<sup>2</sup> *mene*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Mynerua*, MS.; but *Minerua* below.

<sup>4</sup> *hoote*, *a.*

<sup>5</sup> *citezeins*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Words in brackets added from Cx. They are absent from *a.*

<sup>7</sup> *þanne . . . counsaile*] Added from *a.*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *one*, Cx. (not *a.*)

<sup>9</sup> *moo*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *Attene*, MS., and so below.

<sup>11</sup> *wroth wode*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *tarise* (i. e. *to arise*), Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *londes of them of Athenes*, Cx.

et ut nullus nascentium maternum nomen contraheret.<sup>1</sup> Huic provinciae Helladiae subjacet Hellespontus, sinus maris magni,<sup>2</sup> sic dictus ab Helle sorore Phrixi, quae fugiens insidias novercales submersa est in illo mari, à quo casu mare et terra adjacens denominationem accepit. Juxta quem locum dicit Varro aliquos esse homines quorum tactus et saliva medentur contra ictus serpentum. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Primi Athenienses lanificii, vini, et olei usum habuerunt; arare, serere, glandibusque<sup>3</sup> vesci docuerunt; literis, facundia civili, disciplina primo floruerunt. Cujus primus rex fuit Cecrops, post quem Cranus seu Cranaus,<sup>4</sup> cujus filius Atthis nomen regioni dedit. Post quem Amphictyon,<sup>5</sup> cujus tempore factum est diluvium in Thessalia. Deinde successive regnum descendit ad Ericthonium, post quem Ægeus,<sup>6</sup> post quem Theseus filius ejus, deinde Demo-

<sup>1</sup> *traheret*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *maris magni*.] C.D. end the section here, beginning the next sentence with, *Bæotia, a bove, &c.*, and omitting Isidore's name as the source of the information.

<sup>3</sup> A.B. omit *que*.

<sup>4</sup> Both words are written with a G in the MSS. In Trevisa they vary. Here and elsewhere it is impossible to deal with proper names

in any manner satisfactorily. To correct the orthography in such authors as Higden and his translators is to re-write them. The MSS. of the text, however, have been more freely corrected than those of the versions.

<sup>5</sup> *Amphigionides*, A.E. *Alphigeonides*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *post quem Ægeus*] om. B.

to<sup>1</sup> comyn counseil, pat oþer payne was pat no childe schulde TREVISA.  
 aftirward bere his moder<sup>2</sup> name. To pat prouince Helladia  
 lyep<sup>3</sup> Hellespontus, pat greet mouth of<sup>4</sup> þe grete see, and  
 hap þe name of Helle, Phrixus<sup>5</sup> his suster, pat fleiz<sup>6</sup> þe  
 malice and pursuet<sup>7</sup> of here stepdame, and was adraynt<sup>8</sup> in  
 pat mouth and see; and for pat hap þe<sup>9</sup> see and þe lond aboute  
 hatte after Helle Hellespontus. Varro<sup>10</sup> seip pat faste bysides  
 pat place beep men pat helep smytyng of serpentis wip  
 touche or<sup>11</sup> wip spotel. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Athenienses,  
 men of Athene, vsed first craft of wolles and<sup>12</sup> of wyn and of  
 oylle, and tauzte eryl<sup>13</sup> and sowe and ete acharnis;<sup>14</sup> þei  
 rished first in lore of clergie and of lawe. Þe firste kyng of  
 pat lond hiȝte Cecrops, after hym come Granus pat heet  
 Cranaus also; þan his sone Atthis ȝaf his name to þe lond  
 and cleped it after hymself Atheniensis. Þan after Atthis  
 regned Amphigionides.<sup>15</sup> In his tyme was þe grete flood in  
 Thessalia. Þanne aftirwarde the kyngdom discendede to Erich-  
 thonius.<sup>16</sup> After hym regnede Egeus, and after hym his sone  
 Theseus; pat Theseus sone Demophon,<sup>17</sup> he halp<sup>18</sup> þe Grees

and also that theire childer scholde not take name in eny MS. HARL.  
 wyse after theyme. Hellespontus, bosom of the grete see, 2261.  
 is subiecte to the prouince of Helladia, takenge the name  
 of hit of Helle sustyr to Phrixus,<sup>5</sup> whiche fleenge the waches  
 of here steppe moder, was drownede in that see, by whiche  
 chaunce that londe and see adiecte to hit toke hit name.  
 Nye to whiche place Varro seythe there be men the towche  
 or spatelle of whom is medicinable ageyne serpentis and  
 styngenge of theyme. *Trogus, libro secundo.* Men of  
 Atheynes began firste the vse of wyne and oyle, techenge to  
 eiere and sawe, and floreschenge fyrste with ciuile discipline,  
 the firste kyng of whom was Cecrops, after whom Graius,  
 other Granaus, Atthis the son of whom ȝafe name to that  
 region. After whom Amphigionides, in whose tyme was a  
 floode in Thessalia. After that the realme descendede  
 successiuely to Erichthonius. Then reignede Egeus. After  
 whom Theseus his sonne. After that the son of Demophon,  
 f. 35. b.

<sup>1</sup> in, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> moders, Cx. (not a.)<sup>3</sup> lyeb] Added from Cx. (lyeth).<sup>4</sup> Four words added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> Frixus, MSS. of both versions.<sup>6</sup> fledde, Cx.<sup>7</sup> þe pursuyt, a.<sup>8</sup> drowned, Cx.<sup>9</sup> pat, a.<sup>10</sup> So Cx.; Barro, MS., a.<sup>11</sup> and, a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> and] om. a.<sup>13</sup> to eere, Cx.<sup>14</sup> acornes, Cx.<sup>15</sup> So MSS. of both versions, for  
Amphictyon.<sup>16</sup> Euritonus, MS.; Erictonius, a.  
and Cx.<sup>17</sup> So Cx.; Demoson, MSS. of both  
versions.<sup>18</sup> helpe, Cx.

phon ejus filius, qui Græcis opem tulit contra Trojanos.

De Bæotia. *Isidorus, libro nonodecimo.*<sup>1</sup> Bæotia a bove denominata est; dum<sup>2</sup> enim Cadmus filius Agenoris Europam sororem suam a Jove raptam ex præcepto patris quæreret, nec reperiret;<sup>3</sup> patris iram formidans confirmato animo exilium elegit,<sup>4</sup> et dum casu bovis conspectæ<sup>5</sup> sequeretur vestigium, locum ubi bos decubuit Bæotiam nominavit.<sup>6</sup> Ubi et<sup>7</sup> postmodum Thebas construxit: in qua olim bella civilia detonuerunt.<sup>8</sup> Ibique nati sunt Apollo et Hercules ille major Thebanus. In hac terra est lacus quidam furialis, de quo qui biberit furore libidinis inardescet.<sup>9</sup> Sunt et alii duo fontes, quorum unus memoriam, alter oblivionem inducit. *Petrus, xvj<sup>o</sup>.* Et nota quod a Thebis Ægyptiorum dicuntur Thebæi, a Thebis Græcorum Thebani, a Thebis Judæorum<sup>10</sup> Thebitæ.

<sup>1</sup> 9, B. ; 14, A., but altered to 18.

The true reference is to lib. xiv. c.

4. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> *dum*] cum, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *nec reperiret*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *petit*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *conspectæ*] conspecti, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *denominavit*, B.D.

<sup>7</sup> *ibique*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *detenuerunt*, B.D.

<sup>9</sup> *inardescit*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Indorum*, B.

aʒenst þe Troians. Beotia, oxe-lond, hap þe name of *bos*, þat TREvisa.  
 is *an oxe*. Whan Cadmus, Agenores sone, at his fader<sup>1</sup>  
 heste souʒt his suster Europa, þat Iupiter hadde i-rauished,  
 and myʒte nouʒt here fynde, he dradde his fader wrathe,  
 and<sup>2</sup> koupe non oper reed but fleiʒ<sup>3</sup> as an outlawe; hit  
 happed<sup>4</sup> þat he folwed þe fore<sup>5</sup> of an oxe, and fonde þe  
 place þat þe oxe lay inne, and cleped it Beotia, and bulde  
 pere þe citee Thebe, in<sup>6</sup> þat citee bella civilia detounuerunt.<sup>7</sup>  
 And pere was Apollo<sup>8</sup> i-bore and Hercules,<sup>9</sup> in þilke more The-  
 banus also.<sup>10</sup> In þat lond is a lake wonderful and wood, for who  
 þat drynkep þerof he<sup>11</sup> schal brenne in woodnesse of leccherie.  
 Pere beep also tweie welles in þat lond; who þat drynkep  
 of þat oon, he schal be forʒetful; and who þat drinketh of  
 þat oper, he schal haue good mynde. *Petrus*. Take hede  
 þat men of Thebe, þat is in Egipt, hatte Thebey; men of  
 Thebe, þat is in Grecia, hat Thebany; and þe men of Thebe,  
 þat is in Iudea, hatte Thebite.<sup>12</sup>

whiche schewede helpe to Grekes ageyne the Troianes. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 Boetia toke name of this worde, *bos*. When Cadmus, son  
 Agenoris, sekenge Europa his sustyr, by commaundemente  
 of his fader, whiche was rapte by Iupiter,<sup>13</sup> whiche not fynd-  
 enge here, dredenge also the wrathe of his fader, chosede  
 to lyve in exile, whiche folowenge the stappes of an ox,  
 namede that place Boetia, where the oxe did lye downe and  
 dye, where he made a cite called Thebas, in whom they  
 did holde somme tymes ciuile batayles, where Apollo and  
 Hercules were borne. In that prouince is a water of whom  
 if a man drynke he schalle be inflamed with woodenesse of  
 lecchery. There be oper ij. welles also, of whom oon in-  
 ducethe memory, that other obliuion.

<sup>1</sup> *faders*, Cx. (who often has simi-  
 lar variations).

<sup>2</sup> *he conthe, a.; he coude*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *fledde*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *hapned*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *foote*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *in*] Added from Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *detenuerunt*, MS. (not *a.* or Cx.)

<sup>8</sup> *Appollo*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *Ercules*, MS.

<sup>10</sup> Probably *in* before *þilke* should  
 be cancelled; or Trevisa may have  
 misunderstood the text.

<sup>11</sup> *he*] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> The sentence is slightly com-  
 pressed in Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *Iubiter*, Harl. MS.



## CAP. XXIII.

*De Italia.*

Italia  
diversa  
habet  
nomina.<sup>1</sup>

*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*<sup>2</sup> Legitur in historiis quod<sup>3</sup> Italia, à Græcis quondam<sup>4</sup> occupata, Magna Græcia dicebatur. Dicta<sup>5</sup> est etiam Hesperia, ab Hespero<sup>6</sup> stella, qui dīrexit<sup>7</sup> Græcos illuc<sup>8</sup> navigantes. Deinde a Saturno eam incolente dicta est Saturnia; sed et<sup>9</sup> ab eodem, propter metum filii sui Jovis ibidem latitante, dicta est Latium, quasi a latebra Saturni.<sup>10</sup> Postmodum<sup>11</sup> ab Ausonio<sup>12</sup> filio Ulixis dicta est Ausonia. Tandem ab Italo Siculorum rege dicta est Italia, totius Europæ insignior provincia, quæ ab aquilone clauditur sinu Adriatico, ab ortu mari magno,<sup>13</sup> ab euro Sicilia et mare Tyrrheno, ab occasu Alpium jugis, ex quibus<sup>14</sup> oriuntur tria nobilissima Europæ flumina, Rhenus, Danubius, Rhodanus.<sup>15</sup> *Isidorus, libro*

<sup>1</sup> Marginal summary varied slightly from A.

<sup>2</sup> *nono*, E., wrongly. See lib. xiv. c. iv. § 18.

<sup>3</sup> *Legitur . . . quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *quondam* after *Italia* in B.

<sup>5</sup> *Et dicta*, B.

<sup>6</sup> So B. *Hespera*, A.C.D.E. and the versions, (having *quæ* below).

<sup>7</sup> *ducebat*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *ibidem*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *et*] etiam, A.

<sup>10</sup> *Deinde . . . Saturni*] Much abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *post hæc*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Ausonio*] Anselmo, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *magno mari*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *quibus*] quo, C.

<sup>15</sup> *et Rhodanus*, B.

*Capitulum vicesimum tertium.*  
*Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.*

TREVISA.

WE redeþ in stories þat Grees<sup>1</sup> wonede somtyme in<sup>2</sup> Italia,<sup>3</sup> an cleped þe lond þe Grete Grecia; þat lond hiȝte somtyme Hesperia, of Hespera, þe sterre þat ladde þe Grees whan þey seilled pider, and was her loode sterre, Hespera,<sup>4</sup> þat is Venus. Afterward þat lond hiȝte Saturnia of Saturnus þat wonede þere, for<sup>5</sup> Saturnus hid hymself<sup>6</sup> in þat lond for drede of his owne sone Iupiter, and cleped þe lond Latium, þat is Saturnus huydels.<sup>7</sup> After þat þat lond hiȝte Ausonia of Ausonius,<sup>8</sup> Vlixus sone; but at þe laste þat lond hiȝte Italia of Italus, rege Siculorum, kyng of Sicilia,<sup>9</sup> and is þe noblest prouince of al Europa, and is i-closed in þe norþ side wiþ þe mouþ and see þat hatte Adriaticus, in þe est wiþ þe grete see, in þe soup wiþ Sicilia, and wiþ þe see Tyrrhenus, and in þe west wiþ þe sides of þe hilles þat hatte Alpes.<sup>10</sup> Out of pilke hil[les]<sup>11</sup> springeþ þre þe noblest ryueres of al Europa, þat beep i-cleped þe Ryne,<sup>12</sup> Danubius, and Rone. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.*

*Capitulum vicesimum tertium.*

Hyt is redde in storyes that Ytaly somme tyme occupyede MS. HARL. 2261.  
of the Grekes, was callede the grete londe off Grece. Also hit was callede Hespera, after a sterre callede Hespera, whiche directe the Grekes saylunge to hit. After that hit was namede Saturnia of Saturnus inhabitenge hit, afterwarde callede Latium, for the drede of Iouis his son lyenge there priuely; whiche was callede afterwarde Ausonia, of Ausonius son of Vlixes. Afterwarde hit was namede Ytaly of Ytalus kyng of Siculynes, the moste nowble prouince of alle Europe, whiche is schutte on the northe parte to hit with the see Adriatike, on the este with the grete see, of the sowthe with Sicille and with the see Tyrene. From whom iij. nowble and famos floodes of Europe take theire originalle, whiche be callede Renus, Danubius, and Rodanus. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.* In this prouince is

<sup>1</sup> Grekes, Cx. (as usual).

<sup>2</sup> in] om. MS.

<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Hesperia*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *Helpera*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>5</sup> for] So Cx.; but þe, MS., a.

<sup>6</sup> Cx. adds there.

<sup>7</sup> huydes, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Eusonia*, *Eusonius*, MS., a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Scicilia*, MS., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> The previous sentence is much blundered in Cx.

<sup>11</sup> hilles, a.; *hylles*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> ryuer, Cx.

*tertio decimo.* In hac Italia est fons Cithæronis,<sup>1</sup> oculorum vulnera curans. Est et in ea Clitorius lacus, ex quo bibens<sup>2</sup> vini<sup>3</sup> tædium habebit. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo centesimo sexto.*<sup>4</sup> Juxta Alpes Appenninos fluvius Novanus<sup>5</sup> est, qui circa<sup>6</sup> solstitium æstivale torret et inundat, circa brumam vero<sup>7</sup> desiccatur. *Paulus, libro secundo.*<sup>8</sup> Hujus Italiæ plures sunt provinciæ, quæ sunt<sup>9</sup> Calabria, Apulia, Campania, Beneventana, Tuscia, Herulia, Liguria, Lombardia.<sup>10</sup>

De Apulia. Apulia pars est Italiæ maritima ad eorum situata,<sup>11</sup> ab insula Siciliæ marino brachio separata, a Græcis primitus ædificata, cujus metropolis est Brundisium, sic dicta a *brunta*,<sup>12</sup> Græce, quod est, *caput cervi*, eo quod formam capitis cervini in suifiguratione teneat,<sup>13</sup> inde versus Terram Sanctam, ut communiter navigatur. Habet quoque hæc terra fontes calidos et salubres.

De Campania major et minore.

Campania major est regio, media inter Romanum territorium et Apuliam, cujus metropolis civitas est Capua, a capacitate sufficientiæ sic dicta. Post duas famosissimas civitates, Romam<sup>14</sup> et Carthaginem, tertia

<sup>1</sup> *Othonis*, B.; *Cithæronis*, E.; *Cithar*, C. In Isidore (xiii. 13) we have *Ciceron*. Perhaps *Cithæron* in Attica may be intended by him as well as by Higden.

<sup>2</sup> *bibens*] qui bibit, C.; qui *biberit*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *vix*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *libro* 1<sup>o</sup>. c. 108, B.; *li.* 2. c. 96, A. The text is correct.

<sup>5</sup> *Novacius*, B., and the versions, wrongly.

<sup>6</sup> *circa*] *citra*, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *primo*, B., wrongly. See lib. ii. c. 15.

<sup>9</sup> *quæ sunt*] scilicet, D.E.

<sup>10</sup> *Lumbardia*, MSS., Latin and English; Trevisa once writes it Lombardia.

<sup>11</sup> *desituata*, A.

<sup>12</sup> The Messapian word was probably *βρένδορ*. See Smith's *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.*, s.v.

<sup>13</sup> *tenet*, A.

<sup>14</sup> B. adds *scilicet*.

In pis Italia is Cithero his welle, pat helep wel sore eizen. TREVISA.  
 Pere is also pe lake Clitorius ; who pat drynkep of pat lake,  
 no wyne schal hym greue. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo*  
*decimo.*<sup>1</sup> Faste by pe hilles pat hatte Alpes Appennini is  
 pat welle Novacius, pat wellep and springep in pe hote somer  
 and drye, and fordriep in colde wynter and wete. *Trevisa.*  
 Alpes Appennini pat beep Penitus his hilles. Hanibal was  
 a grete duke and hizte Penitus also, and wente by Alpes to  
 Rome ; perfore of pe tweie names Alpes and Penitus is pat oon  
 name schortliche i-made Appennini,<sup>2</sup> and so beep meny lettres  
 i-left of pe tweyne. *Paulus, libro secundo.* In pis Italia  
 beep many prouinces and londes, pat beep cleped Calabria,  
 Apulia, Campania, Beneuentana, Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria,  
 Lombardia. Apulia is a party of Italia, and liep estward  
 vppon pe see, and is departed from pe ilond Sicilia wip an  
 arme of pe see. Grees were pe firste pat bulde perynne ;  
 pe chief citee perof is Brundusium, and hap pe name of  
 pa[t]<sup>3</sup> worde of Grew *brunta*, pat is, *an hertes hede*, for pe  
 citee is i-schape as an hertes hede. Fro pennes me<sup>4</sup> seillep  
 to pe Holy Lond. In pis lond Apulia beep hote welles  
 and holsom. Pe more Campania is a lond in pe myddel  
 bitwene pe demeynnes of Rome and Apulia ; pe cheef cite  
 perof is Capua, and hap pe name of *Capacitas*, pat is,  
*ableness* to fonge and to take. For pat citee fongep and  
 takep i-now of all plente, and is accounted<sup>5</sup> pe pridde citee

the welle of Cithonis heallenge the woundes of eien. MS. HARL.  
2261.  
*Isidorus libro tertio decimo.* Also there is a welle callede  
 Novacius nye to the hilles of Alpes, whiche floethe ouer with  
 watere abowte the solstice of somer, and is drye in wynter.  
*Paulus, libro secundo.* There be mony prouinces of this  
 Ytaly, whiche be Calabria, Apulia, Campaniia, Beneuentana,  
 Tuscia, Emilia, Liguria, Lombardia. Apulia is a coste of  
 the see of Ytaly, sette at the sowthe of hit, departed from  
 Sicille by an arme of the see, byldede and edifiede firste by  
 Grekes. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Brundusium,  
 takenge the name of hit of this worde *brunda* in Grewe,  
 pat is *the hede of an herte*, in that hit holdethe in the  
 figuracion of hit the similitude of the hede of an herte.  
 Campania is a moore region betwene the territory of Rome  
 and Apulia. The chiefe cite of whom is callede Capua,  
 namede so of the capacite of sufficiiaunce, callede the thrydde

<sup>1</sup> *octodecimo* (sic), Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So *a.* and Cx. ; *Appentimii*, MS.  
 In many proper names below, *a.*, or  
 Cx., or both, give the true form.  
 which is edited without noticing MS.

<sup>3</sup> *pat*, *a.*

<sup>4</sup> *me*] So *a.* ; *ne*, MS. ; *men*, Cx.  
 (as usual).

<sup>5</sup> *counted*, Cx.

nominata. In qua terra sunt Neapolis et Puteoli<sup>1</sup> urbes famosæ, ubi balnea Virgilii quondam in honore habebantur. Sed est alia<sup>2</sup> Campania Minor in Gallia Senonensi,<sup>3</sup> ejus metropolis est urbs Trecas, seu Trecensis.<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*. Hæc autem Italia a variis vicissim possessa est gentibus, utpote a Græcis, a Jano,<sup>5</sup> a Saturno, ab Italo, ab Ænea et ejus posteris. Post hæc a Gallis Senonensibus sub duce Brenno, deinde circa annum gratiæ cccc<sup>um</sup> <sup>6</sup> occupata est a Gothis, Hunis, Vandalis,<sup>7</sup> postremo a Longobardis sub anno Domini dlxviii<sup>o</sup>, tempore Justini principis per Narsem chartularium invitatis,<sup>8</sup> a quorum nomine citerior<sup>9</sup> pars Italiæ ab Alpibus pene<sup>10</sup> usque<sup>11</sup> ad urbem Romam adhuc<sup>12</sup> Lombardia<sup>13</sup> nominatur.<sup>14</sup> *Ranulphus*. De Longobardorum<sup>15</sup> ortu et progressu Paulus Romanus diaconus, in primo libro historiarum Longobardorum,<sup>16</sup> refert in hunc modum.

<sup>1</sup> *Puteolus*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Sed est alia*] omitted in E.

<sup>3</sup> *Senonensi*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> C.D. omit the whole of the paragraph relating to Apulia and Calabria; i.e. from *Apulia pars est . . . Trecas, seu Trecensis*. For *Trecas* Higden should rather have written *Tricassium*. See Smith, *Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr.*, s. v. *Tricasses*.

<sup>5</sup> For *a Jano*, C. (not D.) has *Mercurio*.

<sup>6</sup> *circa annum Domini 100*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *a Gothis, deinde a Wandalis*, C.; *Hunis et Wandalis*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *invitatis*] *veritatis* (sic !), C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *exterior*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *pene*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *usque*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *adhuc*] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> *Lumbardia*, MSS.

<sup>14</sup> *nominatur*] *dicitur*, C.

<sup>15</sup> D. adds *autem*.

<sup>16</sup> C. adds *autem* after *Longobardorum*.



after þe most famous citees Rome and Carthago. In TREVIS.  
 pat lond beþ noble citees and famous Neopolis and  
 Puteoli.<sup>1</sup> Þere beþ Virgiles bathas<sup>2</sup> pat were somtyme  
 in greet worschipe. But þere is anoþer lasse Campania  
 in Gallia Senonensi,<sup>3</sup> pat is Frauns, þe chief citee of  
 pat Campania hatte Trecas and Trecensis also, pat is  
 Troys<sup>4</sup> in Champayn. R.<sup>5</sup> In þis Italia were somtyme  
 dyuers lordes euerich after oþer pat were Grees, Ianus,  
 Saturnus, Italus, Eneas and his osprunge.<sup>6</sup> And after-  
 ward Galli Senonenses, pat beþ Frensche men, vnder  
 duke Brennus. þan aftirward, aboute þe 3ere of grace  
 fyue hondred þre score and eiȝte, in to þe<sup>7</sup> princes tyme  
 Iustinus, Narsen<sup>8</sup> Cartularius prayed Longobardy for to come  
 in to Italia; and of þe Longobardy, for to come in to<sup>9</sup> þis  
 day, þe hider side of Italia from Alpes wel nygh to Rome  
 hatte Lombardia.<sup>10</sup> How Longobardy come a place<sup>11</sup> Paulus<sup>12</sup>  
 Romanus diaconus in primo libro historie Longobardorum<sup>13</sup>

nowble cite to Rome and to Carthago. In whiche londe be MS. HARL.  
 cites callede Neapolis and Puteoli, where the bathes of 2261.  
 Virgille were hade somme tyme in worschipe. There is  
 also an oþer Campania more litel, the chiefe cite of whom  
 is callede Cretas or the cite Cretense.<sup>14</sup> R. That cuntre of  
 Ytaly hathe be possessede of diuerse peple and naciones, as  
 of Grekes, of Iano, [of] Saturno, of Ytalo, and of Enea. After  
 that of Frenche men Senonense vnder Duke Brennus.  
 Also hit was occupiede of Gothis, Hunes, and Wandalynges  
 abowte the yere of our Lorde cccc. and laste occupyede  
 off Longobardes, abowte the year of oure Lorde vclxviij.,  
 in the tyme of Iustinian prynce, of the name of whom  
 the farther parte of Ytaly from Alpes alle moste to the  
 cite of Rome is named ȝitte Lumbardy. Of the begynnenge  
 of Longobardes, and of the progresse of theym, Paulus  
 Diacon of Rome rehersethe in his firste boke of the story of

<sup>1</sup> Puteolis, MSS. of both versions, and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *bupes*, a., Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Senocenci*, MS. and a.; but correctly below.

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *Tros*, MS., a.

<sup>5</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *offsprynge*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *in pe*, a.

<sup>8</sup> *Narsen*] This is not a clerical error, but one of many proofs of the slovenliness of Trevisa, who did not care to discover the nominative of the word. Below, where the text

has the nominative, he has written it correctly.

<sup>9</sup> *for to come in to*] yet to, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> The preceding sentence is much blundered in Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *a place*] to that name, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *Poulus*, MS. (not a.)

<sup>13</sup> *Longobardi*, MS.; abbreviated in a.

<sup>14</sup> The similarity of *c* and *t* in MSS. has misled the translator, who probably had no notion where the place was.

De Wyn-  
nulis et  
Longo-  
bardis.

Wynnuli,<sup>1</sup> qui et Longobardi, a longis barbis quas fovebant sic dicti, de aquilonali<sup>2</sup> insula Germaniæ Scandinavia sorte primitus sunt egressi sub ducibus Ibor<sup>3</sup> et Ajone<sup>4</sup> cum matre eorum Gambara prudentissima. Hæc autem Scandinavia dicta est insula non quod in mari sit,<sup>5</sup> sed quia in planitie marginum<sup>6</sup> undis jugiter circumlambitur.<sup>7</sup> Inde Winnuli<sup>8</sup> Scoringam regionem<sup>9</sup> sunt aggressi, ubi et Wandalos devicerunt. Mortuis<sup>10</sup> autem Ibor et Ajone, constituerunt sibi regem<sup>11</sup> Agelmundum,<sup>12</sup> filium Ajonis, qui<sup>13</sup> regnavit super eos triginta tribus annis, cujus diebus meretrix quædam enixa est unico partu septem liberos, sicut inferius<sup>14</sup> dicetur; quorum unus, Lamissio<sup>15</sup> nomine, postquam Agelmundus rex nimia securitate<sup>16</sup> torpens a Bulgaris nocte fuerat<sup>17</sup> occisus, regnum<sup>21</sup> super Longobardos secundus tenuit. Post quem tertius Lethen quadraginta<sup>19</sup> annis<sup>20</sup> regnavit. Post quem quartus Hildehok.<sup>21</sup> Post quem quintus Gudehok<sup>22</sup> tempore Odoacris Italici<sup>23</sup> regnavit, qui gentem suam<sup>24</sup> ad terram Rugorum duxit. Post quem sextus Claffo.<sup>25</sup> Post quem septimus Cato, quem<sup>26</sup> Waco<sup>27</sup> filius germani sui occidit, filiumque Catonis<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wynnuli] Winuli, A.D.; Wintili, C., which adds *igitur*, as does D.

<sup>2</sup> aquilonari, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> Ibo, B.E.; Ybor, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> Arione, E.

<sup>5</sup> sita, D.

<sup>6</sup> marinis, B.

<sup>7</sup> circumlambitur] circumlabitur, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> Winnuli] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> regionem] provinciam, C.

<sup>10</sup> Mortuo, D.

<sup>11</sup> B.C.D. add *primum*.

<sup>12</sup> Agilmundum, A., and so below.

<sup>13</sup> qui] et, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> infra, D.

<sup>15</sup> Lassimio, D. The text is right. See Paul. *Hist. Long.*, lib. i. c. 17.

<sup>16</sup> satietate, C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> fuerat] est, C.D.; a Vulgaris voce fuerat, E

<sup>18</sup> regnum] qui regnum, C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> quatuordecim, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> The sense requires *annos*. But here and twice below all the MSS. have *annis*.

<sup>21</sup> Hildehoc, B.C.

<sup>22</sup> Gudehoc, C.; Undehoc, B.

<sup>23</sup> Italici] om. C.D.

<sup>24</sup> suam] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>25</sup> Classo, C.

<sup>26</sup> quem] post quem, E.

<sup>27</sup> Wacho, A.

<sup>28</sup> Catonis] ejus Catonis, C.D.

seip in pis manere : Winuli, pat hatte Longobardi also, and TREVISA.  
 haueþ the name of her longe berdes, went wiþ twcie dukes,  
 Ibor and Aion, and here moder Gambara, pat was ful redy  
 and wys, out of Scandinauia, an ylund of Germania in þe  
 norþ side. Pis Scandinauia is i-cleped an ilond, not for  
 he is in þe see, but for in þe pleyne of þe brinkes he is  
 alwey i-wasche wiþ waves. Out pereof went Winuli and  
 werred in Scoringa<sup>1</sup> and ouer com þe Wandales; þan  
 deied þe Wandales, Iborn and Aion, and þei made hem a  
 kyng Agelmundus, Aions sone, þe whiche reigned ouer  
 hem pritty 3ere and þre. In his tyme an hore<sup>2</sup> hadde  
 seuene children at oon birþen, as it is ynnere more clere-  
 liche i-schewed. Oon of hem, pat hi3te Lauissius was þe  
 secounde kyng of Longobardes, and regned after Agelmundus,  
 whanne<sup>3</sup> Agelmundus þe kyng was to bolde on his trist,<sup>4</sup> and  
 þe Bulgaris com vpon hym in a ny3t and slowe hym stan-  
 deed.<sup>5</sup> After hym Lethen regned and was [þe þridde]<sup>6</sup> kyng  
 of Longobardes<sup>7</sup> and was<sup>8</sup> regnyng fourty 3ere. After hym  
 Hildehoc<sup>9</sup> regned,<sup>10</sup> after hym þe fift<sup>11</sup> Godehoc regnede  
 in Odoacres tyme, pat was Italicus, and ladde his men to þe  
 lond of Rugorum. After hym þe sixte Claffo. After hym  
 þe seueneþe Cato. Þan<sup>12</sup> Wacho slow Cato and outlawed his  
 sone [for euer more; Wacho was Cato his broþer sonne].<sup>13</sup>

Longobardes, in this maner, Winuli or Longobardes takenge MS. HARL.  
 that name of the longe berdes whom thei noryschede, wente 2261.  
 furthe from the northe partes of Allemeyne under Ibor and  
 Aione the gouernoures of theyme, with prudente Gambara  
 moder to theyme, from Scandinauia.<sup>14</sup> This Scandinauia<sup>14</sup> is  
 callede an yle not in that hit is in the see, but for cause  
 that is compassede abowte with waters in the pleyne of the  
 brynkes of hit. Winuli goenge furthe entrede a region f. 37. b.  
 namede Scoringa, where the Wandalynges were devicte.  
 Ibor and Aione, the dukes and gouernoures of theym dedde,  
 they made Agelmundus kynge, son of Aio, xxxiiij. yere  
 hauenge his gouernaile and reigne ouer theyme. In the  
 tyme of whom a woman hade vij. childer at oon childenge.  
 After whom Lethen reignede xl<sup>ti</sup> yere, after hym Hildehog.  
 After whom Gloffo, after hym Cato. After whom, Waco

<sup>1</sup> *Scormyga*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *hore*] comyn woman, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Agelmundus*, *whanne*] Added  
 from a. and Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *ouen truste*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *standyng*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Added from a.

<sup>7</sup> *the L.*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *regnede*, a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *Hildecoc*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> a. and Cx. om. *regnede*.

<sup>11</sup> So a., Cx.; *firste*, MS.

<sup>12</sup> *that*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *Scandimauia*, Harl. MS. twice.

perpetuo exilio damnavit. Idcirco mortuo Wachone, Waltharicus<sup>1</sup> filius ejus super Longobardos octavus regnavit vij. annis.<sup>2</sup> Post quem nonus Audoenus,<sup>3</sup> qui Longobardos primus<sup>4</sup> in Pannoniam adduxit. Post quem Albuinus filius ejus super Longobardos regnavit decimus,<sup>5</sup> quem cum sua gente invitavit Narses patricius ad possidendam<sup>6</sup> Italiam tempore Justini imperatoris, anno Domini quingentesimo sexagesimo<sup>7</sup> octavo, postquam Longobardi quadraginta duobus annis<sup>8</sup> in Pannonia fuissent demorati.<sup>9</sup> *Ranulphus.* De conquæstu hujus<sup>10</sup> Albuini et exitu mirabili quære infra loco suo, circa annum Domini quingentesimum septuagesimum.<sup>11</sup>

## CAP. XXV.

*De Urbe Roma.*

*Ranulphus.* Auctores tradunt quod in Tuscia, quæ pars est<sup>12</sup> Italiæ, situata est urbs Romana, de cujus<sup>13</sup> fundatione et regimine multa et<sup>14</sup> varia scripserunt auctores, potissime tamen frater Martinus de conditione ejus, magister vero Gregorius de urbis mirabilibus perstrinxit<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Waltaricus*, A.C.D.<sup>2</sup> *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.<sup>3</sup> *Audenus*, B.<sup>4</sup> *primus* before *adduxit* in C.D.<sup>5</sup> So A.B.C.D.; *decimus* before *regnavit* in E.<sup>6</sup> *possidendum*, E.<sup>7</sup> *sexagesimo*] xl., B.<sup>8</sup> *annis*] So A.B.C.D.E.<sup>9</sup> *demorassent*, D.<sup>10</sup> *hujus*] om. A.<sup>11</sup> C. and D. omit this extract from *Ranulphus*.<sup>12</sup> *est pars*, A.<sup>13</sup> *cujus*] civitatis, B.<sup>14</sup> *et*] om. A.<sup>15</sup> *perstrinxit*] *perstrinxerunt*, C.

And so whan Wacho was ded, his sone Waltaricus was þe TREVISA.  
eiȝte kyng of Longobardy,<sup>1</sup> and regned seuen ȝere. After  
hym þe nynþe Audoenus, þat ladde firste þe Longobardes  
in to Pannonia. After hym his sone Albuinus was þe tenþe  
kyng of Longobardy.<sup>2</sup> Narses<sup>3</sup> patricius prayed þis kyng  
Albuinus to come wip his men and haue<sup>4</sup> Italia, þat was in  
Iustinis tyme þe Emperour,<sup>5</sup> þe ȝere of our Lorde fyue  
hondred þre score and eiȝte, and þat was after þat Longo-  
bardis hadde i-woned in Pannonia two and fourty ȝere.  
Of þis Albuinus conquest and of his wonder<sup>6</sup> ende seche  
wipynne<sup>7</sup> in his place, aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord fyue  
hondred þre score and ten.

*De vrbe Romana. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.*

AUCTOURS telleþ and writeþ<sup>8</sup> þat þe citee of Rome is i-  
bulde in Tuscia, þat is a party of Italia. Of þe fundacioun  
þerof and gouernynge auctoures writeþ<sup>9</sup> meny dyuers  
doynge; and specialliche Frater Martinus de conditione  
ejus; Magister<sup>10</sup> vero Gregorius of þe wondres of þe citee

destroyede, Walcarius his son reignede on the Longobardes MS. HARL.  
vij. yere. After whom Audoenus reignede, whiche ledde 2261.  
the Longobardes firste in to Pannony.<sup>11</sup> After whom Albinus  
his son reignede, whiche desirede Narses Patricius to inhabite  
Ytaly, in the tyme of Iustinus themperoure, the yere of  
oure Lorde v<sup>x</sup>lvij<sup>th</sup>, after that Longobardes hade taryede  
in Pannony by xliij<sup>th</sup> yere. Of the conqueste of Albinus, and  
of his meruellous goenge furthe, hit schalle be expressede  
abowte the yere of grace v<sup>c</sup> and lxx<sup>th</sup>.

*Of the Cite of Rome. Capitulum vicesimum quartum.*

AUCTORES expresse that the cite of Rome is sette in  
Tuscia, whiche is a parte of Ytaly, of þe fundacion and  
gouernaile of whom auctoures wryte diuerse thynges, specially  
Martinus, of the makege of hit, but Maister Gregory

<sup>1</sup> Longobardys, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> the Longobardes, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; Narses, MS.

<sup>4</sup> take, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> in Justinus themperours time, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> wonderful, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> within forth, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> writeþ and telleþ, a.; wryten and tellen, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Cx. here, contrary to his custom, has wryte.

<sup>10</sup> de . . . Magister] Added from a.

<sup>11</sup> Ytaly Pannony, MS., but Ytaly erased.



digna memoratu.<sup>1</sup> *Martinus*. Circa locum Romæ plures leguntur regnasse. Nam secundum Estodium,<sup>2</sup> post turrin confusionis constructam,<sup>3</sup> Noe cum aliquibus ratem ingressus Italiam venit; ædificataque urbe nomine<sup>4</sup> sui, ibi<sup>5</sup> vitæ terminum dedit.<sup>6</sup> Janus vero cum Jano filio Japhet nepote suo trans Tiberim Janiculum condidit, ubi<sup>7</sup> modo est ecclesia Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum.<sup>8</sup> Circa illud<sup>9</sup> tempus Nemproth, qui et Saturnus, a Jove filio suo eunuchatus, ad prædicti Jani regnum veniens, urbem, ubi nunc est Capitolium, construxit. Illis quoque diebus rex Italus cum Siculis adveniens<sup>10</sup> ad Janum et Saturnum urbem juxta Albulam fluvium, qui postmodum dictus est Tiberis,<sup>11</sup> construxit. Hercules quoque, filius Itali, fecit urbem<sup>12</sup> Galeriam sub Capitolio. Post hæc rex Tiberis de oriente et rex<sup>13</sup> Evander de Arcadia venerunt et urbes fecerunt, unde Virgilius :

Tunc pater Evander, Romanæ conditor arcis.<sup>14</sup>

Quorum omnium urbes Romulus postmodum in

<sup>1</sup> This extract from *Ranulphus* is likewise partly omitted in C.D., which commence the chapter thus : *In hac insula* (sic) *in principio situatur urbs Roma, de cujus foundatione et regimine, &c., down to memoratu.* For *memoratu* B. has *memorata*.

<sup>2</sup> *Eustodius*, C. (not D.) See *Fabric. Bibl. Med. et Inf. Lat.*, s.v. *Extodius*.

<sup>3</sup> *constructam*] ædificatam, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *nomine*] nominis, B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *ibi*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *dedit*] suscepit, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *ubi . . . Janiculum*] om. E.

<sup>8</sup> C. and D. have *ubi mons est etiam Sancti Johannis ad Janiculum*.

<sup>9</sup> *illud*] idem, B.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *adveniens*] veniens, B.C.

<sup>11</sup> *qui . . . Tiberis*] After *construxit* in C. (not in D.)

<sup>12</sup> *urbem*] civitatem, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *rex*] om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *Virg. Æn.*, viii. 313, where, however, *Tum rex Evandrus* is the common reading.

writen schortliche meny pinges pat beep worpy to be kept in mynde. *Martinus*. It is i-wrote pat many kynges regned aboute pe place of Rome. For Eustodius seip pat after pat tour Babel was i-bulde and men bygonne to speke dyuerse langage and tonges,<sup>1</sup> Noe wip certeyne men took a schip and seilled into Italia, and bulde a citee of his name and ended pere his lyf. Pan Ianus, Iaphet his sone, pat was Noes sone, bulde Ianiculum by zonde pe ryuer Tiberis; pere is now a chereche of Seynt Iohan, pat hatte Seint Iones chirche ad Ianiculum. Aboute pat tyme Nemprot, pat hiȝt Saturnus also, i-gilded<sup>2</sup> of his owne sone Ioue,<sup>3</sup> come to the forsaide Ianus kyngdom, and bulde a citee; pere pe Capytal is now. Also pat tyme Italus pe kyng wip Siculis<sup>4</sup> men of Sicilia come to Ianus and to Saturnus, and bulde a citee faste by pe ryuer Albula; pat ryuer hiȝte afterward and now hatte Tyber, and is a ryuer of Rome. Also Hercules, Italus his sone, bulde a citee Galeria by nepe pe Capitoll. After pat Tiberi[n]us<sup>5</sup> pe kyng com out of pe est, and Euander pe kyng out of Arcadia, and bulde citees. Virgilius accomdep and seip: panne pe fader Euander at Rome was maker of toures. panne afterwarde come Romulus and closed wip ynne oon

TREVISA.

towchethe meny thynges worthy to be hade in remembrance of the meruayles of that cyte. *Martinus*. Mony men be redde to haue reignede in the cyte of Rome. For after Estodius, after the towre of confusion made, Noe takenge a schippe with other men come to Ytaly, whiche makenge a cite there endede his lyfe in hit. Ianus with Iano the son of Iapheth made a cite callede Ianiculus ouer the water of Tiber, where a chirche is nowe callede Sti. Iohannis ad Ianiculum. Abowte that tyme Nemproth, oper wise callede Saturnus, expulsede of Iupiter his son, commenge to the realme of Ianus, made a cite where the chiefe place of the cite is now. In those dayes kyngge Ytalus commenge with Siculynes to Ianus and Saturnus made a cite nye the floode callede Albula, whiche was namede afterwarde Tiber. After that Hercules, the son of Italus, made a cite of Galerius vnder the Capitoly. After that kyngge Tiberis and Euander commenge from Arcadia made that cite of Rome. After that Romulus redacte alle the cites in to oon causenge the

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *tonges and langages*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *whiche was gelded*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Iupiter*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Siculus*, MS.<sup>5</sup> *Tiberis*, Cx.; *Tyberis*, *a.*; *Tyberius*, MS.

unam civitatem muratam redegit,<sup>1</sup> ac nobiliores de Italia cum uxoribus suis inhabitare fecit. *Titus Livius*.<sup>2</sup> Qua urbe tempore paupertatis suæ nullus locus sanctior nec bonis exemplis ditior; sed postmodum divitiæ avaritiam et luxuriam auxerunt. *Martinus*.<sup>3</sup> Roma igitur condita est in monte Palatino a gemellis fratribus Remo et Romulo xj. kalend. Maii, Olympiade vij<sup>a</sup> incipiente, quarto anno Achaz regis Juda,<sup>3</sup> post Trojam captam anno cccc<sup>o</sup>liiij<sup>o</sup>. *Ranulphus*.<sup>4</sup> Sed verius secundum Solinum cccc<sup>o</sup>xxxiiij<sup>o</sup>. *Martinus*.<sup>5</sup> Quæ urbs processu temporis muris, turribus, portis, templis, palatiis, artificiiis<sup>6</sup> mirabiliter insignita.<sup>7</sup> Habuit turre murorum cccxj., in cujus circuitu sunt milliaria viginti duo, præter trans Tiberim et urbem Leoninam, cum quibus dicitur habere in circuitu milliaria quadraginta duo.

<sup>1</sup> *muratam* after *redegit* in B.

<sup>2</sup> Title of both extracts omitted in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So C.; *Judeæ*, B.; *Jude*, D.E.

<sup>4</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> Reference added from A.B.

<sup>6</sup> *artificies*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *insignitur*, C.; *insignitus*, D.

wal alle pilke citees<sup>1</sup> aboute, and made oon grete citee of alle i-closed in oon: and brouȝte gentil men and noble out of Italia wip here wifes for to wone perynne. *Titus, libro secundo.* While pat citee was pore, was no place more holy noȝer richere of good ensample; but afterward richesse gadered and eched to gidres couetise and leccherie.<sup>2</sup> *Marcus.* Tweie brepren pat were twynnes,<sup>3</sup> Remus and Romulus, bulde Rome in þe hul Palatinus, and was i-bulde in þe enleuenþe<sup>4</sup> kalandes of Maij: þo bigan þe seueneþe Olimpiades,<sup>5</sup> pat is þe seueneþe tyme of iustes and torne-mentes pat Grees made at þe foot of mont Olympus, þo<sup>6</sup> was þe firste ȝere of Achaz kyng of Iuda and foure hondred ȝere and foure and fifty after þe takyng of Troye. But more vereiliche, as Solinus seiþ, foure hondred and<sup>7</sup> foure and pritti ȝere after þe takyng of Troye. Þe<sup>8</sup> whiche citee of<sup>9</sup> Rome was afterward wonderliche i-hiȝt wip walles, wip toures, wip ȝates, wip templis, wip paleys, and wip diuers and wonderful werkes; and hadde on þe walles þre hondred toures<sup>10</sup> and<sup>11</sup> þre score and oon, and conteyneþ aboute two and twenty myle, wipoute pat pat<sup>12</sup> is byȝonde Tybre and þe citee Leonina. But, as me seiþ, þer wip he<sup>13</sup> conteyneþ al aboute two and fourty myle, and

TREVISA.

nowble men of Ytaly to inhabite hyt with theire wyfes. *Titus Livius.* Whiche cite beenge in pouerte was noo cite moore holy neiper more ryche in goode exemples, but afterwarde rychesse encreasede lecchery and auarice. *Martinus.* Rome was made of ij. breper, Remus and Romulus, in the mownte Palatyn þe xj. kalendes of Maij, in the vij<sup>th</sup>e Olimpias, the iiij<sup>th</sup>e yere of the reigne of Achaz kyng of the Iewery begynnenge, in the iiij<sup>c</sup> yere liiij. after the takenge of the cite of Troye. R. But after Solinus cccc. and xxxiiij<sup>th</sup> yere. *Martinus.* Whiche cite made nowble in processe with towres, walles, temples, ȝates, and palice, hauenge towres of the walles ccc.lxj. within the circuite of whom be myles xxij<sup>th</sup>, excepte the edifienge ouer Tiber and the cite Leonine, with whom hit is seyde to conteyne in circuite xliij<sup>th</sup> myles. In

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 38. a.

Of þe meruayles of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> citetes, MS.; txt, Cx.<sup>2</sup> gadred and encreased, and syn they haue ben coueytous and lecherous, Cx.<sup>3</sup> born at one burthou, Cx.<sup>4</sup> MS. adds ȝere (not a. or Cx.)<sup>5</sup> Olympus, Cx., who omits the remainder of the sentence.<sup>6</sup> that, Cx. (not a.)<sup>7</sup> a. om. and.<sup>8</sup> Cx. prefixes *Marcus*; a. has in margin *Marcus* or *Martinus* (M<sup>ac</sup>c3).<sup>9</sup> of] om. a.<sup>10</sup> MS. has some repetitions here.<sup>11</sup> and] om. a.<sup>12</sup> The second *pat* added from a.: absent from MS. and Cx.<sup>13</sup> men seyn it, Cx.

Habuit etiam portas principales sexdecim in universo, videlicet citra Tiberim decem : portam Capenam,<sup>1</sup> portam Appiam, portam Latinam, portam Asinariam, portam Metronii, portam Lavicanam, portam Numentanam, portam Salariam,<sup>2</sup> portam Princianam, portam Collinam.<sup>3</sup> Item trans Tiberim portas tres, et in urbe Leonina portas tres. *Gregorius*. Inter urbis<sup>4</sup> hujus mirabilia, arte magica seu<sup>5</sup> opere humano<sup>6</sup> constructa, quorum adhuc restant vestigia miranda, sunt tot promunctoria turrium, tot ædificia palatiorum. <sup>7</sup>*Ranulphus*. Etiam nunc veri sint versus illi Hildeberti Cenomannensis episcopi, quos ponit Willielmus Malmesburiensis in libro suo de regibus.

Versus de  
Romæ.

Par tibi Roma nihil, cum sis fere<sup>8</sup> tota ruina ;  
Fracta docere potes, integra quanta fores.

De palatiis  
Romæ.

*Gregorius*. Fuerunt et<sup>9</sup> palatia egregia in<sup>10</sup> honorem  
imperatorum aliorumque illustrium virorum constructa,  
inter quæ<sup>11</sup> erat palatium majus in medio urbis in

<sup>1</sup> *Capuana*, B.C.D.; *Capuena*, A.E. (See versions.) These gates are all accusatives in B.; in other MSS. they are in the nominative. The reader must take the orthography of the versions *taliter qualiter*. In the text *Lavicana* stands for *Labicana*; and *Princiana* for *Pinciana*; *Metronii* is more correctly written *Metronis*. See Smith's Dict. Gr. and Rom. Geogr., s. v. *Roma*.

<sup>2</sup> *portam Salariam*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *Collania*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *urbis*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *sive*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *humano*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Ran.* to *Versus de Roma*, abbreviated in C. and D. thus: *ut jam verum sit, Par tibi*, &c. B. omits the two lines following *Hildeberti*, and grievously corrupts both the verses.

<sup>8</sup> *pene*, MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *que*, B.; *ibi*, C.; *etiam*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *ad*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *de quibus*, C.D.; *in qua*, A.



had in all sixtene principal zates; <sup>1</sup> ten on pis half Tiber, TREVISA.  
 pat were i-cleped port Capuena, port Apia, port Latina, port  
 Asinaria, port Matronii, port Levicana, <sup>2</sup> port Numentana,  
 port Salaria, port Princiana, port Colina. Also by zonde  
 Tyberis beep pre zates, and pre in pe citee Leonina. *Gregorius*.  
 Among pe wondres of pis citee pat zit beep i-sene,  
 it is greet <sup>3</sup> wonder of so many defensable toures and so  
 many buldynges of palays, where <sup>4</sup> it were i-doo <sup>5</sup> by wyche-  
 craft oper by manis dede. So pat now beep ferified <sup>6</sup> pe  
 vers pat Hildebertus <sup>7</sup> Episcopus Cenomannensis made, and  
 Williellmus Malmesburiensis putteþ hem in his book of  
 kynges: <sup>8</sup>

Rome, no þing is pere to þe,  
 þeyz þou nygh all fallynge be;  
 On alle <sup>9</sup> þou schewest þy bounde,  
 How grete þou were, <sup>10</sup> when þow were <sup>10</sup> sounde.

Pere were meny paleys real <sup>11</sup> and noble i-bulde in Rome De palatiis  
 in worschippe of emperours and of opere noble men also. Romæ.  
 Among pe whiche pe gretteste and most palys of alle was  
 in pe myddel of pe citee, in tokene of oon principalte of

that cite were xvj. principalle zates, x. abowte Tiber, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 Capuana, Porta Apia, Porta Latina, Porta Asinaria, Porta  
 Metronii, Porta Lauicana, Porta Numentana, Porta Salaria,  
 Porta Prinopana, Porta Collina. Also there were iij. zates  
 ouer Tiber and iij. in the Cite Leonine. *Gregorius*. Vn  
 to this tyme presente remayne mony signes in hit to be  
 meruayles as edifienges and palice, that the versus of Hilde-  
 berte, bischop Cenomacense may be verifiede of hit whom  
 William Malmesbury puttethe in his boke of kynges seyenge  
 in this wyse: O Rome, þer is noon oper cite egalle to the  
 nowe beenge in ruyne. Thou may teche nowe in confusion  
 howe nowble thow was a fore. *De Palatiis*. In that Of þe  
 cite were nowble palice made in honor of emperoures, and palices.  
 of other nowble men amonge whom oon palice was made  
 in the myddes of the cite in the signe of the monarchy of

<sup>1</sup> yates, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Eluicana*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> a grete, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> toures of so many buyldynges of  
 palayces, whether, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> i-doo] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> So MS. and a.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; *Hildebertus*, MS.

<sup>8</sup> as here foloweth, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *anaitte*, MS.; *anulle*, a.

<sup>10</sup> So MS. and a. See Harl. MS.

<sup>11</sup> ryal, Cx.

signum monarchiæ orbis; item<sup>1</sup> palatium Pacis, ubi Romulus posuit statuam suam auream, dicens, "Non cadet,<sup>2</sup> donec virgo pariat;" quod et<sup>3</sup> cecidit Christo nascente.<sup>4</sup> Palatium Diocletiani columnas habet ad jactum lapilli tam altas, et tam<sup>5</sup> magnas quod a centum viris per totum annum operantibus vix una earum secari possit. Item fuit ibi quoddam palatium sexaginta imperatorum, cujus hodie partem residuam tota Roma destruere non potest.

De templis  
Romæ.

Apud templum Pantheon, quod fuit<sup>6</sup> omnium deorum,<sup>7</sup> modo est ecclesia omnium sanctorum, et autonomastice<sup>8</sup> dicitur Sancta Maria Rotunda, et habet in latitudine spatium ducentorum sexaginta pedum. Prope illud templum est arcus triumphalis Augusti Cæsaris marmoreus, in quo gesta ipsius describuntur.<sup>9</sup> Ibi quoque<sup>10</sup> est arcus Scipionis, qui devicit Hannibalem. Item ad Sanctum Stephanum in piscina<sup>11</sup> fuit templum<sup>12</sup> holovitreum, totum de crystallo et auro factum, ubi erat astronomia inculpta cum signis coeli et stellis, quod

<sup>1</sup> *inter*, B.

<sup>2</sup> D. adds *hæc*.

<sup>3</sup> *et*] tamen, B.

<sup>4</sup> *quod . . . nascente*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *tam*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> A. adds *ecclesia*.

<sup>7</sup> *dæmoniorum*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *autonomastice*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *scribuntur*, A.; *conscribuntur*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Et juxta id*, C.D. (which latter has *illud*.)

<sup>11</sup> *pasonia*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *templum*] om. C.D.

all þe world wide. Also þe paleys of pees; þerynne TREVISA.  
 Romulus dede<sup>1</sup> his owne ymage of golde, and seide: "It  
 "schal neuere falle, or<sup>2</sup> a mayde bere a childe;" and þat  
 ymage fel<sup>3</sup> whan Crist was i-bore. Diocletianus<sup>4</sup> paleys  
 hap pilers as hiȝ as a stones<sup>5</sup> cast, and so grete aboute þat  
 an hondred men al a ȝere worchyng schulde vnnepe  
 hewe oon of pilke pylers. Also þere was a paleys of  
 sixty emperours, and ȝit stondeþ a party<sup>6</sup> þerof þat al  
 Rome may nouȝt destroye it. Þere, as<sup>7</sup> Pantheon þe temple De templis.  
 of all mawmetrie was, is now a chirche of al halwen,<sup>8</sup> and  
 for<sup>9</sup> oure Lady is after Crist cheef halwe<sup>10</sup> of al mankynde,  
 þat chirche hap þe name of oure Lady, and hatte Sancta  
 Maria Rotunda, þat is þe Rounde Chirche of oure Lady,  
 and hap in brede þe space of two hondred feet and  
 sixty. Fast by þat temple is an arche of marbel, and is  
 þe arche of Augustus Cesar his victories and grete dedes.  
 In þat arche beþ al Augustus Cesar his dedes<sup>11</sup> descryued.  
 Þere is also Scipions arche; he ouercom Hanibal. At Seint  
 Steuene in Piscina was þe temple Olouitreum, þat was made  
 al<sup>12</sup> of cristal and of golde; þere was astronomie i-graued  
 and i-peyntwip sterres and signes of heuen. Seint Sebastian<sup>13</sup>

the worlde. Also thei made a palice of peace, where in MS. HARL.  
 Romulus put an ymage of golde, seyenge, this ymage schalle 2261.  
 not falle tylle that a mayde haue a childe, whiche ymage  
 felle down in the natiuite off Criste. The palice of Dioclitian  
 hathe pyllers soe hie as a man may caste with a stonne, and  
 soe grete that vnnethe oon off theyme may be kytte and  
 putte down by a c. men laborenge dayly in hyt by a yere.  
 Also þer was a palice of lx. emperours the residu of  
 whom alle Rome can not destroye. *Of þe temples.* Now  
 the chirche of alle Seyntes is in Rome, where the temple  
 of alle goddes was before, namede Panteon, hauenge in  
 latitude the space of ijc. and lx. foote, nye to whom is an  
 arche made of marbole, in whom the gestes of Augustus  
 Cesar be wryten. Also þer is an arche of Scipio whiche  
 ouercome Hanibal. Also there was a temple made of  
 cristalle and golde, where in astronomy was graven with  
 the signes of heuyn and sterres, whom Seynte Sebastian

<sup>1</sup> dyde do, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> tel, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> fylle, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Dyoclicianus, MS.

<sup>5</sup> astoon, a.

<sup>6</sup> a part, Cx.; another party, MS.

<sup>7</sup> as] Added from Cx. (not in a.)

<sup>8</sup> halowen, Cx.; halween, a.

<sup>9</sup> by cause, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> chyef and holyest, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> ben alle his grete actes, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> al] om. Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Sebestian, MS. (not Cx.)

Sanctus Sebastianus destruxit.<sup>1</sup> Item in Capitolio, quod erat altis muris vitro et auro coopertis, quasi speculum mundi sublimiter erectum, ubi consules<sup>2</sup> et senatores mundum regebant, erat templum Jovis in quo statua Jovis aurea in throno aureo erat sedens.<sup>3</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>4</sup> Hic advertendum est quod in Roma tria tantum templa fuerunt quæ flamines habuerunt, id est, pontifices idolorum, sic dicti quasi *flamines* a *filo* quod<sup>5</sup> ligabant sibi in capite, quando non poterant præ calvitate diebus festivis pileum deferre. Nam in templo Jovis ministrabat flamen dialis, quia Jupiter vocabatur Diespiter, id est, diei pater. Item in templo fuit flamen Martialis, in templo Romuli flamen Quirinalis, nam Romulus dicebatur Quirinus.<sup>4</sup>

De domibus Romæ.

Romæ fuit domus quædam consecrata pene<sup>6</sup> tota aurea lapidibus pretiosis ornata, quæ dicebatur valere pene tertiam partem mundi, cujus cryptæ<sup>6</sup> parietum adhuc apparent horrendæ et inaccessibiles; in qua etiam<sup>7</sup> domo statuæ omnium provinciarum<sup>8</sup> poneban-

<sup>1</sup> *astronomia ... destruxit*] Slightly different in C. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *ad consulendum*, C.

<sup>3</sup> The latter part of the sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ran. to Quirinus*] om. in A.B. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *quem*, E. The solecism is probably due to the scribe.

<sup>6</sup> *pene . . . cryptæ*] Abbreviated in A.B.C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *etiam*] Added from C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Romæ subjectarum* after *provinciarum* in D.; *statuæ* after *provinciarum* in B.

destroyed pat temple. Also<sup>1</sup> pe Capitol was arrayed<sup>2</sup> wip TREVISA.  
 hiȝe walles i-heled wip glas and wip gold, as it were pe  
 mirroure of al pe world aboute. Pere consuls<sup>3</sup> and senatours  
 gouernede and rulede al<sup>4</sup> pe world, as moche as was in here  
 power; and pere was Iupiters<sup>5</sup> temple, and in pe temple  
 was Iupiters ymage of golde,<sup>6</sup> sittynge in a trone. R.<sup>7</sup>  
 Here take hede pat onliche pre temples were somtyme in  
 Rome pat hadde flamines, [pat were bisshops to serve false  
 goddis and mawmetrie, and heet flamines,]<sup>8</sup> as it were *fila-*  
*mines*, of *filo*, pat is *a prede*, pat pey bonde aboute hire  
 heed, whan pei myȝte nouȝt in pe holy day suffre on hire  
 pilious and here cappes for hete. In Iupiter his temple  
 seruede flamen dialis, pat is, pe day bisshop; for Iupiter  
 was i-cleped Diespiter, pat is, *pe fader of pe day*: also in  
 Mars his temple was flamen Martialis, pat is, Mars is<sup>9</sup>  
 bisshop, and in Romulus temple was flamen Quirinalis, pat  
 is, Quirinus<sup>10</sup> bisshop; for Romulus was i-cleped Quirinus  
 also.

In Rome was an hous i-made wel nyh al of gold and De domi-  
 i-hiȝt<sup>11</sup> wip precious stones; me seide pat hous was worp bus.  
 wel nyȝ pe pridde deel<sup>12</sup> of all pe world. In pat hous  
 eueriche londe and prouince hadde an ymage i-sette by

---

destroyede. R. Hyt is to be aduertisede that in Rome MS. HARL.  
 were onely thre temples whom the byschoppes of ydoles 2261.  
 hade in possession callede flamines, as flamines, of threde  
 whom thei bounde in theire hedes when thei myȝhte not  
 were a cappe in holy dayes for hete. The byschop Dialle<sup>13</sup>  
 ministrede in the temple of Iupiter, for he was callede  
 Diespiter, that is to say, fader of pe day. The byschop  
 Martialle was in the temple of Mars. And the byschoppe  
 Quirinalle in the temple of Romulus, for Romulus was  
 callede Quirinus. *Of howses.* In Rome was an howse  
 consecrate onornede allemoste alle with golde and precious  
 stones, whiche was seyde to be werthe the thrydde parte  
 of the worlde, whiche place apperethe ȝitte as ferefulle  
 and inaccessible, in whiche place the ymages of alle pro-

<sup>1</sup> MS. and *a.* (not *Cx.*) add *in.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cx.* omits the four following words.

<sup>3</sup> *the consuls*, *Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *of al*, *a.*

<sup>5</sup> *Iubiters*, MS., and so below.

<sup>6</sup> *fym golde*, *Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *R.* Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

<sup>8</sup> The words in brackets added from *a.*

<sup>9</sup> *Cx.* here and above prints only *Mars.*

<sup>10</sup> *his*, added in *a.*, which has often similar variations.

<sup>11</sup> *besette*, *Cx.*

<sup>12</sup> *part*, *Cx.*

<sup>13</sup> *Dial.*, Harl. MS.; similarly *Martial* below.



tur arte magica,<sup>1</sup> quarum quælibet nomen provinciæ suæ in se<sup>2</sup> gerebat scriptum in pectore, et nolam argenteam circa collum; quæ, si qua gens contra Romam insurgeret,<sup>3</sup> statim imago<sup>4</sup> illius vertebat dorsum ad imaginem Romæ, et tintinnabulum illius imaginis insonabat.<sup>4</sup> Unde et sacerdotes Gentiles domum illam alternis vicibus custodientes nomen imaginis illius principibus nunciabant.<sup>5</sup> Erat etiam<sup>6</sup> in tecto domus illius eques quidam æneus concordans mobiliter motui illius imaginis,<sup>7</sup> lanceamque contra gentem illam sic insurgentem<sup>8</sup> dirigebat. Unde et Romani<sup>9</sup> facile hostes suos inpræmeditados occupabant. In qua etiam domo tradunt ignem fuisse inextinguibilem, cujus artifex requisitus quamdiu duraret, respondit, "Donec virgo pariat." Unde divulgatum est quod<sup>10</sup> nocte Dominicæ nativitatis eques ille cum domo corruit, et ignis ille extinctus.<sup>11</sup> Item Beaneus<sup>12</sup> Apollo confectionem<sup>13</sup> quandam sulphuris<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> in se] om. C.

<sup>3</sup> *insurgere proponeret*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *imago . . . insonabat*] Abbreviated to *sonum dabat* in C.D.; A.B. have only *statim sonabat*, after *insurgeret*. (A. reads *sonaret*.) Both versions agree with the text.

<sup>5</sup> The sentence transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *et*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *ipsius imaginis*, A.; *imaginis illius*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *sic insurgentem*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Roma*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *quod*] om. E.

<sup>11</sup> *In qua . . . extinctus*] Transposed and abbreviated in C.; B. has *est* after *extinctus*.

<sup>12</sup> *Bancus*, A. It is possible that Higden intends Apollonius Tyanæus; but, if so, the story seems not to be found in Philostratus.

<sup>13</sup> *confossionem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *sulphure*, A.

wicche craft;<sup>1</sup> eueriche of pilke ymages bare his owne lordes name i-write on<sup>2</sup> his brest and a cokebelle<sup>3</sup> of siluer i-honged aboute his nekke; so ȝat<sup>4</sup> ȝif eny londe arise aȝen Rome, anon þe ymage of þat londe torned his bak toward þe ymage of Rome, and þe belle aboute his nekke anon schulde rynge, and þe preostes þat kepte þat hous euerich by his cours warnede þe princes of þat doynge. Þere was also an horsman of bras an<sup>5</sup> hiȝe on þe cop of þat hous, and moued<sup>6</sup> also wiþ a spere in his hond, and torned þe poynt of his spere to ward þat londe þat so wolde arise; and so þe Romayns myȝte liȝtliche come vpon here enemyes vnwarned.<sup>7</sup> In þat hous also was a fuyre þat no man myȝte aquenche,<sup>8</sup> and men askede<sup>9</sup> of þe craftesman þat it made how longe it schulde dure,<sup>10</sup> and he answerde and seide: Þat<sup>11</sup> it schulde dure for euermore for to<sup>12</sup> þat a mayde bere a childe. And in<sup>13</sup> þe same nyȝt þat Crist was i-bore þat hous fil down, and þe fuyre was aqueynt also þe same<sup>14</sup> nyȝt and tyme. Also Beaneus Apollo þat

TREVISA.

uinces were putte by wycche craft, euery ymage hauenge writen in the breste of hit the name of the prouince, and a belle of golde abowte the necke of hit. And if eny peple made insurreccion ageyne thempire of Rome, the ymage of that prouince turnede the backe of hit to the ymage of Rome, and ronge his belle; the gentile pristres hauenge kepenge of the ymages schewed those thynges to the princes of thempire. In the hier partes of whiche place was an horse man made of brasse corespondente to the ymage of that prouince, hauenge a spere directe towarde the peple makenge þat insurreccion. Where fore the Romanes hade victory of theier ennyes, takenge theyme as sodenly. In whiche place men affermede fire to haue bene inextinguible; þe maker of hit requirede how longe hit scholde dure, answerde and seyde, tyl a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe. Wherefore hit was expressede that the man made of brasse felle down with the howse in the natiuite of Criste, and that fyre was extincte. *Of Craftes*

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *nigromancie*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *and on*, Cx. (typ. error?)<sup>3</sup> *cockerbelle*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So the MS.; but seemingly a mere clerical error; *a.* has *þat*.<sup>5</sup> *and, a.*; *on*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *meouede, a.*; *meued*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *on ware*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *quenche*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *axed*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *endure*, Cx., and so below.<sup>11</sup> Cx. omits *þat*.<sup>12</sup> *for to*] *vnto*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *a.* and Cx. omit *in*.<sup>14</sup> *quenched that same*, Cx.

et nigri salis inclusit in vase æneo, quam candela consecrata incendit, et balneum ibi<sup>1</sup> fecit cum thermis perpetuo<sup>2</sup> calentibus.<sup>3</sup> Erat quoque<sup>4</sup> in domo quadam<sup>5</sup> ferreum simulacrum Bellerophontis pondere quindecim millia<sup>6</sup> librarum, in aere cum equo suo suspensum, nulla catena superius aut stipite inferius sustentatum; sed lapides magnetes in arcubus<sup>7</sup> testudinum sive fornicibus<sup>8</sup> arcuatis circumquaque ponebantur, et hinc<sup>9</sup> inde proportionali<sup>10</sup> attractione simulacrum in medio servabant, ita ut nullicubi<sup>11</sup> posset dissilire.<sup>12</sup>

De artificiiis  
Romæ.

Est ibi theatrum in Heraclea de ipso monte marmoreo ita<sup>13</sup> sculptum, ut cellulæ mansionum et sedilia per gyrum,<sup>14</sup> exitus, et antra<sup>15</sup> ex uno solido lapide sint<sup>16</sup> sculpta, poniturque hoc totum<sup>17</sup> opus super sex canculos ex ipso etiam monte sculptos, ubi nullus tam secrete aut<sup>18</sup> secum aut cum alio loqui poterit<sup>19</sup> quin in circuitu audiatur.<sup>20</sup> Item<sup>21</sup> juxta palatium Augusti est murus coctilis descendens per portam Asinariam a summis montibus, qui immensis fornicibus aquæductum sustentat; per quem amnis a<sup>22</sup> montanis fontibus per spatium unius diætæ urbi illabitur, qui æreis fistulis postmodum divisus<sup>23</sup> universis palatiis Romæ<sup>24</sup> quondam influebat. Fluvius namque Tiberis equis est salubris,<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ibidem*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *in perpetuo*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *Et balneum . . . calentibus*] Varies verbally in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *ibi quoddam*, C.; *ibi quadam*, D.; *domo quodam*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *milium*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *fornicibus*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *sive fornicibus*] om. C.D.; in *fornicibus*, A.E.

<sup>9</sup> D. adds *et*.

<sup>10</sup> *proportionabili*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *nullibi*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *desilire*, B. The sentence ends thus in C.D. after *attractione*: con-

*sistens quasi sub equilibrata mensura sic manebat.*

<sup>13</sup> *quasi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> C. and D. add *et*; B. adds *mansionum* after *gyrum*.

<sup>15</sup> *aura*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *sic*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *totum*] om. A.B.

<sup>18</sup> *aut*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *poterat*, D.

<sup>20</sup> *quin omnes qui in circuitu erant audirent*, C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *Item*] om. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *et*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>23</sup> *divisis*, B.

<sup>24</sup> *Romæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>25</sup> *utilis*, C.D.

man closede a confeccioun of brymston and of blak salt in a vessel of bras, and sette hit on þe fire<sup>1</sup> wip a candel þat he hadde made on his manere,<sup>2</sup> and made pere a bath wip bapinge places þat all wey were hote. Pere was also on<sup>3</sup> an hous an ymage of yren, and was [namyd]<sup>4</sup> Bellefrontes ymage, and<sup>5</sup> weyed xv. þowsand pound wip his hors þat he satte on, and hyng<sup>6</sup> in þe ayer wip no post ne pyler bynepe vnder sette, nopere<sup>7</sup> i-holde wip chayne aboue; but adamant stones þat were in þe fot<sup>8</sup> and in þe arches aboute drowe euen þe yren eueriche to his side, so þat þe yren ymage myȝt nouȝt downward noper vpward ne toward neyther side,<sup>9</sup> but hyng alwey euene amydde.

Pere is a place at Rome in Heraclea and hatte theatrum; De arti-  
þat is a place to stonde oper sitte ynne for to loke wel  
aboute. Perynne is wonderliche i-graue cabans and dennes,  
dyuers oute goynges, benches, and seges all aboute, and is  
hool and sound, al oon marbel ston: [and þis work is  
i-sett uppon sixe crabbes i-hewe of hard marbilston];<sup>10</sup>  
in þat place may no man so priuely speke, noper by<sup>11</sup> hem-  
self noper by<sup>12</sup> anoper man, but al þat he seip be herde  
al aboute. Faste by Augustus Cesar his place<sup>13</sup> is a wal  
i-made of b[r]ent<sup>14</sup> tile and streccheþ downward oute of þe  
hiȝe hulles by þe ȝate, port Asinaria. Þat wal is i-made  
vpon grete arches and heug; þat wal streccheþ a dayes  
iornay from Rome yn a greet condyt; vpon þat wal þe  
wateres and þe<sup>15</sup> stremes of þe<sup>16</sup> welles of þe mounteyns  
renneþ ynto Rome; and þan is<sup>17</sup> departed in dyuers condites  
and pipes of bras, and so ran somtyme in to euery paleys  
of Rome: for þe water [of]<sup>17</sup> Tyber is holsom and good for

TREVISA.

ficiis.

and Edificenges. There is a place made in Heraclea graven  
so of marhole in that hille, that the mansiones of hit and  
setes of hit were graven of oon ston, where a man can not  
speke so secretely with hymselfe or with eny other, but hit  
schal be herde in alle the circuite. The water of Tiber is

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> *it a fyre*, Cx.; *hit on fire*, a.<sup>2</sup> *i-halewed in his manere*, a., Cx.<sup>3</sup> *in*, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>5</sup> *whiche*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *heng*, a. and Cx., and so Cx. (not a.) below.<sup>7</sup> *ne*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *vawte*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *neuere aside*, MS., a.<sup>10</sup> The words in brackets added from a. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *to*, Cx. (twice).<sup>12</sup> *palays*, Cx. (not a.)<sup>13</sup> *welle i-made of brend*, a.; *walle made of brente*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> a. and Cx. omit *þe*.<sup>15</sup> So a. and Cx.; *þat*, MS.<sup>16</sup> *it is*, Cx.<sup>17</sup> Added from Cx. (not in a.)

sed hominibus noxius;<sup>1</sup> quamobrem a quatuor urbis partibus per artificiosos meatus Romani veteres aquas recentes venire fecerunt; quibus, dum res publica floruit, quicquid<sup>2</sup> libuit consummare licuit. Juxta hunc murum aquæductus<sup>3</sup> est illud<sup>4</sup> balneum Beanei, de quo supra dicitur. In albisterio, quod dicitur mutatorium Cæsaris, ubi fiebant albæ stolæ imperatorum, fuit<sup>5</sup> candelabrum factum de lapide albeste, qui semel accensus et sub divo positus nulla arte potuit extinguî.<sup>6</sup>

De Pallante gigante.

*Ranulphus.* Juxta hunc modum potuit contingere quod de Pallante gigante legitur infra circa annum domini millesimum quadragesimum, quo anno repertum est Romæ corpus giganteæ staturæ tumulatum et<sup>7</sup> incorruptum, cujus vulneris hiatus quatuor pedes longitudinis<sup>8</sup> et semis continebat. Longitudo corporis altitudinem muri vincebat; lucerna continue ardens ad caput ejus reperta<sup>9</sup> est, quæ nec flatu nec humore extinguî poterat,

<sup>1</sup> est noxius, D.

<sup>2</sup> after *floruit*, thus: *aquæductus fiebant ut libuit et licuit*, C.; *quicquid libuit, licuit*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *aquæductus*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *illud*] om. D.

<sup>5</sup> *ibi fuit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> C. and D. omitted from *Juxta hunc* &c. down to *jacet hic*.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> So B.; *pedum longitudinis*, A.; *pedum longitudine*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *inventa*, A.



hors, and for men yuel<sup>1</sup> and vnholsum.<sup>2</sup> Perfore pe olde Romaynes made fresche water come oute of foure parties of pe citee by weies craftliche i-made, and perof men myzte take al pat pey wolde, [whyle]<sup>3</sup> pe comynge<sup>4</sup> of Rome were in her floures. By pat wall is pe bath Byaneus made, of pe whiche bap was raper a speche.<sup>5</sup> In Albist[e]rio<sup>6</sup> a place pat heet also Mutatorium Cesaris were i-made white stolis for emperours. Also pere was a candelstikke i-made of a stoon pat hatte Albeston; whan it was ones i-tend<sup>7</sup> and i-sette per oute,<sup>8</sup> pere coupe no man it aquenche<sup>9</sup> wip no craft pat me koupe deuise. [R.]<sup>10</sup> In pis manere hit mihte be of<sup>11</sup> pe geaunt Pallas aboute pe zere of oure Lord a powsand and fourty; pat zere was i-founde in Rome a geantis body i-buried all<sup>12</sup> hool and sounde; pe chene<sup>13</sup> of his wounde was foure foot longe and an half; pe lengpe of his body passed the heihte of pe walles; at his heed was founde a lanterne brennyng alway, pat no man couthe quenche wip blast noþer<sup>14</sup> wip water noþer<sup>14</sup> wip oþer craft, or<sup>15</sup> pere were

TREVISA

wholsom for horses, but not for men, wherefore the Romanes made labor that fresche waters myzte comme in to the cite in iiij. partes of hit. In Albisterio was a candelsticke where the emperoures were wonte to be chaungede, where the white stoles of emperoures were made also, whiche was made of a precious ston callede Albestes, whiche accendede and putte furthe in the aiere wyll not be extincte by eny crafte. R. In lyke wyse that thyng myzhte happe that is redde of Pallas, pe gigante abowte the yere of our Lorde God mxti<sup>16</sup>, in which yere a body was founde of pe stature of a gigante beryede at Rome and incorrupte, the wounde of whom conteynede in longitude iiij. foote and a halfe. The longitude of that body excedede the altitude of the walles of that cite: fyndenge also a lampe brennenge at the feete off hit continually, whiche cowthe not be extincte pro blawenge

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *euel*, *a.*<sup>2</sup> *and vnholsume and euyll for men*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx. (not in *a.*)<sup>4</sup> *comins*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *was spoken to fore*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Albisterio*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *ytegned*, Cx., who adds *and sette a fyre*.<sup>8</sup> *without*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *quenche it*, Cx.; *hit quenche*, *a.*<sup>10</sup> [R.] Reference added from *a.* and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *of* that, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *all* om Cx.<sup>13</sup> *space*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *ne*, Cx., twice; (as frequently.)<sup>15</sup> *or*, *a.*

donec subtili foramine subter<sup>1</sup> flammam<sup>2</sup> facto aer foret  
 introductus. Hunc Pallantem Turnus dicitur occidis-  
 se, quando<sup>3</sup> pugnavit pro Lavinia. Hujus<sup>4</sup> gigantis tale  
 erat epitaphium.

Epitaphium  
 gigantis  
 Romæ.

Filius Evandri Pallas, quem lancea Turni  
 Militis occidit more suo, jacet hic.

De statu  
 et signis  
 Romæ.

Fuit apud<sup>5</sup> Romam taurus æneus in speciem<sup>6</sup>  
 Jovis transformati, qui mugienti et gesticulanti<sup>7</sup> simil-  
 limus videbatur. Fuit<sup>8</sup> et imago Veneris eo modo<sup>9</sup>  
 quo quondam nudo corpore Paridi se ostendebat, ita  
 artificiose composita ut in niveo imaginis ore sanguis  
 recens<sup>10</sup> natare videretur. Est etiam<sup>11</sup> ibi<sup>12</sup> pyramis  
 Romuli, ubi speliebatur juxta<sup>13</sup> ecclesiam beati Petri;  
 quam peregrini, qui semper<sup>14</sup> frivolis<sup>15</sup> abundant, dicunt  
 fuisse acervum segetis beati Petri, quem cum Nero  
 rapuisset in lapideum collem pristinæ quantitatis fe-  
 runt fuisse<sup>16</sup> conversum. Inter omnes pyramides mira-

<sup>1</sup> *super*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *flammæ*, A. (but looks more like  
*flamine*.)

<sup>3</sup> A. adds *Æneas*.

<sup>4</sup> *Cujus*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *in Roma*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *specie*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *tubanti*, B. ; *moventi*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Item fuit*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *eo modo*] om. C.D., which have  
*quæ* following.

<sup>10</sup> *recens*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *ibidem*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *prope*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *frivolis semper habundantes*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *suis frivolis*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *fuisse*] *fore*, A.E.

i-made an hole<sup>1</sup> vnder þe lyzt by nepe, þat þe ayer myzte entre. Me seiþ þat Turnus slow þis geaunt Pallas, whan Eneas fauhte for Lauin[i]a þat was Eneas his wyf. þis<sup>2</sup> geauntes epitaphium,<sup>3</sup> þat is,<sup>4</sup> þe writynge of mynde of hym þat lay þere, was suche :<sup>5</sup>

TREVISA.

Pallas Euander his sone lieþ here :  
Hym Turnus þe knyzt wiþ his spere  
Slowe in his manere.

*De statu et signis.* Pere was at Rome a bole<sup>6</sup> of bras in þe schap of Iupiter ouercast and schape to men þat loked peron ; þat boole semed lowynge and startlinge. Pere was also þe ymage of Venus al naked in þe same manere as Venus schewed hir self to þat man Paris<sup>7</sup> somtyme,<sup>8</sup> and was so craftliche made þat in þe moupe and lippes, þat were as white as eny<sup>9</sup> snow, semede fresche blood and newe. Pere is also at Rome a wonder copped pilour, and is Romulus pyler. Pere Romulus was i-buried faste by Seynt Petres chirche. Þat piler pilgrims and palmers, þat faste con<sup>10</sup> liþe, clepeþ it<sup>11</sup> seint Petris corn hepe,<sup>12</sup> and seiþ þat whan Nero þe emperour hadde i-rauisched it, it<sup>13</sup> turned into an hil of stoon as grete as it was rapen, whiles it was corn.<sup>14</sup> Among þe<sup>15</sup> pilers

or eny other humor, tylle they made a subtile hoole vnder hit with a nelde,<sup>16</sup> where thro the aier commenge thro hyt causede hit to be extincte : whom a knyghte callede Turnus did flee, when Eneas did fihhte for Lauin[i]a. *Of the Ymages at Rome.* There was an ymage of Venus made in Rome, in that similitude as sche apperede to Parides, whiche was made so subtilly that a man myghte see in that ymage as bloode decurrente. Also another off brasse transformede in to the similitude of Iupiter. Also there is the grave of Romulus, where he was beryede, nye to þe chirche of Seynte Petre, whom the commune peple calle the hepe of corne of Seynte Petre, whom Nero takenge awaye was restorede in to the state of hit a fore. Amonge the beryalles of whom

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> vnto the tyme that there was made a lytil hoole, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx. (This) ; þese, MS., a.

<sup>3</sup> epytaphium, Cx. ; ephitafium, MS., a.

<sup>4</sup> is this, Cx. (without sense).

<sup>5</sup> suche] this, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> bulle, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx. ; Pares, MS., a.

<sup>8</sup> Cx. adds of Troye.

<sup>9</sup> ony, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> can, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> a (not Cx.) omits it.

<sup>12</sup> corn hupple, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> it] hit, Cx. (perhaps considering the aspirated form the stronger).

<sup>14</sup> as grete as it was byfore of corne, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> alle, a., Cx.

<sup>16</sup> So Harl. MS.

bilior est pyramis Iulii Cæsaris, habens in altitudine<sup>1</sup>  
ducentos quinquaginta pedes, in cuius summo fuit<sup>2</sup>  
sphæra ænea cineres et ossa Iulii continens.<sup>3</sup> De quo  
colosseo<sup>4</sup> quidam metricus<sup>5</sup> sic ait :

Versus de  
pyramide  
Iulii  
Cæsaris.

Si lapis est unus, dic qua fuit arte levatus :

Si lapides plures, dic ubi contigui.

Hanc autem pyramidem super quatuor leones<sup>6</sup> fundatam peregrini mendosi<sup>7</sup> acum beati Petri appellant, mentiunturque illum fore<sup>8</sup> mundum a peccatis<sup>9</sup> qui sub saxo illo liberius potuerit repere.<sup>10</sup> Sunt etiam in

De caballis  
marmoreis.

Roma duo magni equi marmorei quorum talis redditur ratio. Tempore Tiberii imperatoris, duo iuvenes philosophi, Praxitellus et Fibia,<sup>11</sup> venerunt Romam, quos cum Cæsar interrogasset cur nudi incederent, dixerunt, " Quia omnia reliquimus, et quia omnia nobis sunt nuda  
" et aperta ; etiam<sup>12</sup> quæ dixeris, Cæsar, vel clam feceris,

<sup>1</sup> latitudine, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> est, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> continentes, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> colosseo] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> metricus] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> æneos added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> mendosi] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> mundum esse, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> penitentiamque perfectam egisse.  
added in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> Slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Fibus, C. (not D.) It seems that in this monstrous legend the persons intended are the sculptors Phidias and Praxiteles. See Gregorovius, *Geschichte der Stadt Rom*. vol. iii. pp. 404, 405. (Stuttgard, 1860.)

<sup>12</sup> etiam sqq.] Slightly altered in C.D.

Iulius Cesar his piler is most wonderful and hap in heiþe two hondred feete<sup>1</sup> and fifty; in þe coppe perof [in]<sup>2</sup> a rounde ping of bras, wher on<sup>3</sup> beþ Iulius Cesar his askes and his bones.<sup>4</sup> Of þat piler in an<sup>5</sup> arche beþ vers i-write,<sup>6</sup> þat beþ þus to menyng, and nameliche of þe ouermest stone: TREVISA.

þif þe stone is oon, telle what craft brouȝt hym vpon;  
þif meny st[on]es,<sup>7</sup> telle where þey ioyn<sup>8</sup> attones.<sup>9</sup>

Þis arche and piler is i-founded and y-sette vpon foure lyouns. Pilgryms ful of lesynges clepeþ þis arche and piler Seynt Petres nedle, and lieþ and seip þat þat<sup>10</sup> man is clene of dedely<sup>11</sup> synne þat may crepe vnder þat stoon. Þere beþ also in Rome tweie grete horse of marbilston: for in Tiberius þe emperoures<sup>12</sup> tyme twei ȝonge filosofres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome, and ȝede all naked; and whan þe emperour axed hem<sup>13</sup> why and wher fore þey ȝede<sup>14</sup> so naked, þei answerde and seide: "For we haueþ all ping " for sake;<sup>15</sup> and for all ping is to vs naked and bare and " openliche i-knowe; ȝe, sire emperoure, and all þat pow " spekest in counsail and in priuete we knoweþ at þe<sup>16</sup> beste." Trevisa. Þe firste poynt of þis doynge and answer techeþ

the beryalle of Iulius Cesar dothe excede, conteynenge in MS. HARL. altitude cc. and l<sup>i</sup> foote, in the hiȝhte of whom is a spere 2261. Of the Collose. of brasse conteynenge the bones of Iulius Cesar, of whom hit is seyde in metre,—If that ston be oon say in what wyse and by what arte hit was elevate; if there be mony stones say where they be contiguate or ioynede to gedre. Mony pilgremes calle that beryalle of Iulius sette on iiij. lyones made of brasse, the nelde of Seynte Petre. Also in Rome be ij. grete horses made off marbole, whiche were made for this cause folowenge. In the tyme of Tiberius themperoure, ij. yonge philosophres, Praxitellus and Fibia, come to Rome. Tiberius inquirenge of theyme why they wente bare, they seyde, For we haue refusede alle thynges, and alle thynges be to vs bare and open that thow seyes

<sup>1</sup> foot, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Added from a. and Cx. Probably is the true reading.

<sup>3</sup> wher on] om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So MS. and a.; Iulius Cezars bones and ashes, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> in an] and, a, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> made, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> stones, a.; And yf they be many stones, Cx. (which is better metre).

<sup>8</sup> joyneþ, a.

<sup>9</sup> at ones, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> thyllk, Cx

<sup>11</sup> dedely] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> þe emperoures] om. Cx.

<sup>13</sup> hym, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> wente, Cx., who, however, has yeden just before.

<sup>15</sup> forsaken al thyng, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> þe] om. Cx.



" nobis patent." Quod cum Cæsar verum comperisset, ipsis hoc petentibus, fecit hoc<sup>1</sup> memoriale, duos scilicet caballos marmoreos. Est et aliud signum ante palatium domini Papæ, equus æneus et sessor ejus manu dextra quasi populo<sup>2</sup> loquens, sinistraque quasi<sup>3</sup> frenum regens, habens avem cuculam inter aures equi et nanum quasi moribundum,<sup>4</sup> sub pedibus,<sup>5</sup> quem peregrini Theodoricum vocant, vulgus Constantinum, sed clericiciuriæ Marcum seu Quintum Curtium appellant.<sup>6</sup> Hoc signum antiquitus sub quatuor<sup>7</sup> columnas æreas ante aram Jovis in Capitolio stabat, sed Beatus Gregorius equitem et equum dejecit, et columnas in ecclesia Lateranensi posuit, Romani vero<sup>8</sup> equitem et equum ante palatium papæ<sup>9</sup> posuerunt. Qui Marcum illum<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *id*, C. ; *illud*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *populis*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *quasi*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.; *morbidum*, C.D.E.

<sup>5</sup> *ejus* added in B.D.

<sup>6</sup> The previous sentence is slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *super decem*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *sed Romani*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *domini papæ*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *illud*, C.

pat who<sup>1</sup> forsakeþ all pyng forsakeþ all his clopes; and so it foloweþ pat þey pat beþ wel i-cloped and goop aboute and beggeþ and gadereþ money and corn and catel of oper men<sup>2</sup> forsakeþ nouȝt al ping.<sup>3</sup> Þe emperour assaied and founde soop all pat þey seide, and at here prayer<sup>4</sup> made in mynde of hem tweie greet hors<sup>5</sup> of marbel. Þere is anopere signe and tokene to fore<sup>6</sup> þe popes paleys; an hors of bras and a man sittynge þeron and halt his<sup>7</sup> riȝt hond as pouȝ he spake<sup>8</sup> to þe peple;<sup>9</sup> and halt his<sup>7</sup> bridel in his lift hand, and hap a cukkow by twene his hors eres and a seek<sup>10</sup> dwerf vnder his horse<sup>11</sup> feet. Pilgrims clepeþ pat man Theodoricus, and þe comouns clepeþ hym Constantinus. But clerkes of þe court clepeþ hym Marcus and Quintus Curtius also. Þis signe stood somtyme to fore Iupiters auȝter<sup>12</sup> in þe Capitol vpon foure<sup>13</sup> pilers of bras; but Seynt Gregorie prewe doun hors and man and sette<sup>14</sup> þe pilers in Seint Iones chirche þe Lateranensis. But þe Romayns toke hors and man and sette hem to fore þe popes paleys. Þey pat clepeþ hym Marcus telleþ þis skile and<sup>15</sup>

TREVISIA.

or dose priuely. Themperoure knowenge that to be trewe at the desire of theyme made that memorialle for theyme, that is to say, ij. bare horses of marbole. Also there was an other signe a fore the palice of the pope, whiche is an horse made of brasse, and the sitter on hit as spekenge to the peple by the signe of the ryȝhte honde, and gouernenge the horse as with the lyfte honde, hauenge a brydde called a cukkowe made betwene the eeres of the horse, and Nanus lyke to dye vnder his feete, whom pilgremes calle Theodoricus, the commune peple Constantyne, but clerkes of the cownte calle hit Marcus or Quintus Curtius. That signe stode somme tyme on iiij. pyllers of brasse a fore the awter of Iupiter in the Capitoly or chiefe place of Rome. But Seynte Gregory put downe the horse man and that horse, and putte the pillars in the chirche Lateranense. The Romanes toke the horse man and the horse, and sette hit before the palcyce of the pope. Men callenge hyt Marcus

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 39 b.

<sup>1</sup> *pat who þat, a.*  
<sup>2</sup> *þing before men in MS. (not a. or Cx.)*  
<sup>3</sup> *Reference to B. added in Cx.*  
<sup>4</sup> *owen prayer, Cx.*  
<sup>5</sup> *horses, Cx.*  
<sup>6</sup> *byfore, Cx.*  
<sup>7</sup> *holdeth, Cx. (twice.)*  
<sup>8</sup> *speke, a.*

<sup>9</sup> *ple, MS.*  
<sup>10</sup> *sike, a.*  
<sup>11</sup> *horse] om. Cx.*  
<sup>12</sup> *awter, Cx.*  
<sup>13</sup> *the four, Cx.*  
<sup>14</sup> *Cx. omits the seventeen words following.*  
<sup>15</sup> *skile and] om. Cx.*

appellant hanc causam assignant. Ex genere Messenorum corpore quidam nanus sed arte nigromanticus, cum finitimos sibi reges subjugasset, Romanos aggressus est, quibus<sup>1</sup> virtutem ferendi<sup>2</sup> ademit. Unde<sup>3</sup> et ipsos in urbe conclusos diu obsedit,<sup>4</sup> Nanus<sup>5</sup> nempe ille quotidie ante solis occasum<sup>6</sup> extra castra egrediens artem suam in agro<sup>7</sup> excercuit.<sup>8</sup> Quo<sup>9</sup> comperto Romani strenuo militi Marco urbis dominium et<sup>10</sup> memoriale perpetuum promiserunt, si urbem liberaret. At ille muro urbis ex illa parte perforato, qua nanus solebat præstigiari,<sup>11</sup> de<sup>12</sup> nocte<sup>13</sup> exiens mane<sup>14</sup> expectabat<sup>15</sup> quod et<sup>16</sup> cuculus avis<sup>12</sup> denunciabat<sup>17</sup> voce sua. Arreptum nanum, quem armis non poterat, manu in urbem deportabat; et ne, si fandi copiam haberet,

<sup>1</sup> qui virtute, C.; qui virtutem, D.

<sup>2</sup> et artem secandi arte sua penitus, added in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> Unde] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> Denique magus ille, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> ortum, C.; occasum solis, A.

<sup>7</sup> in agro] magicam, B.

<sup>8</sup> The previous sentence slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Hoc, D.

<sup>10</sup> et] in, A.

<sup>11</sup> præstigiari, B.

<sup>12</sup> de . . . avis] expectatoque . .

B.

<sup>13</sup> nocteque, C.; nocte, (quid?) D

<sup>14</sup> maneque, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> expectato, A.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> et] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> denunciavit, C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> nocte, added in C.D.

resoun. Þere was a dwerf<sup>1</sup> of þe kynrede of Mesenis; TREVISA.  
 his craft was nigremansi.<sup>2</sup> Whan he hadde so conquered  
 kynges þat woned hym nyh,<sup>3</sup> and made hem soget to hym,  
 þan he wente to Rome to werre wip Romayns,<sup>4</sup> and wip  
 his craft he byname þe Romays<sup>5</sup> power and myȝt for to  
 smyte, and so<sup>6</sup> byseged hem long tyme i-closed wipynne þe  
 citee. Þis dwerf ȝede<sup>7</sup> eche day to fore þe sonne risynge  
 in to þe feld for to doo his craft. Whanne þe Romaynes  
 had aspied<sup>8</sup> þat manere doynge of þat dwerf, þey speke  
 to Marcus a noble knyȝt, and byhiȝt hym lordschippe of  
 þe citee and a memoryall<sup>9</sup> in mynde for euermore, ȝif it  
 were his wille to helpe hem and saue<sup>10</sup> þe citee. Þan  
 Marcus made<sup>11</sup> an hole þorwe þe wal toward þe place;  
 þere<sup>12</sup> þe dwerf was woned to worche and vse þe sotilte  
 of his craft. And Marcus rod oute at þat place þorw þe  
 wal, longe or it were day, for to abyde his tyme to cacche  
 þe dwerf, anon as it were day. And whan it was tyme, þe  
 kukkow song and warnede hym of þe day. Þan Marcus<sup>13</sup>  
 resede too, and for<sup>14</sup> he myȝte nouȝt hitte þe dwerf wip  
 wepoun, he kauȝte hym wip his honde, and bare hym in to  
 þe citee. And for drede lest he wolde<sup>15</sup> helpe hymself wip

assigne this cause. A man callede Nanus, erudite in the MS. HARL.  
 arte of nigromancy, whiche subduenge to hym mony kynges 2261.  
 and realmes wente to the Romanes, takenge a weye from  
 theyme the vertu of smytynge and kyttenge, segede theyme  
 longe schutte with in the cite. This Nanus wente from his  
 felowschippe erly in the mornenge afore the rysenge of the  
 sonne, and put his arte in exercise; whiche thyng percey-  
 vede, the Romanes made promise to Marcus, a nowble knyȝhte,  
 that he scholde haue predominy of the cite, and a per-  
 petuall memory if he cowthe delyuer that cite. Marcus  
 pereschenge the walle of the cite on that parte where Nanus  
 vrede the arte of nigromancye goenge furthe on the nyȝhte  
 taryede for Nanus vntylle the morowe, whom a brydde  
 callede a cuckowe schewede by here voyce; whiche takenge  
 hym brouȝhte hym in to the cite, whiche fallenge down amonge

<sup>1</sup> dwarf, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> nigromancy, a.; nygromancie, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> dwellyd nygh him, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> the Romayns, a., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Romayns, a., Cx.

<sup>6</sup> so] on. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> wente, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> espied, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> memory all, MS.; memorial, Cx.;  
 a agrees apparently with MS.

<sup>10</sup> yf he wolde defende hem and saue,  
 Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So Cx.; at, MS.

<sup>12</sup> Probably we should read  
 where. Cx. has large omissions  
 here.

<sup>13</sup> Markus, MS.

<sup>14</sup> bycause, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> sholde, Cx.

arte sua se forsā<sup>1</sup> liberaret, statim sub pedibus equi sui<sup>2</sup> contrivit; unde et<sup>3</sup> tale memoriale promeruit.<sup>4</sup> Qui vero Quintum Curtium illud vocant hoc assignant, quod hiatus quidam in media urbe<sup>5</sup> patuit sulphurea exhalatione multos perimens; in quem, responso Phœbi<sup>6</sup> accepto, Quintus Curtius, ut urbem<sup>7</sup> liberaret, armatus se dejecit; et statim cuculus avis<sup>8</sup> de hiatu illo<sup>9</sup> exivit, et terra se conclusit. Aliud signum est<sup>10</sup> imago Colosseï quam statuam Solis aut ipsius<sup>11</sup> Romæ dicunt, de quo mirandum est quomodo tanta moles fundi<sup>12</sup> potuit aut erigi, cum longitudo ejus sit centum viginti sex pedum. Fuit itaque<sup>13</sup> hæc statua aliquando<sup>14</sup> in insula Rhodi<sup>15</sup> quindecim pedibus altior eminentioribus locis Romæ. Hæc statua sphæram<sup>16</sup> in<sup>17</sup> specie mundi<sup>18</sup> manu dextra, et gladium sub specie virtutis bellicæ<sup>18</sup> manu sinistra gerebat, in signum quod minoris vir-

<sup>1</sup> *forsitan*, B.; *si forsā*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *sui*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *meruit*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> So B.; *in urbe*, C.D.; *urbe* omitted in E.

<sup>6</sup> *plebi*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *plebem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *cuculus avis*] hiatus in B., filled up in pencil by a modern hand.

<sup>9</sup> *de hiatu illo*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *ipsius*] ipsi, B.

<sup>12</sup> *infundi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *itaque*] So B.; *aliquando*, C.D.; *ita*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *aliquando*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Horedii*, B.; *Herodii*, A.C.D.E.

<sup>16</sup> *speram*, MSS.

<sup>17</sup> *sub*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *in manu*, B.C.D. (twice.)



his craft, and he moste<sup>1</sup> speke, he threw hym vndir his<sup>2</sup> hors feet, and pe hors all to trade hym. And herefore pat image was i-made in mynde<sup>3</sup> of pis dede. Pey pat clep pat signe an<sup>4</sup> ymage Quintus Curtius, tellep pis skille and resoun: Pere was somtyme in pe myddel of Rome a greet chene<sup>5</sup> in pe erpe; out of pat chene<sup>6</sup> come smoke<sup>7</sup> and brymston, and slow<sup>8</sup> many man.<sup>9</sup> Panne Quintus Curtius took counseil of Phebus, and armed hym, and auntede hym hym in to pe chene;<sup>6</sup> panne anon fleigh a cukkow out of pat<sup>10</sup> chene.<sup>6</sup> Pan pe erpe closed to gidres, and so pe chene<sup>6</sup> was i-stopped. Anoper signe is Colossus<sup>11</sup> ymage, pat is i-cleped also pe ymage of pe Sonne, oper of Rome. Pere is grete wonder how it myzte be i-zote<sup>12</sup> oper arered, pe ymage is so grete. Pe lengþ perof is sixe score foot and sixe. Pis ymage was somtyme in pe ylond Rhodus,<sup>13</sup> fiftene foot hiþere þan pe hiþest place of<sup>14</sup> Rome. Pis ymage bare in his riȝt hond a spere<sup>15</sup> al round i-schape as pe world, and in his lift hand a swerd pat tokenep<sup>16</sup> myzt of bataille; in

TREVISA.

the feete of the horses supposede to have delyuerede hym by his arte; wherefore Marcus hade that memorialle. Men that calle hit Quintus Curtius<sup>17</sup> assigne this reason, seyenge that there was a place open in the myddes of the cite pereschenge mony men as with a brethe of sulphure, an answer ȝiffen to the peple that hit wolde not be schutte vn tulle that a man felle in to hit voluntarily. Then Quintus Curtius<sup>17</sup> armenge hym felle in to hit to delyuer the cite; that doen, a cukko did flye owte from that pytte, and the erthe was closed anoon. An other signe is an ymage of Colossus,<sup>11</sup> whom they seye to be the ymage of the sonne or elles of the cite of Rome, of whom hit is to be meruaylede how that so hevy a thyng myzhte be soe erecte, sythe hit is in longitude of c. foote and xxvi<sup>u</sup>; whiche ymage was somme tyme in the yle of Rhodus,<sup>13</sup> whiche was more hie in altitude by xv. foote then eny place of the cite. That ymage hade in the ryȝhte honde of hit a rownde thyng after the similitude of pe worlde, and a swerde in the signe of batelle in the lifte honde, in token that hit is lesse f. 40. a.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *yf he myght*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *the*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *remembraunce*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *and*, a., Cx.<sup>5</sup> *clyste* or *hoole*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *hool*, Cx., and so below.<sup>7</sup> *smook*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *slewe*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *men*, a.<sup>10</sup> *þe*, a.<sup>11</sup> *Colloesus*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> *yoten*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *Herodius*, MSS. and Cx.<sup>14</sup> *in*, Cx.<sup>15</sup> So the MSS. and Cx. for *sphere*.<sup>16</sup> *bytokeneth*, Cx.<sup>17</sup> *Cursius*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

tutis est quærerere quam quæsita tueri. Hæc quidem<sup>1</sup> statua ærea, sed imperiali auro deaurata, per tenebras radiabat continuo,<sup>2</sup> et æquali motu cum sole circumferebatur, semper solari corpori<sup>3</sup> faciem gerens oppositam, quam<sup>4</sup> cuncti Romani advenientes<sup>5</sup> in signum subjectionis adorabant. Hanc<sup>6</sup> Beatus Gregorius,<sup>7</sup> cum viribus non posset, igne supposito destruxit;<sup>8</sup> ex quo solummodo caput cum manu dextra sphæram tenente incendio superfuit, quæ nunc<sup>9</sup> ante palatium domini Papæ super<sup>10</sup> duas columnas marmoreas visuntur.<sup>11</sup> Miro<sup>12</sup> quoque modo ars fusilis adhuc in ære rigido molles mentitur capillos, et os loquenti<sup>13</sup> simillimum præfert.<sup>14</sup> *Pol., libro secundo.*<sup>15</sup> Ad venustandam urbis<sup>16</sup> majestatem muliebrem formam, quæ orbem dextra<sup>17</sup> contineret, in æris materia fieri fecerant;<sup>18</sup> qua perfecta quidam solas tibias tantæ moli perferendæ insufficientes sunt<sup>19</sup> causati, quibus faber statuæ

<sup>1</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *continue*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *speræ*, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *hanc*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *venientes flexis genibus adorabant*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *postmodum*, added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Papa*, added in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *combussit*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *etiam nunc*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *inter*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *vinciuntur*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Miroque*, A.C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *loquentis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *profert*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> So A.; *Plinius, libro sec.*, E.; *Poli., libro 1<sup>o</sup>*, B. The true reference is to Johan. Saresb. *Polycrat.* lib. ii. c. 15. Reference omitted in C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *orbis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>17</sup> *dextra orbem*, B.

<sup>18</sup> The previous clause slightly altered and transposed in C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *insufficientes causabant, quibus faber respondit*, C.D.

TREVISA.

tokeynge<sup>1</sup> pat pis<sup>2</sup> is lasse maistrie, to wynne and to conquere, þan it is to kepe and to saue pat pat is conquered and i-wonne. Þis ymage was of bras; but it was so rialliche ouer gilt, pat it schoon<sup>3</sup> in derknes, and ʒaf grete bemes of<sup>4</sup> liʒt; also it moued<sup>5</sup> aboute wip þe sonne in suche a manere pat alway his face was toward þe sonne. Alle þe Romaynes pat come þereby worschipped pat ymage in wey<sup>6</sup> of subieccioun and of praldom. Seynt Gregorie destroyed pat ymage wip fuyre, for he myʒte nouʒt destroye it wip strengþe. Of pat ymage is onliche i-left þe hede and the riʒt hond holdynge þe spere, pat is þe roundenesse and þe liknesse of þe world; for of al pat ymage lefte<sup>7</sup> namore vnbrend. But<sup>8</sup> pat hede and pat hond beþ now to fore þe popes palays vpon þe<sup>9</sup> tweie pilers of marbil; and wonderliche by craft of ʒetyng<sup>10</sup> pat bras is i-ʒote, pat þe heer semeþ nesche<sup>11</sup> to a manis siʒt, and þe moup as þey it were spekyng. *Polier.*,<sup>12</sup> *libro secundo*. For to hiʒte þe noblete of þe<sup>13</sup> citee þe Romaynes made a wommans ymage in bras; pat ymage helde in his<sup>14</sup> hond a spere þe schap<sup>15</sup> of þe world wyde. And whan þe ymage was made, hem semede pat þe legges were to feble for to bere suche an ymage; it was so grete and so huge.

vertu to gete then to kepe thynges y-geten. That ymage MS. HARL. 2261.  
was made of brasse, but hit was ouer gilte with golde imperialle, schynenge contynually in derkenesse, movenge egally with the son in his circumference, hade the face of hit contrarious alleweyes to the body of the sonne; whom alle Romanes worschippede in a signe of subieccion, whom Seynte Gregory destroyede with fyre; of whiche ymage the hede and ryʒhte honde remaynede, whiche be sette now afore the palice off the pope on ij. pyllers of marbole. *Policronicon*, *libro 2º*. The Romanes made an ymage of a woman, to make feire the maieste of the cite, in brasse; whiche performede, mony men seyde the legges of that ymage to be insufficiente to bere suche a burdon. To whom the smythe that made hit

<sup>1</sup> *token*, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> *hit*, a., Cx.<sup>3</sup> *shone*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *of*] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *meouede*, a.; *moued*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *tokene*, a., Cx.<sup>7</sup> *is*, or rather *was*, must be inserted before *lefte*.<sup>8</sup> *But*] om. a., Cx.<sup>9</sup> *þe*] om. a.<sup>10</sup> *milting*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *softe*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *Polier.*, a.<sup>13</sup> *this*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *hir*, Cx.; but perhaps his own correction.<sup>15</sup> So a. and Cx.; *sharpest*, MS. (not understanding *spere*).

respondit eas<sup>1</sup> usque quaque sufficere<sup>2</sup> donec virgo<sup>3</sup> pareret. Quod et factum est in Christi nativitate.<sup>4</sup> *Gregorius*.<sup>5</sup> Juxta palatium Vespasiani, ubi sus<sup>6</sup> alba de Pario lapide cum triginta porcellis aquam abluendis præbet, est<sup>7</sup> tabula ænea peccatum prohibens, ubi scripta sunt potiora legis præcepta; et scribuntur<sup>8</sup> ibi quasi aphorismi metrici, quorum<sup>9</sup> sententiæ supplementum pene subintelligitur. *Versus*:<sup>10</sup>

Gallus ibi quanquam<sup>11</sup> per noetem tinnipet omnem,  
Sed sua vox nulli<sup>12</sup> jure<sup>13</sup> placere potest.

Dulce pelora sonat, quam dicunt nomine troscam,<sup>14</sup>  
Sed fugiente die illa quieta manet.

Et merulus<sup>15</sup> modulans tam pulchris zinzitat<sup>16</sup> odis,  
Nocte ruente timet, cantica nulla canit.

Vere calente novo componit acredula cantus,  
Matutinali tempore ruricolans.

<sup>1</sup> *illas*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *sufficeret*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *virgo*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *nam tunc corruit*, added in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Gregorius*] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *versus albam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *Scribuntur etiam*, C.; *scribuntur autem*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *omnia fere verba subintelliguntur*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Versus*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> So B.; *quemquam*, A.C.D.E. and Trevisa.

<sup>12</sup> *ulli*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *viro*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *quodam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> *morulis*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *incitat*, B.; *zinzalat* is perhaps the true reading. See Du Cange.

Bot pe craftes men, pat it made, answered and seide : þe TREVISIA.  
 legges schal dure alway, and bere pe ymage at pe beste,  
 and neuere faille, for to<sup>1</sup> a mayde bere a childe. But pe  
 legges faillede, and pe ymage fel<sup>2</sup> down, whan Crist was  
 i-bore. Faste by Vespasianus his paleys is a stone pat  
 hatte Parius, [and is whyȝte marbil; and hatte Parius]<sup>3</sup> for  
 suche a stoon is i-digged in pe ilond pat hatte Paros. In  
 pat<sup>4</sup> stoon is i-corne a<sup>5</sup> white sowe wip pritty pigges, pat  
 fyndeþ<sup>6</sup> water to hem pat wol wasche.<sup>7</sup> Þere is also a  
 table of bras pat forbedeþ synne; perynne beep i-write pe  
 chief poyntes of pe lawe; þere beep i-write as þere were  
 rules in metre. Þe menyng perof is vnderstonde in pis  
 writynge, pat folweþ next :

Euerich nyȝt, pere<sup>8</sup> a cok  
 Wakeþ som man, or it dawe;  
 All his song in a flok  
 May like no man by pe lawe.

Whan somer<sup>9</sup> is hote  
 Þrostel<sup>10</sup> syngeþ wip mery note.  
 Whan þe day goþ away,  
 Þe brid<sup>11</sup> is stille, and leueþ his lay.

In towne, as it longes,  
 Þe osul twyttereþ mery songes.  
 At nyȝt for drede  
 Truly no song dop he grede.

Whan floures<sup>12</sup> springeþ on rote,  
 Þe nyȝtyngale in his note  
 Twyttereþ wel fawnyng  
 Wip full swete song in þe dawenyng.

Ȝafe answeze and seyde, that the ymage scholde stonde MS. HARL.  
 tyllle that a mayde scholde be delyuerede of a childe, whiche 2261.  
 felle down in the natiuite of Criste. Nye to the place and  
 palyce of Vespasian, where a whyte sowe made of ston with  
 xxx<sup>ti</sup> pygges ȝiffe the water to thynges to be waschen, is  
 a table of brasse prohibetenge synne, where the myȝhty  
 preceptes of the lawe bene wryten.

<sup>1</sup> *vnto*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *fil*, a.

<sup>3</sup> Words in brackets added from  
 a.; absent from Cx., who has other  
 omissions.

<sup>4</sup> *pat*] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; *i cornere white*, MS.

<sup>6</sup> *giue*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Cx. adds *there*.

<sup>8</sup> *where*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So a.; *some*, MS.

<sup>10</sup> *the throstle*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *birde*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *floure*, Cx.



Cum turdus <sup>1</sup> tritulat,<sup>2</sup> sturnus tunc pausitat ore;  
Sed <sup>3</sup> quod <sup>4</sup> mane canunt vespere non recolunt.

## CAP. XXV.

*De quibusdam Romanorum<sup>5</sup> institutis.*

*Isidorus, libro octavo decimo, capitulo de triumphis,<sup>6</sup> et Hugutio, capitulo Tris.<sup>7</sup> Venienti<sup>8</sup> duci, regi, consuli, sive imperatori post insignem victoriam ad urbem Romam<sup>9</sup> triumphus parabatur, id est, honor triplex triumphanti<sup>10</sup> exhibebatur. Nam totus populus cum exultatione varia exibat<sup>11</sup> obviam victori. Captivi quoque<sup>12</sup> sequebantur currum ejus<sup>13</sup> ligatis post terga manibus, et ipse victor induebatur tunica Jovis in<sup>14</sup> curru sedens, quem trahebant quatuor equi albi usque<sup>15</sup> ad Capitolium: unde Ovidius:*

Quatuor in niveis, Cæsar, abibis<sup>16</sup> equis.

Hanc tamen ferebat<sup>17 18</sup> molestiam sic honoratus, ne<sup>19</sup> sui ipsius oblivisceretur, quia cum eo ponebatur servus

<sup>1</sup> *timidus truculat*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *titulat*, C.; *trutilat*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Et*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *quæ*, B.; *q*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *observantiis et*, added in C.; *observantiis* in place of *institutis*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *capitulo de triumphis*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *de tris*, C.D. The title of Hugutio's section is *tres vel tris*.

<sup>8</sup> *Venienti*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *redeunti*, added in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *triumphanti*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *exibant*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *victoris*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *et sic ducebatur ad*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *abibit*, C.; *abibat*, B. The true reading is *aureus ibis*. (Ovid. 1 *Am.* 214.)

<sup>17</sup> *patiebatur*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Hanc . . . ferebat*] Attamen molestia, B.

<sup>19</sup> *nam aliquis servilis conditionis sedens in curru jugiter colaphizabat triumphantem, sic dicens, Nothisseltos, &c.*, C.D.

Dral makip his fare,  
 Wip mouth þan chetereþ<sup>1</sup> þe stare.  
 Of morwe song kynde  
 Þey haueth at eue no mynde.

TREVISA.  
—*Capitulum vicesimum quintum.**De quibusdam Romanorum institutis et obseruantis.*

*Isidorus, Etym., libro octavo decimo, cap. de triumphis, et Hugutio, cap. Tris.* Whan duke, kyng, consul, oper emperour hadde i-doo greet viage<sup>2</sup> and victorie, and come into Rome, at his comynge he schulde wip<sup>3</sup> þre manere wor-schippe be vnderfonge.<sup>4</sup> Al þe peple schulde come aʒenst hym wip all þe solempne<sup>5</sup> merþe, comfote, and ioie þat þey koupe make; alle þe prisoneres schulde folwe þe<sup>6</sup> chaar wip hire hondes i-bounde byhynde her bakkes; þis victor hym self schulde were on Iupiter his cote and sitte in<sup>7</sup> a chaar þat fyue white hors schulde drawe anon to<sup>8</sup> þe Capitol. Þerof spekep Ouidius:

Wip foure hors all snowe white  
 Þou schalt, sire Emperour, wende.

ʒit among all þis worschippe, for he schulde not forʒete hym self, þis onnuy<sup>9</sup> he hadde: a cherle was wip hym in

*Of somme institutes and obseruaunces of the Romanes.* MS. HARL.  
*Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro octavo decimo, capitulo Triumphus, et Hugutio, capitulo Tris. Capitulum vicesimum quintum.* 2261.  
 —

A triplicate honor was ʒiffen to a kynge, duke, consul, or emperoure hauenge victory, in his commenge to the cite of Rome; for the peple wente furthe to mete the victor with variable gladdenesse, the charyette of whom men putte in captiuite folowede, theire hondes bownde behynde the backes of theyme. Also the victor was induede with the coote of Iupiter, syttenge in a charyette whom iiij. white horses didde drawe to þe Capitoly.<sup>10</sup> A victor thus hade in honor suffrede an oper grevaunce, þat he scholde not forgete hym selfe, in the charyette of whom a seruaunte of vile con-

<sup>1</sup> chiterith, Cx.<sup>2</sup> don ony grete voyage, Cx.<sup>3</sup> re before þre in MS. (not a.)<sup>4</sup> receyued, Cx.<sup>5</sup> solempne, a.<sup>6</sup> his, Cx.<sup>7</sup> on, a., Cx.<sup>8</sup> vnto, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So MS. and a.; this one annoy, Cx.<sup>10</sup> to þe Capitoly, added in the margin, apparently by the original scribe.

in eodem curru, qui jugiter colaphizaret triumphan-  
tem; et hoc duplici de causa, ne scilicet triumphans  
nimis<sup>1</sup> ex tali gloria superbiret, et etiam<sup>2</sup> ut daretur  
spes cuique<sup>3</sup> probo perveniendi ad consimilem, hono-  
rem, si probitas sua hoc promereretur. Colaphizans  
vero sæpius dicebat triumphanti “Γνώθι σεαυτόν,”<sup>4</sup>  
id est, *nosce teipsum*, quasi diceret, “Noli superbi-  
re de tanto honore.”<sup>5</sup> Et eo<sup>6</sup> die licuit<sup>7</sup> unicuique de  
populo dicere victori<sup>8</sup> impune quicquid vellet. Unde  
et Julio<sup>9</sup> triumphanti multæ dicebantur contumeliæ,<sup>10</sup>  
nulla tamen<sup>11</sup> ultione subsequente. Nam a quodam  
dicebatur, “Salve, calve;” et ab alio, “Ave, Rex et  
“Regina.” *Ranulphus*. Vide infra de Julio Cæsare. In  
*vita Johannis Eleemosynarii*.<sup>12</sup> Quando imperatores co-  
ronabantur, venerunt ad eos ædificatores monumentorum,  
inquirentes<sup>13</sup> de quali metallo<sup>14</sup> seu lapide Cæsar vellet  
suum monumentum fieri, quasi diceret, “Corruptibilis es,  
“pie regnum dispone.” *Hugutio, capitulo Clarus*. Quan-  
do Romani bellum<sup>15</sup> indicare volebant, accedebat aliquis

<sup>1</sup> nimis after gloria, B.

<sup>2</sup> etiam] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> cuicumque, B.E.

<sup>4</sup> Nothisselitos, A.; Nothiselites, B.;  
Nothisselitos, C.D.; Nichoeselitos, E.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. thus: *Hoc autem duplici fie-  
bat de causa, ne videlicet triumphans  
sui ipsius oblivisceretur, et ut daretur  
spes cuicumque probo similem hono-  
rem consequendi.*

<sup>6</sup> illo, B.

<sup>7</sup> licuit after populo, B.

<sup>8</sup> triumphanti, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> Cæsari aliquotiens sic, added in  
C.D.

<sup>10</sup> multa dicebantur convitia, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> absque ulla, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> B. . . *Eleemosinarij*] om. C.D.  
which have, in place of it, *Valerius*.  
The text is correct. See Jac. de  
Vorag. *Leg. Aur.* c. 27. (p. 130. ed.  
Lips. 1850.)

<sup>13</sup> dicentes, C.

<sup>14</sup> seu marmore jubet vestra domi-  
natio monumentum fieri, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> cuiquam provinciæ, C.D.

his chare, and smote hym all wey in þe nekke; and þat for tweye skilles; þat oon was, for he schulde nouȝt be proude of þat greet worschippe; þat oper skile was, for euerich man schulde hope to come to þat worschippe, ȝif he made hym self worpy by his dedes. While þe cherle smoot þe victor, he schulde ofte seie to hym in þis manere: Nothisselitos,<sup>1</sup> þat is to menyng, *Knowe þyself*; as who seip, Be nouȝt to proude of þis worschippe. And also þat day euerich man hadde leue to seie to þe victor what euere he wolde, and no blame schulde take.<sup>2</sup> And so were meny disputous worde<sup>3</sup> i-seide to Iulius Cesar [and he took þerof no maner wreche. On seide to Iulius Cesar]<sup>4</sup> at suche<sup>5</sup> a tyme: "Salue, calue;" þat is, "*Hail, ballard*;" and anoper seide: "Heile, kyng and quene." R. Loke wiȝ ynne Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*. When þe emperoures of Rome were i-crowned, come<sup>6</sup> to hem crafter men þat made tombes, and axed<sup>7</sup> of hem of what manere stoon oper metal þey schulde make her tombes; as who seip, "Þow schalt deye;"<sup>8</sup> gouerne myldeliche þy peple." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus*. When þe Romaynes wolde werry in eny lond, schulde oon goo to þe endes of þat lond and clere-

TREVISA.

dicion was putte, whiche scholde bobbe besily the victor, MS. HARL. 2261.  
and that for two causes. Oon was, That þe victor scholde not be ouer prowde of suche glory; an other was, And also in token that euery man myȝhte comme to the same honor if his manhode extendede labor to that merite. And the seruauante bobbenge hym seyde ofte tymes, "*Knowe thy selfe*;" as if he scholde saye, "Be not prowde of this victory." In f. 40 b. whiche day hyt was lawefulle to euery man and woman to saye to þe victor after their pleasure with owte eny payne. Of somme men hit was saide, "*Haile, balleded man*;" of somme, "*Hayle, kyng*." R. Beholde in this processe how thei seyde to Iulius Cesar. *In vita Iohannis Eleemosynarii*. When emperoures were crownede, makers of graves come to theyme inquirenge of what metalle he wolde his berialle to be made, as if he scholde say, "*Thow arte corruptible, dispose the empire mekely*." *Hugutio, capit. Clarus*. When the Romanes intendede to ȝiffe batelle to eny cuntre, oon of theyme scholde goe to the costes of their enmyes and

<sup>1</sup> So MS. and a.; *Notho solitos*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *sholde he take therfore*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *wordes*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> The words in brackets added from a. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> *siche*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *sholde come*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *axe*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *deye*] Added from Cx.

ad fines hostium et clara voce causas belli exponebat. Et talis expositio vocabatur clarigatio.<sup>1</sup> Et tunc hasta defixa in finibus hostium principium pugnae denunciabat. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.*<sup>2</sup> Tempore consulum milites Romani pridie quam pugnarent<sup>3</sup> rosea veste<sup>4</sup> induebantur, quod<sup>5</sup> fiebat ad celandum sanguinem,<sup>6</sup> ne viso sanguine<sup>7</sup> corda militum<sup>8</sup> trepidarent. Inde et<sup>9</sup> rosati dicebantur. *Ranulphus.* Nota<sup>10</sup> hic, secundum Papiam et Hugutionem, quod Virgilius poeta vocat gentem Romanam *togatam*, quia veste toga utebantur. Erat autem triplex toga, videlicet, praetextata, palmata, candidata. Praetextata utebantur filii nobilium usque ad tertium decimum aetatis annum, et postmodum toga. Secunda toga utebantur victores. Tertia toga utebantur magistratus in re publica.<sup>10</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* Dies quibus bene contigit Romanis vocabantur fasti, eo quod fas erat<sup>11</sup> in illis exercere causas et negotia.<sup>12</sup> Dies vero in<sup>13</sup> quibus male contingebat illis<sup>14</sup> vocabantur nefasti, quasi non fasti;<sup>15</sup> et illos dies malos colebant,<sup>16</sup> non

<sup>1</sup> quae quidem expositio clarigatio dicebatur, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> So A.D., rightly; lib. nono, E. cap. xxi., B.

<sup>3</sup> dimicaturi essent, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> seu purpurea, added in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> hoc autem, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> si forsan vulnerentur, added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> viso sanguine] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> militum] om. B.C.D.

<sup>9</sup> et] om. A.B.C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *Ranulphus. Nota . . . publica]* om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> esset, B.C.D.

<sup>12</sup> Transposed, C.D. Partly repeated in B. by error of the scribe.

<sup>13</sup> in] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> illis] om. A.C.D.

<sup>15</sup> quasi non fasti] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> et celebrabant, added in C.D.



liche declare and schewe þe matire and cause of the werre, and þat declaracioun was i-cleped clarigatio.<sup>1</sup> Þanne a spere i-pyzt in þe ende of þe londe warned þat þe Romayns wolde werre. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, cap. vicesimo secundo.* While consuls ruled Rome, þe knyžtes of Rome schulde were rede clopes þe day to fore þat þey schulde fižte. Þat was i-do for þey schulde not knowe and be abashed, whan þey say þe reed blood renne on hir clopes; and suche knyžtes were i-cleped Rosati, as it were i-cloped in roses. R. Take hede þat<sup>2</sup> Papy seith, Virgil clepeþ the Romayns togati; þat beep men i-cloped in gownes. Pre manere gownes þey vsede and were i-hote, Pretextata,<sup>3</sup> Palmata, Candidata. Þe firste manere gowne, Pretextata, gentil men<sup>4</sup> children vsede for to þey were<sup>5</sup> fouretene žere olde; þe secounde manere, Palmata, vsede victoris for here noble dedes; þe pridde manere gowne, Candidata, vsed lordes and maistres<sup>6</sup> of þe lawe. *Hugutio, cap. Fastus.* Þe dayes þat þe Romayns wel spedde heet fasti, þat is, *lef*ful, for it was<sup>7</sup> leful to hem þylk<sup>8</sup> dayes to vse dyuers doynge and dedes. Dayes<sup>9</sup> þat þe Romaynes mysspedde were i-hote nefasti, as it were *noužt leef*ful, and [þey] byhelde<sup>10</sup> pilke dayes and wroužt noužt pilke dayes,<sup>11</sup> but noužt for loue and<sup>12</sup> deuocioun, but

TREVISA.

expresse with a clere voice the causes of batelle, and suche an expression was callede a clarigacion. Then the spere of the messengere defixede in to the erthe schewede a pre-nosticacion and as a begynnege of fižhte. *Isidorus, libro nono decimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo.* What tyme the consules were reignenge in Rome the knyžtes of the Romanes [wente]<sup>13</sup> in clothege of redde in the day a fore they scholde fižte, that theire hertes scholde not be in fray or feere to beholde bloode. Wherefore the Romanes were callede Rosati, as clothede in redde. *Hugutio, capitulo Fastus.* The dayes in whom the Romans hade victory and spedde welle were callede fasti, in so moche that hit was lawefulle to theyme in those daies to exercise theire causes and erneddes. And the dayes in whom hit happede ylle to theyme were callede nefasti, in whom thei worschippede ylle thynges, not for cause of deuocion or of luffe but

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> clarigacion, Cx.<sup>2</sup> what, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Pretaxata, MS. and Cx.<sup>4</sup> gentilmens, Cx.<sup>5</sup> for to were of xiiij., Cx.<sup>6</sup> maystres rulers, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Four words preceding wanting in MS.<sup>8</sup> So Cx.; þat, MS.<sup>9</sup> þat dayes, a.; the dayes, Cx.<sup>10</sup> and they heelde, Cx.<sup>11</sup> pilke dayes] om. Cx.<sup>12</sup> and] ne, Cx.<sup>13</sup> This or some similar word is omitted.

causa devotionis et amoris sed timore<sup>1</sup> infortunii. *Hugutio, capitulo Quinque.*<sup>2</sup> Unde et quinquatria dicuntur illi<sup>3</sup> quinque atri dies, sive festum illorum dierum quos Romani sustinuerunt<sup>4</sup> obsessi a Gallis et ab Hannibale; quibus diebus nullus Romanus audebat egredi urbem.<sup>5</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* Cum instituisset Romulus<sup>6</sup> rem publicam, divisit populum in duas partes, majores scilicet<sup>7</sup> et minores, et utramque partem vocavit classem a quibusdam classicis, id est, sonis vel signis, quæ<sup>8</sup> inter se distincta habebant. Unde et<sup>9</sup> nobiles dicebantur prima classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem Maium,<sup>10</sup> id est, Majorum. Inferiores dicebantur secunda classis, in quorum honorem instituit mensem<sup>10</sup> Junium, quasi Juniorum. Postmodum Romani divisi sunt<sup>11</sup> in quatuor partes, in quarum prima<sup>12</sup> erant consules, dictatores, qui<sup>13</sup> summos tenebant<sup>14</sup> honores. In secunda classi erant<sup>15</sup> tribuni, et qui minores tenebant<sup>16</sup> dignitates. In tertia classe fuerant<sup>17</sup> liberi, in quarta servi.

<sup>1</sup> *consimilis*, added in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> 5, C. The versions have the same error.

<sup>3</sup> *illi*] om. B.D.

<sup>4</sup> *sustinuerunt Romani*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *ausus fuit*, A.; *urbem egredi*, A.B. The sentence abbreviated and clauses transposed in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> Transposed in A.C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *scilicet*] om. A.

<sup>8</sup> *per quem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *distincta erat*. (sic.) *Nobiles*,

C.D. The readings of A. are blundered in the four lines following.

<sup>10</sup> *Maium . . . mensem*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *dividebantur*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *In prima classe erant*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *qui*] *et qui*, A.D.

<sup>14</sup> *habebant*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *erant*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *habebant*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *classe fuerant*] om. B.C.D.; *fuerant* only omitted in A.

for drede of euel happes. *Hugutio, cap. quinto.* Þe feste of pilke dayes is i-cleped *Quinquatria*, þat is, þe fyue bl[a]k<sup>1</sup> dayes, for þe sorwe and þe<sup>2</sup> bitternesse þat þe Romayns mysspedde<sup>3</sup> whan þe Frensche men and Hannibal<sup>4</sup> bysegged hem all aboute. For þan no Romayn dorste ones goo out of towne.<sup>5</sup> *Hugutio, cap. Classis.* Whan Romulus hadde ordeyned for the comoun profiȝt, he departed atwynne<sup>6</sup> þe grete and þe mene, and cleped eiper partie Classis,<sup>7</sup> for certeyne noyse and signes þat þey were by departed, þat we[re] i-cleped classica. And so þe gentil<sup>8</sup> men and noble were i-cleped first þe firste classis. In worschippe of hem<sup>9</sup> he ordeyned a monthe and cleped hym Maius, þat is, þe monþe of þe grete men. Þe mene<sup>10</sup> men were i-cleped þe secounde classis, and in worschipe of hem he ordeyned a monþe, and cleped hym Iunius, þat is, þe monþe of ȝonge<sup>11</sup> men. Afterward þe Romaynes were departed in foure parties. In þe firste partie were consuls and doctoures; in þe secounde classis were tribuni and men of lasse dignite; in þe þridde were fre men; and in þe fourþe

TREVISIA.

for drede of infortuny. *Hugutio, capitulo quinto.* Of whom MS. HARL. quinquatria were namede v. blacke daies, or the feste of 2261. those daies in whom the Romanes, besegede of Frenche men and of Hannibal,<sup>4</sup> susteynede mony thynges, in whiche dayes noo Roman hade audacite to go furthe of that cite. *Hugutio, capitulo Classis.* When Romulus hade institute the commune vtilite he diuidede the peple in to tweyne parties, into the moore nowble men and lesse nowble, callenge either parte of theyme classis of sowndes and signes whom thei hade distincte amonge theyme selfe. Wherefore the nowble men were callede Prima Classis, the firste companye. In the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Maij, Menses that is, of grete men. The other inferior parte was callede Maii et Junii in-stituuntur. the secounde companye, in the honor of whom he ordeynede the monethe of Iunius, that is to saye, of yonger men. Afterwarde the Romanes were diuidede in to iiij. partes. In the firste parte of whom were consules and men of grete honor. In the secunde parte were tribunes and men of lesse dignite. In the thrydde parte free men; and in

<sup>1</sup> black, Cx.; blake, a.<sup>2</sup> þe] om. a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> mysspedde] had, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Hanybal or Hanibal, MSS. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> the toun, Cx.<sup>6</sup> a sondre, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Cx. has large omissions here.<sup>8</sup> jantil, a.<sup>9</sup> MS. repeats in worschippe after hem.<sup>10</sup> So a. and Cx.; merie, MS.<sup>11</sup> ȝongere, a. and Cx.

*Hugutio, capitulo Calon.*<sup>1</sup> Consuetum fuit apud Romanos<sup>2</sup> ut in<sup>3</sup> quolibet mense nundinas celebrarent, quæ inciperent<sup>4</sup> prima die nonarum et durarent<sup>5</sup> usque ad primum diem Iduum. Idus namque idem est quod divisio, quia tunc dividebantur a nundinis; verum<sup>6</sup> quia venturi<sup>7</sup> ad nundinas ignorabant frequenter principia<sup>8</sup> mensium, ideo semper prima die mensis (quæ vocabatur pluraliter kalendæ a *calo-las*,<sup>9</sup> quod est *vocare*,) ascende-  
bat præco turrim et totiens clamabat *Calo*,<sup>10</sup> (id est, Voco vos ad nundinas,) quot restabant dies usque<sup>11</sup> ad in-  
ceptionem nundinarum; <sup>12</sup> ut, si in quarto die inciperent nundinæ, quater dicebat *Calo*. Inde est quod aliquis mensis in<sup>13</sup> kalendario habet tantum<sup>14</sup> quatuor nonas, aliquis mensis<sup>15</sup> sex nonas. Quod ideo fiebat ut latrones insidiantes mercatoribus in silvis absconsi<sup>16</sup> nescirent, quando forum inciperet. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Milites<sup>17</sup> Romani<sup>18</sup> post sexagesimum ætatis<sup>19</sup> annum non cogeantur militare, sed dabatur illis<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *cason*, B. The text is correct. Hugut. MS. Cambr. Univ. Libr. has: *Calon* Græce: Latine *lignum*: soon after which follows Higden's extract.

<sup>2</sup> *Romanis*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *in*] om. C.D.; *in qualibet*, A. Similar errors of gender occur elsewhere, and are not always recorded.

<sup>4</sup> *incipiebant*, B.C.D. (not A.)

<sup>5</sup> *durabant*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *et*, C.D.; *at*, A.B.

<sup>7</sup> *venientes*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *principium mensis*, A.B.C.D., which last have other very slight variations, just below.

<sup>9</sup> *calo, calas*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Calo*, badly repeated in B.C.D.; *calo-las*, A., which is worse.

<sup>11</sup> *usque*] om. C.

<sup>12</sup> *fori*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *sex nonas habet*, C.D., omitting the rest.

<sup>14</sup> *tantum habet*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *mensis*] vero, B.

<sup>16</sup> *absconditi*, C.; *latitantes*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *quondam*, added in A.B.C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Romani*] om. A.

<sup>19</sup> *ætatis*] om. A.B.C.

<sup>20</sup> *tunc eis*, C.; *eis tunc*, D.

were bonde men. Tribunus is he pat fongeþ<sup>1</sup> tribute, and payeþ knyȝtes, and a ledere<sup>2</sup> of a powsand knyȝtes hatte tribunus. *Hugutio, cap. Calen.* þe Romayns vsed somtyme in eueriche monþe to make a faire, and þe faire bygan þe firste day of þe Nonis,<sup>3</sup> and durede to þe firste day of Idus. Idus is to menyngē<sup>4</sup> delynge and departynge; for þan þe feire was departed. Also for þe begynnyngē of the monthe was ofte tyme vnknowe of<sup>5</sup> marchaundes and to chapmen, perfore the firste day of þe monþe þat<sup>6</sup> hatte *Kalende*, of *calo*, *calas*, þat is, to clepe and crie. A cryour schulde stonde vppon a toure, and as meny dayes as were from þat day to þe bygynnyngē of the feire, he schulde crie, "Calo;" perfore it is þat som<sup>7</sup> monþe in þe kalendere haþ but foure Nonas, and som haþ sixe. And þat was i-doo, for peffes (þat were<sup>8</sup> i-hud<sup>9</sup> in woodes for to aspye chapmen) schulde not knowe<sup>10</sup> whan þe faire schulde bygnne. *Hugutio, cap. Mereor.* Som tyme knyȝtes after þey were sixty wynter<sup>11</sup> olde were noȝt compelled forto do deedes of armes; but me<sup>12</sup> ȝaf hem feldes oper townes oper somewhat

TREVisA.

the iiij<sup>th</sup> parte seruauntes. *Hugutio, capitulo Calen.* The Romanes vsede to have feires in eury monethe whiche began in the firste day of Nones durenge vn to the firste day of the Idus. Idus is nouȝte elles but a diuision; for then men were diuidede from the feires. And for cause men commenge to the feires were ignoraunte ofte tymes of the begynnyngē of the monethe, therfore a bydelle, or the crier of the cite ascendede in to a towre in to the markethe, and seyde so many tymes, "Calo, calo," (that is to seye, "y calle yow to the feires,") as were dayes vn to the begynnyngē of hit; as and if the feires scholde begynne in the iiij<sup>th</sup> day, he scholde saye iiij. tymes calo. Therefore hit is that somme monethe in the calendary hathe iiij. nones oonly; somme monethe vj., whiche was ordeynede for this cause that thefes ȝiffenge wacches to marchauntes lyenge priuely in woodes scholde not knowe when the feires scholde begynne. *Hugutio, capitulo Mereor.* Somme tyme knyȝtes in Rome were not constreynede to exercise the actes of cheuallery after the age of lx. yere; but lyvelode was ȝiffen

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> fangeth, a.; receyuet, Cx., as usual.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. adds, or capitain.

<sup>3</sup> Nonas, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> is as moche to saye as, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> to, a., Cx.; the latter omits of the monthe, just above.

<sup>6</sup> þet, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> in somme, Cx. (typ. error.)

<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; we, MS.

<sup>9</sup> hidde, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> i-knowe, MS. (not Cx.)

<sup>11</sup> yere, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> men, Cx.



villa vel ager vel aliquid<sup>1</sup> de re publica unde viverent, et tunc vocabatur miles emeritus,<sup>2</sup> vel emeritæ militiæ,<sup>3</sup> quasi positus extra meritum militiæ.<sup>4 5</sup> *Ranulphus*.<sup>6</sup> Inde quædam taberna trans Tiberim vocabatur<sup>7</sup> Emeritoria, quia ibi milites emeriti<sup>8</sup> symbola sua expendebant.<sup>9</sup> *Hugutio*,<sup>10</sup> *capitulo Nea*.<sup>11</sup> Consuetum fuit apud Romanos<sup>12</sup> ut usque ad horam nonam cives de commodo rei publicæ tractarent,<sup>13</sup> nec alteri delectationi vacarent; unde et meretrices Romanæ vocabantur nonariæ, quia ante horam nonam non licuit eis egredi prostibula sua, ne forte<sup>14</sup> impedirent juvenes ab utilitate rei publicæ. *Hugutio*, *capitulo Nepa*.<sup>10</sup> Olim pueri Romani non tradebantur patribus propriis ad erudiendum seu nutriendum, quia præsumebatur quod præ nimia affectione eos non verberarent,<sup>15</sup> nec etiam tradebantur magistris omnino ignotis,<sup>16</sup> eo quod extra-

<sup>1</sup> *quippiam*, added in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *dicebantur milites emeriti*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *vel emeritæ militiæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Transposed in A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *quia nil postea ex militia merebantur*, added in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Ranulphus*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> *dicebatur*, A.; *videtur dici*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *emeriti*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> So A.B.; transposed in E.; slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Hugutio . . . Nepa*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *Stea*, A.B.; *Sta*, D. The text is correct. Hugutio's section begins: *Nea Græci dicunt novem*;

soon after which follows Higden's extract.

<sup>12</sup> *apud Romanos*] om. A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *disputarent*, A.B.; *tractare et disputare*, D. (omitting *ut*), which proceeds thus: *nec licebat quengquam ante illam horam delectationibus vacare; unde et, &c.*

<sup>14</sup> *forsan*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *dilectione nollent filios verberare*, C.D. (with other very slight alterations.) The readings of C.D. agree more nearly with Hugutio's text (cap. *Nepa*).

<sup>16</sup> *omnino extraneis magistris*, C.D.; *extraneis*, A.B.

elles of<sup>1</sup> þe comyn tresorie, wherby þei schulde leue. And pan suche a knyȝt was i-cleped *Emeritus* (oper Emeryte) *militie*, as it were a knyȝt i-sett out of þe myddel<sup>2</sup> dedes of chyualrie. R. Þerfore Achanarii<sup>3</sup> pat is by-ȝonde Tyber heet Emeritoria; for<sup>4</sup> knyȝtes spende<sup>5</sup> þare what þey hadde raper<sup>6</sup> i-gadered and i-wonne. *Hugutio, cap. Sita.*<sup>7</sup> Hit was vsage in Rome pat þe citezeyns schulde doo nouȝt<sup>8</sup> elles to fore none but despute of þe comyn profit:<sup>9</sup> þerfore comyn wommen of Rome were i-cleped *Nonarie*, for þey schulde nouȝt to fore none goon oute of<sup>10</sup> here comoun place, leste þey schulde lette ȝonge men from the comyn profiȝte. *Hugutio, cap. Nepa.* Somtyme in Rome fader and moder schulde nouȝt norische and teche hire owne children; for me supposed<sup>11</sup> pat he<sup>12</sup> wolde be to tendre of hem<sup>13</sup> and nouȝt chast<sup>14</sup> hem and bete hem to sore.<sup>15</sup> [Neyther maystres that were al straunge and out of the kynne shold teche childeren of Rome, lest they wold

TREVISA.

MS. HARL.

2261.

to theyme, or somme goodes of thynges commune whereby thei myȝhte lyffe, and then the knyȝhte was callede *Emeritus*, as putte with owte the merite of cheuallery. R. Wherefore a tauerne ouer Tiber was callede *Emeritoria*, where knyȝhtes put with owte merite of cheuallery spende theire goodes. *Hugutio, capitulo Seea.* Also a consuetude was amonge Romanes that the citesynnes scholde dispute of the commune profette vn tylle none: and not attende to eny other delectacion. Wherefore the harlottes at Rome were callede *nonarix*, for hit was not lawefulle to theyme to passe theire places, leste they scholde lette yonge men from the commune vtilite. *Hugutio, capitulo Nepa.* Somme tyme children in Rome were not taken to theire faders to lerne or to be noryschede, for hit was presumede that the faders wolde not chastise theire children for the grete luffe that they wolde schewe to theyme; neither thei wyllde not their children to be taken to maistres that were not of theire kynrede, for a

<sup>1</sup> of] So a. and Cx.; for, MS.

<sup>2</sup> medful, a.; nedeful, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Anatarij, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> for suche, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> spende, a.

<sup>6</sup> to fore gotten, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> lita, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> not, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> profiȝt, a.

<sup>10</sup> of] to, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> for it was supposed, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> they, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> of hem] om. Cx.

<sup>14</sup> chastyse, Cx. (omitting hem.)

<sup>15</sup> to sore] om. Cx.

neus parum curat de extraneo.<sup>1</sup> Sed tradebantur patris,<sup>2</sup> qui non nimis propinqui nec nimis remoti erant.<sup>3</sup> *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* Erant in urbe proletarii, qui causa gignendæ prolis<sup>4</sup> semper in urbe morabantur, nec exire ad arma cogebantur.<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus.* Tempore tamen Hannibalis cogebantur tales exire ad arma propter militum penuriam.<sup>6</sup> *Valerius, libro secundo.*<sup>7</sup> Ab urbe condita usque ad centesimum sexagesimum annum divortium nullum<sup>8</sup> inter conjuges fuerat.<sup>9</sup> Primus tamen Carbilus Spurius<sup>10</sup> uxorem suam<sup>11</sup> duntaxat<sup>12</sup> causa sterilitatis dimisit; qui, quamvis ratione motus videretur, reprehensione tamen non caruit, quia cupiditatem liberorum fidei conjugali præposuit. *Isidorus,*<sup>13</sup> *libro sexto.* Quamvis Græci primum cum stylis ferreis in cera scripserunt, Romani tamen statuerunt<sup>14</sup> ut nullus stylo ferreo sed tantum<sup>15</sup> osseo scriberet. *Pol.,*<sup>16</sup> *libro secundo.* Siquis<sup>17</sup> ab initio urbis<sup>18</sup> con-

<sup>1</sup> quia extranei parum curant de extraneis, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> C.D. add *et avunculis.*

<sup>3</sup> Slightly altered in C.D. For non A. has nec.

<sup>4</sup> gignendorum liberorum, C.B.

<sup>5</sup> Transposed in A.B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> coacti sunt ad bellum exire, C.D.; coacti sunt exire propter penuriam militum, A.B.

<sup>7</sup> primo, B.; quarto, D. The text is correct. See Val. Max., lib. ii. c. 1. § 4.

<sup>8</sup> nullum divortium, B.

<sup>9</sup> fuit, A.; virum et mulierem fuit, C.D. (with other very slight alterations.)

<sup>10</sup> autem Spurius Carbilus, C.D., more correctly.

<sup>11</sup> suam] om. A.B.

<sup>12</sup> duntaxat] om. C.D. (with slight alterations just afterwards); transposed in A.B.

<sup>13</sup> Etymologia, added in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> interdixerunt, C.D. (with slight alterations just before.)

<sup>15</sup> tantum] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> So A.B.; Plinius, C.D.; Valerius, E. The true reference is to Johan. Sarisb. Polycrat., lib. ii. c. 15.

<sup>17</sup> Si qui, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> urbis totam, A.

recche to lytel of the childeren, and bete hem to sore].<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 Perfore maistres schulde teche pe children of Rome pat  
 were nouzt to nyȝ, oper<sup>2</sup> to fer of hire own kin. *Hugutio*,  
*cap. Proles.* Pere were som tyme men<sup>3</sup> in Rome pat serued  
 of nouzt elles but for to gete<sup>4</sup> children and dwelle<sup>5</sup> all  
 wey in pe citee, and were nozt compelled to doo dedes  
 of armes. And suche men were i-cleped *proletarii*, pat is  
 geteris<sup>6</sup> of children. R.<sup>7</sup> Neuerpeles in Hannibals tyme  
 pey were i-constreyned for to goo out of<sup>8</sup> skarsnesse of  
 knyȝtes. *Valerie, libro secundo.* An hundred ȝere and  
 sixti after pat pe citee was i-buld was no deuors i-made  
 bytwene a man and his wyf. Neuerpeles Carbilius, a  
 bastard, was pe firste pat lifte<sup>9</sup> his wif, onliche for pe  
 womman was bareyne. Pei he semed i-meued of resoun, ȝit  
 he was nouzt al blameles: for he putte couetise of children  
 to fore pe fey<sup>10</sup> of wedlock. *Isidorus, libro sexto.* Pey pe  
 Grees write first yn wex wip poynteles of yren, the Ro-  
 mayns ordeyned pat no man schulde write wip poynteles  
 of yren but wip poyntels of boon. *Pol., libro secundo.*  
 Who pat wil<sup>11</sup> loke bookes of stories among all men pat

straungeour ȝiffe the litelle attendaunce of an other straun- MS. HARL.  
 geour; but thei were of theire kynne, as vncles to theyme, 2261.  
 whiche were not ouer nye to theyme neiper ouer ferre  
 from theyme. *Hugutio, capitulo Proles.* There were men  
 in the cite of Rome whiche taryede in the cite for multi-  
 plicacion of childer, and were not coacte to goe furthe to  
 batelles, R. Neuerthelesse they were coacte in the tyme of  
 Hannibal for pennury of knyȝhtes. *Valerius, libro secundo.*  
 From the cite made unto clx. yere folowenge was movede  
 noo diuorce. The firste man inducenge hit was callede  
 Carbilius,<sup>12</sup> a bastarde, whiche departede from his wife be  
 cause that sche hade not childer, whiche hade schame and  
 reprove ynowe for hit, whiche sette before the luffe of  
 childre to the luffe of matrimony. *Isidorus, libro sexto.*  
 Thauȝhe the Grekes did wryte ffirste in wexes with poyntelles,  
 neuerthelesse the Romanes ordeynede that noo man scholde  
 wryte with an instrument of irne, but made of boon. *Polycraton*,<sup>13</sup> *libro secundo.* If a man reuolue in his mynde

<sup>1</sup> The sentence in brackets added from Cx., whose orthography is retained. It is omitted in a.

<sup>2</sup> *noper*, a.; *ne*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *men*] om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; *geten*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *dwellyd*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *geters*, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> R.] Added from Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *for*, a.

<sup>9</sup> *lefte*, a., Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *feyth*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *wole*, a.

<sup>12</sup> *Scarbilius*, Harl. MS.

<sup>13</sup> So written at length in Harl. MS., for *Polycraton*; the same confusion occurs in the title of Higden's work.

ditæ totam revolvat historiam, inveniet<sup>1</sup> Romanos præ cæteris gentibus ambitione et avaritia laborasse, seditionibus et plagis totum orbem concussisse,<sup>2</sup> in tantum ut vix quisquam principum suorum ad exitum vitæ natura ducente pervenerit.<sup>3</sup> Præterea Romanus omnis aut adulatione corrumpit aut corrumpitur.<sup>4</sup> Certe si non verbis possunt<sup>5</sup> tamen fraudulentis muneribus expugnari, et quos<sup>6</sup> munuscula non dejiciunt honoribus certe captivantur. <sup>7</sup>*Pol., libro quinto, capitulo undecimo.* Italiæ urbes, dum pacem diligunt, justitiam colunt, et a perjuriis abstinere, gaudio<sup>8</sup> perfruuntur; cum vero prolabantur ad fraudes et schismata, statim vel fastum Romanorum<sup>9</sup> vel furorem Teutonicorum<sup>10</sup> aliudve Domini flagellum persentiunt, donec per poenitentiam conterantur. Merita namque<sup>11</sup> populi illius aut<sup>12</sup> evacuant omnem principatum, aut principem faciunt mitiorem.

<sup>1</sup> *inveniet* after *laborasse*, B.; before it, A.D.

<sup>2</sup> *convixisse*, B.

<sup>3</sup> So A.B.; *pervenit*, E.; slightly transposed in C.

<sup>4</sup> Verbs transposed in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *possint*, B.; *tamen* omitted in A.

<sup>6</sup> *et quos*] *ex quo*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Item*, added in C.D. The true reference is to the *Polycraticon* of John of Salisbury, lib. iv. c. 11.

<sup>8</sup> *gl'a* (*gloria*), C.; *gladio*, D. (for *gaudio*?)

<sup>9</sup> *statum Romanum*, C.; *fastum Romanum*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Theutonicum*, C.; *Teutonicum*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *nam*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *illius aut*] *juste vel*, C.; *illius vel*, D.



were sippe Rome was first sette,<sup>1</sup> he schal fynde pat pe Romayns were most couetous and proude, he schal fynde also pat pe maistrie<sup>2</sup> pat pey hadde in pe world aboute pey gete<sup>3</sup> it by punyschyng of peple<sup>4</sup> by false wiles and by gile so fer forþ pat vnnep eny of hir princes leuede his lyf kyndeliche to pe<sup>5</sup> ende. Perfore eueryche Romayn ouercomeþ<sup>6</sup> oper is ouercome wip flaterynge and wip<sup>7</sup> faire wordes; and 3if wordes failleþ, 3iftes<sup>8</sup> schal hym awelde; 3if 3iftes failleþ, worschip makeþ hym prisoner. *Pol., libro septimo, capitulo undecimo.* While pe citees of Italia loueþ pees and worschipeþ<sup>9</sup> ri3twisnesse and leueth false opes, þan pey haueþ<sup>10</sup> likyng and welpe in here owne lond. But whan pey 3eueþ<sup>11</sup> hem to falsshede and to stryf, anon pe pride of<sup>12</sup> Romayns, oper pe woodnesse of Duches<sup>13</sup> men, oper som oper wrecche of God all my3ti<sup>14</sup> falleþ vpon hem for to pey<sup>15</sup> amende her lyf<sup>16</sup> by penaunce of<sup>17</sup> contricioun. For trespas of pat peple putteþ away al principalte, oper makeþ here prynce more mylde.

TREVISA.

alle the storrye ffrom the begynnenge of Rome, he schal fynde the Romanes and other peple to have laborede in ambicion and auarice, in so moche in that noo prince of pe empire lyvede vnnethe after the naturalle course of his life, but thei were destroyede by f3hte. *Policronicon, libro septimo, capitulo septuagesimo primo.*<sup>18</sup> While the men of Italy lyve in peace, thei luffe ry3hteuousenes and absteyne from periury. But when they falle to fraudes and diuision they fele other the pride off the Romanes or cruelnesse of men of Allemeyne, or somme other peyne or punyschenge of God, tylle thei be contrite by penaunce. For other that peple avoide euery principate, other elles thei make the prynce moore meke.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> made, Cx.<sup>2</sup> maistry, a.<sup>3</sup> gate, Cx.<sup>4</sup> puple, a.<sup>5</sup> his, a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> that ouercometh, Cx.<sup>7</sup> wip] om. a. (not Cx.)<sup>8</sup> yestes, Cx.<sup>9</sup> worschepeþ, a.; worshipped, Cx., more correctly, who has also loued, and leued.<sup>10</sup> had, Cx.<sup>11</sup> yeue, Cx.<sup>12</sup> of the, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Duche, Cx.<sup>14</sup> almy3ti, a.<sup>15</sup> vnto the tyme they, Cx.<sup>16</sup> her lyf] om. Cx.<sup>17</sup> of] and, Cx.<sup>18</sup> The reference given thus at length in Harl. MS.

## CAP. XXVI.

*De Germania et ejus partibus.*<sup>1</sup>

ISIDORUS tradit quod<sup>2</sup> Germania proprie dicta habet<sup>3</sup> ab ortu ostium Danubii fluminis, ab austro Rhenum fluvium, à septentrione et occasu oceanum. Est autem<sup>4</sup> duplex Germania; superior,<sup>5</sup> quæ se extendit ad Alpes juxta<sup>6</sup> sinum maris mediterranei,<sup>7</sup> quod Adriaticum dicitur, ubi mare sistitur in Aquileiæ partibus per paludes; alia<sup>8</sup> Germania, inferior, versus occidentem sistit<sup>9</sup> circa Rhenum,<sup>10</sup> quæ<sup>11</sup> communiter Alemannia sive<sup>12</sup> Teutonia<sup>13</sup> dicitur. Multi namque<sup>14</sup> in utraque Germania sunt populi et provinciæ, utpote Boemia, Westfalia, Bavaria,<sup>15</sup> Thuringia, Suevia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lotharingia,<sup>16</sup> Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*<sup>17</sup> Verum quia septentrionalis<sup>18</sup> plaga quanto ab æstu solis fit<sup>19</sup> remotior, tanto propagandis nutriendisque<sup>20</sup> populis salubrior; sicut e contra meridiana plaga<sup>21</sup> quanto soli vicinior, tanto<sup>22</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Isidorus, libro 19, A.; 9<sup>o</sup>, B.C.* (not D.) The true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 4.

<sup>2</sup> *Isidorus . . . quod*] om. B.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Germania proprie sumpta ab ortu, C.D.* (with other slight variations.)

<sup>4</sup> *Et est, C.D.*

<sup>5</sup> *scilicet*, added in A.B.

<sup>6</sup> *juxta Alpes usque ad sinum*, B.C.D.; and so A., omitting *usque*.

<sup>7</sup> *magni, A.B.*

<sup>8</sup> *est* added in B.

<sup>9</sup> *sistitur, C.* (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *Thenum, C.; Renum, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *qui, C.D.*

<sup>12</sup> *seu, B.C.*

<sup>13</sup> *Teutonica, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *namque*] om. C.; nempe, A.B.

<sup>15</sup> *Gavarria, C.; Bavaria, E.* Some of the names following are written with slight variations in the MSS.

<sup>16</sup> *Lothoringia, MSS.*

<sup>17</sup> *Paulus...quinto*] om. C.; *capitulo quinto*, om. A.B.D. The true reference is to lib. i. c. i., which is copied almost verbatim as far as *alere sufficiat*.

<sup>18</sup> *etiam* added in C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> *est, C.* (not D.)

<sup>20</sup> *et nutriendis, C.* (not D.)

<sup>21</sup> *regio, C.D.* (and Paulus.)

<sup>22</sup> *enim* after *tanto* in E.; not in A.B.C.D.

*De Germania et eius provinciis. Capitulum vicesimum* TREVISA.  
*sextum.*

*Isid. Eth. quarto decimo.* Ysidre<sup>1</sup> seip pat verray Germania hap in pe est side pe mouth of pe ryuer Danubius, in pe south pe Ryne<sup>2</sup> pat ryuer, and in pe north and in pe west pe see of Ocean. Pere beep twele londes, eiper hatte Germania; pe ouer Germania<sup>3</sup> strecchep by sides Alpes to pat moup and coost of pe grete see pat hatte Adriaticus; pere pe see<sup>4</sup> is as it were lakes yn pe contrayes of Aquila.<sup>5</sup> Pe oper Germania is lower, toward pe west about the Reyne,<sup>6</sup> and is comounliche i-cleped Almanie oper Teutonia. In eiper Germania beep many prouinces and londes, pat beep Boemia, Westfalia, Bauarria, Thuringia, Sueuia, Saxonia, Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro primo.* Pe north contrey is fer from pe hete of pe<sup>7</sup> sonne, and holsom for men to wone<sup>8</sup> yn, and able to brynge forþ children. Perfore it is pat pere is more multiplicacioun and encrease of men and children in pe norþ contray þan in pe south, pat is ful nyh pe

*Of Allemeyne or Germany and of pe provinces of hit.* MS. HARL.  
*Capitulum vicesimum sextum. Isidorus, Etymologia-* 2261.  
*rum libro nono.*

Isidorus rehersethe that Germany, or Allemeyne properly seyde, hathe on the este to hit the durre of the floode callede Danubius, on the sowthe the floode callede Renus, of the northe and the weste the ocean. There be ij. Germanyes; the superior whiche extendethe vn to Alpes to the bosom of the grete see that is callede the see Adriatike. And the inferior Germany, towarde the weste, is abowte the floode callede Renus, whiche is callede comunely Almayne. There be mony peple in either Germany, and prouinces, as Aleman-Boemia, Westefalia, Bauarrea, Turingea, Sveuia, Saxonia, <sup>nia.</sup> Franconia, Lothoringia, Frisia, Selandia. *Paulus, libro quinto.* For the northertie plage, in as moch as hit is more removede from hete, in so moche hit is more hollesome for childer to be gendrede and to be noryschede. Hyt is in contrary wise of the plage meridian; for in as moche

<sup>1</sup> *Isidorus, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *ryuer, MS.; Ryn, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *pe ouer Germania]* om. MS.

<sup>4</sup> *se, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *Aquylia, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *Ryne, a., Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> *hete of pe]* om. Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *a. adds, and dwelle.*

languoribus obnoxior. Inde fit ut tantæ<sup>1</sup> populorum multitudines arctico<sup>2</sup> sub axe oriantur, ut non<sup>3</sup> immerito omnis illa regio a Tanai<sup>4</sup> usque ad occiduum,<sup>5</sup> quamvis<sup>6</sup> propriis<sup>7</sup> singula loca vocentur<sup>8</sup> nominibus, generaliter tamen Germania vocatur, quia tot germinat populos quot vix alere sufficiat. Inde est quod totiens ab ea parte mundi gentes sunt egressæ, aut videlicet sorte emissæ aut non sponte captivatae, aut<sup>9</sup> ad cæteras nationes subigendas ultro progressæ, sicut patuit aliquando<sup>10</sup> de Hunis, Gothis, Wandalis, Saxonibus, Wynnulis,<sup>11</sup> Longobardis.

De Boemia. Boemia, prima orientalis Germaniæ<sup>12</sup> provincia, habet ab oriente<sup>13</sup> Moesiam et Alanos, a meridie Danubium et Pannoniam, ab occidente Bavariam et Thuringiam, a septentrionali circio<sup>14</sup> Saxones. Fere undique circumsepta est montibus et silvis; abundat quoque herbis pascualibus et aromaticis,<sup>15</sup> necnon<sup>16</sup> feris et<sup>17</sup> bestiis, inter quas est quoddam animal cornibus et corpore bovi valde persimile,<sup>18</sup> quod lingua Boemica<sup>19</sup> *leoz*<sup>20</sup> vocatur; <sup>21</sup> suis tamen cornibus<sup>22</sup> se non defendit, sed in amplo folliculo quod sub mento gestat<sup>23</sup> aquam colli-

<sup>1</sup> *tantæ*] So A.B.C.D.; *tantum*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *arto*, C.D. (*arctoo*, Paulus.)

<sup>3</sup> *non*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *fluvio* added in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *oceanum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *licet*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *ad* added in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *nuncupentur*, C.; *nuncupantur*, D.; *loci* vocentur, B.

<sup>9</sup> *quod* added in A.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *quondam*, C.D.; om. A.B.

<sup>11</sup> *sive* added in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Germaniæ orientalis*, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> *ortu*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> So E. *septentrione*. *Circio Saxones* (sic), A.; *septentrione circio*,

D. Perhaps *septentrione et circio* is the true reading. See Trevisa.

<sup>15</sup> Transposed in B.

<sup>16</sup> *ac*, B.; *nec feris nec*, A., absurdly.

<sup>17</sup> *et*] om. C.

<sup>18</sup> *simile bovi*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Boemetica*, B.

<sup>20</sup> So E.D.; *Leor*, C.; *Boez*, B. *Loz*, A. The text is perhaps corrupt. The modern Polish name of the Auroch (*Bison Europæus*), which appears to be intended, is *Zubr*, or *Subr*. See *Penny Cycl.*, s.v. Ox.

<sup>21</sup> *dicitur*, C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *cum insectatur*, added in C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *gerit*, B.

sonne, and vnholsum and siklewe for men to wonye TREVISIA.  
 ynne. And so pey eueriche londe and contray haue his  
 owne propre name, nopeles<sup>1</sup> al pe contray and lond from  
 the ryuer Tanais anon to pe west hatte Germania; for  
 he gendrep and bryngeth forth mo<sup>2</sup> men and children pan  
 pey<sup>3</sup> may wel susteyne. Perfore hit is pat so ofte gop  
 dyuers men out of pat side of pe world ynto oper londes,  
 oper<sup>4</sup> by lot, oper azenst hir wille, oper by here good  
 wille for to wynne and<sup>5</sup> gete opere londes. So dede Gothy,  
 Wandaly, Saxones, Wynuly, and Longobardi. Boemya is  
 pe firste prouince of pat<sup>6</sup> ester<sup>7</sup> Germania, and hap in pe  
 est side Mesia<sup>8</sup> and Alania, in pe soup pe ryuer Danubius  
 and Pannonia, in pe west Bauaria and Thuringia,<sup>9</sup> and in  
 pe north and northwest Saxonia, and is i-closed al most  
 all<sup>10</sup> aboute wip hilles and wodes, and hap grete<sup>11</sup> plente of  
 lese and of gras pat<sup>12</sup> smellep ful swete, and of dyuerse  
 wyld bestes, among pe whiche is oo<sup>13</sup> beste, and hatte  
*boz* in pe langage of Boemia, but he deffendep nouzt hym-  
 self with his hornes, but he hap a large ryuel, as it were  
 a bagge, vnder pe chynne; peryn he gadereth water and

as hit is more nye to the son, in so moche hit is more nyous MS. HARL.  
 to nature. Wherefore alle that region from Thanay unto  
 pe weste, thauzhe euery place be namede by theire propre  
 names, generally thei be callede Germany, for that londe  
 gendrethe so many peple that hit may vnnethe suffise to  
 norysche theyme. That causede so many peple to haue  
 goen from hit, as Hunes, Gothes, Wandalynges, Saxones,  
 Winuli and Longobardes. Boemia is the firste prouince of  
 esturne Germanye, hauenge on the este parte to hit Mesia,<sup>8</sup>  
 of the weste Danuby and Pannony, of the meridiem Bauarria  
 and Thuringia, of the northe weste Saxones, allemoste com-  
 passede abowte with hilles and woodes, beyng habundante  
 in yerbes and pastures and mony wilde bestes. Amonge  
 whom is a beste like to an oxe in body and in hornes, whiche  
 is callede in their langage *loz*, whiche defendethe hym not with  
 his hornes, but gedrethe water in a grete void place vnder

<sup>1</sup> *netheles*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *moo*, a.

<sup>3</sup> *it*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *oper*] om. Cx., who has or be-  
low.

<sup>5</sup> *wynne and*] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *pe*, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *este*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *Misia*, MSS. (as usual.)

<sup>9</sup> *Thurynga*, MS., here and be-  
low (not so always a. or Cx.)

<sup>10</sup> *all*] om. Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *agreete*, a.

<sup>12</sup> So Cx. (*that*); and, MS., a.

<sup>13</sup> o *beste*, a.; *bestes*, MS.; one  
*beeste*, Cx.



git,<sup>1</sup> quam currendo multum<sup>2</sup> calefacit, et super insequentes venatores<sup>3</sup> et canes projicit, sicque approximantes sibi mirabiliter depilat et exurit.<sup>4</sup>

De Thuringia.

Thuringia habet ab ortu Boemiam, ab occidente Franconiam, a septentrione Westfaliam, ab austro Danubium fluvium.<sup>5</sup>

De Franconia.

Franconia est quasi<sup>6</sup> media Germaniæ provincia, habetque ad ortum<sup>7</sup> sui<sup>8</sup> Thuringiam, ad occasum<sup>9</sup> Sueviam, ad aquilonem partem Westfaliæ, ad austrum<sup>10</sup> Bavariam et Danubium.

De Bavaria.

Bavaria habet ad ortum<sup>11</sup> Danubium,<sup>12</sup> ad occidentem Sueviam, ad aquilonem Franconiam, ad austrum partem Danubii et Rhæticam.<sup>13</sup>

De Westfalia.

Westfalia habet ad ortum Saxones,<sup>14</sup> ad occasum Frisiam, ad aquilonem oceanum, ad austrum partem Franconiæ et Sueviæ.

De Suevia.

Suevia habet ad ortum sui<sup>15</sup> Bavariam, ad occidentem Rhenum fluvium,<sup>16</sup> ab aquilone<sup>17</sup> partem Franconiæ, ad austrum Rhæticam et<sup>18</sup> Alpes.

De Saxonia.

Saxonia habet ab ortu Alanos,<sup>19</sup> ab occasu<sup>20</sup> Westfaliam, a septentrione<sup>21</sup> oceanum, ab austro Thuringiam. *Isidorus*,<sup>22</sup> libro quarto decimo. Saxonum gens ad septentrionales fines oceani constituta virtute et

<sup>1</sup> recolligit, A.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> valde, B.C.D.

<sup>3</sup> venatores] Added from B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.; depilat atque urit, C.  
D; depilat et, om. E.

<sup>5</sup> fluvium] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> quædam, D.

<sup>7</sup> ab ortu, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> sui] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> ab occasu, B.C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> ab austro, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> ab ortu, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> Bavaria . . . Danubium] om. B.

(by error of scribe.) The readings of A. are blundered through omissions

<sup>13</sup> et Rhæticam] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> ab ortu Saxoniam, B.

<sup>15</sup> sui] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> fluvium] om. B.C.D.

<sup>17</sup> ad aquilonem, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> Rhæticam et] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> Slavos, B.

<sup>20</sup> occidente, D.

<sup>21</sup> septentrionale parte, B.

<sup>22</sup> Etymol., added in C. (not D.)

hetep it in his rennynge scladeng<sup>1</sup> hoot, and prowep it  
 vppon hunteres and houndes pat pursewep hym, and scaldep  
 of þe heere of hem<sup>2</sup> and brennep hem ful sore. Thuryngia<sup>3</sup>  
 hap in þe est side Boemia, in þe west Franconia, in þe  
 norþ Westfalia, and in þe soup þe ryuer Danubius. Fran-  
 conia is, as it were, þe myddel prouynce of Germania, and  
 hap in þe est side Thuryngia,<sup>4</sup> in þe west Sueuia, in þe  
 norþ a party<sup>5</sup> of Westfalia, and in þe soup Bauaria and  
 þe ryuer Danubius. Bauaria hap in þe est þe ryuer Da-  
 nubius<sup>6</sup> and Retica.<sup>7</sup> Westfalia hap in þe est side Saxonia,  
 in þe west Frisia, in þe norþ ocean, in þe soup a party  
 of Fraunce<sup>8</sup> and of Sueuia. Sueuia hap in þe est Bauaria, in  
 þe west þe ryuere pat hatte þe Ryne, in þe north a party  
 of Franconia, and in þe south Retica and Alpes. Saxonia  
 hap in þe est Alania, yn þe west Westfalia, in þe north  
 ocean, and in þe soup Thuringia.<sup>9</sup> *Isidorus, libro quarto  
 decimo.* Men of Saxonia wonep toward þe norþ endes  
 of ocean, and beep bope lizter<sup>10</sup> and strengre þan oþer

TREVISA.

his chynne, whiche makenge the water hoote, in rennenge  
 castethe<sup>10</sup> hyt on hunters and on dogges folowenge hit,  
 hurtenge theyme soore with that water. Thuringia hathe  
 the este to hit Boemia, on the weste Franconia, on the  
 northe Westefalia, on the sowthe Danubius. Franconia is  
 as the myddelle prouince of Germaine, hauenge on the este  
 to hit Thuringia, at the weste Sweuia, at the northe parte  
 of Westefalia, at the sowthe Bauarria and Danubius.  
 Bauarria hathe on the este to hit Danubius, at the weste  
 Sweuia, at the northe Franconia, at the sowthe parte  
 of Danuby and Rethica. Westefalia hathe on the este to hit  
 Saxones, at the weste Frisia, at the northe the ocean, and  
 at the sowthe parte of Franconia and of Sueuia. Sveuia  
 hathe at the este of hit Bauarria, at the weste Renum, at  
 the northe parte of Franconia, at the sowthe Rethica and  
 Alpes. Saxonia hathe on the weste to hit Westfalia, on  
 the northe the ocean, on þe sowthe Thuringia. *Isidorus,  
 libro quarto decimo.* The peple of Saxones whiche be  
 moore nowble in vertu and agilite not oonly on londe, but f. 42. b.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> scald, a.; skalding, Cx., which  
 is probably alone right.

<sup>2</sup> So Cx.; hym, MS.

<sup>3</sup> Thurynga, MS., here and below  
 (not so always a. or Cx.).

<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; of a party, MS. and a.

<sup>5</sup> Eight words preceding wanting  
 in MS.

<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; Ratica, MS.;  
 Rethica below.

<sup>7</sup> Some words repeated in MS.

<sup>8</sup> Cx. omits the last clause of the  
 foregoing, and much of the following  
 sentence.

<sup>9</sup> ben more lighter, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> castetethe, Harl. MS.

agilitate præstantior quam cæteri piratæ, non solum per terras, sed etiam per maria, suis hostibus est infesta; unde et Saxones, quasi saxei et duri ac<sup>1</sup> importabiles sunt vocati;<sup>2</sup> in quorum montanis<sup>3</sup> omnia pene metallorum genera excepto stanno<sup>4</sup> sunt effossa.<sup>5</sup> Germania<sup>6</sup> etiam fontes habet<sup>7</sup> salsos, ex quibus sal albissimum conficitur, et<sup>8</sup> juxta illum<sup>9</sup> montem ubi cuprum effoditur est mons magnus, cujus lapides redolent sicut violæ.<sup>10</sup> Et juxta cenobium Sancti Michaelis invenitur marmor pulcherrimum.<sup>6</sup> Beda, libro quarto, cap. vicesimo quinto.<sup>11</sup> Antiqui Saxones ducem non habent,<sup>12</sup> sed satrapas plurimos genti suæ præpositos, qui ingruente belli articulo<sup>13</sup> mittunt æqualiter sortes, et<sup>14</sup> quemcunque<sup>15</sup> sors ostenderit<sup>16</sup> hunc tempore belli<sup>17</sup> ducem sequuntur,<sup>18</sup> peractoque bello rursus æqualis potestatis omnes satrapæ fiunt.<sup>19</sup>

De Frisia. Frisia,<sup>20</sup> secundum Plinium, est<sup>21</sup> regio super littus<sup>22</sup> occidentalis oceani sita; ab austro incipit a<sup>23</sup> Rheno

<sup>1</sup> *saxei duri et*, C.D. (with other very slight variations above); *et*, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *dicti sunt*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *montana*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *stagnò*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *effossa*] om. E.; *effodiuntur*, C.D.; *genera*, om. B.

<sup>6</sup> *Germania . . . pulcherrimum*, om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *habet fontes*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *et*] om. A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *illum*] om. A.B.

<sup>10</sup> *sicut violæ*] So A.B.; *violæ sicut*, E.

<sup>11</sup> The true reference is to lib. v. c. 10. D. has no reference.

<sup>12</sup> *non habent regem*, A.B.C. (and Bede.)

<sup>13</sup> *bello*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ut*, C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> *cuicumque*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *evenerit*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *omnes*, added in C.D., and in Bede's text.

<sup>18</sup> *sequentur*, A.

<sup>19</sup> *sunt omnes satrapæ*, B.

<sup>20</sup> *Plinius* prefixed in A.B.; *Plinius*, libro 5<sup>o</sup>, C. No reference in D., which has *Frigia*.

<sup>21</sup> *secundum Plinium est*] om. B. C.D.

<sup>22</sup> *sub litus*, B.

<sup>23</sup> *a*] om. A.

skymours<sup>1</sup> of þe see, and purseweþ her enemyes ful hard þoþe by water and by lond, and hatte Saxones of saxum,<sup>2</sup> pat is, *a stoon*, for þey beþ hard as stones and vnesy to fare wip. In þe hulles of Saxonia is wel nyȝ all manere metal i-digged, outakyn<sup>3</sup> tyn. In Germania beþ salt welles, of þe whiche wellis is salt i-made as white<sup>4</sup> as any<sup>5</sup> snowe. Fast by þe<sup>6</sup> hille pat coper is i-digged ynne is a greet hille of stones; of þat hille [the stones]<sup>7</sup> smelleþ swete as violet. Also faste by þe mynystre<sup>8</sup> of Seint Michel is marbil i-founde þe fairest pat may be. *Beda, libro [quinto], capitulo vicesimo quinto.* Þe olde Saxones haue no kyng, but meny knyȝtes of here owne ruleþ hem;<sup>9</sup> but in tyme of bataille þei castep lott whiche of here knyȝtes schal be ledere and cheveteyn, and folweþ him pat is so i-chose by lott<sup>10</sup> as cheef lorde and maister durynge þe bataille; but whan þe bataile<sup>11</sup> is i-doo, þan schal he be as he was raper,<sup>12</sup> he and opere knyȝtes al i-liche<sup>13</sup> greet of power and of myȝt. *Plinius, libro quinto.* Frisia is a lond vpon þe clyue<sup>14</sup> of þe west ocean, and bygynneþ

TREVISA.

also on the see, is moche contrarious to theire enmyes. *MS. HARL. 2261.* Wherefore thei be callede Saxones, as importable and harde as a ston. In the hilles or mownteynes of whom allemoste alle kyndes of metalles be founde, tynne excepte. Also Germayne hathe salte welles, of whom white salte is made. Also nye to the hille where copur is geten is a grete hille, the stones of whom smelle lyke violetttes. Also feire marbole is founde in the hille nye to the Abbay of Seynte Michael. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo quinto.* The olde Saxones vsede not a kyng but other men in worschippe; which perceyvenge batelle to be inducede made a gouernoure to theyme after as the chaunce scholde ffalle, whom thei folowede in tyme of batelle. The batelle doen, alle the nowble men were of egalle honor. *Plinius, libro quinto.* Frisia is a region sette on the brynke of the weste ocean, takenge begynnenge of

<sup>1</sup> *scommers or theuys, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *saxon, MS. (not a. or Cx.)*

<sup>3</sup> *outake, a.; founden, reserued tyn, Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *whiȝt, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *ony, Cx. (and so often.)*

<sup>6</sup> *that, Cx.*

<sup>7</sup> Added from Cx., who varies the sentence a little.

<sup>8</sup> *monasterye, Cx.*

<sup>9</sup> *hem*] om. Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *whiche of . . . lott* Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> Four words omitted in MS.

<sup>12</sup> *byfore; that is to wete, he, &c., Cx.*

<sup>13</sup> *alle lyche, Cx., who omits knyȝtes.*

<sup>14</sup> *coste, Cx.*

fluvio,<sup>1</sup> et mari Danico terminatur, cujus viri circulariter tonduntur, et quanto nobiliores sunt, tanto celsius tonsorantur. Gens quidem fortis,<sup>2</sup> proceri corporis, animi ferocis, lanceis utens pro sagittis; libertatem summe zelat;<sup>3</sup> ideo nullum qui eis dominetur in militem erigunt. Judicibus tamen<sup>4</sup> subsunt, quos annuatim de seipsis eligunt; pudicitiam<sup>5</sup> zelant; liberos suos<sup>6</sup> diligenter custodiunt;<sup>7</sup> quos<sup>8</sup> non ante vicesimum quartum annum nubere permittunt; unde et<sup>9</sup> contingit robustam sobolem procreari. Lignis carent, proinde<sup>10</sup> glebas et cespites ad ignem ponunt.<sup>11</sup>

De  
Selandia.

Selandia, terra modica et maritima, instar insulæ marinis brachiis circumdata, ad ortum habet Hollandiam, ad septentrionem Frisiam, ad occasum oceanum, ad austrum Flandriam. Cincta est aggeribus in cir-

<sup>1</sup> *fluvio*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *fortis*] om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *zelant*, C.D., which is perhaps better.

<sup>4</sup> *tamen judicibus*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *prudentiam*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *et suos*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *custoditos*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quos*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *et*] om. A.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *iccirco*, C.D. ; *et proinde*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *incendunt*, A.B.C.D.



in þe souþ side from þe Ryne, and endeþ at þe see of Den-  
mark.<sup>1</sup> Men of Frisia beþ i-schore<sup>2</sup> aboute, and euir<sup>3</sup> þe  
more gentil man and noble þe hiȝer he is i-schore.  
Þe men beþ faire of body and cruel and bolde of herte,  
and vsed<sup>4</sup> speres in stede<sup>5</sup> of arwes, and louep freedom  
most of eny þing. Þerfore þey suffreþ nō man be a knyȝt  
pat wil be her lorde. Neuerþeles þey beþ gouerned and  
ruled by domesmen and iuges, and euerich ȝere þey<sup>6</sup>  
cheseþ of hem self her owne iuges. Þey louep wel chastite,  
and kepeþ besiliche here children, and suffreth hem nouȝt  
to wyfe<sup>7</sup> wip ynne<sup>8</sup> foure and twenty ȝere.<sup>9</sup> Þerfore  
þey haueþ stalworpe<sup>10</sup> children and stronge; þey haueþ  
none wodes,<sup>11</sup> þerfore þey makeþ hem fuyre of torues.<sup>12</sup>  
Selandia is a litel lond vpon þe see, [whiche ranneth  
thurgh the londe and causeþ xviij. ilondes, and about  
eueryche a shippe saylle,]<sup>13</sup> and hap in þe est side Ho-  
landia, in þe north Frisia, in þe west ocean, in<sup>14</sup> þe souþ  
Flandria, and is by clipped aboute as an ilond wip armes of

TREVISA.

the sowthe parte from the floode callede Rhenus, and is  
endede with the see of Danes. The men of that londe  
be rowndede in the maner of a cercle, as moche as men  
be of moore nobilite, in so moche thei be rowndede more  
hye. That peple is stronge and of semely stature, bolde  
in herte, vsenge speres for arowes, luffenge moche liberte.  
Wherefore thei wylle not suffre a knyȝt to haue pre-  
dominy in theyme. They be obediente to iuges, whom  
thei make yerely; luffenge clenness and chastite; kepeþ  
theire childer with grete diligence, not suffrenge theyme to  
be maryede tyll they atteyne to xxiiij<sup>u</sup> yere in age.  
Wherefore thei gette myȝhty childer. Whiche wontenge  
woode brenne turfes made of the erthe. Selandia is a  
litelle londe, and in the costes of the see, compassede  
abowte as an yle with armes of the see, hauenge at the  
este to hit Holande, at the northe Frisia, at the weste  
the ocean, at the sowthe Flandres; hauenge grete hepes

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Denmarchi, a.<sup>2</sup> ben high shauen, Cx.<sup>3</sup> euere, a.<sup>4</sup> vse, Cx., which is better.<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; dede, MS.<sup>6</sup> he, a.<sup>7</sup> marie, Cx.<sup>8</sup> wip ynne] til they be, Cx.<sup>9</sup> yere old, Cx.<sup>10</sup> stronge and stelworth childeren,  
Cx.<sup>11</sup> no woodes, a.<sup>12</sup> turues, Cx.<sup>13</sup> The words in brackets added  
from Cx. After see MS. and a have  
by-clipped aboute as an ilond wip  
armes of þe see, which occurs below.<sup>14</sup> and in, a.

cuitu contra impetum maris, cujus gleba frugum ferax, sed arborum<sup>1</sup> rara; non enim poterit ibi arbor<sup>2</sup> radicem profundare propter soli salsuginem. Gens ejus<sup>3</sup> magnæ est<sup>4</sup> staturæ, fortis corpore, pia mente.<sup>5</sup>

De Scriboniis [vel Scritobiniis], et de septem viris diu soporatis.

*Paulus*,<sup>6</sup> *libro primo*. In circionali occiduo Germaniæ sunt populi dicti Scribonii,<sup>7</sup> qui etiam ætatis tempore nivibus non carent, crudis animalium carnibus vescuntur, de quorum hirtis pellibus indumenta sibi coaptant. Apud quos circa solstitium æstivale radii solares aliquibus<sup>8</sup> noctibus continue apparent; et rursum circa solstitium brumale, quamvis lux diei adsit, sol tamen non videtur. *Item*<sup>9</sup> *Paulus, libro primo*,<sup>10</sup> *capitulo quarto*. Juxta eosdem Scribonios<sup>11</sup> in ipso oceani littore antrum sub eminenti rupe conspicitur, ubi septem viri jam diu soporati quiescunt ita illæsis corporibus et vestibus,<sup>12</sup> ut etiam apud indoctos barbaros magnæ venerationi habeantur. Hi quoque,<sup>13</sup> quantum ad habitum spectat, Romani putantur;<sup>14</sup> e quibus unum dum aliquis<sup>15</sup> cupiditate stimulatus vellet exuere,

<sup>1</sup> *arborum*] So B.; *arbore*, A.E.

<sup>2</sup> *arbor ibidem*, B.; *arbor ibi*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *et* added in B.

<sup>4</sup> *est*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *Selandia . . . mente*] The whole paragraph omitted in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Plinius*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Stricobini*, (or perhaps *Scritobini*), C.D. Paulus Diaconus (lib. i. c. 51, ed. 1603) has *Scritobini*, which may be correct.

<sup>8</sup> *aliquibus*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Item*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *quinto*, B. wrongly. The text is correct.

<sup>11</sup> *Stricobinos*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *vestimentis*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

<sup>13</sup> *denique*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

<sup>14</sup> *esse cernuntur*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

<sup>15</sup> *quidam*, C.D. (and Paulus.)

TREVISA.

pe see and floodes.<sup>1</sup> Pere is good corn londe and scarsete of trees, for pe rootes mowe not take depnesse and<sup>2</sup> fatnesse for saltnesse of pe erpe. Pe men beep grete of body and mylde of herte. *Paulus, libro primo.* In pe norpwest<sup>3</sup> side of Germania is a peple pat hiȝte Scribonius, pat hath snow al pe somer tyme, and etep rawe flesch, and beep i-cloped in goot bukkes<sup>4</sup> skynnes. In hire contray, whan pe nyȝt is schort, me may all nyȝt see<sup>5</sup> pe sonne bemes; and eft<sup>6</sup> in the wynter, when pe day is schort, pey may see pe liȝt of pe sonne, pey<sup>7</sup> me seeþ noȝt pe sonne.<sup>8</sup> *Item Paulus, libro primo, cap. quarto.*<sup>9</sup> Fast byside pat peple Scribonius, vndir pe clif of ocean, is a den vndir an hiȝe stoon; perynne slepeþ seuen men and haueþ longe i-slepe, and beep hool and sound in body and clopinge, and al wip oute wem.<sup>10</sup> So pat vntauȝt men and straunge haueþ hem<sup>11</sup> in gret wor-schippe.<sup>12</sup> Pey beep i-holde Romaynes, as pei semeþ by hire clopinge.<sup>13</sup> Pere was a man som tyme pat for couetise wolde stripe on of hem, and haue his cloping. But anone his

in hit in a circuite for cause of the see; in whiche londe MS. HARL. 2261.  
be fewe trees, for a tree may not take per roote for saltenes of the erthe. The peple of hit is of grete stature, stronge off body, meke in mynde. *Paulus, libro primo.* Also in the sowthe weste of Germaine be peple called Scribonij, whiche haue plente of snawe in the tyme of somer, and eite rawe flesche of bestes, hauenge clothes of the ruȝhe skynnes of bestes; where the beames of the sonne be seen contynually, somme nyȝhtes abowte the solstice of somer; and also abowte the solstice of wynter, thauȝhe liȝhte appere in the day, the son is not seene. *Item, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* A denne is seen nye to men of that cuntre vnder an hie hille, where vij. men slepenge haue lyen longe, the clothes and bodies of theym incorrupte, whiche be supposede to be Romanes, as after their habite; whom a man movede thro auaryce willenge to

<sup>1</sup> Cx. thus: and is enuironed with water and highe bankes to holde out the rysynge of the see and floodes.

<sup>2</sup> ne, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> west, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> bukke, a., Cx. (buk.)

<sup>5</sup> see alle the nyght, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> after, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> þey] om. a.

<sup>8</sup> Cx. thus: though men see the

light of the sonne, yet the sonne is not seen.

<sup>9</sup> Cx., omitting the reference, thus: *Item fast, &c.*

<sup>10</sup> wemme, a., Cx.

<sup>11</sup> For which cause the comyn peple have hem, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> worship and reuerence, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> They ar supposed Romans by her clothing, Cx.

mox ejus brachia aruerunt. Fortassis ad hunc proventum eos Deus servat<sup>1</sup> illæsos,<sup>2</sup> ut barbaræ gentes per eos aliquando<sup>3</sup> convertantur.

## CAP. XXV.

*De Francia sive Gallia.*<sup>4</sup>

TRADUNT<sup>5</sup> historiæ quod Gallia, quæ et Francia, a<sup>6</sup> candore populi sit dicta.<sup>7</sup> *Gala* enim Græce *lac* dicitur Latine; idcirco eos Gallos,<sup>8</sup> id est, candidos, Sibylla<sup>9</sup> vocat, dicens:

tunc lactea colla

Auro humectentur.<sup>10</sup>

*Hugutio, capitulo Gala.* Nam secundum diversitatem cœli, colores facierum, quantitates corporum,<sup>11</sup> qualitates animorum existunt. Inde Roma graves, Græcia leves, Africa versipelles, Gallia ingeniosos generat. *Ranulphus.* Hic autem est notandum, sicut tangit Augustinus De Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo quinto, quod Galli uno modo dicti fuerant sacerdotes in templo

<sup>1</sup> servaverit Dominus, C.D.; Dominus servaverit, B.

<sup>2</sup> illæsos] om. C.D.; ille, A. (clerical error.)

<sup>3</sup> quandoque, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> De Gallia seu Francia, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> Tradunt . . . septimo decimo (next page)] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> a] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> denominata, A.B.

<sup>8</sup> et ideo Gallos eos, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> sub illa, B.

<sup>10</sup> The reference is to Virg. *Æn.* viii. 660, where however *innectuntur* is the true reading. The Sibyl is not speaking, but the words are part of a description of Vulcan's shield.

<sup>11</sup> et added in B.

armes driede and wax al drye.<sup>1</sup> Hit may be pat God TREVIS.  
 kepep<sup>2</sup> hem so hool and sounde, for mysbyleued men in  
 tyme to comynge schulde porw<sup>3</sup> hem be conuerted and i-  
 torned to good byleue.

*De Gallia sive Francia.*

*Capitulum vicesimum septimum.*

R. Hit is i-write in stories pat Gallia, pat<sup>3</sup> is Francia, hap  
 pat name Gallia of whitenes of pe<sup>4</sup> peple. *Gala* is Grew,<sup>5</sup>  
*lac* in Latyn, *mylk*<sup>6</sup> in Englissh. Perfore Sibylla clepep  
 hem Gallos, pat is, white, and seip "Pan<sup>7</sup> pe mylky nekkes  
 "beep i-wasche wip gold." *Hugutio, cap. Gala.* By pe dyuer-  
 site of heuene is dyuersite of coloures of face, of quantite  
 and gretnes of body, of maneres and of witt; perfore in  
 Rome beep heuy men, yn Grees lyzt, in Affrica gileful, in  
 Gallia witty men and wys. R. Here take hede, as Augus-  
 tinus touchep, *De Civitate Dei*, libro [secundo, cap.]<sup>8</sup> quinto,  
 pat Gally in oon manere speche were pe preostes, pat were

vnclouthe anon his armes wexede drye. Perauenture God MS. HARL.  
 preserueth theyme incorrupte for that entente, that men 2261.  
 of Barbre may be conuertede to the feithe by theyme.

*Of Fraunce. Capitulum vicesimum septimum.*

R. Storyes expresse that Gallia or Fraunce hathe denomi-  
 nation of the whitenesse of peple; for thys worde "galla" in  
 Grewe is seyde "mylke" in Latyne, wherefore Sibille callethe  
 Frenche me,<sup>9</sup> white, seyenge, "Then the white neckes schalle  
 "be humectate or made weiete with golde." *Hugutio, capi-  
 tulo Gala.* For the coloures of faces, quantites of bodies,  
 qualites of sawles, haue theire existence in man after the  
 diuer site of heuyn. Perfore Rome gendrethe hevy men,  
 Grece lyzhte men, and Fraunce wytty men. R. Hit is also  
 to be aduertisede after the seyenge of Seynte Austin, *De  
 Civitate Dei*, libro tertio, capitulo quinto, that men callede  
 Galli in oon maner were prestes in the temple of a godesse

<sup>1</sup> forwith his arme waxed al dreye,  
 Cx.

<sup>2</sup> list to kepe, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> pat] Added from *a.*; which, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> pe] om. *a.* and Cx.

<sup>5</sup> a worde in *Grewe*, and is *lac*,  
 Cx.

<sup>6</sup> and mylke, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> that, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> The words in brackets added  
 from Cx. This is the true reference,  
 and the text agrees; the Harl. MS.  
 is wrong.

<sup>9</sup> me] So Harl. MS.



Cybelis, non a Gallia provincia, sed a Gallo fluvio Phrygiæ sic dicti; a quo potantes fiebant insani, et omnes castrabantur in memoriam pueri Attis<sup>1</sup> quem amavit Dea Cybele. Hic nempe Attis, propter fraudem quam Deæ fecerat, versus est in insaniam, in qua castravit se, secundum Ovidium de Fastis.<sup>2</sup> Sed de Gallis qui sunt Franci, sic<sup>3</sup> dicit Eutropius, libro secundo: Gallorum animi feroces erant et corpora plusquam humana; sed experimento deprehensum,<sup>4</sup> quod sicut Gallorum virtus primo impetu major est quam virorum, ita sequens virtus minor est quam foeminarum. Alpina namque corpora humenti cœlo educata quiddam simile suis habent nivibus quæ pugnæ calore in sudore resoluta quasi radio solari laxantur.<sup>5</sup> *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.* Gallia<sup>6</sup> igitur<sup>7</sup> cum partibus suis<sup>8</sup> a septentrione habet Germaniam, ab ortu Rhenum, ab Euro Alpes, ab occasu oceanum Britannicum,<sup>9</sup> ad austrum<sup>10</sup> fretum mediterraneum, quod præterfluit<sup>11</sup> provinciam Narbonensem.<sup>12</sup> Gallia quon-

<sup>1</sup> *Athis*, MSS.

<sup>2</sup> *Hic autem . . . Fastis*] om. A.B.

<sup>3</sup> So B.; *sicut*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *De Gallis sic dicit Eutropius in historia Romana; experimento deprehensum est*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *Alpina . . . laxantur*] om. A.B.

<sup>6</sup> C.D. begin the chapter here.

<sup>7</sup> *Gallia, quæ et Francia*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *suis partibus*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *seu Gallicum*, added in A.B.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ab austro*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *præterluit*, B.

<sup>12</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

in þe temple of þat goddes þat hiȝte Cybele,<sup>1</sup> and hadde the name<sup>2</sup> nouȝt of þat lond Gallia but of þat<sup>3</sup> ryuer Gallus þat is in Phrygia.<sup>4</sup> Alle þat drank of þat ryuer schulde worpe wood, and were alle i-gilded in mynde<sup>5</sup> of þat child Attis,<sup>6</sup> þat pilke goddes Cybele loued wip all her myȝt. Þe<sup>7</sup> childe worpe<sup>8</sup> wood, and gilded hymself, for fraude and gile þat he hadde i-doo to þat goddes Cybele, [so sayth]<sup>9</sup> Ovidius de Fastis. But of<sup>10</sup> Galli þat beep Franci, and Frensche men, Eutropius, libro secundo, seiþ, Galli beep wel hasty, and here body passeþ þe comune stature of oper men. But it is i-founde by assay þat as<sup>11</sup> Galli beþ wel hasty þan strong in þe firste rees,<sup>12</sup> soo afterward pey beep<sup>13</sup> in fiȝtyng more feble þan wommen. For as pey beep liche Alpes in gretnes of body, so pey beep liche<sup>14</sup> to the snowe þat lieþ vpon Alpes<sup>15</sup> þat brekeþ out on sweet, and melteþ wip hete of fyȝtyng as snow dooþ wip hete of þe sonne. *Girald., Dist. [i.], cap. septimo decimo.* Þanne Gallia wip his parties al hole hap in þe north side Germania, in þe est þe Ryne, in þe souþest<sup>16</sup> Alpes, in þe west þe see of<sup>17</sup> ocean þat hatte boþe Britannicus and Gallicus, þat is, Engliſshe and Frensche,<sup>18</sup> for it departeþ boþe Engelond and Fraunce, in þe souþ þe see of myddel erpe þat wascheþ aboute by þe

TREVISIA.

called Cybele,<sup>1</sup> not namede of Gallia, that is Fraunce, but of a floode called Gallus in Frigia, of whiche water men drykenge were made madde, and were geldede, in to the memory of a childe called Attis,<sup>6</sup> whom that godesse called Cybele<sup>1</sup> luffedde. Whiche childe, after Ouide De Fastis, for the fraude that he hade doen to the godesse was turnede to maddenesse, in whiche maddenesse he did gelde hym selfe. *Giraldus, Dist. prima, cap. septimo decimo.* Therefore Fraunce with his partes hathe on the northe to hyt Germaine, on the este the floode called Rhenus, on the weste the ocean of Britayne, at the sowthe the grete see whiche flowethe to the cuntre of Narbonense. Somme

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Cibeles or Sibeles, MSS. and Cx.<sup>2</sup> have that name, Cx.<sup>3</sup> the, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Frigia, MSS. and Cx.<sup>5</sup> their mynde, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Athis, MSS. and Cx.<sup>7</sup> That, Cx.<sup>8</sup> ware, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>10</sup> þe] Added in α.<sup>11</sup> α. and Cx. add þe.<sup>12</sup> rese or brout, Cx.<sup>13</sup> they ben after fyghtyng, in Cx.<sup>14</sup> be somewhat like, Cx. (and α.)<sup>15</sup> the Alpes, Cx., and so below.<sup>16</sup> So α. and Cx.; south est, MS.<sup>17</sup> of] om. Cx.<sup>18</sup> So Cx.; Frensche in Engliſshe, MS., α.

dam apud Julium Cæsarem fuerat <sup>1</sup> tripartita, modo vero propter <sup>2</sup> varios rerum eventus a Rheno fluvio usque <sup>3</sup> Sequanam, <sup>4</sup> Gallia Belgica sive <sup>5</sup> Francia proprie dicitur. Inde <sup>6</sup> usque ad <sup>7</sup> Ligerim fluvium dicitur Gallia Lugdunensis, quæ nunc superius vocatur <sup>8</sup> Burgundia, inferius vero <sup>9</sup> Neustria dicitur. <sup>10</sup> A Ligere vero usque ad Garonnæ fluvium Gallia Aquitanica dicitur, quæ ab orientali sibi Rhodano usque ad occidentalem oceanum porrigitur; cujus pars superior a celsitudine montium, qua præminet, Celtica dicitur. <sup>11</sup> A Garonna autem <sup>12</sup> fluvio <sup>13</sup> usque ad fretum mediterraneum seu Pyrenæos montes Gallia Narbonensis dicitur, quæ etiam <sup>14</sup> nunc <sup>15</sup> partim Gothia partim Vasconia dicitur. Et <sup>16</sup> sic Gallia universa <sup>17</sup> cingitur tribus nobilibus fluminibus, <sup>18</sup> Rheno ad septentrionem, Rhodano ad orientem, oceano Britannico ad occasum. Gallia itaque lapides <sup>19</sup> habet nobiles; potissime solum Parisiorum <sup>20</sup> abundat <sup>21</sup> gypso, quod album plastrum vocant,

<sup>1</sup> fuit, B.C.D.

<sup>2</sup> ob, A.B.C.D.

<sup>3</sup> ad added in B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So B.; usque ad, A.; Secanam, E.

<sup>5</sup> seu, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> vero added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> ad] om. A.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> vocatur] om. A.B.

<sup>9</sup> vero] om. A.

<sup>10</sup> Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>12</sup> autem] om. A.B.; vero, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> fluvio] om C.D.

<sup>14</sup> etiam] om. A.B.

<sup>15</sup> etiam nunc] om. C. All after dicitur omitted in D.

<sup>16</sup> Et sic . . . quondam in Grecia] Thus abridged in C.D.: In omni prorsus Gallia sexdecim sunt provinciæ, quarum omnium est felicior Aquitania.

<sup>17</sup> universaliter, B.

<sup>18</sup> aquis, A.B.

<sup>19</sup> lapidicinas, A.B.

<sup>20</sup> Pariseus, B.; Pariseorum, A.E.

<sup>21</sup> abundans nobili, B.; abundat nobili, A.

prouynce of Narbon. In Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia was departed on pre ; but for dyuers happes pat byfel afterward in pat lond pe contray and lond pat strecchep from pe Ryne to Seyne, from pe oon ryuer to pat oper, hatte now Gallia Belgica, pat is verray Fraunce ; and pat contray pat<sup>1</sup> strecchep from pens to pe ryuer of Leyre, hatte Gallia Lugdunensis. Pe ouer partie perof hatte Burgundia, and pe neperre hatte Neustria ; and pe contray pat strecchep fram pe ryuer of Leyre to pe water pat hatte<sup>2</sup> Garonna hatte Gallia Aquitana, pat is Gyan, and strecchep out of pe est from pe ryuer of Rone anon to pe West ocean. Pe ouer party perof hatte Celica,<sup>3</sup> pat is, heuenliche and hiȝe, for hiȝe mountaignes pat beep perynne. From pe ryuer of Garonna to pe see of myddel erpe and to pe mountaignes pat beep montes Pyrenei, greet hilles of Spayne, is i-cleped Gallia Narbonensis, and now som perof hatte Gothia, and som Vasconia, pat is Gasquyne. And so Gallia al hool is i-closed aboute wip pre noble wateres, wip pe Reyne<sup>4</sup> in pe norp side, wip pe Rone in pe est, and wip pe Bruttische<sup>5</sup> ocean in pe west side. In Gallia bep many good quarers and noble for to digge stoon ;<sup>6</sup> and bysides Parys is greet plente of a manere stoon pat hatte gypsus, and is i-cleped white plaistre also ; whan pat stoon is i-tempred wip water

TREVISA.

tyme Fraunce was partede in thre, after Iulius Cesar ; MS. HARL. but nowe hit is callede Gallia Belgica, or Fraunce pro- 2261.  
prely from that floode callede Renus, vn to Seguana. And from thens to a floode callede Ligeris hit is callede Fraunce f. 43 b.  
Lugdunense. And from that water Ligeris vn to the floode callede Garona hit is callede Aquitany or Gyon, which is protendede vn to the esturne floode callede Rodanus, and to the weste ocean, the superior parte of whom is callede Celtica, of the altitude of hilles in hit. And hit is callede nowe also Fraunce Narbonense, from that floode callede Garona vn to the grete see, whiche is nowe in parte Gothia in parte Gascuyn. And so alle Fraunce is cincte with thre nowble waters ; with the water callede Rhenus at the northe, with the flood callede Rodanus at the este, and at the weste with the ocean of Briteyne. This Fraunce is habundante in white stones whiche is callede white playster, whiche brente in the fyre and temprede with water makethe

<sup>1</sup> pat] Added from Cx.<sup>2</sup> pat hatte] of, a., Cx.<sup>3</sup> Selica, a.<sup>4</sup> Ryne, a.<sup>5</sup> So also Cx. (Bruttysh.)<sup>6</sup> digge ȝm stones, a., Cx.

quod quidem igne exustum et aqua temperatum vertitur in cæmentum, unde fiunt parietes, testudines, et pavimenta indissolubilia. Ibi<sup>1</sup> floret civitas Parisius, nutrix morum, pincerna literarum, ita<sup>2</sup> refulgens in Europa sicut Athenæ quondam in Græcia.<sup>3</sup> Gens etiam<sup>4</sup> Francorum, sicut pleræque gentes Europæ, a Trojanis originem duxit; Antenor namque post captam Trojam cum suis profugus per Mæotides paludes perque<sup>5</sup> fluvium<sup>6</sup> Tanaim<sup>7</sup> Pannoniam tenuit, in qua urbem Sicambram fundavit, a qua et ipse et sui poster<sup>8</sup> Sicambri dicti sunt. Post cujus mortem constituti sunt<sup>9</sup> duces super eos Trogotus et Franco, a quo Franci vocati,<sup>10</sup> sive, ut Turpinus inter gesta<sup>11</sup> Caroli,<sup>12</sup> scribit,<sup>13</sup> postquam Carolus subjugata Hispania Parisium remeasset, volens honorare Beatum Jacobum et Sanctum Dionysium manumisit<sup>14</sup> omnes servos per Galliam cujuscunque fuissent<sup>15</sup> dominii,<sup>16</sup> qui annuatim quatuor nummos ad fabricam ecclesiæ<sup>17</sup> Beati Dionysii offerrent; et sic franci, id est liberi, Beati Dionysii

<sup>1</sup> *et ibi*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *ita*] om. A.B.

<sup>3</sup> See previous page.

<sup>4</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.; *igitur*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *per quæ*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *flumen*, A.

<sup>7</sup> *Thanay*, MSS.

<sup>8</sup> *ipse et sui poster*] om. C.D.; *eius sequaces*, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *Post . . . sunt*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sunt* added in A.B.D.

<sup>11</sup> *de gestis*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Karoli*, MSS., and similarly below.

<sup>13</sup> *dicit*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> Slightly transposed in C.

<sup>15</sup> *essent*, A.B.

<sup>16</sup> Slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *ecclesiæ*] Added from A.B.D.



and tordned to playstre.<sup>1</sup> Panne me makeþ perof ymages, TREVISIA.  
 walles and chambres, pamentes and dyuerse manere of<sup>2</sup> —  
 workes, pat dureþ longe i-now. Pere is þe faire flour þe  
 citee of Parys, norice<sup>3</sup> of pewes, botiller of lettres, schynynge in Europa as Athene<sup>4</sup> somtyme in Grecia. *Girald.*  
*Dist. prima.* Þe Frensche men, pat hatte Franci also, and  
 many oper men þe strengest of Europa come of<sup>5</sup> Troians;  
 ffor affir pat Troye was i-take, Antenor wip his men fliz<sup>6</sup>  
 away by þe<sup>7</sup> watres pat hatte paludes Meotides, and by þe  
 ryuer Tanais, and wonede in Pannonia, and bulde pere  
 a citee, and cleped it Sicambria. Of pat citee he and  
 alle hise were aftirward i-cleped Sicambri. After Antenore  
 his deep þey ordeyned hem tweie lederes, Trogotus and  
 Franco, and of pilke Franco þei were after i-cleped Franci.  
 Turpinus, de gestis Karoli, seiþ pat whanne<sup>8</sup> kyng Charles  
 had i-made Spayne soget, and was i-come hoine to Parys  
 aȝen, he made alle þe bonde men of Gallia fre<sup>9</sup>  
 in worschippe of Seint Iame<sup>10</sup> and of Seynt Denys; but  
 þey schulde euery ȝere offre foure pans<sup>11</sup> to þe chirche  
 work of Seynt Denys. And so þey were i-cleped Franci

cemente as indissoluble. The cite callede Parisius flory- MS. HARL.  
 schethe there the nutrix of vertu, the pantry of letters, 2261.  
 whiche schynethe now in Europe as Atheynes floryschede  
 somme tyme in Grece. *Gir. Dist. prima.* The peple of  
 Fraunce, as many other peple, toke theire begynnege of the  
 Troianes. For Antenor, after the takenge of Troye, fleenge  
 with his feloweschippe by the floode of Thanay, come to  
 Pannony, in whom he made a cite called Sicambria,<sup>12</sup> where-  
 fore he and his folowers were callede Sicambri.<sup>12</sup> After  
 the dethe of whom ij. dukes and gouernoures were ordeynede  
 to governe theyme. Which were Trogotus and Francus, off  
 whom Frenche men toke theire name. But as Turpinus  
 seyethe of the gestes of Charls, after that kynge Charls  
 subduenge to hym Spayne hade comen to Parise, wyllenge to  
 worschippe Seynte Iames and Seynte Dionise, he ȝafe manu-  
 mission to all his seruantes thro Fraunce of what so euer  
 lordeschippe that thei were, whiche scholde offre yerely  
 iiij. d. to the chirche of Seynte Dionise; and so Frenche

<sup>1</sup> into plaster, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> of] om. Cx.

<sup>3</sup> which is noryce, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Athenes, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> a. and Cx. add þe.

<sup>6</sup> fled, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> þe] om. Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So a.; what, MS. (first hand); altered to whan.

<sup>9</sup> So a. and Cx.; fre before of Gallia in MS.

<sup>10</sup> Iames, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> panes, a.; pens, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Cicambria and Cicambri, Harl. MS.

ubique vocabantur.<sup>1</sup> Ex tunc inolevit quod Gallia Francia vocaretur.<sup>2</sup> Dicunt alii<sup>3</sup> quod Valentinianus imperator lingua Attica vocavit Francos, quasi ferancos, a feritate animi.<sup>4</sup> Nam usque, ad tempora ejusdem<sup>5</sup> Valentiniani<sup>6</sup> Sicambri longævis temporibus tributarii fuerant Romanorum.<sup>7</sup> Illud autem tributum, ut<sup>8</sup> contra Alanos<sup>9</sup> Romanis infestos<sup>10</sup> bellum susciperent, decennio remissum est. Quo<sup>11</sup> decurso, Alanisque<sup>12</sup> detritis,<sup>13</sup> solitum exacti tributum solvere renuerunt. Quamobrem Valentinianus, ingenti coacto exercitu, Sicambros appetiit<sup>14</sup> et devicit. Quo infortunio Sicambri<sup>15</sup> efferati terras Romanorum Romanisque subjectorum crudeliter invaserunt.<sup>16</sup> Hinc eatenus Sicambri, a Franco

<sup>1</sup> *Et sic Franci Dionysii et liberi*  
*ubique vocantur*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> A.B.C. add *ab illa libertate*.

<sup>3</sup> *autem quidam*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly transposed in C.; *a feritate animi lingua Attica vocant eos Francos*, A.B.D.

<sup>5</sup> *eiusdem*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Imperatoris*] added in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *fuerunt Romanis*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *ut*] om. C.; *aut*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Slavos*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *infestos cum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>11</sup> *Quo decennio*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Slavisque*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *contritis*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *petiit*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Sicambri*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *subjectas invadere inceperunt*, B.; *subjectas invadere ceperunt*, A.C.D.

Beati<sup>1</sup> Dionysii, pat is Seint Denys his fre men. And so it come<sup>2</sup> aboute pat Gallia was i-cleped Francia, by cause of pat fredom. Oper men tellep pat Valentinianus<sup>3</sup> pe emperour cleped hem Francos as it were Ferancos, pat is steorne and wither, in pe langage of Attica, pat is Grecia. For Sicambri, pat beep Frensche men, were tributarii to Rome longe tyme to fore Valentinianus is tyme also. But whan Alani, men of Alania, were enemyes to Rome, Sicambri hadde hire tribute forȝeue for ten ȝere for to werre aȝenst Alani, men<sup>4</sup> of Alania; and whan pe ten ȝere were i-doo and Alani ouercome, pe Romaynes asked her tribute; and Sicambri werned it and wolde none paye. Perfore Valentinianus pe emperour werred vpon hem wip a grete oost, and hadde pe victorie; pan for pat myshap Sicambry were wood wroop,<sup>5</sup> and werred<sup>6</sup> in pe londes of Rome [and also on the londes that were subgett to Rome]<sup>7</sup> also. Perfore Sicambri were afterward i-cleped Franci, as it were feranci, pat is wither and sterne,<sup>8</sup> and of pat duke Franco pey were i-cleped Franci, as it were Franco his men. Also of hir fredom pat kyng Charles ȝaf hem pey beep i-cleped Franci, pat is fre men so<sup>9</sup> for to mene. *Trevisa.* But how er pey come to pat name, Franci beep Frensche men, and hatte bope Sicambri and Galli. And so

TREVISA.

men were callede the fre men of Seynte Dionise. And so that londe was namede Fraunce for cause of that liberte. Other men say that Valentinianus themperoure callede theyme Francos, as ferancos. For Sicambri<sup>10</sup> were tributaries to thempyre of Rome vn to the tyme of Valentinian, whiche tribute was remittede to theyme by x. yere that they scholde make batelle ageyn men of Almayne, whiche were contrarious to thempire of Rome that tyme y-paste; and the men of Almayne deuicte, they refusede to pay theire tribute to Rome. Wherefore Valentinianus, gedrenge a grete hoste, entrede theire costes and hade victory of theyme; wherefore thei wente afterwarde and destroyede moche of the cuntre of Romanes; and therefore thei were callede Frenche men of Francus theire gouernoure or elles of

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Sancti, Cx.<sup>2</sup> cam, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.—MS. and a. have *his tyme also*, after *Val.*; but this seems a mere clerical error. See below.<sup>4</sup> aȝenst the men, Cx.<sup>5</sup> sore wroth, Cx.<sup>6</sup> warred, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Words in brackets added from Cx.<sup>8</sup> wiȝer and stierne, a.<sup>9</sup> so] om. Cx.<sup>10</sup> Cicambri, Harl. MS., and so below.

De succes-duce sive a feritate animorum<sup>1</sup> dicti Franci,<sup>2</sup> Fera-  
sione Re-  
gum Fran-  
corum. mundum filium Marcomiri regem sibi<sup>3</sup> creaverunt, et  
terram a Sicambria usque ad Rhenum fluvium proten-  
sam<sup>4</sup> subegerunt.<sup>5</sup> *Willielmus*<sup>6</sup> *de Regibus, libro primo.*<sup>7</sup>  
Defuncto<sup>8</sup> autem Feramundo filium ejus Clodionem sive  
Clodium crinitum sibi præfecerunt, a quo reges Fran-  
corum criniti postmodum vocabantur. Post Clodium  
Meroveum nepotem ejus erexerunt, a quo succedentes  
reges usque ad Pipinum Merovingi vocabantur. Eodem  
modo<sup>9</sup> filii regum Angliæ a patribus patronymica sump-  
serunt; ut filius Edgari Edgaring,<sup>10</sup> filius Edmundi  
Edmundyng vocetur.<sup>11</sup> Communiter autem Adelingi  
vocantur qui de regio sanguine descendunt. *Giraldus,*  
*Distinctione prima.* Itaque<sup>12</sup> post Meroveum regnavit  
Childericus filius ejus, qui genuit Clodoveum, quem  
Sanctus Remigius baptizavit. Qui Gothos Arianos suasu  
Romanorum ab Aquitania expulit. Quo mortuo Childe-  
bertus<sup>13</sup> filius ejus cum tribus fratribus suis, Theodorico,<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> animorum] om. A.B.D.

<sup>2</sup> a feritate dicti sunt Franci, C.

<sup>3</sup> Regem sibi before Feramundum  
in A.B.D.

<sup>4</sup> protensam] om. B.D.

<sup>5</sup> Transposed in C.

<sup>6</sup> Willelmus, at length, here and  
below, E.

<sup>7</sup> C.D. om. title of quotation.

<sup>8</sup> Defuncto . . . expulit] *Quo de-*  
*functo Clodoveum filium ejus substi-*  
*tuerunt. Post hæc Rhenum trans-*  
*euntes a Rheno usque Lygerim cunc-*  
*tam terram a Romanis abstulerunt.*  
*Post hæc prædicante beato Remigio*  
*Clodoreus Christianus factus, Gothos*  
*Arianos de Aquitania jussu Romano-*  
*rum ibi existentes depulit, D.; and*  
*so C., but having hoc for hæc twice,*  
*and ob for de, and omitting est.*

*Quo defuncto Meroveum nepotem*  
*ejus in regem sibi crexerunt, a quo*

*post eum reges Francorum usque ad*  
*Pepinum Merovingi sunt vocati, A.B.,*  
*which agree in the rest with E., as*  
*far as descendunt.*

<sup>9</sup> et added in A.B.

<sup>10</sup> Edgaringes, A.; Edgaringus, B.

<sup>11</sup> Edmundingis, A.; Edmundyngus  
vocentur, A.B.

<sup>12</sup> Itaque . . . expulit] *Itaque post*  
*Meroveum Clodonem filium ejus erexe-*  
*runt, sub quo Rhenum fluvium trans-*  
*euntes totam terram inter Rhenum et*  
*Ligerim a Romanis abstulerunt. Post-*  
*modum Clodoreus rex eorum, prædi-*  
*cante beato Remigio, Christianus ef-*  
*fectus, Gothos Arianos jussu Roma-*  
*norum ab Aquitania expulit, B. And*  
*so A., but having Clodionem, and*  
*Clodoveus.*

<sup>13</sup> Agildebertus, C.

<sup>14</sup> Theoderico, E.

it is alle oon peple, Sicambri, Galli, and <sup>1</sup> Franci, and Frensche men. R.<sup>2</sup> Franci made hem a kyng pat hiȝte<sup>3</sup> Fera-  
mundus, Marcomiris<sup>4</sup> sone, and made alle þe lond sogett, ffrom<sup>5</sup> Sicambria anon to þe Ryne. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Whan Fera-  
mundus was dede, þey made his sone kyng, pat hadde þre names, and heet Clodion, Clodius, and Crinitus; and of hym kynges of Fraunce were aftir-  
ward i-cleped Criniti.<sup>6</sup> After Clodius þey made his sone kyng, pat hadde þre names,<sup>7</sup> and hiȝte Meroueus; and after hym kynges of Fraunce were i-cleped Merouynge anon to Pypinus his tyme. In þe same manere kynges sones of Engelond hadde names i-schape by hir fader names and so<sup>8</sup> Edgarus his sone hiȝte Edgaryngus,<sup>9</sup> and Edmundus his sone heet Edmundyngus. Comouliche he pat comþ of<sup>10</sup> kynges blood is i-cleped Adelyngus. *Girald., Dist. prima.* After Meroueus regned his sone Childericus; hym folwede<sup>11</sup> Remigius. Þis Childericus at þe prayere<sup>12</sup> of þe Romayns put pat peple Gothi Arriani out of Gyan.<sup>13</sup> Whan he was dede his sone Childebertus helde þe kyngdom wiþ his þre breperen Theodoricus, Clodomirus,<sup>14</sup> and Clo-

TREVISA.

ruelleness, makege kyng amonge theyme Fera-  
mundus the son of Marcomirus, makege subiecte to theym the MS. HARL.  
cuntre from Sicambria vn to that floode callede Renus. 2261:  
*Willielmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.* Whiche Fera-  
mundus dedde thei made Clodoueus his son kyng. And after Clodoueus, Merouius his nevene was electe in to the  
kyng, after whom alle kynges of Fraunce vn to Pipinus were callede Merouynge. In lyke wyse the sonnes of kynges of  
Englonde toke their names after their faders. As the son of Edgare was callede Edgarynge, the son of Edmunde,  
Edmundenge. *Gir., Dist. prima.* Also after Merouius, Childericus his son reignede, whiche gate Clodoueus whom  
Remigius baptisede. This Clodoueus at the instaunce and preier of the Romanes expelled from the cuntre of Gyon  
the Gothes infecte with the heresy of Arrianus. Whiche dedde, Childericus his son occupyede the realme with his thre  
brether, Theodoricus, Clodomirus, and Clotarius; in whiche

<sup>1</sup> a. om. and.<sup>2</sup> B.] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> heet, a.<sup>4</sup> Marcomirus his, a.; Marconurus, Cx.<sup>5</sup> ffram, a.<sup>6</sup> Criniti] So a. and Cx.; Cirini Sirini, MS.<sup>7</sup> Cx. omits this clause, which seems repeated by a clerical error.<sup>8</sup> had names after the names of their fader, as, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So a. and Cx.; Edgaryndus, MS.<sup>10</sup> of þe, a.<sup>11</sup> cristned, Cx.<sup>12</sup> atte prayere, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Guyan, Cx.<sup>14</sup> Added from a. and Cx.



Clodomiro,<sup>1</sup> et Clothario,<sup>2</sup> eo scilicet<sup>3</sup> tempore quo Gregorius Magnus<sup>4</sup> floruit, regnum tenuit. Post quem Clotharius frater ejus, qui beatam Radegundam desponsavit. Et post eum Childericus filius ejus regnavit cum tribus fratribus suis, Cariberto, Gundano,<sup>5</sup> Sigeberto.<sup>6</sup> Post Childericum Clotharius filius ejus regnavit, qui genuit Dagobertum et Batildem sororem ejus. Sub isto Dagoberto fuit Pipinus major domus regiæ<sup>7</sup> temporibus Heraclii imperatoris. Post Dagobertum filius ejus Clodoveus regnavit,<sup>8</sup> cujus tempore corpus Sancti<sup>9</sup> Benedicti de provincia Beneventana usque in Franciam delatum est.<sup>10</sup> Post Clodoveum regnavit filius ejus Clotharius, post quem frater ejus Theodoricus, sub quo Ebroinus<sup>11</sup> major domus regiæ beatum<sup>12</sup> Leodegarium affixit.<sup>13</sup> Post quem Clodoveus. Post quem frater ejus Childebertus. Post quem filius suus Dagobertus.<sup>14</sup> Post quem regale genus defecit.<sup>15</sup> Nam post eum regnavit Daniel clericus, quem<sup>16</sup> Franci mutato nomine vocave-

<sup>1</sup> Clodemiro, A.; Glodomiro, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> Clotario, A., and similarly below; Glotario, D., but Clotarius below.

<sup>3</sup> eo scilicet] om. C.D.; scilicet om. A.B.

<sup>4</sup> Magnus] om. C.; magnus Papa Gregorius, A.B.; Papa Gregorius, D.

<sup>5</sup> Gundiano, B.C.D.

<sup>6</sup> et Sigeberto, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> regiæ, B.

<sup>8</sup> regnavit] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> beati, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> translatum est, A.; de Benevento translatum est, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> Eliomus, B.

<sup>12</sup> beatum] om. B.

<sup>13</sup> Varied slightly in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> Post . . . Dagobertus] cui Childebertus frater ejus junior successit, cui filius suus (ejus, A.) Dagobertus junior, A.B.

<sup>15</sup> The foregoing clauses slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>16</sup> frater quem, C.D.; frater ejus, quem, A.B.

tarius. Þis was in þe popes tyme þe Grete Gregory.<sup>1</sup> Afte þis Childebertus<sup>2</sup> regned his broþer Clotarius: he wedded Seynt Radagund. And after hym regned his sone, Childericus, wiþ his þre breþeren Carbertus, Gundianus, and Sigebertus. After Childericus reigned his sone Clotarius: he bygat Dagobertus and his suster Batildys.<sup>3</sup> Vnder þis Dagobertus Pypinus was þe grettest man of þe kynges hous; and þat was in Heraclius þe emperoures tyme.<sup>4</sup> After Dagobertus regned his sone Clodoueus. In his tyme seynt Benet his body was translated and i-bore out of þe prouince Beneuentana in to Fraunce. After Clodoueus regned his sone Clotarius; after<sup>5</sup> hym his broþer Theodoricus. In his tyme Ebroynus,<sup>6</sup> þat was þe grettest of þe kynges hous, pursuede Seint Leodegarius and dede hym moche woo and tene, and martired hym at þe laste.<sup>7</sup> After Theodoricus regned Clodouius; and after hym his ʒonge<sup>8</sup> broþer Childebertus; [after him his ʒonger<sup>9</sup> sone Dagobertus;]<sup>10</sup> and after hym þe kynges lynage failede. For after hym reigned his broþer Daniel, þat was a clerk. But Franci chaunged Daniel his name, and

TREVISIA.

tyme Grete Gregory floryschede. Afther whom Clotarius his brother reignede, whiche toke to his wyfe Seynte Rade-  
gunde. After whom Childericus his son reignede, with  
Garibertus, Gundianus, and Sigelbertus, his brether. After  
Childericus Clotarius his son reignede, which gate Dagoberte  
and Batildis his sustyr. Vnder this Dagoberte, Pipinus  
was as the gouernoure of the kynges house, in the tymes  
of Heraclius themperoure. After Dagoberte, Clodoueus  
his son reignede, in the tyme of whom the body of Seynte  
Benedicte was translate from the prouince Beneuentan vn  
to Fraunce. After Clodoueus, Clotarius his son reignede.  
After him his brother Theodoricus, vnder whom Ebronius  
was the gouernoure of the kynges howse, whiche punyschede  
Seynte Leodegary. After whom Clodoueus, and after hym  
Childebertus his yongeste brother reignede, whom Dagoberte  
his yongeste son succedede, and after hym the stokke of  
kynges failede. For after hym Daniel a clerke reignede,  
whiche was his brother; whom Frenche men callede Childe-

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> *time of the grete pope Gregory,*  
Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So a.; *Chilbertus*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *Batildus*, MS., a.

<sup>4</sup> *in the tyme of Eraclius thempe-*  
rou, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *and after*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *Ebronius*, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *atte laste*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *ʒunger*, a., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *yong*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Words in brackets added from  
a. and Cx.

runt Childericum.<sup>1</sup> Post quem Theodoricus propinquus ejus. Post quem<sup>2</sup> Hildericus frater ejus,<sup>3</sup> qui ob inertiam nimiam<sup>4</sup> depositus et clericus factus in monasterio private vixit.<sup>5</sup> Sicque<sup>6</sup> defecit linea prosapiæ Ferramundi<sup>7</sup> per viros, sed mansit per Batildem<sup>8</sup> sororem Dagoberti isto<sup>9</sup> modo.<sup>10</sup> Batildis nupsit Ansberto, de quo<sup>11</sup> genuit Arnaldum, cujus filius Arnulphus duxit filiam Pipini ducis ac<sup>12</sup> majoris in domo regia<sup>13</sup> Dagoberti fratris<sup>14</sup> ejusdem Batildis. Sed isto<sup>15</sup> Arnulpho Metensi postmodum<sup>16</sup> episcopo facto,<sup>17</sup> Ansegisilus filius ejus genuit Pipinum, qui vetulus seu brevis dictus est. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.*<sup>18</sup> Qui Pipinus genuit Carolum Tutidem<sup>19</sup> seu Martellum nominatum,<sup>20</sup> eo quod tyrannos per Franciam emergentes contuderit,<sup>21</sup> Sarracenos quoque Galliam infestantes egregie depulerit.

<sup>1</sup> *Childericum vocaverunt*, A.D.; *Ethisdericum vocaverunt*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *cui successit*, A.B.; *illique successit Childericus*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *frater ejus*] om. A.

<sup>4</sup> *nimiam inertiam*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> Abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Sic ergo*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Faramundi*, A.

<sup>8</sup> So B.; *Batildam*, E. (clerical error?)

<sup>9</sup> *hoc*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *isto modo*] *ipsa vero*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *qua*, A., more correctly.

<sup>12</sup> *et*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *regis*, C.D.; om. B.

<sup>14</sup> *fratrisque*, A.C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *Isto quoque*, A.B.

<sup>16</sup> *postmodum Metensi*, A.B.

<sup>17</sup> *effecto*, A.; abbreviated slightly in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> Reference omitted in C.D.

<sup>19</sup> So MSS., but *Tudites* seems to be the correct title, and so Malmesbury, *Gest. Reg. Angl.*, lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. p. 98, ed. Hardy). See Duncange, *s. v.*

<sup>20</sup> *nominatum . . . Iste*] om. C., and so D., except the word *nominatum*.

<sup>21</sup> *conquievit*, B.

cleped hym<sup>1</sup> Childericus. After hym reigned oon of his kyn pat heet Theodoricus; and after hym his brother Hildericus. He was i-putte doun for grete nysete and i-made a clerk, and leued as a monk in an abbay; and panne failled pe lynage in men of Feramundus blood. But 3it it laste<sup>2</sup> and durede in a womman pat was Batildis, Dagobertus his suster. In pis manere Batildis<sup>3</sup> was i-wedded to Ansebertus, and hadde by hym a sone pat heet Arnold. Pan pis Arnolde sone heet Arnulphe.<sup>4</sup> Pat Arnulphe<sup>4</sup> wedded duke Pypinis douzter. Pypinus was grettest of king<sup>5</sup> Dagobertus his hous. Kyng Dagobertus was Batildis proper. Pis Arnulph<sup>4</sup> was afterward i-made bisshop, Metensis episcopus.<sup>6</sup> Pan his sone Ansegesilus gat Pipinus, pat hadde twie oper names, Vetulus and Bremys.<sup>7</sup> *Willielmus<sup>8</sup> de Regibus, libro primo.* Pis Pypinus gat Charles pat heet Tutidis,<sup>9</sup> [and Martellus also, and had pat name Tutidis]<sup>10</sup> of *tu[n]dere*, pat is *bete and bounse*.<sup>11</sup> For he beet<sup>12</sup> out of Fraunce alle pe tyrauntes and Sarazynes<sup>13</sup> pat werrede perynne, and destourbed<sup>14</sup> pe lond and pe<sup>15</sup> peple. Pis Charles folwed pe

TREVISA.

ricus. After whom Theodoricus nye of his kynrede; after whom Hildericus his brother succedede, whiche deposede for his slawthe, and made a clerke, lyvede priuately in a monastery. Soe the linealle descense of the prosapy or kynrede of Feramundus faylede by men, but lyt remaynede in Batildis, sustyr to Dagoberte. The seyde Batildis was maryede to Ansebertus, whiche gate of here a childe callede Arnaldus, whose childe callede Arnulpus was maryede to the dozhter of Pipinus, duke of the howse of kyng Dagoberte, brother to the seide Batildis. Whiche Arnulphus afterwarde beenge byschop Metense, Ansegesilus his son gate Pipinus, whiche was callede olde Pipinus, or schorte. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo.* Whiche Pipinus gate Charles, or other wise namede Martellus, in so moche that he depressede tirauntes in Fraunce, and Saracenes makenge insurrecciones ageyne the londe of Fraunce. This man

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 44. b.

<sup>1</sup> *hym*] om. a.<sup>2</sup> *lasted*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Batildus*, MS. (not Cx.)<sup>4</sup> *Arnulphus*, Cx. (thrice.)<sup>5</sup> *the grettest of the kyng*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *episcopus*] om. Cx.<sup>7</sup> *Brewis*, a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> *Willelmus*, Cx., here and elsewhere.<sup>9</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Tutidus*, MS. (not so below.)<sup>10</sup> Words in brackets added from a. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> *beten and bounsed*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> *he beet*] *abent*, a.<sup>13</sup> *Sarzines*, a.<sup>14</sup> *destroubled*, Cx.<sup>15</sup> *pe*] om. Cx.

Hic nempe paternæ sententiæ sequax reges Franciæ tenuit in clientela sua, ipse comitis nomine contentatus.<sup>1</sup> *Giraldus, Distinctione prima.* Iste<sup>2</sup> Carolus genuit Pipinum secundum et Carolomannum postea monachum. Hic itaque<sup>3</sup> Pipinus<sup>4</sup> ex Batilde prædicta regium genus ducens, post depositionem Hilderici<sup>5</sup> regis voto totius militiæ auctoritateque Stephani<sup>6</sup> Papæ successoris Zachariæ<sup>7</sup> rex Francorum effectus,<sup>8</sup> genuit Carolum Magnum, qui post obitum patris sui,<sup>9</sup> anno Domini<sup>10</sup> DCC<sup>o</sup>.LX<sup>o</sup>.IX<sup>o</sup>. in regem erigitur. Deinde<sup>11</sup> advocatus Petri et patricius in imperatorem est erectus; a quo tempore imperium Constantinopolitanum defecit a Romanis et transiit ad Francos,<sup>12</sup> eo<sup>13</sup> quod Græci nullam opem ferrent Romanis contra sævitiam Longobardorum. Hic Carolus Lodowicum<sup>14</sup> imperatorem, qui Carolum tertium Calvum nuncupatum progenuit, qui Lodowicum secundum, qui Carolum quartum et Simplicem dictum pro-

<sup>1</sup> *contentus*, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *Qui*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *igitur*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Pipinus secundus*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Childerici*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *totius militiæ auctoritate atque*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *auctoritateque Zachariæ Papæ*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *est qui* added in A.B.; *est qui et* added in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *sui*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *Domini*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *deinde . . . Conquestoris*] Abbreviated in B., as follows: "Quem postmodum Romani ob ejus egre-

*gios actus advocatum beati Petri elegerunt, deinde patricium, imperatorem deinde Augustum; a quo tempore imperium Constantinopolis defecit a Romanis et transiit ad Francos, eo quod nullam opem ecclesiæ Romanæ ferrent contra sævitiam Longobardorum tunc Romanos infestantium."* And so A. very nearly.

<sup>12</sup> *Deinde . . . Francos*] Abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *eo quod . . . reportaret* (next page)] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Lodowycum*, E., here and sometimes below



sentens of his forme fadres,<sup>1</sup> and helde þe kynges of Fraunce TREVISA. in his retenue. And he hym self was i-cleped an erle, and hilde hym a payed<sup>2</sup> in<sup>3</sup> þat name. *Giraldus*. Þis Charles gatte þe secounde Pypinus<sup>4</sup> and Charles þe Grete þat was aftirwarde a monk. Þis secounde Pipinus was of þe kynges kynde: for he com of Batildis, þat we speke of rapere.<sup>5</sup> And perfore he was i-made kyng of Fraunce by assent of alle þe chyualrie and by auctorite of pope Steuene þat was next pope<sup>6</sup> after Zacharie. Þis Pipinus gat Charles þe Grete; þis Charles was i-made kyng after his fader<sup>7</sup> deþ, þe 3ere of oure Lorde seuene hundred þre score and nyne. For his noble dedes þe Romayns chees<sup>8</sup> hym afterwarde for to be Seynt Petres aduokett,<sup>9</sup> aftirward patricius, and þan þe emperour and Augustus. And from þat tyme þe empere of Constantinopolis<sup>10</sup> tornede from the Romaynes to þe Frensche men; for þey wolde not<sup>11</sup> helpe þe chirche of Rome aȝen þe Longebardes þat werred aȝenst þe Romayns. Þis Charles gat Lewes,<sup>12</sup> þat was aftirward emperoure. Þis Lewis gat þe Balled Charles, þat was emperour also. Þe Balled Charles gat Lewes; Lewes gat Charles þe Sym-

folowenge the steppes of his fader, kepede the kynges of MS. HARL. Fraunce in his seruyce, contente with the name of a-duke. 2261. *Gir., Dist. prima*. This Charls gate Pipinus the secunde, and Karolomannus afterwarde a monke. This Pipinus the secunde, commenge of the stokke of the seide Batildis, after the deposicion of kyng Hildericus was made kyng of Fraunce thro the desire of alle the cheuallery, and by the auctorite of Pope Steven the successor off Zacharye. Whiche gate Grete Charles. Whiche was erecte to the kyngedome of Fraunce after the dethe of his fader in þe yere of our Lorde Godde dcc. lx. and ix., whom the Romanes electe to be the aduocate of Seynte Petre for the nowble actes that he did; after that thei made hym emperoure and Augustus. From whiche tyme the empire of Constantinople wente from þe Romanes and wente to Frenche men, in that thei helpede not the chirche of Rome ageyne Longobardes, kepenge werre ageyne the Romanes. This Charles gate Lodowicus. This Lodowicus gate Symple Charles, whiche

<sup>1</sup> *forfaders*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *paid and content*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *wip*, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Pypinus*, Cx. (but not uniformly).<sup>5</sup> *bifore*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *pope neyt* (for next), Cx.<sup>7</sup> *faders*, Cx. (and so often.)<sup>8</sup> *chose*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *aduocate*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Constantinople*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *nouȝt*, a. (not, Cx. uniformly.)<sup>12</sup> *Lowys*, Cx. (and so below.)

genuit, qui Lodowicum tertium, qui Lotharium primum, qui Lodowicum quartum, hujus prosapiæ regem ultimum. Quo mortuo Franci statuerunt super se Hugonem Capet, ducem Burgundiæ, qui genuit Robertum, qui Henricum, qui Philippum primum, qui Lodowicum quintum, qui regnavit tempore Henrici primi regis Angliæ filii Conquestoris. *Willielmus de Regibus, libro primo*. Sicque successores Caroli Magni imperaverunt<sup>1</sup> in Italia et Alemannia usque<sup>2</sup> ad annum Domini non-gentesimum duodecesimum, quando Conradus rex<sup>3</sup> Teutonicorum imperium sibi arripuit. *Ranulphus*. Diu postmodum, ut fert fama, regina quædam Francorum, ad quam regnum Franciæ descenderat,<sup>4</sup> videns quemdam macellarium elegantem, sumpsit eum in virum; ob cuius facti detestationem, Franci apud se legem<sup>5</sup> sanxerunt<sup>6</sup> ut nulla mulier deinceps<sup>7</sup> regnum Franciæ reportaret.<sup>8</sup> *Giraldus, Distinctione prima*.<sup>9</sup> Galliam

<sup>1</sup> *Sicque . . . imperaverunt*] Ex hujus Karoli genere regnaverunt successores in Francia usque ad Hugonem cognomento Capet, de quo cæteri descenderunt quemadmodum inferius in suo loco dicitur; ex cuius progenie regnaverunt, &c., A.B. and the versions. This is more like Malmesbury's text. See lib. i. § 68 (vol. i. pp. 100, 101, ed. Hardy). The same

may be said of the readings of A.B. in the notes to p. 276; compare Malmesbury, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> *usque*] om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *rex*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *hereditarie descenderat*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *legem*] om. A.B.

<sup>6</sup> *statuerunt*, A.B.

<sup>7</sup> *deinceps*] Added from A.B.

<sup>8</sup> See previous page.

<sup>9</sup> *Distinctione prima*] om. C.D.; the latter has *Girardus*.

ple. Charles þe Simple gat Lewes;<sup>1</sup> Lewes gat Lotharius; Lotharius gat Lewes, þe laste kyng of þis lynage. Whan þis Lewes was dede, Franci took Huwe<sup>2</sup> duke of Burgoyne, and made hym here kyng. Þis Hewe gat Robert; Robert gat Henry;<sup>3</sup> Henry gat Phelip; Philip gat Lewes. Lewes regnede in Henry Clerkes<sup>4</sup> tyme, þe Conquerours sone. Þe Grete Charles his<sup>5</sup> osprynge regnede in Fraunce anon to Hughe is tyme, þat hi<sup>3t</sup> Capet by his surname. Of hym come oper kynges of Fraunce, as it is wipynne in his place openliche declared; kynges of his ofsprynge regned in Italia and in Almanie anone to þe 3ere of oure Lord nyne hondred and twelue, whan Conradus,<sup>6</sup> kyng of Duches<sup>7</sup> men, toke þe empere to hymself. R. Longe aftirward, as comyn<sup>8</sup> fame telleþ, a woman þat was quene of Fraunce by eritage wedded a bocher for his fairnesse; þerfore in þe repreef<sup>9</sup> of þat dede Frensche men ordeyned among hemself þat no womman schulde aftirwarde be eyre of þe reigne<sup>10</sup> of Fraunce. *Giraldus.* Þe Romayns were som-

—  
TREVIS.

gate Lodowicus. That Lodowicus gate Lotharius, whiche gate Lodowicus the laste kynge of that kynrede. After the dethe of whom the Romanes ordeynede Hugo duke off Burguyn to theire gouernoure, whiche gate Robert. That Robert gate Henry, whiche gate Philippe. Þat Philippe gate Lodowicus, whiche reignede in the tyme of Henry Clerke, son of the Conquerour. Kynges reignede in Fraunce of the stocke of Grete Charles vn til that Hewe Capet reignede in Fraunce, from whom other descendenge reignede there, as hit schalle be seyde in his propre place, of the stocke of whom somme reignede in Ytaly, somme in Almayne, vn to the yere of oure lorde ix<sup>c.</sup> and xii., when kyng Conradus toke to hym thempyre of Almayne. R. Longe afterwarde, after the commune fame, a qwene of Fraunce to whom the realme descendede by trewe inheritaunce, whiche seenge a bochor, a semely man of stature, toke hym to here howsebonde; for the detestacion of that dede, the Frenche men made a statute that noo woman after here scholde reioyce the realme of Fraunce. *Giraldus.* Nowble

MS. HARL.  
2261.  
—

<sup>1</sup> Cx. omits both clauses relating to Charles the Simple.

<sup>2</sup> Hugh, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> Harry, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> clerk his, a.

<sup>5</sup> his] So a.; of, MS.

<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Conradus*, MS.

<sup>7</sup> Duche, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> the comyn, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> reproof, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> royame, Cx.

dudum tenuerunt fortes coloni, qui<sup>1</sup> Romanos sæpius<sup>2</sup> protriverunt. Tandem Gallia, sub Julio<sup>3</sup> Cæsare subacta,<sup>4</sup> per quadringentos circiter annos usque ad ultima Valentiniani tempora<sup>5</sup> per Romanos occupata est.<sup>6</sup> Deinde<sup>7</sup> Wandali et Huni, post quos<sup>8</sup> Suevi et Burgundi, post quos Gothi et Sicambri, post quos<sup>9</sup> Norwagenses et Dani sedes sibi in ea fecerunt.<sup>10</sup> Sunt itaque in Gallia sive Francia<sup>11</sup> hæ provinciæ, Brabantia,<sup>12</sup> Flandria, Picardia, Normannia, Britannia Minor, Pictavia, Aquitania,<sup>13</sup> Andegavia, Vasconia, Burgundia, Alvernia,<sup>14</sup> Salina, Provincia, Campania Minor.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *qui totius vrbis (sic) victores*, A.; *qui totius orbis luctatores*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *multiplici bello pene*, A.C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Gaio Julio*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *subacta est, et sic occupata per Romanos*, A.D.

<sup>5</sup> A.C.D. add: "quando externæ ex diversis orbis terræ partibus gentes eam invaserunt."

<sup>6</sup> Sentence otherwise very slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Deinde*] *Primo namque*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *dein*, C.; *deinde*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *post modum*, A.; *postremo*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *sibi sumpserunt*, A.

<sup>11</sup> *itaque in ea*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Brabania*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *Aquitania*, E.: it and other MSS. below have often *Aquitannia*, which is interesting, as showing the passage to the modern *Guienne*.

<sup>14</sup> *Alicervia*, C.

<sup>15</sup> The proper names slightly transposed in A.C.D. The account of Brabant is placed at the end of this chapter in A. and the Harl. version, but incongruously and inconsistently with the heading of the following chapter. The object in placing it here was to get a word beginning with F. as the initial letter of the following chapter. See the Introduction.

tyme victours of alle þe worlde; but stalworþe men and wight,<sup>1</sup> þat wonede in Fraunce, ouercome hem in many batailles; but at þe<sup>2</sup> laste in Gaius Iulius Cesar his tyme Gallia, þat is Fraunce, was i-made soget, and so occupied by Romaynes aboute a foure hondred ȝere anon to þe laste tyme of Valentinianus þe emperour, whan dyuers men of straunge londes werred in Gallia. For first Wandali and Huni, þanne Sweui and Burgundi, þat beep of Sweuia, a lond of Almania,<sup>3</sup> þat is<sup>4</sup> Almayne. Þanne Gothi and Sicambri, þan Norþways<sup>5</sup> and Danes made hem<sup>6</sup> cheef citees in Gallia. In Gallia, þat is Fraunce; beep many prouinces and londes þat beep Braban, Flaundres, Pycardie, Normandy, þe lasse Britayne, Peyto, Gyan, Angeoye, Gasquyn,<sup>7</sup> Burgoyne,<sup>8</sup> Salina, Prouincia, Campania þe lasse, þat is<sup>9</sup> Champayn. And Aluarn also is in Fraunce. Flau-

TREVISA.

men occupyede late Fraunce, whiche allemoste contriuede the Romanes and victores of this worlde with mony batelles. At the laste Fraunce was subacte to Iulius Cesar, and occupyede by Romanes by cccc. yere, vn to the laste tymes of Valentinian themperoure, when straunge peple of diuerse partes of the worlde entrede in to hit. Firste Wandalinges and Hunes, after that men of Sveuia and of Burguyne, after whom Gothi and Sicambri, after theyme men of Norwegia and Danes, and toke theire places in hit. In whiche Fraunce be these prouinces, Braban, Flandres, Pikardy, Normandy, Breteyne the lesse, Gyon, Pictaia, Gascuyn, Burguyn, Aluerne, Salina, Prouince the lesse, Campanye. Brabancia is sette at the sowthe este off Flandres, a copious londe, and habundant in marchaundise, and specially in colourenge wolles in diuerse coloures, whiche they receyve from Englonde, and sende the clothes in to diuerse prouinces. Thauȝhe Englonde haue the beste wolles, neuertheless hit hathe not suche waters to make coloures with as is in Flandres or in Brabayn. At London is a welle, and a determinate place in the ryuer that is abowte Lincolne, thro helpe of whom nowble scarlet is made.

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *wizt, a.*<sup>2</sup> *Cx., as usual, omits þe.*<sup>3</sup> *So a., Cx.; Alemanii, MS.*<sup>4</sup> *is]* Added from *Cx.*<sup>5</sup> *So a., Cx.; Norwaye, MS.*<sup>6</sup> *hem self, Cx., who omits cheef.*<sup>7</sup> *Gascoign, Cx.*<sup>8</sup> *Burgun, a.*<sup>9</sup> *is]* Added from *a.*



CAP. XXVIII.<sup>1</sup>*De Provinciis Franciæ.*

De Brabantia.

BRABANTIA ad Eurum Flandriæ situatur, terra mercibus copiosa, potissime lanis ordiendis instar Flandriæ indulget, quo fit ut lanas quas de Anglia recipit in pannos multicolores convertit, multisque provinciis refundit. Quamvis enim Anglia lanas optimas producat, aquas tamen tincturæ tam accommodas sicut Flandria, vel Brabantia, non habet. Est tamen apud Londonium fons quidam, et apud Lincolniam determinatus locus in rivulo per transversum urbis decurrente, quorum ope optimum scarletum efficitur.<sup>2</sup>

De Flandria.

Flandria provincia Galliæ Belgicæ juxta litus oceani constituta, a septentrione habet Frisiam, ab ortu Germaniam, a meridie Picardiam, ab occasu oceanum et borealem partem Angliæ; et licet Flandria situ sit parva, multis tamen commoditatibus est referta,<sup>3</sup> utpote pascuis, armentis, mercimoniis, amnibus,<sup>4</sup> portubus marinis et urbibus inclita.<sup>5</sup> Gens ejus elegans, fortis, facunda,<sup>6</sup> locuples,<sup>7</sup> ad domesticos pacifica, ad extraneos fida,<sup>8</sup> opere lanifico præclara, quo toti pene Europæ subministrat. Terra quidem plana, sed<sup>9</sup> silvis rara; quarum vicem supplent glebæ de locis ejus palustribus effossæ, viliores<sup>10</sup> quidem quam ligna quoad<sup>11</sup> cinerem et<sup>12</sup> graviores ad odorem.

<sup>1</sup> Cap. 28 does not appear in C., but the following chapter is numbered 29. Instead of cap. 28, the following occurs: "De Gallia dicit Eutropius experimento deprehensum esse, quod sicut eorum virtus primo impetu majorem quam virorum, ita sequens minor est quam feminarum. Burgundia dicta," &c. Here follows the piece about Burgundy at the end of cap. 28, slightly altered, and after that the piece about a well in Brittany, &c. (see p. 292), also slightly altered. So also D., except that the chapters are not numbered.

<sup>2</sup> The description of Brabant, which Higden evidently intended to write, is given in A. only, and in the versions.

<sup>3</sup> *refectu*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *amnibus*] om. A.

<sup>5</sup> *inclitis*, B.

<sup>6</sup> So B.; *fecunda*, A.E., and the versions.

<sup>7</sup> *locuplex*, A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *fida*] Added from A B.

<sup>9</sup> *et*] *sed et*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *viliozem*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>11</sup> *ad*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *sed*, B.

dria, pat is Flaundres, a prouince of Gallia Belgica,<sup>1</sup> and TREVISA. is vpon pe brynke<sup>2</sup> of pe see of ocean, and hap in pe north side Frisia, in pe est Germania, in pe soupe Pycardie, in pe west ocean, in<sup>3</sup> pe norp a party of Engeloud. And pey<sup>3</sup> Flaundres be a litel lond, it is ful plenteuous of meny profitable pinges, and<sup>4</sup> of richesse of pasture, of bestes, of marchaundise, of ryueres, of hauenes of pe see, and of good townes. Pe men of Flaundres beep faire, stronge, and riche; and bringep forth meny children, and beep pesible<sup>5</sup> to hir neighebores, trewe<sup>6</sup> to straungeres, noble craftes<sup>7</sup> men, and greet makers of clop pat pey sendep<sup>8</sup> aboute wel ny<sup>3</sup> al<sup>9</sup> Europa. Pe lond is pleyne and skarse of wode; perfore in stede of wode pey brennep torfes, pat smellep wors pan wode, and makep fouler askes.<sup>10</sup> Braban is by south est Flaundres, and is plenteuous of marchaundise and of<sup>11</sup> makynge of clooth. For of wolles<sup>12</sup> pat pey hauep out of Engeloud pey<sup>13</sup> makep cloop of dyuers coloures and sendep in to opere<sup>14</sup> prouinces and londes, as Flaundres doop. For pey Engelonde haue wolles at pe beste, he<sup>15</sup> hap nouzt so grete plente of good water for dyuers coloures and hewes as Flaundres hap and Braban. Neuerpeles at Londoun is oon welle pat helpep<sup>16</sup> wel to make good scarlet, and so is at Lyncolne in<sup>17</sup> certeyne place in pe brook pat

*Of Flandres. Capitulum vicesimum octauum.*

FLANDRIA is a prouince of Fraunce callede Francia Bel-MS. HARL. gica, sette nye to the side of the ocean, hauenge on the 2261. northe to hit Friselonde, on the este Almayne, on the sowthe Pikardy, and on the weste parte to hit the ocean and the northe parte of Englonde. And thauzhe Flandres be lytelle in quantite, neuerpelesse hit is replete with mony commodites, as with pastures, bestes, marchandise, waters, hauenes or portes of the see, and nowble in cites. The peple of hit be semely in stature, myzhty, plentuons, and ryche, kepenge peace to men of theire cuntre, feitheful to straungeors, and excel- f. 46. lente in worchyng and laboreng in wolles that seruethe allemoste alle Europe. That londe is playne, hauenge fewe woodes, whiche gete turfes of the marras grownde to fulle-fille the stede of woode, whiche be more vile then woode

<sup>1</sup> So *a.*; *Bellica*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *coste*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *a.* and Cx. add *and*.

<sup>4</sup> *and*] om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *pesibel*, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> *and trewe*, *a.*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *crafty men*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *whiche is sante*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *in al*, *a.* and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *asshes*, Cx. (as usual.)

<sup>11</sup> *of*] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *the wulle*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *pey*] added from Cx. (*they*.)

<sup>14</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *dyuers*, MS.

<sup>15</sup> *it*, Cx.; *bei*, *a.*

<sup>16</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *clepep*, MS.

<sup>17</sup> *in*] *one*, Cx.

De Picar-  
dia.

Picardia Galliæ provincia, ab oppido Pontico quod nunc Phiten dicitur<sup>1</sup> sic vocata,<sup>2</sup> ut vult Herodotus,<sup>3</sup> nobilia habet castra; scilicet Ambianum, Belgis, sive Belvacum, Attrabatum, Tornacum.<sup>4</sup> Jacet<sup>5</sup> inter Flandriam ab aquilone et Normanniam ad<sup>6</sup> austrum, habens ad occasum fretum Gallicum et australem Angliæ partem. Est autem duplex Picardia, superior quæ Galliæ magis est<sup>7</sup> propinqua, alia inferior quæ Flandriæ est contigua et Brabantiae finibus, cujus gens astuta est et<sup>8</sup> grossioris linguæ quam aliæ partes Franciæ.

De Nor-  
mannia.

Normannia, quæ et Neustria a Noricis, id est Norvagenis,<sup>9</sup> proprie est dicta, qui navigantes a<sup>10</sup> Dacia et Norvegia<sup>11</sup> litus<sup>12</sup> Gallici oceani obtinuerunt et partem illam Normanniam vocaverunt. Cujus metropolis est Rothomagus, super ostium Sequanæ fluminis ubi cadit in oceanum situs; habet ad austrum sui Britanniam minorem, ad occasum oceanum Gallicum, ad circium australem partem Angliæ.

De Bri-  
tannia  
minore,

Britannia minor denominata est a Britonibus bis

<sup>1</sup> *nunc . . . dicitur*] Space left in B.

<sup>2</sup> *vocat*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Erodotus*, MSS. Some other author is doubtless intended, and so below.

<sup>4</sup> *Attrebant, Tornant*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *ab aquilone* before *inter* in B.

<sup>6</sup> *ad*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *est magis*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *et*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *Norwagenis*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *a*] So B.; *et*, A.E.

<sup>11</sup> *Noruegia*, A.

<sup>12</sup> *litora*, B.

passeþ by þe toun. Pycardie is a prouince of Gallia, and hap þat name of þe toun þat hatte Ponticus, and hat now Phiten; so seiþ Herodotus. Pycardie hap many noble castelles and townes, þat beep Ambyans,<sup>1</sup> Belgis, oper Beluacus, Attrebat,<sup>2</sup> Tornat; and lieþ bytwene Flaundres in þe north side and Normandye in þe soup side, and hap in þe west side the see and þe south side<sup>3</sup> of Engelond. Pere beep tweie Picardies, þe ouer<sup>4</sup> is nere Fraunce; and þe neper<sup>5</sup> ioynep<sup>6</sup> to þe endes of Flaundres and of Braban. Þe men pere of beep boistous men of dedes, and gretter<sup>7</sup> speche hap<sup>8</sup> þan oper men of Fraunce. Normandie, þat hatte<sup>9</sup> Neustria also, hap<sup>10</sup> þe name of Norwayes þat seilled<sup>11</sup> out of Norway and of Denmark, and gatt a contrey vpon þe clyues of ocean yn Gallia and cleped it Normandie. Þe cheef citee perof is Rowan vpon þe mouth of þe ryuere of Seyne;<sup>12</sup> pere Seyne torneþ into þe see of ocean. Normandye hap in þe soup [the lasse Brytayn, in the weste the Frensshe ocean, and in the north west the south syde of Englonde].<sup>13</sup> Þe lasse Bretagne hap þe name of Britoons<sup>14</sup>

TREVISA.

as vn to esches, and more tedious to the odoure. Picardy MS. HARL. 2261.  
is a prouince of Fraunce, hauenge nowble castelles and hie, lyenge betwene Flandres at þe northe and Normandy at the sowthe, hauenge on the weste to hit the see of Fraunce and the sowthe parte of Englonde. There be tweyne Picardyes; the hier that is more nye to Fraunce, and the lawer that is contiguate to Flandres and to the costes of Braban. The peple of this Picardy is more wyle and of more grosse langage then other partes of Fraunce. Normannia or Neustria, callede Normandy, toke the name of hit of men of Norway, whiche, sayleng from Denmarke, opteynede and inhabite that grownde, callenge hit Normandy, the chiefe cite of whom is callede Rothomagus, nye to the floode callede Sequana, where hit fallethe in to the ocean, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the lesse Breteyne, at the weste the ocean of Fraunce, at the sowthe weste to hit the northe parte of Englonde. The lesse Briteyne toke the name of

<sup>1</sup> as Amyens, Cx.<sup>2</sup> Attrebat] om. Cx., who adds and many oither after Tournay.<sup>3</sup> Eleven words wanting in MS.<sup>4</sup> that one, Cx.<sup>5</sup> and eyther, Cx.<sup>6</sup> inneþ, a.<sup>7</sup> grettre, a.<sup>8</sup> haue gretter speche, Cx.; specheþ, MS.<sup>9</sup> heet, Cx. (who usually substitutes is named.)<sup>10</sup> and hath, Cx. (typ. error.)<sup>11</sup> sail, Cx.<sup>12</sup> ryuer Seyne, a.<sup>13</sup> The words in brackets added from Cx.; partly also from a.<sup>14</sup> So a.; Britons, Cx.; Brutus, MS.

eam<sup>1</sup> occupantibus; primo, per Brennum fratrem Belini regis; secundo, tempore Vortigerni regis Britonum, per Britones a Saxonibus infestatos, sicut in historia Britonum continetur. Hæc provincia habet ad orientem Andegaviam, ad aquilonem Normanniam, ad austrum Aquitaniam,<sup>2</sup> ad occasum oceanum Aquitanicum. *Giraldus in Topographia*. In hac Britannia est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali haustis si petram fonti proximam perfuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno, pluvias statim non evades.<sup>3</sup> In Francorum etiam regno est fons juxta castrum Pascense masculorum usibus valde congruens, sed fœminis nequaquam; cujus aquæ nullo igne nulla<sup>4</sup> arte possunt calefieri.<sup>5</sup>

De Pictavia.

Pictavia Galliæ Narbonensis est provincia, quam Picti, Angli, Scoti navigio impetentes<sup>6</sup> inhabitaverunt, et nomen urbi Pictavis<sup>7</sup> et regioni Pictaviæ indiderunt, sicut

<sup>1</sup> *eam bis*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *ad . . . Aquitaniam*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *evadet*, A.B., in error. The paragraph appears thus in C.D.: *In Britannia minori est fons, cujus aquis in cornu bubali (bibali, D.) haustis, si petram ei proximam forte profuderis tempore quantumlibet sereno in continenti, pluvias non evades.*

<sup>4</sup> *nullave*, B.

<sup>5</sup> Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *impertientes*, A.

<sup>7</sup> So B.; *Pictavi*. A.E. Both *Pictavium* and *Pictavæ* occur as the nominative. See Lloyd's *Dict. Hist.* and Hofmann's *Lexic. Univ.*



pat twyes occupied<sup>1</sup> pat lond. Fyrst by Brennus<sup>2</sup> pat TREVISA.  
 was kyng Bellynus his broper,<sup>3</sup> and efte sones by Britons  
 pat were pursued and greued by pe Saxons in Fortigerns<sup>4</sup>  
 tyme kyng of Britons, as it is i-write and conteyned in pe  
 storie of Britouns. Pis prouince hap in pe est side Ande-  
 gauiā, pat is Angeoye,<sup>5</sup> in pe north Normandy, in pe soup  
 Guyan, in pe west ocean Aquitanicus, pat is pe see pat is  
 by Gyan is side.<sup>6</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia.*<sup>7</sup> In pis  
 Britayne is a welle; 3if pe water of pat welle is i-take in  
 bugle<sup>8</sup> horn and i-helte<sup>9</sup> vppon a stoon pat is<sup>10</sup> next to pe  
 welle, by<sup>11</sup> pe wedir<sup>12</sup> neuer so faire anon it schal rayne.  
 Also in pe Frensche men lond<sup>13</sup> is a welle faste by pe  
 castel Pascence, pe water of pat welle is swiþe good<sup>14</sup> for  
 men and nouȝt for wommen. No man can hete water<sup>15</sup> of  
 pat welle noþer wiþ fuyre ne wiþ craft pat any man can  
 deuyse.<sup>16</sup> Pictauiā, pat is Peytowe, is a prouince of Gallia  
 Narbonensis. Englischmen, Scottes, and Pycetes<sup>17</sup> seilled  
 and wonede pere and cleped pe contray Pictauiā, and pe  
 chief citee Pictaus, pat is Peiters, so seiþ Herodotus.<sup>18</sup>

Briteynes occupieng hit twyes. Firste by Brennius, brother MS. HARL.  
 to kyng Belin. In the secunde tyme of Vortigernus, as 2261.  
 hit is conteynede more plenerly in the story of Briteynes.  
 That prouince hathe on the este to hit Gascuyn, at the  
 northe Normandy, at the sowthe Gyon, at the weste the  
 ocean of Gyon. There is a welle in that Briteyne, the water  
 of whom ydrawen up in the horne of a bugle or of an ox,  
 and caste on the nexte ston to hit, thauȝhe the weder be  
 neuer soe feire, hit schalle reyne anon. Also in the realme  
 of Fraunce is a welle nyc to the castelle Pascence, con-  
 gruente to the vse of men, but not of women. The water  
 of whiche welle can not be made hoote with eny fire. Pic-  
 tauea is a province of Fraunce Narbonense, whom Pictes,  
 Scottes, and Engliche men did inhabite, callenge the name  
 off the cite Picta, and the name of the prouince Pictauea,

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; *occupieþ*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Birremus*, MS.; *Brenius*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *Bellinus broder*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *Vortegerns*, a.; *Vortigers*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *Andegoy*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *by the side of Guyan*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *toppiciis*, (sic) Cx. Reference omitted in MS.

<sup>8</sup> *in a bugles*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *poured*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *pat is*] om. Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So MS., but probably by a clerical error for *be*, which a. and Cx. read.

<sup>12</sup> *be þe welle*, a.

<sup>13</sup> *And in Fraunce*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *the water therof is right good*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *that water*, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> So a. and Cx.; *can do deuyse*, MS.

<sup>17</sup> So Cx.; *Puteis*, MS.; *Putees*, a.

<sup>18</sup> *Erodotos*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.

dicat Herodotus. Hæc itaque provincia per longum oceani projecta habet ab oriente Turoniam<sup>1</sup> quam flumen Ligeris præterfluit, ab austro Hispanias,<sup>2</sup> ab aquilone Britanniam minorem et sinum Aquitanicum, ab occasu oceanum. Gens ejus a Gallis, quibus sæpe immixta est, et etiam a climate, cui subjacet, mores attraxit;<sup>3</sup> ut jam sit robusta corpore, venusta facie, animo audax, ingenio callida; quia,<sup>4</sup> secundum Isidorum, Etymologiarum libro nono, secundum diversitatem cœli facies hominum, colores corporum, qualitates animorum existunt.

De Aquitania.

Aquitania ab aquis obliquis Ligeris fluminis dicta est, quod plurima ex parte terminus ejus est; cujus nomine plures particulares provinciæ comprehenduntur secundum Plinium. A septentrione et oriente habet Galliam Lugdunensem, ab euro et austro contingit provinciam Narbonensem.

De Andegavia.

Andegavia provincia Galliæ media est quodammodo inter Aquitaniam et Britanniam minorem.

<sup>1</sup> *Thuroniam*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Hispaniam*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *contraxit*, A.B.

<sup>4</sup> *eo quod*, B.

pis prouince strecchep longe wey vppon pe ocean, and hap in pe est side Turonia, perby passep pe ryuer of Leyre, in pe soup side Spayne, in pe norp pe lasse Bretaigne and pe see of Gyan, in pe west pe see of ocean. pe<sup>1</sup> men of pat lond drawep after pe maneres of<sup>2</sup> Frensche men, bycause pat pey beep i-meddled<sup>3</sup> wip hem, and also by cause of pe contray pat pey wonep ynne;<sup>4</sup> so pat pey beep now stronge of body, faire of face, bold of herte, and fel of witte. For Ysidre, Eth., libro nono, seip pat dyuersite of contrayes vnder heuene is dyuersite of face in man in strenghe, in colour, and in witt.<sup>5</sup>

TREVISIA.

*De Aquitania.*

*Capitulum vicesimum octavum.*

Aquitania, pat is Gyan, and hap pe name Aquitania of *aquis*, pat ben *wateres*; for pe water of pe ryuere of Leire goop aboute a greet deel of pat lond. Many particuler prouinces<sup>6</sup> is comprehendid vnder pe name of pat lond. Plinius seip pat he hap in pe north and in pe est Gallia Lugdunensis, in pe soup and est he strecchep to pe prouince of Narbon. Andegaia, pat is Angeoy, a prouince of Gallia, and is as it were in pe myddel bytwene Gyan

as Herodotus seythe. This prouince, proiecte by the longi-  
tude of the ocean, hathe on the este to hit Turonea, whom  
the floode callede Ligeris flowethe abowte, in the sowthe  
parte of hit Spayne, on the northe the lesse Briteyne, on  
the weste to hit the ocean. The peple of hit kepe the  
maneres and consuetudes of Frenche men, to whom thei  
were immixte, and after the cuntre to whom thei be sub-  
iecte. For after Isidorus, Eth., libro nono, that the faces  
and coloures of men bene chaungede after the diuersite of  
heuyn. Aquitanny is namede of the oblyke waters of that  
floode callede Ligeris, in whiche name mony other particuler  
prouinces be comprehendede, after Plinius, hauenge on the  
northe and of the este to hit Fraunce Lugdunense, towche-  
enge on the sowthe the prouince Narbonense. Audegaia  
is a prouince of Fraunce Lugdunense, as a meane betwene

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *pat*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *ben of the conditions of*, Cx.

*i-medled*, *a.*; *by cause they medle*,  
Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *and of the countrey that is so  
neyghe to them*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> The last sentence is omitted in  
Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *many a perticuler prouince*, Cx.

De Vas-  
conia.

Vasconia est provincia sub Aquitania olim contenta, habens ab oriente<sup>1</sup> Pyrenæos montes, ad occasum<sup>2</sup> oceanum occidentalem, ad eorum planitiem<sup>3</sup> provinciæ Tholosanæ. In alio latere propinquat genti Pictavorum, cujus terra satis est nemorosa et montuosa,<sup>4</sup> vinearum<sup>5</sup> ferax; quam Garonna fluvius a Tholosana<sup>6</sup> parte separat, et juxta Burdegalam,<sup>7</sup> quæ terræ illius metropolis est, oceanum intrat. Cujus<sup>8</sup> terræ viri dicuntur Vascones, quasi Wacones,<sup>9</sup> quos Pompeius Magnus, edomita Hispania deposuit de monte Pyrenæo et in<sup>10</sup> unum oppidum congregavit, sicut tradit Herodotus<sup>11</sup> historiographus. Viri quoque loci illius modo Bausclenses<sup>12</sup> vocantur, corpore quidem agiles, animo audaces, pilis et arcubalistis utentes, ad latrocinia et depredationes proni, vilibus et fissis vestibus induti.

De Burgundia.

Burgundia pars est Galliæ Senonensis usque ad Alpes<sup>13</sup> Pyrenæos pene extensa, et dicta est a burgis eo quod Austrogothi<sup>14</sup> Italiam vastaturi ibi fecerunt

<sup>1</sup> *ortu*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *ad occasum*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *planutam*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *montuosa et nemorosa*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *et vinearum*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *Tholozana*, E.

<sup>7</sup> *Burdegalia*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Hujus*, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> *quasi Wacones*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *Erodotos*, MSS., as usual. Some other author is, of course, intended.

<sup>12</sup> *Basclenses*, A.; *Blasclenses*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *Alpes Alpenninos* (sic) *Pireneos*, A.B.

<sup>14</sup> *Austro*] om. B.

and litel Bretaigne. Vasconia, pat is Gasguyne,<sup>1</sup> and was somtyme conteyned vnder Gyan, and hap in pe est side pe hilles Pyrenei, in pe west the west ocean, in pe soup est pe pleyn of pe prouince of Tholous, and in pe<sup>2</sup> ower side hit neighep to Peytow. In pat lond beep meny woodes, hilles, and vynes;<sup>3</sup> and pe ryuer Garonna departe bytwene pat lond and pe prouince of Tholous, and entrep into pe see of ocean faste by Burdeux; pat is pe chief citee<sup>4</sup> of pat lond. Pe men of pat lond beep i-cleped Vascones, as it were Wacones. pe Grete Pompeius<sup>5</sup> put hem down of mount Pyreneus, and gadered hem alle in to oon<sup>6</sup> towne, whanne Spayne was ouercome, so seip Herodotus, pe writer of stories.<sup>7</sup> pe men of pat lond hatte now Vasclensis,<sup>8</sup> and beep swift and hardy, and vseþ balles and alblastres<sup>9</sup> and gladliche woleþ robbe<sup>10</sup> and reue<sup>11</sup>; and so pey beep stronge peues. pey beep cloped in slitte<sup>12</sup> clopis and foule. Burgundia is a party of Gallia Senonensis<sup>13</sup> and stretcheþ anon to Alpes Pyrenei, and hap pat name Burgundia of borw<sup>14</sup> townes pat Austrogothi bulde<sup>15</sup> per inne, whan pey keste<sup>16</sup> for to destroye Italia. Pis lond

TREVISIA.

the lesse Briteyne and Aquitanye. Vasconia is a province somme tyme conteynede vnder Aquitanny, hauenge on the este to hit the hilles Pirene, at the weste the ocean; whiche londe hathe woodes ynowe, and fulle off hilles, plentuous of vynes; whom the floode callede Garona departethe hit in parte from Tholosan, entreng in to the ocean nye to Burdewes, the chiefe cite of that prouince. Men of that cuntre be callede Vascones, whom Grete Pompeius makenge tame gedrede theyme in to oon lytelle cuntre, as Herodotus, the wryter of storyes, rehersethe. But nowe the peple of that cuntre be callede Basclenses, swifte of body, bolde in herte, vsenge dartes and crosse bowes or staffe slynges, prompte to thefte and robbenge, induede with fowle clothege. Burguyn is a parte of Fraunce Cenonense to Alpes Pirene extente allemoste, callede soe of townes and cites whom Astrogthes, wyllenge to waste

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> Gascoyn, Cx.<sup>2</sup> that, Cx.<sup>3</sup> wyues, a.<sup>4</sup> whiche is chyef cyte, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Pompeus, MS., a., and Cx.<sup>6</sup> o, a.<sup>7</sup> historyes, Cx., as usual.<sup>8</sup> Basclensis, a.; Basclenses, Cx.<sup>9</sup> arblestres, Cx.<sup>10</sup> do robbe, Cx.<sup>11</sup> reeve, a.<sup>12</sup> slight, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Senosensis, MS., a., and Cx.<sup>14</sup> borugh, Cx.<sup>15</sup> bylded, Cx.<sup>16</sup> purposed, Cx.



burgos, id est oppida. Hæc terra versus Alpes est frigida, ubi incolæ ex frequenti inundatione aquarum nivalium efficiuntur<sup>1</sup> sub mento turgidi et strumosi.<sup>2</sup>

## CAP. XXIX.

*De Hispania.*

*Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.*

Refert Trogus<sup>3</sup> quod trigona sit Hispania universa,<sup>4</sup> quam a septentrione Pyrenæi montes conjungunt<sup>5</sup> Galliæ Narbonensi;<sup>6</sup> ex omni reliqua parte circumfusione oceani et Tyrrheni pelagi pene insula efficitur. Duplex tamen est Hispania; citerior quidem<sup>7</sup> incipiens a Pyrenæis saltibus per Cantabros apud Carthaginem Spartariam<sup>8</sup> terminatur. Ulterior vero Hispania<sup>9</sup> continet partem occidentalem usque ad fretum Gaditanum, ubi Herculis columnæ montem Atlanticum prospectant.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *efficiuntur*, B.

<sup>2</sup> The preceding paragraph is slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Trogus trigonas quod*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *Hispania trigona est universa*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *contingunt*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Narbonensi*] om. C.D.; *Galliæ Narbonensi*, om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *Spartariam*] om. C.D.; *Spartariam*, MSS., and similarly below.

<sup>9</sup> *Hispania*] om. D., which in other respects agrees with the text.

<sup>10</sup> Transposed in C.

is ful colde toward Alpes Pyrenei; men pat woneþ toward TREVISA.  
 pat side of Burgoyne<sup>1</sup> haueþ bocches vnder þe chyn i-swolle  
 and i-bolled,<sup>2</sup> as þey he<sup>3</sup> were double chynned, pat is  
 bycause of greet colde of wateres of snow, pat melteþ  
 among hem al day.

*De Hispania.*<sup>4</sup>

*Capitulum vicesimum nonum.*

*Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto decimo.*

Trogus seip pat Trigonia<sup>5</sup> is Spayne al hool, and þe  
 hilles Pireney ioyneþ Spayne in<sup>6</sup> þe norþ side to Gallia  
 Narbonensis, and is i-closed in þe oper sides al aboute  
 wip þe see of ocean and wip þe se Tyrrhenus. And so  
 Spayne is wel nyȝ al an ylond, for he<sup>7</sup> is byclipped wip þe  
 see wel nyȝ al aboute. But<sup>8</sup> pere beep tweye<sup>9</sup> Spaynes;  
 þe hyder bygynneþ from þe pleynes and valeys of Pireneies,  
 and streccheþ by Cantabria, and endep at Carthago Spartaria.  
 Þe ȝonder Spayne conteyneþ þe west partye anon to þe  
 see Gaditanus; pere Hercules his pileres stondeþ<sup>10</sup> by sides

Ytaly, made there. That londe towarde Alpes is colde, MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 where the inhabitatores haue swellenges vnder the chynne  
 for the grete habundaunce of waters of snawe beenge there.

*Of Speyne. Trogus, libro ultimo, et Isidorus, libro quinto  
 decimo. Capitulum vicesimum nonum.*

TROGUS rehersethe that Speyne is iij. cornerde, or hau-  
 enge iij. corners, whom the hilles Pirene conioynethe of  
 the northe parte to Fraunce Narbonense, made on euery  
 other parte as an yle thro the compassenge of the  
 ocean and of the see Tirene. Neuerthelesse there be ij. f. 47.  
 Speynes. The nyer Speyne to theis costes begynnethe  
 from the hilles Pirene, and is endede at Carthago Spartaria.  
 The forther Spayne conteynethe the weste parte to the  
 see Gaditan, where the pillars of Hercules haue prospecte

<sup>1</sup> Burgan, a.

<sup>2</sup> yswollen and bagged, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> as though they, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> The Latin proper names in the  
 three following chapters are more  
 or less corrupt; they have been  
 mostly corrected without noticing  
 the readings of the MSS.

<sup>5</sup> So a. and Cx.; Trigania, MS.

<sup>6</sup> in] so a. and Cx.; and, MS.

<sup>7</sup> it, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Boote, a.

<sup>9</sup> two, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> where as Hercules sette his pylers,  
 Cx.

Hæc itaque<sup>1</sup> Hispania terra est plana castellis, equis, melle,<sup>2</sup> et metallis copiosa. Quondam vocabatur<sup>3</sup> Hesperia ab Hespera<sup>4</sup> stella vespertina, Græcos illuc<sup>5</sup> dirigente. Demum dicta<sup>6</sup> Hiberia ab Hiberno flumine. Tandem dicta est Hispania ab Hispalo flumine. Hispania octo<sup>7</sup> habet provincias, scilicet, Tarraconensem, Carthaginensem, Lusitaniam, Galliciam, Beticam, Tingitanam, Asturiam, Arragoniam.<sup>8</sup> *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.*<sup>9</sup> Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spartaria ad differentiam alterius magnæ Carthaginis quæ est in Africa, quam Scipio consul Romanus delevit. Sed ista Carthago Spartaria condita fuit ab Afris sub duce Hanibale,<sup>10</sup> et cito post capta a Romanis; sed denuo totaliter subversa a Gothis, qui Hispaniam diu possederunt, potissime sub temporibus Honorii imperatoris. Hos tandem Sarraceni erumpentes ab Africa post tempora Heraclii imperatoris devicerunt. Sed et illi Sarraceni postmodum a

<sup>1</sup> *itaque*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *melle*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *dicebatur*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *ab Hespera*] om C. (not D.)  
The text should be *ab Hespero*, but the error is probably due to Higden himself.

<sup>5</sup> *illuc navigantes*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *dicta*] om. C.D.; B. adds *est*.

<sup>7</sup> So B.; *sex*, A.D.

<sup>8</sup> This sentence is slightly transposed in C.D. The names are somewhat barbarised in the MSS.

<sup>9</sup> *tertio capitulo primo*, C.; *li. 1. ca. 1.*, D.; *cap. primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. xv. c. 1. § 30, and § 67. See *Isid. Hisp. Op.* vol. 4, pp. 200, 207. (Ed. Arev.)

<sup>10</sup> *Hanibale*] Space left for word in B.

pe hille<sup>1</sup> mont Atlas. Pis Spayne is a playn lond and hap grete copy and<sup>2</sup> plente of castell,<sup>3</sup> of hors, of metal, and of hony, and heet somtyme Hesperia of Hespera,<sup>4</sup> pe eue sterre, pat ladde pe Grees pider and was her lode<sup>5</sup> sterre. Afterward he heet Hiberia of pe ryuer Hiberus; but at pe laste he hatte Hispania of pe ryuer Hispalus. In<sup>6</sup> Hispania beep sixe prouinces pat beep Tarraconensis, Lusitania, Gallicia, Betica, Tingitana, Asturia, Arragonia. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* Pis Carthago of Spayne is i-cleped Spartaria, for to haue difference bytwene pis Carthago [and pe grete Carthago]<sup>7</sup> of Affrica, pat Scipio consul of Rome destroyed. Afri, men of Affrica, made pis Carthago Spartaria in duke Hanybal his tyme: but sone aftirward pe Romayns took pis Carthago Spartaria,<sup>8</sup> and at pe laste Gothi destroyed it al out,<sup>9</sup> for Gothi were lordes of Spayne long tyme, and specialliche in Honorius pe emperours<sup>10</sup> tyme. But afterward pe Sarecenes brak<sup>11</sup> out of Affrica and put Gothi out of Spayne after Heraclius pe emperours<sup>12</sup> tyme.<sup>13</sup> But pe Saracenys were aftir-

TREVISA.

towarde the mownte Atlantike. That Spayne is a pleyne MS. HARL. 2261.  
londe, plentuous of castelles, horses, of hony, and of metalle; somme tyme callede Hesperia, of the sterre Hesperia directenge the Grekes to hit. After that hit was callede Hiberia, of the floode callede Hiberus. But at the laste hit was callede Hispania, after the floode callede Hispalus. Spayne hathe vj. prouinces, that is to say Terraconense Lucitany, Gallicia, Bethlike, Tingitine, Astury, and Arragany. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo.* This Carthago of Spayne was callede Spartaria vn to the difference of Grete Carthago, whiche is in Affrike, whom Scipio the consul of Rome destroyed, but this Cartago Spartaria was made of men of Affrike under Duke Hanibal, but after that hit was destroyed of the Gothes, whiche hade possession longe in Speyne, and specially in the tymes of Honorius themperoure. The Saracenes brekenge furthe from Affrike after the tymes of Heraclius themperoure ouercome the Gothes. Whiche Saracenes were de-

<sup>1</sup> hille] om. Cx.<sup>2</sup> copy and] om. Cx.<sup>3</sup> castelles, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> Espera, MS.<sup>5</sup> lode, a.<sup>6</sup> Hispalus. In] om. MS. After Hispalus Cx. adds, or of Hispanus, that Hercules ordeyned gouernour and kyng there.<sup>7</sup> Words in brackets added from a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> Cx. omits the fourteen words preceding.<sup>9</sup> al out] om. Cx.<sup>10</sup> emperour his, a.<sup>11</sup> breck, a.<sup>12</sup> emperour his, a.<sup>13</sup> The preceding sentence omitted in Cx.

Carolo Magno devicti occiduas partes Hispaniæ, quæ sunt Gallicia, Lusitania, amiserunt, orientales partes Hispaniæ solummodo retinentes.<sup>1</sup>

## CAP. XXX.

*De Insulis Maris Magni.*<sup>2</sup>

Gades  
Insula.

APTE prima inter insulas magni maris Gades<sup>3</sup> ponitur, quæ in occiduo fine Hispaniæ in fauce occidentalis oceani situatur, ubi oceanus magnus in terras erumpit, dividens Africam ab Europa; quam Tyrii<sup>4</sup> de mari Rubro profecti occupantes lingua sua Gades vocaverunt, quod sonat *septam*, pro eo quod mari undique<sup>5</sup> cingatur, centum et decem passibus a<sup>6</sup> terra separata; ubi et Hercules posuit columnas mirabiles et memorabiles, tanquam in orbis extremo, quæ de nomine illius insulæ dictæ sunt Gades.<sup>7</sup> *Hugutio*,<sup>8</sup> *capitulo Gades*. Et

<sup>1</sup> The preceding paragraph from Isidore appears thus in C.D.: *Ista Carthago Hispanica dicta est Spa[r]taria, ab Afris sub Hanibale condita, a Romanis cito post capta, sed postea a Gothis est subversa. Alia est Carthago Africa, quam Scipio deleuit, C.D.*

<sup>2</sup> The sections are transposed in C.D., and much abbreviated. It is, therefore, impossible to collate them

minutely. The paragraph on Corsica is omitted entirely.

<sup>3</sup> *Apte . . . Gades*] Apud insulas maris prima, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Tirii* or *Tiri*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *sepiatur sive*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *a terra . . . Gades*] om B.

<sup>7</sup> Abbreviated in C.D., and placed at end of the chapter; the paragraph from Hugutio being omitted

<sup>8</sup> *Hugo*, B.



ward ouercome of Charles pe Grete, and lost pe west landes of Spayne, Gallicia,<sup>1</sup> and Lusitania; and hilde onlice pe este londes and contrayes of Spayne. TREVISIA. —

*De Insulis Maris Magni.*

*Capitulum tricesimum.*

GADES is couenableliche first i-sette among pe ylondes of pe greet see, and stondeþ in pe west ende of Spayne in a moupe of the west ocean. Pere pe grete ocean brekep in to pe ynnere londes, and departeþ atwyne<sup>2</sup> Affrica and Europa. Tiries come, seilled<sup>3</sup> out of pe Rede see, and occupied pat lond<sup>4</sup> and cleped it Gades in hir langage, and Gades is to mene<sup>5</sup> *byclipped*, for it<sup>6</sup> is byclipped [al]<sup>7</sup> aboute wip pe see, and is from pe lond an hondred paas and ten. Pere<sup>8</sup> Hercules sette his pileres, pat beep wel<sup>9</sup> wonderful, as it were in pe vttermeste<sup>10</sup> ende of all pe erpe;<sup>11</sup> and pe same pileres beep i-cleped after pe name of pe ilond Gades also. *Hugutio, capitulo Gades.*<sup>12</sup> And perof it come

viete of Grete Charles, and losenge the weste partes of Spayne, whiche be callede Gallicia Lucitania, receyuede only to theyme the este partes of Speyne. MS. HARL. 2261.

*Of the Yles of the Grete See. Capitulum tricesimum.*

THAT yle callede Gades is put firste amonge the yles of the grete see, whiche is sette in the weste ende of Speyne, as in the mowthe of the weste ocean, where the grete ocean brekenge vp diuidethe Affrike from Europe; whom men of Tیره occupyenge callede hit Gades, whiche is in theire langage, *compassede abowte*, in so moche that hit is compassede abowte with the see, departede from the londe c. and x. passes; where Hercules putte mervellous pyllors as a memorialle in the extremite of the worlde, whiche be callede Gades, after the name of that yle. *Hug. capitulo*

<sup>1</sup> So Cx.; *Gallacia*, MS. Gallæcia is the ancient classical name; but Higden probably intended to use the later form Gallicia.

<sup>2</sup> *a sonder*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *seyling*, Cx., which is better.

<sup>4</sup> *ilond*, a.

<sup>5</sup> *saye*, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *he*, a.

<sup>7</sup> *al*] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *There as*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *right*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *otmeste*, a.

<sup>11</sup> *of the world*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Cx. gives the first sentence thus:

—And to gyue knowleche that there is no place ne lond farther westward that stronge man Hercules sette the pylers there by Gades; thenne estward from these pylers, &c.

inde inolevit, ut <sup>1</sup> columnæ positæ a viris fortibus <sup>2</sup> in illis locis, quæ supergredi <sup>3</sup> non possent, Gades vocarentur. Post has versus orientem Baleares insulæ, Majorica et Minorica situantur.

De Sardinia.

Deinde Sardinia insula ad austrum habet Africam, ad septentrionem Siciliam; quæ nec serpentes habet nec lupos nec venenum, sed herbam quam apium vocant, quæ homines ridere facit et ridendo interire.<sup>4</sup> Hæc regio fontes habet calidos et salubres, quarum aqua latronibus cæcitatem affert,<sup>5</sup> si sacramento præstito oculos jurantis attigerit.<sup>6</sup>

De Corsica Insula.

Corsica <sup>7</sup> insula multis promuntoriis angulosa, gignens lætissima<sup>8</sup> pascua et lapidem aconitem, habet ab oriente Tyrrhenum mare, ab austro Sardiniam ad triginta milliaria, ab occasu Baleares, a septentrione Ligusticum sinum et Liguriam Italiæ provinciam. Et tenet in longum<sup>9</sup> centum sexaginta millia passuum, in latum<sup>10</sup> vero viginti sex. Est autem insula illa dicta Corsica<sup>11</sup> a quadam muliere Corsa, quæ cum

<sup>1</sup> quod, A.

<sup>2</sup> fortissimis, B.

<sup>3</sup> quæ transgredi, B.E.; quos . . . non possunt, A.

<sup>4</sup> interimit, D.

<sup>5</sup> confert, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> tetigerit, C.D. The whole passage about Sardinia slightly altered in C.D.

<sup>7</sup> Cortica, B.

<sup>8</sup> latissima, A.

<sup>9</sup> longitudine, B.

<sup>10</sup> latitudine, A.B.

<sup>11</sup> Crosica, A., (which has *Crosa* below); *Corcica*, B.

\* pat<sup>1</sup> pe pilers, pat pe orped men and stalworpe setteþ in place pere pey mowe no furpere passe, beep i-cleped Gades; þan aftirward<sup>2</sup> from pese pilers and from pe ilond Gades by<sup>3</sup> pe ilondes Baleares, pat hatte Maiorica and Minorica. þan is pe<sup>4</sup> ilond Sardinia, and hap in pe soup side Affrica, and in pe norþ Sicilia, and hap noþer addres noþer venym, but pey haue<sup>5</sup> an herbe pat hatte apium, pat<sup>6</sup> makeþ men laughe hem selue to dep. Þis lond<sup>7</sup> hap hoot welles and heleful<sup>8</sup> pat makeþ<sup>9</sup> peues blynde, and pey forswere himself and touche hir eizen wip pe water of pilke welles.<sup>10</sup> Þe ilond Corsica is cornered wip many forlondes schetyng<sup>11</sup> in to the see; perynne is noble lese and pasture for bestes; pereynne is a stone pat hatte aconites.<sup>12</sup> Corsica hap in pe est side pe see Tyrrenus, in pe soup pe ylond Sardinia pritty mile pennes, in pe west pe ylondes Baleares, and in pe norþ pe see Ligusticus and Liguria a prouince of Italia, and is eizte score myle in lenzþe and sixe and twenty in brede, and hap pat name Corsica of a womman pat heet<sup>13</sup> Corsa. Þis

TREVISA.

*Gades.* Where of a consuetude was taken, that pyllers sette of myzhty men in those places whiche myzhte not be paste were calledde Gades. After these the yles callede Baleares, Maiorica and Minorica, be sette towards the este. After theyme the yle callede Sardinia, hauenge on the sowthe to hit Affrike, at the northe Sicille; in whiche yle be noo serpentes, neither venom, but an herbe whiche thei calle apium, causenge a man to lazþe, and in lazhenge to dye. That region hathe hoot welles and whollesom, the water of whom causethe blyndenesse to theves, after the sacramente recevede, if his eies be towchede with water there of. Corsica is an yle gendrenge nowble pastures, and a ston callede aconites; hauenge on the este to hit the see Tirene, and of the weste the yles callede Baleares, at the sowthe Liguria, a prouince of Italy; hauenge in longitude a c. lx. m. passes, and in latitude xxvi. m. passes. That yle, callede Corsica, toke the name of hit of a woman

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> pat] Added from a.<sup>2</sup> estward, read by Cx., is probably right.<sup>3</sup> ben, Cx. (in the same sense.)<sup>4</sup> is there the, Cx.<sup>5</sup> þei hap, a.; ther growth, Cx.<sup>6</sup> whiche, Cx.<sup>7</sup> ylond, a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> holsom, Cx.<sup>9</sup> which water maketh, Cx.<sup>10</sup> theys and men that forswere hem self blynde, yf theyr eyen touche the water of thylke welles, Cx.<sup>11</sup> stretchyng, Cx.<sup>12</sup> aconities, MS.<sup>13</sup> heyght, Cx., and highte below, contrary to his custom.

videret taurum suum a reliquo armento frequenter discedere ac mari<sup>1</sup> transito melius refectum redire, navicula ascensa taurum usque ad insulam illam subsecuta<sup>2</sup> est, cujus fertilitate agnita Ligures<sup>3</sup> illuc primo<sup>4</sup> adduxit.

De Arado  
insula.

Aradia sive Aradium<sup>5</sup> est insula, quæ tota est civitas, non longe ab urbe Tyro,<sup>6</sup> viros habet nauticos in pugna<sup>7</sup> validissimos.

De insulis  
Cycladi-  
bus.

Cyclades insulæ, numero<sup>8</sup> quinquaginta tres,<sup>9</sup> sic vocantur a *cyclon*<sup>10</sup> Græce, quod est *circulus* Latine, quia quasi in orbem, id est circulum, circa Delon insulam sitæ sunt.<sup>11</sup> Aliqui dicunt eas<sup>12</sup> sic vocari propter scopulos qui in circuitu earum sunt. Harum prima ad orientem<sup>13</sup> est Rhodus, et finiuntur versus septentrionem in littore Asiæ minoris; habent quoque ab austro in boream millia quinquaginta, ab ortu vero ad occasum millia<sup>14</sup> ducenta.<sup>15</sup> Media autem illarum est Delos,<sup>16</sup> quod sonat *manifestum*, eo quod post diluvium ante alias terras fuerit<sup>17</sup> a sole illuminata. Ipsa etiam

<sup>1</sup> et mare, B.

<sup>2</sup> secuta, B.

<sup>3</sup> Ligureos, B.

<sup>4</sup> post, B.

<sup>5</sup> Gradia sive Gradium, B. The only correct form is *Aradus*, which is, therefore, adopted in the marginal summary, where the MSS. have *Aradia*.

<sup>6</sup> a Tyro, C.

<sup>7</sup> bellis navalibus, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> in numero, A.

<sup>9</sup> numero quinquaginta tres] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> siclon, A.; cyclon, E. Higden should have written *cyclos*. The derivation is omitted in D.

<sup>11</sup> statuuntur, D.

<sup>12</sup> Aliqui tamen volunt eas, A.B.

<sup>13</sup> ab austro, D.

<sup>14</sup> So B.; miliaria, E.

<sup>15</sup> 220 D., which omits the remainder of the paragraph.

<sup>16</sup> Delon, MSS., and so below.

<sup>17</sup> fuerat, A.

Corsa hadde a bole pat ofte lefte companye of oper bestes, and swam in to pat ilond and com home in wel<sup>1</sup> better poynt pan he zede<sup>2</sup> oute. Corsa say<sup>3</sup> pat, and wayted hir tyme, and took a boot, and folwed<sup>4</sup> pe bole in to pat ilond, and sey<sup>5</sup> pat pere was good<sup>6</sup> lond for to bere corne and gras, and brouzt pider first men pat were i-cleped Ligures. Aradia, pat hap<sup>7</sup> Aradium also, is an ilonde pat is al oon citee nouzt fer from pe citee Tyrus, and hap many schip men pat beep ful stronge in fiztinge. Cyclades beep many ilondes to gedres, pre and fifty, and beep<sup>8</sup> so i-cleped of pat Grew word ciclon pat<sup>9</sup> is a cercle in<sup>10</sup> Englishe. For pey beep i-sette all rounde as it were a cercle aboute pe ilond pat hatte Delon. Nopeles som men seip pat pei beep so i-cleped by cause of hiȝe rokkes pat beep al aboute hem. Pe firste of hem is Rode<sup>11</sup> toward pe est; and pese<sup>12</sup> ilondes endep toward pe north in pe clyue<sup>13</sup> of pe lasse Asia, and hauep out of pe souþ in to pe north fifty myle, and out of pe<sup>14</sup> est in to pe west two hundred myle. The myddel ilond of hem hatte<sup>15</sup> Delon, pat is to menyng *i-schewed*; for he was by schewed<sup>16</sup> to fore oper londes after Noes

TREVISA.

called Corsa, whiche seenge a bulle departenge ofte from other bestes, and to comme ageyne better fedde then other, meruaylede, and, takenge a schippe, folowede the bulle in to that yle. The plentuosenes of hit knowen, sche brouzhte men from the prouince of Liguria to inhabite hit. Aradia or Aradium is an yle whiche is alle a cite, not ferre from the cite of Tyrus, hauenge schippe men, worthy men in batelle. There be liij. other yles, called Cyclades, of this word, ciclon, in Grewe, that is, a cercle, in Latyn, sette abowte the yle called Delon. Somme men wylle they be soe namede for stoness beenge in theyme. The firste yle of theyme towarde the este is the yle of Roodes, and thei be finischede in the northe in the brynkes of the lesse Asia, whiche haue from the sowthe in to the northe a m. and l<sup>ti</sup> myles, from the este to the weste iij. myles. The myddel yle of theyme is called Delon, whiche sowndethe *open*, in that hit was illuminate of the son a fore other londes after

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> moche, Cx.<sup>2</sup> wente, Cx.<sup>3</sup> sey, a.; sawe, Cx.<sup>4</sup> folowed after, Cx.<sup>5</sup> seie, a.; sawe, Cx.<sup>6</sup> good] om. Cx.<sup>7</sup> So MS.; is called, Cx.<sup>8</sup> ar, Cx.<sup>9</sup> of cyclon in Grewe whiche, Cx.<sup>10</sup> and, a.<sup>11</sup> Rodes, Cx.<sup>12</sup> So a. and Cx.; be see, MS.<sup>13</sup> clyf, Cx.; and hath, below.<sup>14</sup> pe] om. MS. Added from a. and Cx.<sup>15</sup> is named, Cx., as usual.<sup>16</sup> beschyned, a.; it was somtyme  
byschyme with the sonne, Cx.



Delos dicta est Ortygia, quia ortygiæ, id est coturnices, ibi abundant.<sup>1</sup> Ibi quoque Latona<sup>2</sup> peperit Apollinem Delphicum.

De Samo  
insula.

Samos vel Samia est insula ubi nati sunt Pythagoras philosophus,<sup>3</sup> Juno, et Sibylla. Hæc terra albam et rubeam prodit argillam, unde fiunt vasa fictilia peroptima.<sup>4</sup>

De Cypro  
insula.

Cyprus insula, quæ et Paphos<sup>5</sup> sive Cethim, ab austro cingitur Phœnicis pelago, ab occidente mari Pamphylico, a circio Ciliciam habet, continet centum octoginta millia in longum,<sup>6</sup> sed centum viginti quinque in latum.<sup>7</sup> Ibi æs et æris usus primo fuerunt reperta,<sup>8</sup> cujus terræ vinum est fortissimum.<sup>9</sup>

De Creta  
insula.

Creta insula a quodam Creto indigena denominata est, quæ etiam Centapolis dicta est, eo quod<sup>10</sup> centum urbibus quondam insignis fuerit.<sup>11</sup> Terra quidem Saturni et Jovis, quæ<sup>12</sup> de antiquo jure ad Græciam

<sup>1</sup> So B. ; *abundant ibi*, A.E.

<sup>2</sup> *Locani*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Pitagei philosophi*, B. ; *Phitagoras*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *optima*, B. ; paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *Phason*, B. ; *Paphon*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *longitudine*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *latitudine*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *inventa*, A.B.

<sup>9</sup> The paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *quondam* before *centum* in B.

<sup>11</sup> *fuerit insignis*, A. (but interlineated).

<sup>12</sup> *et*, B.

schippe. Þe same<sup>1</sup> Delon hatte Ortygia; for ortigie, (pat beep<sup>2</sup> coturnicies, curlewes,) beep þerynne<sup>3</sup> greet plente. Also þere<sup>4</sup> Latona bore Appolyn Delphicus. Samos, pat hadde Samia also,<sup>5</sup> is an ilond. Þere ynne<sup>6</sup> Pythagoras<sup>7</sup> þe filosofre and Iuno and Sibylla were i-bore. In þat lond is whyte cley and rede cley; <sup>TREVIS.</sup> <sup>—</sup> of þe<sup>9</sup> whiche cley men<sup>10</sup> makeþ erþene vessel good wip þe beste.<sup>11</sup> Cyprus pat ilond<sup>12</sup> hadde Paphon and Cithim<sup>13</sup> also, and is byclipped in þe soup side wip þe see of Phenicia, in þe west wip þe see Pamphylicus, and in þe north west with Sicilia,<sup>14</sup> and is eizte score myle in lengþe and six score and fyue in brede. Þere<sup>15</sup> bras and craft of bras was fyrste i-founde. Þe wyn<sup>16</sup> of þat lond is strengest of alle wynes. Creta<sup>17</sup> pat ylond<sup>17</sup> hap þat name of oon Cretus, pat wonede þerynne. Pat ilond hadde Centapolis also, pat is a lond pat hap an hundred citees. For þere were þerynne an hondred citees somtyme, and þere<sup>18</sup> was somtyme Iupiteres<sup>19</sup> and Saturnus

Noe floode. That yle was callede other wise Ortygia, for MS. HARL. 2261. — curlewes be there habundante, where Latona childede Apollo Delphicus. Samos or Samias ys an yle, where Pythagoras<sup>7</sup> the philosophre and also Sibille the prophetisse were borne. That londe bryngethe furthe white clay and redde, of whom pottes or godardes be made. Cyprus is an yle, whiche<sup>20</sup> other-wise callede Paphon or Cethim, cinete on the sowthe parte to hit with the see of Phenicia,<sup>21</sup> on the weste with the see Pamphilike, conteynenge in longitude c. and lxxx. myles, and in latitude c. xx<sup>ti</sup> and v. myles. There brasse and the use of hit were ffounde fyrste. The wyne of whiche f. 47. b. londe is moste stronge and myzhty. The yle callede Creta toke the name of hit of a man inhabitenge hit, whose name was Cretus; whiche was callede somme tyme Centapolis, in that hit hade a c. nowble cites in hit. The londe of Saturne and Iupiter, whiche longede to Grece in

<sup>1</sup> same] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>2</sup> ben called, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> whiche ben there, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> in that place, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> otherwyse called Samia, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> in whiche, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Pittagoras, MSS.; Pythagoras, Cx., omitting þe filosofre.

<sup>8</sup> cley] om. a. and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> þe] om. Cx.

<sup>10</sup> me, a.

<sup>11</sup> vessel at beste, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> lond, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Cichym, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> So MSS. and Cx. for Cilicia.

<sup>15</sup> In that yle, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> wynes, Cx.; who, however, has is below.

<sup>17</sup> þat ylond] om. Cx.

<sup>18</sup> þere] Added from Cx.

<sup>19</sup> Iubiteres, MS. (not a.)

<sup>20</sup> Either whiche should be cancelled, or is inserted.

<sup>21</sup> Fenicea, Harl. MS.

pertinet. Habet ad austrum mare Libycum, ad septentrionem<sup>1</sup> Græciæ æstibus allambitur, ab ortu in occasum porrigitur. Remis,<sup>2</sup> armis, sagittis prima claudit, litteris<sup>3</sup> jura<sup>4</sup> dedit, equestres turmas docuit, studium musicum ab Idæis<sup>5</sup> dactylis repertum mundo tradidit et ampliavit. Oves et capras habet multas, sed<sup>6</sup> cervos et capreas paucas.<sup>7</sup> Noxia animalium genera, ut vulpes, lupos, serpentes nocuas nusquam gignit; quin etiam venenosa illuc allata moriuntur. At<sup>8</sup> cum majoribus venenis careat, gignit tamen araneas<sup>9</sup> venenosas quas spalangias<sup>10</sup> vocant. *Orosius*. Continet in longum hæc insula millia passuum centum octoginta septem; in latum vero millia quatuor.<sup>11</sup> *Ranulphus*. In hac insula est una de quatuor labyrinthis, sicut infra dicitur.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *a septentrione*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Remis*] plena, B.

<sup>3</sup> *litteras*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *jura*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *ab Idæis*] Alcideis dali, B.

<sup>6</sup> *et*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *paucas et panteres*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Sed*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *arenas*, B.

<sup>10</sup> Higden should have written *phalangas*.

<sup>11</sup> *vi.*, A.B.

<sup>12</sup> The whole paragraph much abbreviated in C.D.; the latter half being omitted entirely. The Harleian version, on the contrary, contains the latter part, while it omits much of the earlier.

lond, and it<sup>1</sup> longeþ to Grecia riȝtfulliche<sup>2</sup> of olde tyme, TREVISA.  
 and hap in þe south side þe see of Libycus, and in þe norþ  
 side it is bygoo wiþ þe see of Gres,<sup>3</sup> and streccheþ out of  
 þe est in to<sup>4</sup> þe west, and was þe firste lond þat was parfite  
 and noble in craft of ores and of armes and of arwes,<sup>5</sup>  
 and ȝaf lawe i-write in lettres and tauȝte horse men to  
 ryde in rotes;<sup>6</sup> and [þer was] musyk and craft of syngynge<sup>7</sup>  
 of Ideis dactalis i-founde. Men<sup>8</sup> of Creta made it more,  
 and communede it in to<sup>9</sup> oper londes aboute. In þat  
 londe<sup>10</sup> beep many scheep and geet and fewe roos and  
 hertes; þeryne is<sup>11</sup> no foxes noþer wolves noþer addres  
 noþer non suche<sup>12</sup> venemous bestes. And þat lond hateþ  
 so venym, þat ȝif me bryngeth pider<sup>13</sup> eny venemous bestes  
 oper wormes out<sup>14</sup> of oper londes he deieþ<sup>15</sup> anon; but þeyȝ  
 þere be no grete bestes of venym, ȝit þere beep venemous  
 attercoppes<sup>16</sup> þat beep i-cleped spalangia<sup>17</sup> in þat ilond. Þis<sup>18</sup>  
 ilond is eiȝte score myle and seuene in lengþe and an  
 hundred myle in brede. In þis ilond is oon of the foure  
 laborintus, as it schal be ynner more declared.<sup>19</sup> *Trevisa.*  
 For to brynge here hertes out of pouȝt þat hereþ speke of  
 laborintus, here I telle what laborinthus is to menynges.

olde tyme, hauenge on the sowthe to hit the see of Libya; MS. HARL.  
 in whiche yle be mony schepe and gaytes or gootes, but 2261.  
 there be fewe hertes and hyndes; gendrenge not foxes,  
 wulfes, or nyous serpentes. And also bestes replete with  
 venom dye anon after thei be brouȝte pider. Neuerthe-  
 lesse that cuntre gendrethe gravelle with venom, whom they  
 calle Spalingeas. *Orosius.* That yle conteyneth in longi-  
 tude c. lxxx. and vij. m. passes, and in latitude a m.  
 and vj. In that yle is also oon of the iiij. mases, as hit

<sup>1</sup> *it*] Added from Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. reads thus: *For therein were somtyme an C cytees somtyme (sic), and there was Saturnus and Iupiter born, and were first kynges there, and of right it longeth to Grecia of old tyme, and hath, &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *and in the north the see of Grecia,* Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *oute in to the eest, and in to,* Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *craftes of rowyng with oores, armes, and shotyng with arowes,* Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *routes, a.*

<sup>7</sup> *lawe wreton, and taughte men ride on horsbak; and ther was the craft of musike and syngynge,* Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *They,* Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *yaf it in knowleche to,* Cx., who adds: *That lond is now called Candia, after aboute.*

<sup>10</sup> *ylond,* Cx.; and so elsewhere in the chapter, and conversely.

<sup>11</sup> *be,* Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *ne such,* Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *pider*] om. Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *out*] om. Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *they deyen,* Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *and though ther be no grete venemous beestes in that lond, yet ben ther attercops,* Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *So MSS. and Cx.*

<sup>18</sup> *Orosius seith that this,* Cx.

<sup>19</sup> *be sayd afterward,* Cx.

De Sicilia. Sicilia insula aliquando<sup>1</sup> vocabatur Trinacria quasi triquadra, a tribus montibus in ea prominentibus sic dicta, qui vocantur<sup>2</sup> Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybæum.<sup>7</sup> Deinde dicta est Sicilia a Siculo Itali fratre. Aliquando etiam vocabatur Sicania a Sicano rege. Habet quoque ab aquilone partem Italiæ, Apuliam, marino brachio nunc discretam;<sup>4</sup> sed olim, secundum Salustium, Sicilia fuit Italiæ conjuncta, sed postmodum aut aquarum alluvione aut terræ motu ab invicem scissa;<sup>5</sup> ita quidem<sup>6</sup> quod fretum illud strictum, quod trium millium<sup>7</sup> spatio Siciliam<sup>8</sup> hodie distinguit ab Italia,<sup>9</sup> Rhegium vocatur, quod Græce sonat ab-

<sup>1</sup> *aliquando*] aliter, B.

<sup>2</sup> *quia*, E.; *quæ vocabatur*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Libeum* or *Libium*, MSS. and versions.

<sup>4</sup> So A.B.; *discretam nunc*, E.

<sup>5</sup> *Habet . . . scissa*] De Sicilia refert Salustius, quod olim fuerit Italiæ conjuncta; post hæc aut aquarum alluvione aut angustia

scissa est ab ea, D., where it occurs about the middle of the paragraph. The remainder down to *comædia* is scarcely at all altered.

<sup>6</sup> *quidem*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *miliarium*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Siciliam*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *quoque*, B.



Laborintus is an hous wonderliche i-buld wip halkes and hernes,<sup>1</sup> wip tornynges and wendynges and wonderful weyes so dyuersliche and so wrynkyngliche i-wrozt, pat who pat is wip ynne pat hous and wil out wende, [pey he wende] wel faste oo wey and oper, hiderward and piderward, estward and<sup>2</sup> westwarde, norpward and<sup>3</sup> soupward, whider euere pey drawe, [and] of [alle] pe weies chese pe faireste; pey he trauaile neuere so sore, al is for nouzt. For out goop he neuere, but he haue a craft pat nedep perfore.<sup>4</sup> R. Sicilia pat ilond was somtyme i-cleped Trinacria, as it were pre square, bycause of pre hiȝe hilles pat beep perynne. Pe hilles hatte Pelorum, Pachynum, Lilybeum, and afterward was i-cleped Sicilia of Siculus pat was Italus his broper, and pat londe heet somtyme Sicania of Sicanus pe king; and hap in the norþ side Apulia, a party of Italy, and is departed bytwene wip an arm<sup>5</sup> of pe see and ioynede somtyme to Italy, and<sup>6</sup> afterward was i-cloue and i-parted pere fram wip grete wateres oper wip erpe schakyng, so seiþ Salustius; and pe see pat is now bytwene Sicilia and Italy is pre myle brood, and hatte Rhegium, pat is to menyng, i-broke of.

TREVISIA.

schalle be expressede afterwarde. That yle Sicilia<sup>7</sup> was MS. HARL. 2261. callede somme tyme Trinacria, of thre hilles schewenge in hit, whiche be namede Pelorum, Pachynum,<sup>7</sup> and Lilybeum. After that hit was callede Sicilia,<sup>8</sup> of Siculus broper to Italus. Also hit was callede Sicania, of Sicanus kyng, hauenge on the northe to hit Apulia, a parte of Ytaly, now diuidede by an arme of the see. But after Salustius, Scicille was coniuncte somme tyme to Ytaly, but afterwarde hit was diuidede auper thro invndation of water, other thro the movenge of erthes, in so moche that a see diuidethe now Ytaly from Scicille by the space of iij. myles. That

<sup>1</sup> *hirnes*, *a.*<sup>2</sup> *and*] om. *a.*<sup>3</sup> *and*] om. *a.*

<sup>4</sup> In the preceding extract from Trevisa the words in brackets are added from *a.* Caxton's text has been very much altered thus: "For to late men haue knowleche what laborintus is, it is an hous wonderly buylded and wrought with halkes and huyrenes, tornynges, and windynges so diuersly by wonderful wayes and wrynelis, that who, that gooth in to that hows and wold come out agayn, though

"he retorne hytherward and thyderward eeste, west, north, or southward, whyther euere he drawe and for alle the wayes he can chese, though he trauaylle neuer so sore, he shal be so mased that out can he not goo, but yf he haue the craft that serueth therfore."

<sup>5</sup> *departed fro that part with grete waters of an arme of the see or clouen by erthshakyng*, Cx., who has slight variations in the words following.

<sup>6</sup> *and*] Added from *a.*<sup>7</sup> *Pachynum*, Harl. MS.<sup>8</sup> *Scicilia*, Harl. MS. (twice.)

*ruptum*. Habet quoque illud fretum duo famosa et fabulosa monstra, Scyllam et Charybdim. Scyllam accolæ saxum inari imminens<sup>1</sup> appellant, humanæ formæ similem capitibus caninis<sup>2</sup> succinctam fingunt, quia<sup>3</sup> collisi ibi fluctus videntur latratus exprimere. Charybdis autem est mare vorticosum<sup>4</sup> et naufragosum, ter in die fluctus evomens et ter absorbens.<sup>5</sup> *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo*. Hæc insula primo omnium terrarum pro committendis seminibus fertur aratro fuisse proscissa,<sup>6</sup> ibique primum inventa fuit comoedia. *Beda de Naturis*. Tellus Siciliæ cavernosa, sulphure ac bitumine strata, ventis pene tota et ignibus patet; spiritu quoque introrsus cum igne concertante, multis sæpe locis fumum, vaporem, seu flammam eructat;<sup>7</sup> vel etiam, vento acrius incumbente, arenarum lapidumve moles egerit, indeque montis Ætnæ tam diutinum est incendium. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo, capitulo septimo*. Ætna mons versus eorum et Africum<sup>8</sup> habet spe-

Ætna  
mons.

<sup>1</sup> *iminens* (sic), A.E.; *minans*, B.

Probably *eminens* is the true reading.

<sup>2</sup> *caninam*, A.E.; *succinctum*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *qui*, B.E.

<sup>4</sup> *verticosum*, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> *absorbens ter*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *precisa*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *emittit*, B.

<sup>8</sup> So A.B.; *Affricam*, E.

In pat see beep tweie greet periles and <sup>1</sup> wonderful and wel TREVISA.  
wyde i-knowe; pat oon is Scylla, pat opir is Charybdis. —  
Men of pat lond clepeþ Scyllam a greet stoon, pat is pere  
i-seie aboue þe water, i-schape as a man, byclipped aboute  
wip hondes,<sup>2</sup> and feyneþ and seieþ pat it semeþ pat þe wawes  
berkep,<sup>3</sup> pat betep pere vpon. Charybdis is a perilous  
whirlynge see pat castep vp water and wawes, and swolowep  
hem yn pries a day.<sup>4</sup> *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* In  
pis ilond me<sup>5</sup> erede firste wip plow<sup>3</sup> for to sawe<sup>6</sup> in corn  
and oper sedes, and pere was commedy a song of gastes  
firste i-founde. *Beda de Naturis.* Þe lond of Sicilia is holow  
and ful of dennes, and hap moche<sup>7</sup> brymstone and glewe, so  
pat the eier and feire<sup>8</sup> hap wey i-now þerto, and fuyre  
i-closed in þe dennes and chenes<sup>9</sup> wip ynne þe erpe stryueþ  
wip þe<sup>10</sup> ayer and wip<sup>11</sup> oper pinges pat beep contrarye to  
þe fuyre and makeþ ofte and in meny places breke out a<sup>12</sup>  
smoke and brennyng leie.<sup>13</sup> And somtyme the strengþe of  
þe wynd pat is wip inne makeþ breke<sup>14</sup> hepes of grauel  
and of stones; for suche doynge it is pat þe brennyng of  
þat hil<sup>15</sup> mont Etna<sup>16</sup> dureþ so longe. *Isidorus, libro quarto  
decimo.* Pat hille mount Etna toward þe soup est hap  
many chenes and holow<sup>17</sup> dennes<sup>18</sup> wip inne þe erpe ful of

see hathe ij. famous wondres and fulle of fables, that be MS. HARL.  
Scylla and Charybdis. This Scylla, as men dwellenge there 2261.  
expresse, seyen that hit is a ston apperenge in the see  
lyke to the forme of man with hedes lyke to dogges.  
Wherefore thei seyne that thyng as to berke for the  
collision of waters metenge there. Charybdis is callede  
properly a turnenge water, and perellous for destroyenge of  
schippes, evometenge waters thryes in the day, and de-  
voureng theyme. *Isidorus, Eth., libro quarto decimo.*  
That londe occupiede tyllenge of the londe with a plowe  
firste of alle other londes. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo,  
capitulo septimo.* In this Scicille is the mownte callede  
Etna,<sup>16</sup> hauenge in hit towarde the sowthe pyttes of

<sup>1</sup> and] om a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> hondes heedes, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; brekep, MS.

<sup>4</sup> in agayn thryes in a day, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> men, Cx., as usual.

<sup>6</sup> sowe, a., Cx.

<sup>7</sup> caues and moche sulphur or  
brymstone, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> fire, a.

<sup>9</sup> in the caues and in the chinnes, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> þe] om. a.

<sup>11</sup> wip] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> greet, a.

<sup>13</sup> to fyre, and that causeth ofte  
smoke and brennyng leyte to breke  
out in many places, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> to breke oute, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> hille that is called the mount, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> Ethna, MSS. and Cx.

<sup>17</sup> holw, MS.

<sup>18</sup> chynnes and holowe dennes or  
caues, Cx.

luncas sulphure plenas, quæ ventum recipientes ignem gignunt fumosum. *Ranulphus*. In quo loco apparent figuræ et audiuntur voces gemebundæ, unde creditur a plerisque ibi fore<sup>1</sup> loca pœnalia animarum, quemadmodum Beatus Gregorius in suo dialogo videtur facere mentionem.<sup>2</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia*.<sup>3</sup> Est in Sicilia<sup>4</sup> fons, ad quem si quis rubro indutus vestimento accesserit,<sup>5</sup> statim ad accedentis staturam prosiliens in altum aqua<sup>6</sup> ebullit, ad alios prorsus colores immota.<sup>7</sup> Sunt et in ea cicadæ alatæ arterias apertas sub gutture habentes, quæ melius<sup>8</sup> (ut fertur) decapitatæ quam<sup>9</sup> integræ dulciusque<sup>10</sup> mortuæ quam vivæ canunt.<sup>11</sup> Unde et pastores terræ, ut dulciorem cantum ab eis<sup>12</sup> extorqueant, eas decapitare solent.<sup>13</sup> In hac quoque terra urbs est Palerma,<sup>14</sup> quæ plus certi<sup>15</sup> redditus reddit annuatim regi terræ quam tota Anglia reddit de certo<sup>16</sup> regi suo. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. Sunt in Sicilia fontes duo, quorum unus sterilem fecundat, alter vero fecundam<sup>17</sup> sterilem reddit.

<sup>1</sup> *quædam loca*, B.

<sup>2</sup> The three foregoing citations, and part of the opening words of this paragraph, are thus abridged in C.D.  
 "Sicilia habet ab aquilone Italiam,  
 "marino brachio a terra Calabriæ  
 "separatam; quondam dicta est  
 "Trinacria, quasi triquadra, a tribus  
 "montibus. Demum Sicilia a Siculo Itali fratre, aliquando etiam  
 "dicta est Sicania a Sicano rege.  
 "Terra cavernosa et sulphurea;  
 "in qua est mons Ætna (Ethna)  
 "jugiter ardens. Sunt in ea sales  
 "argentini (agergentini, D.) ad ignem solubilis in aquam (aqua, D.)  
 "crepitantes."

<sup>3</sup> *topici*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *ea*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> Transposed in C.D.; *cum indutus vestimento rubeo accesserit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *fons*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *immutus*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *in olivis*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *vel*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *dulcius*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *canunt* before *mortuæ*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *ab eis*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Ysidorus Ethimologia libro 13* added in C., wrongly.

<sup>14</sup> So C.; *Palerna*, A.D.E.

<sup>15</sup> *certi*] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *de certo*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *fecundam* after *reddit* in A. This sentence, and all that follow, except the first, are omitted in D.

brymston, pat fongeþ<sup>1</sup> moche wynde and gendrep fuyre and smoke. R. In pat place beep i-seie dyuers figures and schappes and i-herd reweful<sup>2</sup> voys and gronyng. Perfore some men wenep þat soules beep pere in peyne, as it semeþ pat Seint Gregorie makeþ mynde in his dialogo.<sup>3</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia*. Pere is a welle in Sicilia, 3if a man comeþ perto i-cloped in reed, anoon þe water of þat welle springeþ vp as hiȝe as þat manis hede; and for oper colour and<sup>4</sup> hewe þe water meueþ nouȝt. Pere beep also cicade bryddes þat syngeþ at þe<sup>5</sup> beste, and haueþ a pipe open vnder þe prote, and syngeþ better whan þe hede is offe þan while<sup>6</sup> it is onne, and better whan þey beep dede þan while þey bep on lyue.<sup>7</sup> Perfore herdes of þat lond byhedep hem forto haue þe swetter song. Also<sup>8</sup> in þat lond is a citee þat hatte Palarna,<sup>9</sup> and<sup>10</sup> ȝeldeþ euery ȝere more of certeyn rente to þe kyng of þat lond<sup>11</sup> þan þe kyng of Engeland hap of certeyne<sup>12</sup> rente of Engeland.<sup>13</sup> *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. In Sicilia beep tweie welles, pat oon of hem makeþ a bareyn womman bere<sup>14</sup> children,

TREVISA.

sulphur,<sup>15</sup> whiche receyvenge wynde gendre a fumose fyre. MS. HARL. 2261.  
R. In whiche place figures do appere and lamentable voices be herde ofte tymes; where fore mony men suppose that þer be places of peynes for sawles, as Seynte Gregory semethe to afferme in his dialogges. *Gir. in Top.* Also in Scicille is a welle to whom a man commenge in redde clothege anoon that water movethe vp, not movenge to other coloures. Also in hit be gressechoppers, hauenge streyte veynes vnder the throte; whiche, hauenge theire hedes kytte of, synge more swetely, as hit is seyde, then when thei haue theire hedes, and dedde better then on lyve. Wherefore the schepardes, wyllenge to make theyme to synge swetely, kytte of theire hedes. In hit is a cite callede Palarna, whiche yeldethe more rente yerely to the kyng þer of, more then alle Englonde yeldethe to the kyng of certenty. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo*. Also in Scicille be ij. welles, oon of theyme makethe plentuous a bareyne thyng; that other welle makeythe bareyne a

<sup>1</sup> *resseyneþ*, Cx., as usual; and *engendryth* below.

<sup>2</sup> *rufol*, a.

<sup>3</sup> *dyaloge*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *and*] or, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *wel* in the best wyse, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *whan*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *a lyue*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *And*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So MSS. and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *that*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *to þe kyng of þat lond*] om. Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *siker*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *of al Engeland*, a.

<sup>14</sup> *to bere*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> Perhaps *sulphure* is the reading of Harl. MS.



De insulis  
Æoliis.

Sunt et<sup>1</sup> in Sicilia sales Agrigentini, contra morem alterius salis in<sup>2</sup> igne solubiles et in<sup>3</sup> aqua crepitantes. Item juxta Siciliam est insula Æola, sic dicta ab Æolo, quem poetæ finxerunt deum venti, pro eo quod ipse existens rector Æoliarum<sup>4</sup> insularum, numero novem, ex fumosis et nebulosis vaporibus ascendentibus prædicebat ventos affuturos, ac per hoc putatus est ab imperitis ventos habere in potestate. *Ranulphus*. Hæ eadem novem insulæ dictæ sunt<sup>5</sup> Vulcaniæ,<sup>6</sup> eo quod ignis in eis<sup>7</sup> jugiter ardeat. Sunt et aliæ insulæ in mari Euxino, quod magna<sup>8</sup> pars est maris magni, inter quas famosæ sunt Colchos, ubi Jason quæsivit vellus aureum, sicut infra tangitur<sup>9</sup> Colchos. Patmos. circa bellum Trojanum; et Patmos,<sup>10</sup> ubi<sup>11</sup> Johannes relegabatur.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> et] om. A.; etiam ibidem, B.

<sup>2</sup> in] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> in] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> Eolarum, MSS.

<sup>5</sup> dictæ sunt] om. B.

<sup>6</sup> vulcane, MSS.

<sup>7</sup> in eis ignis, B.

<sup>8</sup> magna] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> tangetur, B.

<sup>10</sup> Pathmos, MSS., as usual.

<sup>11</sup> sanctus, added in B.

<sup>12</sup> relegabat, B.E.

and þe oper makeþ a chilyng womman barayn. In Sicilia is salt Agrigentinus,<sup>1</sup> wonderful and contrarie to oper salt. For þey<sup>2</sup> melteþ in fuyre, and lepeþ and sprankeleþ<sup>3</sup> in water. Byside Sicilia is an ilond þat hatte Eola, and hap þe name of Eolus. Poetes feynede and cleped<sup>4</sup> [þat]<sup>5</sup> Eolus god<sup>6</sup> of wyndes; for while he was rulere of<sup>7</sup> nync ilondes, euerich of hem heet Eola; by risynge of moisture of myst and of smoke he wolde telle whan it schulde reyne; and perfore men, þat kouþe but litel good, wende þat<sup>8</sup> he hadde þe wynde in his power and myȝt. Þe same nync ilondes hatte volcane,<sup>9</sup> that is *fuyre*,<sup>10</sup> for fire brenneþ pere all wey. Pere beep oper ilondes in þe see Euxinus.<sup>11</sup> Þat see Euxinus is a grete partie of þe grete see of myddel erpe; among þe whiche ilondes þe ilond Colchos is famous. Pere Iason<sup>12</sup> fette þe golden flees, as it is<sup>13</sup> declared wip ynne<sup>14</sup> aboute þe batayle of Troye. And Patmos<sup>15</sup> is an ilond in þe same see; pere Seynt<sup>16</sup> Iohan þe Euangeliste was, whan he was outlawed<sup>17</sup> oute of oper londes.

TREVISA.

thynges plentuous. Also in Scicille is white salte, contrary to the nature of other salte, whiche, beenge soluble in the fyre, brestethe and brekethe in the water. Also there is an yle nye to Scicille callete Eola, takenge the name of hit of a man callete Eolus, whom poetes feynede to be god of wynde, in so moche that he, beenge gouerner of the seide ix. yles, seyde ofte tymes when wyndes scholde folowe by fumose vapores ascendenge. Where fore indiscrete men supposede hym to haue the wynde in his gouernaile and powere. These ix. yles be namede and callete Walcane, in that fire brennethe in theyme continually. Also there be other yles in the see Eusyne, whiche is a grete parte of the grete see, amonge whom the yle callete Colchos, where Iason did seche the fleese of golde, as hit schalle be towchede abowte þe batelle of Troye, ys moste of fame; and Patmos,<sup>15</sup> where Seynte Iohan was in exile.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; *arigentinus*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *it*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *sprancleth*, a.; *sperclyth*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *feynen* and *saye*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> [þat] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *is god*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *of the*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *therefore symple men supposed that*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; *uicane*, MS., a.

<sup>10</sup> *fyry*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *Eusinus*, MSS. and Cx., as usual.

<sup>12</sup> *as Iason*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *shal be*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *after*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *Pathmos*, MSS. and Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *as seynt*, Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *exyled*, Cx.

## CAP. XXXI.

*De insulis oceani.*

De insulis  
Fortunatis.

*Plinius et Isidorus.* Temperatæ sunt insulæ Fortunatæ in occidentali oceano positæ, quæ putatæ sunt a Gentilibus esse Paradisum propter soli fecunditatem et aeris temperiem. Ibi enim fortuitis vitibus juga collium vestiuntur et herbarum more messis et olus vulgo<sup>1</sup> est.<sup>2</sup> Proinde ob uberem proventum Fortunatæ dicuntur quasi felices, nam ibi sunt arbores usque ad centum quadraginta pedes porrectæ in altum. Ibi etiam est<sup>3</sup> insula Capraria, a multitudine caprarum et arietum sic dicta.<sup>4</sup> Et etiam insula Canaria, a multitudine canum sic dicta.<sup>5</sup>

De Dacia  
insula.

Dacia est insula boreali parti Germaniæ contigua, cujus gens quondam ferox et bellicosa,<sup>6</sup> propter quod Britannicas oras et Gallicas aliquando occuparunt.<sup>7</sup> Et dicuntur Daci quasi Dagi,<sup>8</sup> quia de Gothorum genere procreati.<sup>9</sup> Gens ejus copiosa, elegantis staturæ, et de-

<sup>1</sup> *vulgus*, B.

<sup>2</sup> The whole much abbreviated in C.D., in which the remainder of the paragraph does not occur.

<sup>3</sup> *est etiam*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *est*, added in A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *sic dicta*] fortium nuncupata, A.B.

<sup>6</sup> *gens pulchra et pia*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *occupaverunt*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *Dage*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *de stirpe Gothorum descendens*, D.

*De insulis Oceani.*

TREVISA.

*Capitulum tricesimum primum.*

*Isidorus, libro quinto.* Insule Fortunate, (pat beep pe gracious ilondes, and beep of good temprure of wynde and of weder i-sette in pe west ocean and of som men i-holde paradys by cause of goodnesse of pe lond and of temprure of weder,<sup>1</sup>) pere by<sup>2</sup> gracious tymes; pe hulles beep i-heled, and corne<sup>3</sup> and herbes growep as it were gras. Perfore by cause of plente of corne and of fruyt pey beep i-cleped Fortunat, pat is, gracious: for pere beep trees of seuen score foot of heithe.<sup>4</sup> Pere is pe ilond Capr[ar]ia, pat is pe ilond of Geet; for pere beep meny geet and wetheris also. Pere is pe ilond Canaria, pat is pe ilond of Houndes, [for perynne beep ful meny strong houndes].<sup>5</sup> Dacia, pat is Denmark, is an ilond pat ioynep to pe north side of Germania. Men of<sup>6</sup> Denmark were somtyme ful sturne and goode men of armes; perfore pey occupied somtyme greet contrayes in Brytayne<sup>7</sup> and in Fraunce, and hatte Daci as it were Dagi, for pey come of [pe]<sup>8</sup> Gothes. Pere beep many men in Dacia, and beep faire

*Off the Yles of the Ocean. Capitulum tricesimum primum.* MS. HARL. 2261.  
*Plinius, et Isidorus libro quinto decimo.*<sup>9</sup>

THE Yles Fortunate be temperate, putte in the weste ocean, supposede of mony men to be paradise for the temperaunce of the aier and fecundite or plentuosenes of the soyle; the hilles of those yles be clothe as by fortunable enchaunce with herbes and other commodites, for whiche cause men inhabitenge theyme calle them the f. 48. b. yles fortunate or happy. Where trees be extente in altitude by a c. and xl<sup>ii</sup> foote. Where is an yle callede Capraria, namede soe of the multitude of stronge dogges. Dacia, that is callede Denmarke, is an yle contiguate or adnecte to the northe parte of Germayne, the peple of whom was cruelle somme tyme and bellicose, in so moche that thei entrede pe prouinces or costes of Fraunce and of Englonde; callede Daci, as Dagi, for thei come of the kynde of Gothes. The peple of hit is copious, of semely stature,

<sup>1</sup> of temperate weder, Cx.<sup>2</sup> So MS. and a.; ben, Cx., which is equivalent.<sup>3</sup> couerd with corne, Cx.<sup>4</sup> hize, a., Cx.<sup>5</sup> The words in brackets added from a. (not Cx.)<sup>6</sup> of that, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So Cx.; Brutayne, MS.<sup>8</sup> pe] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>9</sup> Both versions are wrong; the true reference is to lib. xiv. c. 6, § 8.

centis faciei et comæ, et quamvis contra hostes sæva, tamen erga innocentes pia; de uno notatur,<sup>1</sup> quod excessum potandi Angliæ<sup>2</sup> adduxit.<sup>3</sup>

De Wynt-  
landia in-  
sula.

Wyntlandia<sup>4</sup> insula, ad occasum Daciæ, terra sterilis est,<sup>5</sup> gens barbara et idolatra, quæ navigantibus ad eorum portum<sup>6</sup> ventum vendere solent, quasi sub nodis fili<sup>7</sup> inclusum;<sup>8</sup> quorum enodatione ventus augebitur, ut voluerint.

De Islandia.

Islandia<sup>9</sup> insula<sup>10</sup> habet ab austro Norguegiam, ab aquilone mare congelatum; gentem habet brevilquam, veridicam, ferinis pellibus tectam, quæ piscationi indulget; eundem habet regem quem et<sup>11</sup> sacerdotem. Ibi sunt gyrofalcons et<sup>12</sup> accipitres generosi, ursi albi aquam gelatam rumpentes ut<sup>13</sup> pisces extrahant.<sup>14</sup> Hæc terra propter nimium<sup>15</sup> frigus oves non nutrit nec

<sup>1</sup> *notantur*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Angliæ potandi*, B.

<sup>3</sup> The preceding paragraph abbreviated in C.D., the last sentence being entirely omitted.

<sup>4</sup> *Haulandia*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *est*] et, A.

<sup>6</sup> *ad eorum portum*] de prope, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *sub globo fili nodosi inclusum*,

C.D., omitting the remainder of the sentence.

<sup>8</sup> *interclusum*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Flandria*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *insula*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *et*] om. A.

<sup>13</sup> *et*, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *extrahentes*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *nimum*] om. C.D.



of stature and semeliche of face and of here. And pouz<sup>1</sup> TREVISA.  
 pey be sterne azenst here enemyes, pey beep to gode<sup>2</sup>  
 men and trewe bope esy and mylde:<sup>3</sup> but pat<sup>4</sup> may not  
 be forzete, pat<sup>5</sup> pey brouzte grete drynkyng into Enge-  
 lond. Wyntlandya, pat ilond, is by west Denmark, and  
 is a barayne lond and<sup>6</sup> of men mysbyleued;<sup>7</sup> pei<sup>8</sup> wor-  
 schippeþ mawmetrie, and selleþ wynd to schipmen, pat  
 seilleþ to hire hauenes,<sup>9</sup> as it were i-closed vnder knottis  
 of prede; and as þe knottes beep vnknette,<sup>10</sup> þe wynde  
 wexeþ at her owne wille.<sup>11</sup> Islond, pat ilond, hap in þe  
 est side Norþwey,<sup>12</sup> in þe north þe froren<sup>13</sup> see, [that is,]<sup>14</sup>  
 mare congelatum. Þe men of pat ilond beep schort of  
 speche, trewe<sup>15</sup> of hir wordes, and i-cloped in wyld bestes  
 skynnes, and beep fissheres, and haueþ al<sup>16</sup> oon man kyng  
 and preost.<sup>17</sup> Pere beep girefaucouns and gentil haukes,  
 and pere beep þe<sup>18</sup> whyte beres, pat brekeþ þe yse for to  
 drawe out fische. Pere beep no schepe in þat lond, and

beatuous of face; thauzhe that peple be cruelle ageyne MS. HARL.  
 theire enmyes, neuerthesse hit is meke ageynes innocentes. 2261.  
 Also oon thyng is attendede specially of the Danes, that  
 thei brouzte firste in to Englonde the excesse and surfette  
 in drynkenge. Wytlandia is an yle at the weste parte of  
 Denmarke, a bareyn grownde, inhabite with peple of barbre  
 worschippenge ydoles; whiche be wonte to selle wynde to  
 men commenge to theire portes as inclusede vnder knottes  
 of threde, causenge the wynde to be encreasede after theire  
 pleasure thro that threde. Islandia is an yle, hauenge on  
 the sowthe to hit Norweye, on the northe the see conge-  
 lede; hauenge also peple of schorte langage, couered with  
 the skynnes of wilde bestes, ziffenge theire labour to fisch-  
 enge, hauenge to theire kyng whom thei haue to theire  
 priste. There be grete fawkunnes and gentylle gossehawkes,  
 white beres brekenge the water congelede to drawe owte  
 fysches. That londe noryschethe not schepe for habundance

<sup>1</sup> þeiȝ, a.<sup>2</sup> to god bope gode, MS.<sup>3</sup> they ben esy and mylde to good men and trewe, Cx.<sup>4</sup> þat þey, MS., a.<sup>5</sup> but it may not be forgotten, that, Cx.<sup>6</sup> and] Added from Cx.<sup>7</sup> oute of byleue, Cx.<sup>8</sup> þei] Added from Cx.<sup>9</sup> that come to theyr portes, Cx.<sup>10</sup> vnknytte, Cx.<sup>11</sup> theyr wille, Cx.<sup>12</sup> Norweye, Cx.<sup>13</sup> frozen, a. 'not Cx.)<sup>14</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>15</sup> and trewe, a., Cx.<sup>16</sup> al] om. Cx.<sup>17</sup> preest, Cx.<sup>18</sup> þe] om. a. and Cx., which is perhaps better.

De Thule  
insula.

segetes, excepta avena. Et<sup>1</sup> distat hæc insula ab Hibernia sive a Britannia trium dierum velificatione.<sup>2</sup> *Solinus de mirabilibus.*<sup>3</sup> Tile<sup>4</sup> ultima oceani insula inter septentrionem<sup>5</sup> et occidentalem plagam post Britanniam ultima<sup>6</sup> est, et<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup> vix paucis nota habetur. *Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.* A sole nomen habet, quia ab æquinoctio vernali usque ad<sup>9</sup> æquinoctium autumnale sol semper ibidem præsens est, et nox nulla; et iterum<sup>10</sup> ab æquinoctio autumnali usque ad æquinoctium vernale<sup>11</sup> sol semper abest, et dies nulla; quamobrem inhabitabilis est in æstate propter continuum solem, et<sup>12</sup> in hieme propter continuum frigus;<sup>13</sup> quamobrem<sup>14</sup> annona ibi<sup>15</sup> crescere non potest. Ibi quoque<sup>16</sup> mare est congelatum et concretum, quod nos stromum<sup>17</sup> appellamus.<sup>18</sup> Inter eam insulam<sup>19</sup> et Britanniam sunt insulæ Scandia,<sup>20</sup> Lingos, Vergion.<sup>21</sup> Ipsa tamen Tile<sup>22</sup> sex dierum velificatione<sup>23</sup> distat a Britannia. *Giraldus in Topographia.* At<sup>24</sup> cum Augustinus, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, dicat Tilen<sup>25</sup> esse insulam Indiæ<sup>26</sup> cujus arbores folia

<sup>1</sup> *Et*] om. B.

<sup>2</sup> Transposed in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *de mirabilibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> So A.D.E.; *Tyle*, B.; *Tila*, C. Similarly the versions. Thule is, of course, intended, yet the correction can hardly have place in the text; (see below). In the marginal summary the MS. reading has been corrected.

<sup>5</sup> *septentrionalem*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *ultima*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *et*] *ut*, A.; om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> C.D. here bring in Orosius, and then the reference to Pliny.

<sup>9</sup> *ad*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *et iterum*] item, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *vernale*] om. C.; *ad aliud æquinoctium*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *nihil ibi crescere potest*, added after *frigus continuum* in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *ideo*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *ibidem*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *quoque*] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> So A.C.D.E.; *stromum*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *vocamus*, B.C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *insulam*] om. C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *Naudia*, B.

<sup>21</sup> *Verigon*, C.; *Virigon*, D.

<sup>22</sup> *Ipsa tamen Tile*] *Tyle*, B.; et sex, C.D.

<sup>23</sup> *navigatione*, D.

<sup>24</sup> *At*] om. C.

<sup>25</sup> *Tylen*, B.

<sup>26</sup> Slightly transposed in C.D.

pat is for greet colde,<sup>1</sup> noþer corn but otes. Pat ilond is from Irlond and from Bretayne pre dayes seillynge. *Solinus de mirabilibus*. Tile<sup>2</sup> is þe vttermoſt<sup>3</sup> ylond of ocean, by twene þe norþ and þe west coſt by ʒonde Bretayne, and wel<sup>4</sup> fewe men knoweþ pat ilond. *Plinius, libro secundo*.<sup>5</sup> Tile haþ pat name of þe ſonne, for from ſpringynge tyme whan þe day and þe nyȝt beþ euen anon<sup>6</sup> to herueſt tyme, whan þe day and þe nyȝt be euene eft ſones, it is all wey beſchlyne wiþ þe ſonne; and eft from pat tyme anon to þe<sup>7</sup> ſpringynge tyme aȝen, whan þe day and þe nyȝt beþ euene, it<sup>8</sup> haþ no liȝt of þe ſonne, but all wey derk nyȝt and no day. And þerfore þe lond is nouȝt couenable for men to wonye ynne in ſomer for hete and in wynter for colde and derk;<sup>9</sup> and bycauſe þerof pere may no corn growe. Also pere the ſee is hard i-frore. By twene pat ylond and Bretayne beþ þe ilondes pat hatte Scandia, Lingos, and Vergion. Noþeles Tyle is ſixe dayes ſeillynge oute of Bretayne. *Ramulphus, Giralduſ in Topographia*.<sup>10</sup> For Seint Auſtyn, vicesimo primo de Civitate Dei, ſpekeþ of Tyle, and ſeiþ pat it is an ylond of Inde, and ſeiþ pat þe treen<sup>11</sup> of Tyle leſeþ neuere hire leues: but

TREVISA.

of colde, neither cornes, otes excepte. Whiche yle is from Breteyne by the ſaylengge off iij. daies. *Solinus de mirabilibus mundi*. Tyle is the laſte yle of the ocean after Briteyne, betwene the northe plage and the weſte, the knowlege of whiche yle is hade vnnethe of men. *Plinius, libro secundo*. That yle takethe the name of hit of the ſon, for from the equinoccialle of Ver on to the equinoccialle of herveſte the ſon is allewey preſente there, and neuer nyȝhte, and the ſon is abſente alſo alleweyes from the equinoccialle of herveſte to the equinoccial of Ver. Wherefore hit is inhabitable in the ſomer, for the continualle preſence of the ſon beyngge there, and alſo in wynter, for continualle coldenes beengge there, and for the abſence of the ſon. Wherefore corne may not growe there. Betwene whom and the yle of Briteyne be oper yles, callede Scandia, Lingo, and Virgion. That Tyle is from Breteyne by the ſaylengge of vj. dayes. *Giralduſ in Top.* Seynte Auſtyn, xxj<sup>o</sup>. libro, de Civitate Dei, ſeythe that Tilis is an yle of Ynde, the trees of whom ſuffre not their leues

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> The ſix preceding words follow otes in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Tile or Tyle, MSS. and Cx., and ſo below.

<sup>3</sup> otmeste, a.

<sup>4</sup> wel] om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Reference omitted in MS. (not Cx.)

<sup>6</sup> at oon, MS.; vnto, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> þe] om. a.

<sup>8</sup> about September, it, &c., Cx.

<sup>9</sup> derkneſſe, a.; Cx.

<sup>10</sup> So MS., a., and Cx.; but *Ramulphus* ſhould be cancelled, or et added.

<sup>11</sup> trees, Cx.

non deponunt, æquivocatio nominum<sup>1</sup> non decipiat te lectorem,<sup>2</sup> quæ<sup>3</sup> in recto reperietur non in obliquo. Illa enim quæ Indiæ est dicitur Tilis in nominativo, sed quæ occidentis est dicitur Tile in recto,<sup>4</sup> teste Isidoro, Etymologiarum libro quinto decimo.

De Nor-  
guegia.

Norguegia<sup>5</sup> ab euro Daciæ et Gothiæ contermina ab austro<sup>6</sup> habet Scotiam, ab aquilone Islandiam; insula quidem<sup>7</sup> lata, mari undique cincta, regio aspera,<sup>8</sup> frigida, montuosa, silvestris. Ibi<sup>9</sup> rara annona, feri<sup>10</sup> multi,<sup>11</sup> ursi albi, fibri, et castores. Cujus terræ incolæ plus piscatione et venatione vivunt quam pane. In cujus aquilonali<sup>12</sup> parte sol æstivo solstitio non occumbit<sup>13</sup> per dies plures, et itidem in solstitio hiemali non videtur oriri; quo in<sup>14</sup> tempore oportet incolas quod necessarium est<sup>15</sup> operari cum candelis. In qua<sup>16</sup> terra est fons, quo<sup>17</sup> lignea seu<sup>18</sup> lanea<sup>19</sup> imposita per annum<sup>20</sup> in lapidem congelantur. Gens illa scrutatrix

<sup>1</sup> *nominum*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *non . . . lectorem*] Space left for the words in B.; *lectorem* om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *quia*, C. (not D.)

<sup>4</sup> *in nominativo*, C.D., ending the sentence there.

<sup>5</sup> *Norvegia*, A.; *Norwegia*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> *euro*, E. only.

<sup>7</sup> *quidem*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *aspera*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *Ibi*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *feræ*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *multæ*, D. (not A., whose text

seems to be *annona fere*; *multi ursi*, &c.)

<sup>12</sup> So A.E.; *aquilonari*, B.C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *videtur occumbere*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *in*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *fuert*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *hæc*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> *in quo*, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *vel*, B.D.

<sup>19</sup> *vel linea*, added in C.D. (the latter has *seu*.)

<sup>20</sup> *pro parte vel pro toto durissimum*, added in C.D.

be war þat þou be nouȝt begiled by liknes of names: for TREVISAR.  
 þat ylond of Ynde hatte Tilis in þe nomenatyf caas;  
 and þe<sup>1</sup> ilond of ocean hatte Tyle in þe nominatyf  
 caas, and beþ liche in oper, as ȝif þou canst declyne  
 pilke tweye names, and speke Latyn; so seiþ Isidre,  
 Ethym., libro quinto decimo. Norway strecþeþ somdel est  
 toward Denmark and Gothia, and haþ in þe souþ side  
 Scoþlond and in þe northside Islond. Þe ilond is brood,  
 byclipped aboute wiþ þe see, and is ful scharpe and colde,  
 and haþ many hilles and woodes and<sup>2</sup> wyldre bestes, white  
 beres, baunsons, and brokkes, and scarsite of corne. Men<sup>3</sup>  
 of þat lond leueþ more by fisshynge and huntinge þan by  
 brede and corn. In þe norþ side of þat lond meny nyȝtes  
 in þe somer tyme aboute þe styntyng of þe sonne, þe  
 sonne goþ nouȝt doun but schyneþ al nyȝt; and eft as  
 many dayes in þe wynter aboute þe styntyng of þe  
 sonne, the sonne ariseþ nouȝt for to ȝeue hem lyȝt; per-  
 fore al þat tyme þey moot do by candel<sup>4</sup> what work þat  
 hem nedep. In þat londe is a welle þat torneþ tree and  
 leþer in to stoon, and it be þerynne from þe bygynnyng  
 of a ȝere<sup>5</sup> to þe ȝeres ende.<sup>6</sup> Þe men of þat lond beþ

to falle. Therefore, who so euer dothe rede this processe, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 y wyll he aduertise that there be yles, the oon of theyme  
 is callede Tilis, and that other is callede Tile, leste equi-  
 uocacion of the names deceyve hym. That yle in Ynde is  
 callede Tilis, and that yle in the weste is callede Tile in  
 the nominatiue case, Isidorus wittenesse, Eth., xxº. Nor-  
 guegia, that is callede Norway, is nye to Dacia and Gothia,  
 hauenge on the sowthe to hit Scotlande, of the northe  
 Island; a grete yle, and compassede abowte with the see, a  
 colde londe, a bareyne cuntre, and fulle of hilles. There  
 is litelle corne, mony beeres and brockes. The peple per  
 of lyve more by fyschenge then by huntenge, eitenge but  
 lytelle brede. In the northe parte of that cuntre the son  
 goethe not down in the solstice of somer by mony daies,  
 and is not seen to aryse ageyn in the solstice of wynter  
 by mony dayes. In whiche tyme hit behouethe men labor-  
 enge to worche by lyȝhte of candeles. In that londe is a  
 welle in whom woodde putte or wolle by a yere be con-  
 gelede in to a ston. The peple of hit, serchenge the

<sup>1</sup> So Cx.; and in þe, MS.

<sup>2</sup> and] om. Cx.

<sup>3</sup> In þe norþ side men, MS. (not a.  
or Cx.)

<sup>4</sup> they muste werke by candel light,  
Cx.

<sup>5</sup> aȝere, MS. conjunctim. Similar  
instances occur elsewhere, and are  
not always noticed.

<sup>6</sup> and it abyde therinne a yeer hoole,  
Cx.



oceanī vitam piraticam exercet; quorum expeditio navali fit certamine.<sup>1</sup>

CAP. XXXII.<sup>2</sup>*De Hibernia.*

Quæ de  
Hibernia  
digna me-  
moratu.

Erat Hibernia ab olim Britanniae jure domini<sup>3</sup> con-  
corporata, quam, duce Giraldo in sua Topographia  
eam<sup>4</sup> ad unguem plenius describente, profusioribus  
laudibus congruit illustrare.<sup>5</sup> Ad cujus notitiam liqui-  
dus consequendam viam aperiunt<sup>6</sup> tituli subsequentes.  
Dicetur ergo:

De situ terræ locali: De ejus quanto et quali: In  
quibus terra sufficit: In quibus rebus deficit: De  
incolis prioribus: De incolarum moribus:<sup>7</sup> De locorum  
prodigiis: De sanctorum præconiis.

De situ  
terræ  
locali.

Hibernia omnium insularum occidentalium novissima  
sic dicta est<sup>8</sup> ab Hiberno Hispanico, fratre scilicet<sup>9</sup>  
Hermonii, qui duo simul juncti<sup>10</sup> eam conquisierunt;

<sup>1</sup> So A.B.; *cujus expeditio navali certamine est*, C.D.; last clause omitted in E.

<sup>2</sup> This and all the following chapters of the first book are contained in Gale's *Hist. Brit. Scriptores* xv., vol. i. pp. 179–212, Oxon. 1691. His readings, and occasionally those of his MS. (G.) are noted below.

<sup>3</sup> So A.B.D.; *domini*, C.; om. E.

<sup>4</sup> *eam* before *in*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *illustrari*, B. The sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *aperient*, Gale (not G.)

<sup>7</sup> *majoribus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *est*] Added from A.D. and Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *simul juncti*] om. C.D.

schipmen and peues of þe see. *Trevisa*. For to knowe TREVISIA.  
 what þe styntyng of þe sonne is to menyng, take hede  
 þat þe sonne styntep twyes a ȝere; ones a somer, whan  
 he goþ no heiȝer; and eftsones a<sup>1</sup> wynter, whanne he  
 goop<sup>2</sup> no lower; and so in eȝer<sup>3</sup> tyme is þe styntyng  
 of þe sonne.

*De Hibernia. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.*

HIBERNIA, þat is Irlond, and was of olde tyme incorporat  
 in to þe lordschippe of Bretayne, so seiþ Giraldus in sua  
 Topographia. Þere<sup>4</sup> he descryueþ it<sup>5</sup> at þe fulle, ȝit it is  
 worpy and semelich to preise þat lond wip large<sup>6</sup> preysinge.  
 For to come to cleer and ful knowleche of þat lond, pese  
 tyteles þat folweþ oponeþ þe way: perfore first me schall<sup>7</sup>  
 telle of [þe]<sup>8</sup> place and stede of þat lond, how greet  
 and what manere lond it is; where of þat lond hap plente;  
 and where of he hap defaute; of men þat woned þere  
 first; of maneres of men of þat londe; [of the wondres  
 of þat lond;]<sup>9</sup> of worpynesse of halewes [and] of seyntes.<sup>10</sup>

*De situ Hiberniæ locali.* Irlond is þe laste of alle þe  
 west ilondes, and hat<sup>11</sup> Hibernia of oon Hiberus of Spayne,  
 þat was Hermonius his broþer. For pese tweie breþeren

---

ocean, exercise the lyfe of schippemen; þe victory and MS. HARL.  
2261.  
 spede of them is by fiȝhte in schippes on the see.

*Of Irlonde. Capitulum tricesimum secundum.*

IRLONDE was somme tyme to Briteyne concorporate by  
 ryȝhte of dominacion, whom Giraldus describenge in his  
 Topographye extollethe hit with mony laudes. The titles  
 here folowenge expresse and schewe the way. Therefore,  
 hit schalle be seyde of the site and place of that londe, of  
 the quantite and qualite of hit, and the defawtes of that  
 londe, of the firste dwellers of hit, and of the maneres of  
 the inhabitatores of hit.

*Of the locale site of Irlonde.* Irlonde, the laste of  
 all the weste yles, toke the name of hit of Hiberus  
 brother of Hermonius, whiche coniuncte to gedre gate that

---

<sup>1</sup> *a]* at, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *no heiȝer . . . goop]* Added from  
*a.* and Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; *neȝer*, MS. absurdly.

<sup>4</sup> *where*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *it]* Added from Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *larger*, *a.*; Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *I shal*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Added from *a.* and Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *of halwes and saintes of that  
 lond*, Cx.; and so *a.*, omitting of that  
*lond*.

<sup>11</sup> *height*, Cx.

vel dicta est ab Hiberno flumine Hispaniæ occidentali.<sup>1</sup> Dicta est etiam aliquando Scotia a Scotis eam inhabitantibus, priusquam ad aliam Scotiam<sup>2</sup> Britannicam<sup>3</sup> devenirent.<sup>4</sup> Unde in Martyrologio<sup>5</sup> legitur: "Tali die apud Scotiam Sanctæ Brigidæ;" quod est, apud Hiberniam. Hæc terra ab euro-austro<sup>6</sup> habet Hispaniam trium dierum<sup>7</sup> navigatione collateralem; ab oriente habet Britanniam majorem,<sup>8</sup> unius<sup>9</sup> diei velificatione distantem; ab occasu habet oceanum infinitum; a septentrione Islandiam, trium dierum velifico cursu distantem. *Solinus*. Sed et mare quod inter hanc et Britanniam interluit undosum et inquietum est toto anno, et nisi paucis diebus vix enavigabile, in<sup>10</sup> centum viginti millia passuum latitudinis expansum.

De ejus  
quanto et  
quali.

Hibernia insula post Britanniam maxima ab austro in boream<sup>11</sup> extensa,<sup>12</sup> a Brendanicis scilicet montibus usque ad Columbinam insulam, continet octo dierum diætas, quarum quælibet quadraginta milliarium existit; et a Dublinia<sup>13</sup> usque ad Patricii colles<sup>14</sup> Connacticumque mare in latum quatuor dierum excursus tenet; quæ in sui medio strictior est quam circa capita, sed<sup>15</sup> econtra est de<sup>16</sup> Britannia; et sicut Hibernia brevior

<sup>1</sup> sive ab Hebero flumine Hispaniæ, D.

<sup>2</sup> Scotiam] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> Britannicam] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> deveniunt, B.

<sup>5</sup> So A.; Martilogio, D.E.

<sup>6</sup> euro] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> naturalium, added in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> majorem] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> noctis et unius, B.

<sup>10</sup> in] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> in boream] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> expansa, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> Dublinia, B.D.

<sup>14</sup> colles Patricii, B.

<sup>15</sup> sed] om. C.D.

<sup>16</sup> de] om. G. and Gale.

gat and whan<sup>1</sup> pis lond by conquest. Oper it hatte Hibernia of pat ryuer Hiberus, pat is in pe west ende of Spayne. And pat londe hatte Scotland also, for Scottes woned pere somtyme, or pey come into pe<sup>2</sup> oper Scotland, pat longede to Bretayne. Perfore it is i-write in pe martiloge: "Suche a day in Scotland Seint Bryde was i-bore;" and pat was in Irlond. Pis lond hap in pe soup est side Spayne pre dayes seillynge pennes aside half, and hap in pe est side pe more<sup>3</sup> Bretayne, pennes a dayes seillynge; in pe west side he hap pe endeles ocean, and in pe norp side Iselond pre dayes seillynge pennes. *Solinus*. But pe see pat is bytwene Bretayne and Irlond is al pe ȝere ful of greet wawes and vnesy, so pat me may seelde sikerliche seille bytwene. Pat see is six score myle brood.

TREVISA.

*De ejus quanto et quali.* Irland is an iland grettest after Bretayne, and strecchep norpward from Brendans hilles anon to pe ylond Columbyna, and conteyneþ eiȝte dayes iorneis, euerich iorney of fourty myle. And from Deuelyn to Patrykes hilles and to pe see in pat side in brede is<sup>4</sup> foore iorneyes. And Irlond is narwer in pe myddel þan in pe endes, al operwise þan Bretayne is i-schape.

londe. Or elles hit was namede of a weste floode of Speyne callede Hiberus. And hit was callede also Scotia, of Scottes inhabitenge hit or that thei come to that other Scotlande. Wherefore hit is redde in the martilogge: "Suche a day at Scotlande Seynte Brigida," whiche was at Irlonde. That londe hathe on the southe este to hit Spayne by the sailenge of thre dayes from hit as colaterally, and on the este to hit the more Briteyne beenge from hit by the sayleng of oon day, and on the weste to hit the ocean infinite, of the north Islelande from hit by the sayleng of iij. dayes. *Solinus*. The see that departethe hit from Briteyne is perellous and fulle of water, and inquiete of alle the yere, and vnnethe able to be passede with schippes in eny tyme; extente in latitude cxx<sup>d</sup> m. passes.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the quantite and qualite of hit.* The yle of Irlonde, after Briteyne moste extendede in to the northe, conteynethe from Brendan hille to the yle callede Columbyna xvi<sup>xx</sup>. myles, and from Dublyn to the hilles of Seynte Patrikke viij<sup>xx</sup>. myles, whiche londe is more streyte in the myddes then at the endes, but hyt is in contrary

<sup>1</sup> wan, a., Cx.<sup>2</sup> that, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; more half, MS.

<sup>4</sup> is] Added from Cx.; ben would  
be more correct. Several minute  
variations below are unnoticed.

est ad boream quam Britannia, ita productior est ad austrum. Terra quidem inæqualis,<sup>1</sup> montuosa, pluviosa,<sup>2</sup> ventosa, mollis,<sup>3</sup> et silvestris; per latera maritima valde demissa; introrsus<sup>4</sup> montana et sabulosa. *Solinus*. Alias ita pabulosa ut pecora ibidem, nisi<sup>5</sup> a pascuis interdum<sup>6</sup> arceantur, ad periculum agat satietas.<sup>7</sup> *Giraldus*.<sup>8</sup> Indigenarum sanitas continua, advenarum quoque propter humiditatem<sup>9</sup> nutrimentorum fluxus ventris periculosus<sup>10</sup> est.<sup>11</sup> Carnes ibi<sup>12</sup> vaccinæ salubres, porcinae nocentes. Incolæ nulla febris specie vexantur, excepta acuta, et hoc perraro. Omnes igitur orientales pompas in lignis, herbis, gemmis, vestibus, hujus terræ salubritas et veneni carentia compensant; et videtur hæc salubritas causari

<sup>1</sup> *æqualis*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *pluviosa*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *mellis*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>4</sup> *interius*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *ibidem nisi*] *ibidem nisi interdum*, B.; *nisi interdum*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *interdum*] om. B.C.

<sup>7</sup> *satietas*] om. B.

<sup>8</sup> *in topographia*, added in C.D., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> So A.B.C.D., Gale; *nuditatem*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *periculosa*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *est*] om. B.C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *ibi*] om. B.; *hic*, D.



As Irlond is schorter norþward þan<sup>1</sup> Bretayne, so is he lenger souþward. Þe lond is not playne; but ful of mountaynes and of hilles, of wodes, of mareys, and of mores: þe lond is nesche,<sup>2</sup> reyny, and wyndy, and lowe by þe see syde, and wip ynne hilly and sondy. *Solinus*.<sup>3</sup> Pere is grete plente of noble pasture and of lese; perfore bestes moot<sup>4</sup> ofte be dreue out of hir lese, leste þey fede hem self to ful and schende hemself, and þey moste ete at hir owne wille.<sup>5</sup> *Giraldus*. Men of þat lond haueþ here hele alwey,<sup>6</sup> and straunge men<sup>7</sup> haueþ ofte a perilous fluxe<sup>8</sup> by cause of moysture of mete; pere cowes flesche<sup>9</sup> is holsom and swynes flesh vnholsum. Men of þat lond haueþ no feuere, but onliche þe feuere agu, and þat wel silde whanne.<sup>10</sup> Perfore þe holsomnesse [and helpe]<sup>11</sup> of þat lond and þe clenness wipoute<sup>12</sup> venyme is worþ al þe boost and richesse of treen, of herbes, of spicerie, of [riche]<sup>13</sup> clopes, and precious stones of þe est londes. Hit semep þat þe helpe

TREVISA.

wyse of Briteyne; and lyke as Irlonde is more schorte to the northe then Briteyne, in lyke wise hit is more large at the sowthe. A londe inegalle fulle of hilles and water. *Solinus*. That londe is so plentuous in pastures to bestes that the fattenes of theyme scholde cause perelle, with oute the bestes were removede from hit oper while. *Giraldus*. The flesche of that cuntre inducethe sanite to men of that londe, and causethe strongeours to haue the flux for the moisture of the noryschenge of theyme. The flesche of a kowe is wholsom there; but swyne flesche be nyenge moche: the dwellers of hit be not vexede with the axes excepte the scharpe axes, and that is but selde. Men of that londe thenke that the wholsomnes of that londe and wontenge of venom excelle and compense alle the prides of the este, as in wode, herbes, gemmes, and oper clothes. The holsomnes of that cuntre semethe

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> þat, MS. (not Cx.)<sup>2</sup> soft, Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>4</sup> must, Cx.<sup>5</sup> dryue oute of theyr pasture, leste they ete ouermuche, for they shold shende hem self, yf they myght ete at theyr wylle, Cx.<sup>6</sup> haue comunely theyr helth, Cx.<sup>7</sup> straungers, Cx.<sup>8</sup> fluxe, a.<sup>9</sup> flesh of kyen, Cx. (with other slight variations.)<sup>10</sup> that right selde, Cx.<sup>11</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>12</sup> wipoute] oute of, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

ex eo quod modicus est ibi excessus in frigore aut calore.<sup>1</sup>

In quibus  
rebus suf-  
ficit.

Terra hæc magis vaccis quam bobus, pascuis quam frugibus, gramine quam grano fecunda. Abundat tamen<sup>2</sup> salmonibus, murænis,<sup>3</sup> anguillis,<sup>4</sup> et cæteris marinis<sup>5</sup> piscibus; aquilis quoque, gruibus, pavonibus, coturnicibus, niso, falcone et accipitre generoso.<sup>6</sup> Lupos quoque<sup>7</sup> habet,<sup>8</sup> mures nocentissimos; sed et araneas, sanguisugas, et lacertas habet<sup>9</sup> innocuas. Mustelas quoque parvi corporis sed valde<sup>10</sup> animosas possidet. Habet et<sup>11</sup> aves quas bernaces<sup>12</sup> vocant, quas aucis<sup>13</sup> silvestribus similes de lignis abietinis quasi contra naturam natura producit, quibus viri religiosi tempore jejuniorum vescuntur, eo quod de coitu vel de carne minime procreantur.<sup>14</sup> Sed huic repugnare videtur,<sup>15</sup> quod si quis de femore primi parentis comedisset, carnem utique comedisset, quamvis de carne minime propagatam; et sicut illa caro ex limo, ita ista caro<sup>16</sup> ex

<sup>1</sup> The clause abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *tamen*] hæc terra, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *et*, added in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *anguillis*] om. B.

<sup>5</sup> *maris*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *geso*, Gale, and so G.

<sup>7</sup> *etiam*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *mulpes et*, added in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *habet*] om. B.

<sup>10</sup> *valde tamen*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *etiam*, C.D.; *et habet*, A.:"

<sup>12</sup> *bernahes*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *aves*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *creantur*, C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *repugnat*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *caro*] om. C.D.

of<sup>1</sup> pat lond is bycause pat pere is noȝt gret passynge TREVIS.  
and exces in hele<sup>2</sup> noȝer in hete.

*In quibus rebus sufficit.* In pis lond beep mo kyn<sup>3</sup> þan oxen, more pasture þan corne, more gras þan seed. Pere is grete plente of samon, of lampreys, of eles, and of oper see fisch; of egles, of<sup>4</sup> cranes, of<sup>5</sup> pekokes, of corlewes, of sperhaukes, of goshaukes, and oȝ gentil faucouns, and of wolves, and of wel schrewed mys. Pere beþ attercoppes, blood soukers, and enettes<sup>6</sup> [pat doop noon harm].<sup>7</sup> Pere beep veyres<sup>8</sup> litel of body and ful hardy and strong. Pere beep bernakes<sup>9</sup> foules liche to wylde gees; kynde bryngeþ hem forþ wonderliche out of<sup>10</sup> trees, as it were kynde worchyng aȝenst kynde.<sup>11</sup> Men of religioun etep bernakes in<sup>12</sup> fasting dayes, for þey comeþ nouȝt of flesche noȝer beep i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder: but þey beep ful lewedliche i-meued, for resoun is contrarie to pat doynge.<sup>13</sup> For ȝif a man hadde i-ete<sup>14</sup> of Adams pigh,<sup>15</sup> he had i-ete flesch; and ȝit Adam com nouȝt<sup>16</sup> of flesch,

to be causede in that there is but lytelle excesse in MS. HARL.  
coldenesse or in heete. 2261.

*Of what thynges that londe is suffisiaunte.* That londe is more habundaunte in kye then in oxen, in pasture then in corne. Neuerthelesse, hit habundethe in salmons, eles, lawmpreis, and in other fysche of the see; in egles, cranes, pokokkes, curlewes, sparrehowke, ffawken, and gentille gossehawke; hauenge wulphes and moste nyous myse, and weselles lytelle in body, but bolde in herte. Also there he bryddes whiche thei calle bernacles, lyke to wylde gese, whom nature producethe ageyne nature from firre trees, whom religious men do eite in fastenge daies, in that thei be not bredde and geten thro the acte off venery. But an obieccion may be made ageyne that cause; for and if a man scholde haue eiten of the flesche of Adam he scholde haue eiten flesche with

<sup>1</sup> Thus in Cx: *The cause of the helthe and holsomnes of that londe is the attemperat hete and colde that is therein.*

<sup>2</sup> chele, a.

<sup>3</sup> keen, a.

<sup>4</sup> and, a. (not Cx.)

<sup>5</sup> So a., Cx.; and pekokes, MS.

<sup>6</sup> eeftes, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> feyres, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> bernacles, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *whiche grown wonderly vpon,* Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *nature wrought agayn kynde,* Cx.

<sup>12</sup> on, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> Cx. thus: *by cause they ben not engendryd of flesshe, wherein, as me thynketh, they erre; for reson is ayenst that.*

<sup>14</sup> eten, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> legge, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *was not engendred,* Cx., with other slight variations, and some omissions.

ligno æque mirabilis. Abundat etiam<sup>1</sup> hæc terra lacte, melle, vinis, non vineis. Et quamvis Beda dicat illam terram<sup>2</sup> vinearum non expertem,<sup>3</sup> et Solinus ac Isidorus apibus eam carere asserant, circumspectius tamen e diverso scripsissent,<sup>4</sup> si eam vineis carere et apum<sup>5</sup> expertem non fuisse<sup>6</sup> dixissent; item Beda dicit caprorum<sup>7</sup> venatu insulam fore insignem, cum tamen constet eam semper capreis caruisse.<sup>8</sup> Nec mirum; cum Beda nihil de hac insula oculata fide cognoverit, sed per relatores<sup>9</sup> audierit. Ibi<sup>10</sup> quoque gignitur lapis<sup>11</sup> sexagonus, scilicet Iris, qui soli appositus format<sup>12</sup> in aere celestem arcum. Ibi quoque invenitur<sup>13</sup> lapis gagates et margarita candida.

In quibus  
rebus de-  
ficit.

Tritici grana sunt hic<sup>14</sup> minuta,<sup>15</sup> vix manu purgabilia, et omnium animantium<sup>16</sup> corpora hic<sup>17</sup> quam alibi minora exceptis hominibus reperiuntur. Desunt hic<sup>18</sup> pene<sup>19</sup> omnes pisces, qui<sup>20</sup> ex aquis dulcibus non

<sup>1</sup> *etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *illam terram*] eam, C.

<sup>3</sup> So C.D.; *vineis non expertem*, B., Gale; *vineis expertem*, A.E.

<sup>4</sup> *circumspectius scripsissent e diverso*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *apium*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *esse*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *capreorum*, B.C.D.

<sup>8</sup> See Solinus, *Pol.* c. 22, § 6. Isid., *Etym.* lib. xiv. c. 6, § 6. Bede's words (*Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. i.) are: Dives lactis ac mellis insula, nec vinearum expers, pisciumque volucrumque, sed et cervorum capreorumque venatu insignis.

<sup>9</sup> *latorem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *Ibi . . . candida*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *lapis*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> A space left for *format* after *arcum* in B.

<sup>13</sup> *Inveniturque ibidem*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>15</sup> Slightly transposed in C. (not D.)

<sup>16</sup> *omnia animalium*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>19</sup> *fere*, C.D.

<sup>20</sup> *quæ*, all MSS. collated for this edition; *qui*, G. and Gale, correctly; but perhaps Higden used the feminine.

noper was i-gete flescheliche bytwene fader and moder. But pat flesch com wonderliche of þe erpe, so þis flesche<sup>1</sup> comþ wonderliche of þe tree. In þis lond is plente of hony and<sup>2</sup> of mylk and of wyn, and nouȝt of vynezherdes. [Solinus and Isidorus wryten that Irlond hath no bees; netheles it were better wryten that Irlond hath bees and no vyneyerdes.]<sup>3</sup> Also Beda seiþ pat pere is grete huntynge of<sup>4</sup> roobukkes, and it is i-knowe þat roobukkes beþ noon pere.<sup>5</sup> It is no wonder of Beda; for Beda knew<sup>6</sup> neuere pat ilond wiþ his eyȝe; bot som tale tellere tolde<sup>7</sup> hym suche tales. Also pere groweþ pat stoon Saxagonus,<sup>8</sup> and is i-cleped Iris also, as it were þe reynebowe; ȝif þat stoon is i-holde aȝenst þe sonne, it<sup>9</sup> schal schape a reynebowe. Pere is i-founde a stoon pat hatte gagates,<sup>10</sup> and white margery perlis.

*In quibus rebus deficit.* Whete cornes beþ<sup>11</sup> pere ful smal, vnneþe i-clensed<sup>12</sup> wiþ manis hond; out take men,<sup>13</sup> alle bestes beþ smallere pere þan in oper londes. Pere lackeþ wel nyh al manere of<sup>14</sup> fresche water fische, þat is

TREVISA.

2261.

owte dowte thauȝhe hit come not of flesche; for like as the flesche of Adam was made of the erthe, so those bryddes comme of a tre, as a thyng to be hade in meruayle. Also that londe is habundante in mylke, hony, in wynes, but [not] in vynes. And also thauȝhe that grete clerke Bede seye that londe not to be experte of vynes, and Solinus and Isidorus<sup>15</sup> seye hit to wonte bees, neuertheles thei scholde haue writen more circumspectely, if they hade seide that londe to wonte vynes, and to haue be habundante in bees. Also Bede seythe that yle to habunde in dere, sythe hit is provede by experience that londe to haue wontede suche bestes, and no meruayle, sythe Bede provede not the trawthe of the commodites of that yle by his awne person, but by the relacioun of other men. A ston is gendrede there whiche is callede Iris, whiche putte to the sonne causethe a reynebawe to appere in the aier. Also a ston callede gagates, and a white margarite be founde there.

*In what thynges that londe is defective.* The cornes off whete be scarce there and lytelle. Also that londe

MS. HARL.

<sup>1</sup> So a.; *fesche*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> and] om. a.

<sup>3</sup> This sentence added from Cx.

<sup>4</sup> to, a.

<sup>5</sup> that ther ben none, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> he sawe neuer, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> somme men had told, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *sexagonus*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> anon it, Cx,

<sup>10</sup> So Cx.; *gogathes*, MS. and a.

<sup>11</sup> bee, a.

<sup>12</sup> *i-clensed*, a.

<sup>13</sup> *reserued men*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> of] om. Cx. (a frequent variation); *alle manere fische of fresshe water*, a.

<sup>15</sup> *Ysodorus*, Harl. MS.



marinis sementinam trahunt originem; desunt hic<sup>1</sup> degeneres falcones, quos lanianos<sup>2</sup> vocant, desunt et gyrofalcones,<sup>3</sup> perdices, phasiani,<sup>4</sup> picæ et<sup>5</sup> philomelæ.<sup>6</sup> Caret quoque capreis et damis, hericiis,<sup>7</sup> putaciis, et<sup>8</sup> talpis et cæteris<sup>9</sup> venenosis. Unde fingunt aliqui satis favorabiliter Sanctum Patricium cunctis pestiferis animantibus<sup>10</sup> insulam purgasse; sed probabilius<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>est insulam ab initio hujusmodi nocivis caruisse. Quintiam<sup>13</sup> venenosa aliunde allata statim moriuntur ibidem, et toxicum aliunde advectum ultra medios fluctus versus Hiberniam vim suæ malignitatis amittit; ac etiam<sup>14</sup> pulvis terræ illius aliunde aspersus venenosos vermes fugat, adeo ut corium hujus terræ vermi circumdatum<sup>15</sup> aut ipsum occidit aut terram penetrare cogit. In hac terra galli cantant in ipso noctis crepusculo, et quantum alibi a tertia,<sup>16</sup> tantum hic<sup>17</sup> a prima galli voce dies distare dignoscitur.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *lanerios*, Gale (not G.)

<sup>3</sup> *jerofalcones*, B.; *girofalcones*, A.D.E.

<sup>4</sup> *fasiani*, A.D.; *foliani*, C.; *faciani*, B.E.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. B., Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *philomenæ*, MSS. and Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *putaciis* before *hericiis* in D.

<sup>8</sup> *putaciis et*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *et cæteris*] om. C.D., which have *etiam caret* after *venenosis*.

<sup>10</sup> *animantibus*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *probabile*, B.; in D. some erased word has been altered to *probabilius*.

<sup>12</sup> *puto ab initio hujus* (*hujusmodi*, D.) *nocivis fuisse destituta*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Sed etiam*, C.D.; *Quin et*, Gale.

<sup>14</sup> *ac etiam*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *circumdatus*, MSS. and G., not Gale. Probably *corium* should be changed into *torva*. See Trevisa.

<sup>16</sup> *a tertia*] om. B.

<sup>17</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>18</sup> *dinoscitur*, MSS. and Gale.

nouȝt gendred in þe see; þere lakkeþ vnkynde faukouns, girefaukouns, partriche,<sup>1</sup> fesauntes, nyȝtingales, and pies. Þere lakkeþ also roo and bukke and ilspi[les],<sup>2</sup> wontes, and opere venemous bestes; þerfore som men feyneþ and faurableliche seiþ<sup>3</sup> þat Seynt Patryk elensed þat lond of wormes and of venemous bestes. Þerfore som men feyneþ þat it is<sup>4</sup> more probable and more skilful, þat þis lond was from þe bygynnyng alwey wip oute suche wormes. For venemous bestes and wormes deyeþ þere anon, and me<sup>5</sup> brynge hem pider out of oper londes; and also venym and poysoun, i-brouȝt piderward out of oper londes, leseþ his<sup>6</sup> malys anon as he passeþ þe myddel of þe see. Also powder of<sup>7</sup> erpe of þat lond i-sowe<sup>8</sup> in oper londes vseþ<sup>9</sup> away wormes so fer forþ, þat a torf of þat lond i-doo aboute<sup>10</sup> a worme sleeþ hym oper makeþ hym þrulle þoruȝ<sup>11</sup> þe erpe for to scape a way. In þat lond cokkes croueþ wel<sup>12</sup> litel to fore day; so þat þe firste cokkes croue in þat lond and þe pridde in oper londes beþ i-liche<sup>13</sup> fer to fore day.

TREVISA.

wontethe fisches whiche haue theire originalle naturalle MS. HARL.  
in fresche waters. Also that cuntre hathe not a 2261.  
kynde of hawkes that be callede lauerettes and grete-fawkones, partrieche and fesaunte, pyes, nyȝtegaies, bucke and doo, wontes and other bestes of venom. Wherefore somme men feyne faurablely, seyenge Seynte Patrike to haue purgede and made clene that yle thro his preyers from nyous bestes. But hit is more probable to say that yle to haue wontede suche bestes from the begynnege of hit. Also other bestes fulle of venom brouȝhte from other places to hit dye anon. Also if poison be brouȝhte to that londe, hit losethe the strenȝhte of hit or that hit comme in þe myddes of the water nye to that londe. Also the erthe of that londe caste abrode in other cuntres or londes dothe expelle venomous bestes, in so moche that parte of that erthe putte to worme auther sleethe hit other elles constreynethe hit to entre in to the erthe. Cokkes in that cuntre begynne to croue in the begynnege of the nyȝhte; neuerthelesse day is supposede to drawe nye at the firste crouenge of the cocke.

<sup>1</sup> partrichis, Cx.<sup>2</sup> ilspiles, a.; glespiles, Cx.<sup>3</sup> and that fauourably, Cx.<sup>4</sup> But it is, Cx.<sup>5</sup> if men, Cx. (as usual).<sup>6</sup> theyr, Cx., who has not very consistently replaced he by it just afterwards.<sup>7</sup> and, a., Cx.<sup>8</sup> caste and sowen, Cx.<sup>9</sup> vseþ, a.; driuen, Cx.<sup>10</sup> be putte aboute (with others slight variations), Cx.<sup>11</sup> þoruȝ] om. a.; thrille the erthe, Cx.<sup>12</sup> but, Cx.<sup>13</sup> like, Cx.

## CAP. XXXIII.

*De incolis prioribus.*

REFERT Giraldus quod hæc insula inhabitata<sup>1</sup> sit primo<sup>2</sup> a Casera<sup>3</sup> nepte<sup>4</sup> Noe diluvium timente, et ad hanc insulam cum tribus viris et quinquaginta mulieribus proximo ante diluvium anno<sup>5</sup> applicante. Secundo a Bartholano<sup>6</sup> Sere<sup>7</sup> filio cum tribus filiis de stirpe Japhet filii Noe descendantibus, ecc<sup>o</sup>.<sup>8</sup> post diluvium anno, casu vel industria hic<sup>9</sup> applicantibus, qui usque ad novem millia virorum excrescentes ex corruptione cadaverum gigantum<sup>10</sup> quos oppresserant omnes mortui sunt, excepto solo Ruano, qui per mille quingentos annos usque ad tempora Sancti Patricii perdurans<sup>11</sup> cuncta gesta illius gentis sancto viro replicabat. Tertio Nimeth sive Nimedus cum quatuor filiis suis<sup>12</sup> de Scythia<sup>13</sup> veniens per ducentos sedecim annos terram incoluit; et<sup>14</sup> tandem, ejus sobole per varia infortunia bellorum et mortalitatum detrita,<sup>15</sup> ducentis

<sup>1</sup> *primo inhabitata*, B.; *sit*, om. A.

<sup>2</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So A. E.; *Cesera*, C.; *Cesarea*, D.; *Sera*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *nepote*, E. only.

<sup>5</sup> *anno*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *Bartolano*, C. (not D.); *ab Arholano*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Cesere*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> So A.C.D., Gale (in figures); *tricesimo*, E. (at length).

<sup>9</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> So C.; *gigantorum*, A.D.E.; *gigantium*, Gale.

<sup>11</sup> *perdurans*] om. B.

<sup>12</sup> *suis*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> Various barbarized in MSS.

<sup>14</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *decreta*, C. (not D.)

*De incolis prioribus.*

TREVISA.

*Capitulum tricesimum tertium.*

GIRALDUS seiþ pat Casera, Noes nece,<sup>1</sup> dradde þe flood, and fliz<sup>2</sup> wip þre men and fifty wommen into þat ilond, and wonede þer yune first þe laste 3ere to fore Noes flood. But afterward Bartholanus, Seres<sup>3</sup> sone, þat com of<sup>4</sup> Iapheth, Noes sone, come pider wip his þre sones by hap oper by craft þre hundred 3ere after Noes flood, and woned þere, and encesede to þe noumbre of nyne þowsand men; and afterward, for stenche of kareyns of geantes þat þey hadde i-kyld, þey deiden alle saue oon, Ruanus, þat durede<sup>5</sup> a þowsand 3ere and fyue hundred anon to Seynt Patrikes tyme, and enformed þe holy man of þe forsaide men<sup>6</sup> and of alle hir doynge and dedes. Ðan þe þridde tyme come pider Nemeþ<sup>7</sup> out of Seythia<sup>8</sup> with his foure sones, and woned þere and encesed to þe noumbre of<sup>9</sup> two hondred 3ere and sixtene; and at þe laste al his ofspringe by dyuers myshappes of werres and of moreyn was clenliche<sup>10</sup> destroyed, and þe lond lefte voyde two hundred 3ere aftir-

*Of the firste Inhabitatores of that Londe. Capitulum tri-* MS. HARL.  
*cesimum tertium.* 2261.

GIRALDUS rehersethe and seithe that londe was inhabitate f. 52. ends.  
firste of Casera, son of the douȝhter of Noe, [which] dredenge the grete floode, come to that yle in the yere a fore that floode, with iij. men and l<sup>i</sup> women. In the secunde tyme hit was inhabite of Bartholarius with iij. childer, of the stocke of Iaphethe son of Noe, in the iij<sup>c</sup>. yere after that grete floode; which encreasenge vn to the nowmbre of ix. m. alle diede thro the corrupcion of carion of the bodies of giauntes whom thei had oppressede, Ruan excepte, whiche lyvede by m. yere and a halfe, vnto the tymes of Seynte Patrike, tellenge to that holy man the gestes of that peple. In the thrydde time Nimeth or Nimesus, with his iij. childer, cummenge from Seythia,<sup>7</sup> inhabite that londe by ij<sup>c</sup>. and xvi. yere; and at the laste that stokke and kynnerede destroyed by diverse infortuny of batelles and of oper mortalite, that londe was vacante from inhabitatores by ij<sup>c</sup>. yere

<sup>1</sup> niece, a.<sup>2</sup> fledde, Cx.<sup>3</sup> So Cx.; Seth his, MS.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; to, MS.<sup>5</sup> lyued, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So Cx.; man, MS. (clerical error.)<sup>7</sup> Nymeth, a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> Schitia, or Seitia, MS.<sup>9</sup> and encesede to þe noumbre of] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.<sup>10</sup> they were clene, Cx.

itidem annis terra vacua mansit. Quarto vero<sup>1</sup> quinque duces, germani fratres, Gandius,<sup>2</sup> Genandius, Segandius,<sup>3</sup> Rutheragus,<sup>4</sup> et Slanius,<sup>5</sup> de posteris Nimedi prædicti,<sup>6</sup> de Græcia venientes terram occupaverunt, et eam<sup>7</sup> in quinque partes diviserunt, quarum quælibet pars continebat triginta duo cantredos; (est autem<sup>8</sup> cantredus portio centum villarum;) posueruntque<sup>9</sup> lapidem in media terra quasi in medio<sup>10</sup> umbilico, velut quinque<sup>11</sup> regnorum principium. Tandem Slanius<sup>12</sup> factus est<sup>13</sup> monarcha terræ totius. Quinto debilitata multum per triginta<sup>14</sup> annos natione ista, advenerunt de Hispaniæ partibus, in sexaginta<sup>15</sup> navium classe, quatuor nobiles Millesii regis filii, cum pluribus aliis, de quibus duo nominatissimi fratres Hiberus<sup>16</sup> et Hermon regnum inter se diviserunt. Sed procedente tempore, rupto fœdere fraterno, Heberoque occiso, Hermoni cessit monarchia, a cujus tempore usque adventum<sup>17</sup> Patricii primi<sup>18</sup> cxxxi. reges de eadem gente fuerunt. Et sic ab adventu Hiberniensium usque ad obitum<sup>19</sup> Patricii

<sup>1</sup> *vero*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Glandius*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *Sagandius*, A.B.; om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ruteragus*, A.; *Natheragus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *Slanius*] So A.C.D., Gale; *Clamius*, B.; *Salnius*, E. (but *Slanius* below.)

<sup>6</sup> *prædicti*] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *eam*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *et est*, B.

<sup>9</sup> [*que* om. A.

<sup>10</sup> *terræ*, C.; *terra*, D. (clerical error.)

<sup>11</sup> *velut quinque*] tanquam, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Sclanius*, C.; *Psalmus*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *primus* added in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> 20, C.; 200, D.

<sup>15</sup> So A.D.E., Gale; 20, C.; *xl.*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Heberus*, A.D., Gale.

<sup>17</sup> *Sancti*] added in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *primi*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Sancti* added in C.D.



ward.<sup>1</sup> Þe fourþe<sup>2</sup> tyme fyue dukes,<sup>3</sup> Gandius, Genandyus,<sup>4</sup> Sagandius, Ruthragus, Salinus,<sup>5</sup> of þe forseide Nymep his successours come out of Grees, and occupied þat lond and deled it in fyue parties. And<sup>6</sup> eueriche party conteynede two and pritty candredes; (a candrede is a contray þat conteynep an hondred townes;) and þey sette a stoon in þe mydel of þe lond as it were in þe nauel and bygynnyng of fyue<sup>7</sup> kyngdoms. At þe laste Salynus<sup>8</sup> was i-made kyng of al þe lond. Þe fifte tyme, whan þis nacioun was pritty ȝere to gidres, þey woxe swyþe<sup>9</sup> feble, foure noble men, þat were Millesius<sup>10</sup> þe kynges sones, come out of Spayne wip many oper in a nauye of pre score schippes and tweie: þe<sup>11</sup> worpiest of þese foure breþeren, þat heet Heberus and Hermon, deled þe lond bytwene hem tweyne; but afterward couenaunt was to broke by twene þese tweyne breþeren, and<sup>12</sup> Heberus<sup>13</sup> was i-slayne.<sup>14</sup> Þan Hermon was kyng of al þat lond, and from his tyme to þe firste Patrik his tyme were kynges of þat nacioun sex score and enleuene. And so from þe comynge of<sup>15</sup> Hiberniensis anon to þe deth of

TREVISA.

foloenge. In the iiij<sup>th</sup> tyme v. dukes and breþer german, MS. HARL. 2261.  
Gandius, Sanandius, Segandius, Ruthragus, and Sclanius, commenge by succession of the stocke of Nimesus, commenge from Grece, occupiede þat londe, diuidenge hit in to v. partes. Euery parte in that diuision did conteyne xxxij. tancredes. And a tancrede is a porcion of c. townes, whiche putte a ston in the myddes, as in the navelle, as the begynnege of v. realmes. After that Sclanius was made the holle lorde of alle that londe. In the v<sup>th</sup> tyme, that londe made feble by mony yere, iiij. sonnes of kyng Millesius comme to hit with iiij<sup>xx</sup>. sayles from Speyne, with mony other, of whom Heberus and Hermon were gouernoures, diuidede that realme amonge theyme, but by succession of tyme the bonde of luffe was broken betwene theyme. And so, Heberus sleyn, the holle monarchy succedede to Hermon, from the tyme of whom were cxxxj<sup>d</sup> kynges of that peple to the tyme of the firste Patrikke. And so from the commenge of theyme vn to the dethe of Seynte Patrikke

<sup>1</sup> after, Cx.<sup>2</sup> ferþe, a.<sup>3</sup> dukes that were bretheren, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Genandus, a.; Genundus, Cx.<sup>5</sup> Sclanius, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; in, MS.<sup>7</sup> fyue] Added from a. and Cx.<sup>8</sup> Sclanius, a., Cx. (rightly.)<sup>9</sup> swyþe] om. Cx.<sup>10</sup> Myllesius, Cx.<sup>11</sup> of the, Cx. (without sense.)<sup>12</sup> hem both and, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Hebreus, MS.; Hiberus, Cx.<sup>14</sup> slawe, a.<sup>15</sup> of the Hybermensis (sic) vnto the fyrst Patrik, Cx.

primi<sup>1</sup> sunt anni mille octingenti. Ab isto Hiberno dicti sunt Hibernici, vel secundum alios ab Hiberno Hispaniæ fluvio. Dicti sunt etiam Gaytheli<sup>2</sup> et Scoti<sup>3</sup> a quodam Gaythelo, Phenii nepote, qui post linguarum confusionem<sup>4</sup> apud Nemproticam turrin in variis linguis peritus duxit Scotam filiam Pharaonis;<sup>5</sup> ex quibus ducibus<sup>6</sup> Hibernienses descenderunt. Iste etiam Gaythelus, ut aiunt,<sup>7</sup> Hibernicam linguam composuit, quæ et Gaythelaf<sup>8</sup> dicitur, quasi ex omnibus linguis collecta. Tandem Gurguntius,<sup>9</sup> Belini regis Britannici filius, de Dacia rediens apud Orcades insulas quosdam Basclenses de Hispaniæ partibus advectos invenit, quos locum habitationis petentes rex ad<sup>10</sup> Hiberniam tunc vacuam transmisit,<sup>11</sup> quibus duces aliquos ex suis designavit. Ex quo videtur<sup>12</sup> quod de jure antiquo Hibernia debeat ad Britanniam pertinere.<sup>13</sup> Ab adventu autem<sup>14</sup> Sancti<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *primi*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Gaiteli*, B.C. Gale; *Gaitili*, A. Similar variations below.

<sup>3</sup> *Scotti*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *confusionem linguarum*, A.B.

<sup>5</sup> *Phōnis*, MSS. and G.; *Pharonis*, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *duobus*, C.D., which seems right.

<sup>7</sup> *annuit*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *Gaitelak*, C.D.; *Gaitelaf*, A.B., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Burguntius*, A.B.

<sup>10</sup> *ad*] om. A.B.

<sup>11</sup> *atque quosdam ex suis præfecit eis duces*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *patet*, C.D.

<sup>13</sup> Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *autem*] om. B.

<sup>15</sup> *Sancti*] om. C.D.

pe first Patrik his tyme were a powsand þere and eiȝte hundred. Þey hadde þat name Hiberniensis and Hibernici of þe forsaide Hiberus; oþer, as som men wolde wene, of<sup>1</sup> Hiberus a ryuer of Spayne; þei were i-cleped also Gaitels and Scottes of oon Gaithleus,<sup>2</sup> þat was Phenius his neuw. After þat men speked<sup>3</sup> many langages at Nemprot his tour,<sup>4</sup> þis Gaythelus kouþe speke many langages and tonges; and wedded o Scotas<sup>5</sup> Pharoo<sup>6</sup> his douȝter. Of pese dukes come þe Hiberniensis. Me seith þat pese<sup>7</sup> Gathleus made þe Irische langage and cleped hit Gathelaf,<sup>8</sup> as it were a langage i-gadered of alle langages and tonges. At the laste Belinus, kyng of Bretaigne,<sup>9</sup> hadde a sone þat heet Gurguntius. As þis Gurguntius come out of Denmark at þe ilondes<sup>10</sup> Orcades, he fonde men þat were i-cleped Basclenses and were i-come pider out of Spayne. Þese men prayed and bysouȝte for to haue a place for to wone inne; and þe kyng sent hem to Irlond þat was poo voyde and wast, and ordeyned and sent wip hem<sup>11</sup> dukes and lederes<sup>12</sup> of his owne. [And]<sup>13</sup> so hit semeþ þat Irlond schulde longe<sup>14</sup> to Britayne by lawe<sup>15</sup> of olde tyme. From<sup>16</sup>

TREVISA.

the firste were m' yere and ccc. Men of Irlonde toke the name of theym of this Heberus, other elles after somme men of a floode of Speyne callede Heberus. Also thei were callede Gaiteles and Scottes after a man callede Gaitelus nevewe to Phenius, whiche, after the confusion of langages at the towre of Nemproth, wyse in diuerse langages did wedde Scotas, the douȝter of kyng Pharas, of whiche dukes men off Irlonde haue descendede. This Gaitelus, as hit is seide, made the langage of that cuntre, whiche is callede Gathelaf, as a langage collecte of alle langages. At the laste Gurguntius, the sonne of Belyn kyng of Briteyne, turnenge from Denmarke to the yles callede Orcades, founde a certeyne peple of the cuntre of Speyne callede Basclenses, whiche desirenge to haue inhabitation, the kyng sende theyme in to Irlonde to inhabite hit, that tyme voide of inhabitatores. Whiche made a certeyn gouernoure especialle amonge theyme. Wherefore hit semethe that Irlonde longethe or perteynethe to Briteyne by olde lawe and

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> or *ellys* of, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *Gaithelus*, a.; *Gaytelus*, Cx.  
Similar variations below.<sup>3</sup> *speke*, a.<sup>4</sup> *After . . . tour*] om. Cx.<sup>5</sup> oo *Scotas*, a.; one *Scota*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Pharoes*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *peose*, a.; *these*, Cx. The true reading must be *þis*.<sup>8</sup> *Gaithelaf*, a.; *Gaytelef*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Brytayne*, a.; *Bretayn*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *atte Irlondes*, Cx. (typ. error.)<sup>11</sup> So Cx.; *hym*, MS.<sup>12</sup> *capitayns*, Cx., and so below.<sup>13</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>14</sup> *longe*] Added from Cx.<sup>15</sup> *right*, Cx.<sup>16</sup> So Cx.; *For*, MS. and a.

Patricii primi<sup>1</sup> usque ad Fedlimidii regis tempora, triginta tres reges per quadringentos<sup>2</sup> annos in Hibernia regnaverunt. In hujus autem<sup>3</sup> Fedlimidii<sup>4</sup> diebus Norguagenses,<sup>5</sup> duce Turgesio, terram hanc occupaverunt; factisque quam pluribus<sup>6</sup> per loca fossatis profundis castella simplicia, duplicia, triplicia, pluraque<sup>7</sup> murata adhuc integra, vacua tamen, erexerunt. Sed Hibernicus populus castella non curat, nam silvis pro castris, paludibus<sup>8</sup> utitur pro fossatis. Tandem Turgesius dolo puellarum delusus, interiit. Et quia Anglorum populus clamat Gurmundum subjugasse Hiberniam et illa fossata fecisse, de Turgesio nihil memorans;<sup>9</sup> Hibernienses vero Turgesium prædicant, Gurmundum vero<sup>10</sup> prorsus ignorant;—ideo sentiendum<sup>11</sup> est Gurmundum in Britanniae regno quod sibi subjugaverat extitisse, et a Britannia Turgesium istum cum electa

<sup>1</sup> *primi*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> 300, C.D.; 406, B., apparently.

<sup>3</sup> *autem*] om. C.

<sup>4</sup> *regis* added in B.C.D. (D. twice has *Fedlinidii*. See Harl. MS.)

<sup>5</sup> *Norvagenses*, A.; *Norwagenses*, B.D.

<sup>6</sup> *quamplurimis*, B.

<sup>7</sup> So A.B. (corrected); *pleraque*, D.E., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *et paludibus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *est reminiscens*, C.; and so D. omitting *est*.

<sup>10</sup> *autem*, C.D.; om. B.

<sup>11</sup> *sciendum*, C.D.; *censendum*, B.

pe firste Seynt Patryk anon to Fedlimidius<sup>1</sup> pe kynges TREVISA.  
 tyme, foure hondred ȝere, pre and pritty kynges euerich  
 after opir regned<sup>2</sup> in Irlond. In<sup>3</sup> pis Fedlimidius his tyme  
 Turgesius, duke and ledere of Norweyes, brouȝt pider Nor-  
 wayes,<sup>4</sup> and occupied pat lond, and made in wel<sup>5</sup> many  
 places many<sup>6</sup> depe diches and castelles sengle, double,  
 and [treble, and]<sup>7</sup> many wardes strongliche i-walled; and  
 many perof stondeȝ ȝit al hool. But Irische men reccheȝ  
 nouȝt of castelles; for pey taken<sup>8</sup> wodes for castelles, and  
 mareys and mores for castel diches. But at pe laste Tur-  
 gesius deide by gile ful wyles and<sup>9</sup> wrenches. And for  
 Engliche men seiȝ pat<sup>10</sup> Gurmundus wan Irlond, and made  
 pilke diches, and of Turgesius makeȝ no mynde;<sup>11</sup> and  
 Irische<sup>12</sup> men spekeȝ of Turgesius, and knoweȝ not of  
 Gurmundus:—perfore it is [to] wetynge<sup>13</sup> pat Gurmundus  
 hadde i-wonne Bretayne, and woned perynne, and sente  
 Turgesius wiȝ grete strengȝe of Bretouns<sup>14</sup> in to Irlond

ryȝhte, where xxx<sup>ti</sup> iij. kynges reigned from the tyme and MS. HARL.  
 commenge of the firste Patrikke to the tyme of kyng Fed- 2261.  
 linidius in that londe by iiij<sup>c</sup>. yere. In the tyme of kyng  
 Fedlinidius men of Norway commenge with a duke called  
 Turgesius occupiede that londe, makenge grete diches, cas-  
 telles symple, dowble and threfolde as in veyne; for the  
 men of Irlonde attende not to castelles, for thei vse woodes  
 for castelles and marras. At the laste this duke Turgesius  
 was perischede and extincte thro the disseyte of maydenes.  
 And for cause the peple off Englonde sayethe and cryethe  
 Gurmunde to haue subiugate Irlonde and to haue made  
 those dyches, hauenge not Turgesius in vre or in remem-  
 braunce; but men of Irlonde remembre that duke Tur-  
 gesius, hauenge noo remembraunce of Gurmunde;—there-  
 fore hit it to vnderstonde Gurmunde to haue bene in the  
 realme of Briteyne, whiche he subduede to hym, and to  
 haue sende Turgesius with a multitude of peple to Irlonde

<sup>1</sup> *Fedlinidius*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>2</sup> Placed after *yere* in Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *in to*, MS. (not *a*, or Cx.)

<sup>4</sup> *men of Norweye*, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> *wel*] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *many*] om. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from *a*. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *takip a.*; *take*, Cx. These va-  
 riations are frequent.

<sup>9</sup> *of*, *a.*; *of wymmen*, Cx. The

text of MS. makes excellent sense,  
 but the true reading is, doubtless, *of*  
*wenches* (*puellarum*).

<sup>10</sup> So *a.*, Cx.; *at*, MS.

<sup>11</sup> *encion*, Cx. (who transposes  
 some words.)

<sup>12</sup> *Erisshe*, *a*.

<sup>13</sup> *to witynge*, *a.*; *to wete*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *of Bretouns*] out of Bretayne,  
*a.*, the words are omitted in Cx.



juventute ad Hiberniam expugnandam transmisisse ; qui quidem Turgesius, quia hujus expeditionis tribunus et rector extiterat, idcirco illum <sup>1</sup> gens Hiberniæ <sup>2</sup> quem vidit et novit famose prædicat.<sup>3</sup> Gurmundo tandem in <sup>4</sup> Galliarum partibus interfecto, Turgesius in Hibernia filiam regis Medensis adamavit, quam pater suus cum quindecim puellis transmittere Turgesio promisit, quibus apud <sup>5</sup> stagnum Lacherinum cum totidem nobilioribus gentis suæ Turgesius occurrere spondit. Quod dum faceret, a quindecim juvenibus imberbibus sub habitu puellari sicas ferentibus dolose occiditur, postquam triginta annis in insula imperaverat. Non multo post de Norguegiæ <sup>6</sup> partibus, quasi sub pacis obtentu et mercationis exercendæ prætextu, tres fratres Amelanus,<sup>7</sup> Siracus, et Ivorus <sup>8</sup> cum sua sequela ad hanc insulam venerunt ; et de consensu Hiberniensium otio deditorum maritima loca occupantes tres civitates <sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *eum*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *ista*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *celebrat*, C.D., Gale; *prædicat et celebrat*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *in*] om. B.; *in Gallorum*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *ad*, B.

<sup>6</sup> B. has *Norwagiæ*, and uses the

same form throughout ; A., here and commonly, *Norvegiæ* ; D. here has *Norvagesiæ*.

<sup>7</sup> *Aurelanus*, B. and Harl. MS.

<sup>8</sup> *Iviorus*, B.D. (apparently.)

<sup>9</sup> *tres civitates*] om. C.D.

for to wyne pat lond. And so for<sup>1</sup> Turgesius was gyour TREVISIA.  
 and ledere<sup>2</sup> of pat viage and of pat iornay,<sup>3</sup> and so i-seie  
 in Irlond and wel<sup>4</sup> i-knowe<sup>5</sup> among Irische men,—perfore  
 Irische men spekeþ moche of hym as of a noble man pat  
 was i-seie in Irlond and wel i-knowe in pat lond. At þe  
 laste whan Gurmundus was i-slawe in Fraunce, Turgesius  
 loued þe kynges douzter of Meth of Irlond; and hir fader  
 behiȝt Turgesius, pat he wolde sende hir hym to þe Lowe  
 Lacheryn wiþ fiftene maydenes; and Turgesius behiȝt for  
 to mete him<sup>6</sup> pere wiþ fiftene þe<sup>7</sup> noblest men pat he  
 hadde. He hyld<sup>8</sup> couenant and pouȝt of<sup>9</sup> no gile, but  
 pere come fiftene ȝong berdles men i-cloped as wommen,<sup>10</sup>  
 wiþ schorte swerdes vndir her clopes, and fil on Turgesius,  
 and slowe hym riȝt pere. And so Turgesius was traytour-  
 liche<sup>11</sup> i-slawe, after pat he hadde reigned pritty ȝere in  
 pat lond. Nouȝt longe afterward þre<sup>12</sup> breperen, Amela-  
 nus, Siracus, and Iuoris, come in to Irlond wiþ hir men  
 out of Norway, as it were<sup>13</sup> for loue of pees and<sup>14</sup> of  
 marchaundise, and woned by þe see sides by assent of  
 Irische men pat were alwey idel as Poules<sup>15</sup> knyȝtes. And

to expugne hit. And for cause that Turgesius was as the MS. HARL.  
 gouernoure in that labor, perfore þe peple of Irlonde 2261.  
 namethe hym whom thay<sup>16</sup> see. Gurmunde dedde at the  
 laste in Fraunce, Turgesius luffede moche þe doȝhter of  
 kyng Medense, whiche mayde here fader promisede to  
 sende to Turgesius with xv. other maidens, whom Turgesius  
 made promyse to mete at a water callede Lacheryne, with so  
 many nowble men of his peple. Whiche Turgesius was  
 sleyne by disseyte of those xv. yonge men in the habite  
 and clothege of women hauenge weppen vnder theire  
 clothes, after that he hade reignede in that yle xxx<sup>d</sup> yere.  
 After that thre breper come to that yle from the partes  
 of Norway, as in signe of pease, Aurelanus, Siracus, and  
 Iuorus, with other people, whiche, thro the consente of men  
 of Irlonde, ȝiffen to ydellenes, occupienge the places and f. 51. b.

<sup>1</sup> And by cause, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> capytayn and leder, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> and iourney, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> wel] om. a., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> i-knowe in pat lond, MS.; om. a. and Cx. The latter has other omissions.

<sup>6</sup> So a. and Cx.; him, MS.

<sup>7</sup> of þe, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

<sup>8</sup> and helde, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> of] om. Cx.

<sup>10</sup> like wymmen, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> traytoursliche, a.; traitorously, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

<sup>12</sup> So a. and Cx.; þis, MS.

<sup>13</sup> had been, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> and] Added from Cx.

<sup>15</sup> Paules, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> So Harl. MS.

Dubliniam,<sup>1</sup> Waterfordiam, et Limiricum<sup>2</sup> construxerunt, qui tandem numero<sup>3</sup> succrescentes contra indigenas frequenter<sup>4</sup> rebellaverunt,<sup>5</sup> et usum<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>securium, qui<sup>8</sup> Anglice<sup>9</sup> *sparth*<sup>10</sup> dicitur,<sup>11</sup> ad terram Hiberniæ<sup>12</sup> comportarunt. Igitur a tempore Turgesii usque ad ultimum monarcham Rothericum Connactiæ regem, septendecim reges in Hibernia fuerunt.<sup>13</sup> Et sic in universo a primo Hermone usque ad ultimum<sup>14</sup> Rothericum, quem subjugavit rex Angliæ Henricus secundus anno ætatis suæ<sup>15</sup> quadragesimo, regni<sup>16</sup> sui septimo decimo,<sup>17</sup> ab incarnatione Domini millesimo centesimo septuagesimo secundo, rexerunt Hiberniam centum octoginta unus<sup>18</sup> reges non coronati, non inuncti, non hæreditarii, sed vi et armis succedentes.

## CAP. XXXIV.

*De incolarum moribus.*

REFERT Solinus quod<sup>19</sup> gens hujus terræ sit<sup>20</sup> barbara, inhospita, bellicosa, fasque<sup>21</sup> nefasque pro eodem ducens.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Dubliniam*, D.<sup>2</sup> *Limicium*, B.<sup>3</sup> *in numero*, A.<sup>4</sup> *frequenter*] om. B.<sup>5</sup> *rebellarent*, A.; *debellarunt*, B.; *rebellarunt*, D.<sup>6</sup> *husum*, B.<sup>7</sup> *et* added in B.<sup>8</sup> *qui*] om. C. (not D.)<sup>9</sup> *Anglice*] om. A.B.<sup>10</sup> *sparthus*, C. (not D.)<sup>11</sup> *dicitur*] om. C. (not D.)<sup>12</sup> *Hiberniæ*] om. C.; *istam*, D.<sup>13</sup> E. has some clerical omissions.<sup>14</sup> *ultimum*] om. B.<sup>15</sup> *suæ*] Added from B.C., Gale.<sup>16</sup> *vero* added in B.<sup>17</sup> 7°, C. (not D.)<sup>18</sup> *unum annum*, E. (without sense.)<sup>19</sup> *Refert Solinus quod*] om. C.D.<sup>20</sup> *sit*] om. C.D.<sup>21</sup> *fas que nefas*, A.<sup>22</sup> *ducunt*, C.D.; om. E.

þese Norwayes bilde þ[r]e<sup>1</sup> citees, Deuelyng, Waterford, and Lymyriche; and encreased faste afterward, and wax<sup>2</sup> rebel aʒenst men of þe lond, and brouʒt first sparthes in to Irlond. So fro<sup>3</sup> Turgesius tyme anon to Roperyk his tyme, kyng of<sup>4</sup> Connoccia, þat was þe laste þat was kyng of al þe lond, were seuentene kynges, [in Irlond. And so þe kynges]<sup>5</sup> þat reigned in Irlond, from þe firste Hermon his tyme anon to þe laste Rotheryk his tyme, were in al an hondred kynges foure score and oon, þat were nouʒt i-crowned noþer anynt, noþer by lawe of heritage, bot by myʒt and maistrie and strenʒþe<sup>6</sup> of armes. Þe secounde Henry<sup>7</sup> kyng of Engeland made þis Rotherik sugette þe ʒere of kyng Henries tyme of age fourty, and of his kyngdom seuentene, þe ʒere of oure Lord elleuen hundred þre score and twelue.

TREVISA.

*De incolarum moribus.*

*Capitulum tricesimum quartum.*

SOLINUS seiþ þat men of þis lond beep straunge<sup>8</sup> of nacioun, housles, and grete fiʒteres, and accounteþ riʒt and

costes of that cuntre nye to the see, made Dublyn, Waterforde, and Lymyrike, thre cites. Whiche encreasenge in nowmbre, made mony batelles ageyne the inhabitatores of that cuntre. Therefore from the tyme of Turgesius vn to the laste Rotherike, whom kyng Henry the secunde made subiecte to hym in the xl<sup>th</sup> yere of his age, and in the xvij<sup>th</sup> yere off his reigne, in the yere of oure Lorde God m. c. lxxvij., a c. lxxxj. kynges gouernede Yrlonde, not crownede neither anyntede, neither occupienge hit by ryʒhtefulle inheritaunce, but obteynenge the predomy by strenʒhte and armes.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the Disposicion of the Inhabitatores of that Londe.*

*Capitulum tricesimum quartum.*

SOLINUS, the grete clerke, rehersethe that the peple of that londe be like to the peple of Barbre, bellicose, accom-

<sup>1</sup> *thre*, Cx.; *þe*, MS. and *a*.

<sup>2</sup> *encreased and after waxe*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *from*, *a*.

<sup>4</sup> *of* added from Cx., who has *Cannacia*.

<sup>5</sup> Added from *a*. and Cx. The

latter has a few very slight variations in the sentence following.

<sup>6</sup> *by strengþe*, *a*.

<sup>7</sup> *Harry*, Cx., and so below.

<sup>8</sup> So *a*. and Cx.; *strong*, MS.

Gens habitu singularis et inculta, victu parca, animo sæva, affatu aspera, sanguine interemptorum prius hausto<sup>1</sup> vultus<sup>2</sup> suos oblinivit.<sup>3</sup> Carnibus et fructibus pro esu, lacte pro potu contenta.<sup>4</sup> Gens quidem ludis, otio, et venationi plus dedita quam labori. *Giraldus in Topographia Hiberniæ*.<sup>5</sup> Gens ista post ortum suum<sup>6</sup> dure nutritur, moribus et vestibus inculta. Laneis tam braccis quam caligis, capuciis quoque strictis trans humeros deorsum cubito tenus protensis,<sup>7</sup> et vice palliorum phalangis<sup>8</sup> nigris utitur;<sup>9</sup> item non sellis, non<sup>10</sup> ocreis, non calcaribus equitando utuntur. Virgam in superiori parte cameratam ad concitandos<sup>11</sup> equos manu ferunt;<sup>12</sup> frænis<sup>13</sup> cami vice fungentibus et pabula nequaquam<sup>14</sup> impredientibus utuntur. Inermes corpore, pugnant at-tamen<sup>15</sup> jaculis binis, lanceis, et securibus amplis. Una tantum manu configunt; lapides pugillares, cum alia defecerint, in promptu habent. Gens itaque<sup>16</sup> agriculturam spernens, pascuis tantum utens, barbis et comis

<sup>1</sup> *hausta*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *multos*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *ablinunt*, A.; *obliniunt*, B.C.D., Gale; probably rightly. Solinus (c. 22) has *oblinunt*.

<sup>4</sup> *est contenta*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. omits reference; A.B. omits *Hiberniæ*.

<sup>6</sup> *suum*] om. C.D., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *prætensis*, Gale (not G.)

<sup>8</sup> So A.C.; *phalingis*, D.; *falangis*, B.E., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *utuntur*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *nec*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *concitandum*, A.D.

<sup>12</sup> *ferunt*] om. E.

<sup>13</sup> *frenis circa capita equorum non in ore fugantur*, (for *utuntur*), *pabula nequaquam impredientibus*, C. (not D., which agrees with the text.)

<sup>14</sup> *non*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *tantum*, Gale (but cancelled in G.)

<sup>16</sup> *Gens ista silvestris*, C.; *gens itaque silvestris*, D.



wrong al for oon,<sup>1</sup> and beep sengle of clopyng, scarce of mete, cruel of herte, and angry of speche, and drinkep firste blood of dede men pat beep i-slawe, and pan wasshep here face<sup>2</sup> perwip; and holdep hem apayde<sup>3</sup> wip flesshe and fruit instede of mete, and wip mylk instede of drynke, and vsep moche playes<sup>4</sup> and hydelnesse and huntynge, and trauaillep ful litel.<sup>5</sup> In hir child hode pey beep harde i-norisched and hard i-fed, and pey beep vnsemeliche of maneres and of clopyng, and hauep breche and hosen al oon<sup>6</sup> of wolles, and strait<sup>7</sup> hodes pat strecchep a cubite ouer pe schuldres by hynde, and blak faldynges<sup>8</sup> instede of mantels and of clokes. Also sadeles, bootes, [and]<sup>9</sup> spores pey vsep none, whan pey ridep; but pey dryuep hir hors wip a chambre yerde<sup>10</sup> in pe ouer ende instede of barnacles<sup>11</sup> and of britels of reest; and vsep bridels<sup>12</sup> pat lettep nouzt here hors of here<sup>13</sup> mete. Pey fizep<sup>14</sup> vnarmed, naked in body; neuerpeles wip tweie dartes and speres and wip brode sparthes.<sup>15</sup> Pey fizep wip oon hond;<sup>16</sup> and whan oper wepene faillep, pey hauep good publestones redy at hond. Pese men forsakep tilienge of lond and kepep pasture for beestes: pey vsep longe berdes and longe lokkes

TREVISA.

ptenge ryzhte and wronge as for oon thyng, a peple symple in habite, scarce and litelle in fyndenge, cruelle in herte, scharpe in speche, vsenge frutes for flesche, mylke for drynke, a peple that ziffethe more attendaunce to ydelnesse and to disportes then to labour. The peple of that cuntre is norischede hardely after thei comme in to this worlde, whiche vse no sadelles in rydenge, neither spures, neither bootes. Neuerthesse thei haue a wonde, other a rodde, clenede in the hier parte of it to cause the horses to move and labour in theire honde; which fizhte with oute armoure, neuerthesse thei vse dartes and speres, and thei fizhte also with oon honde and with brode axes, vsenge moche stones in theire fizhtenge when thei wonte other weppen. This peple despisethe tyllenge of londe, vsenge pastures, and sufrenge the hynder partes of theire hedes to groe in to a

MS. HARL.

2261

<sup>1</sup> one thyng, Cx.<sup>2</sup> theyr vysages, Cx.<sup>3</sup> paid, Cx.<sup>4</sup> pleyng, Cx.<sup>5</sup> lyte, a.<sup>6</sup> hon, a.<sup>7</sup> strait, a.; strait, Cx.<sup>8</sup> and faldynges, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Added from a.<sup>10</sup> chambred yerd, Cx., who transposes some previous words.<sup>11</sup> barnacles] byttes with trenches, Cx., who has brydles for britels.<sup>12</sup> briderls, a.<sup>13</sup> to ete theyr, Cx.<sup>14</sup> fitep, a.<sup>15</sup> So a. and Cx.; sparthus, MS.<sup>16</sup> Cx. omits to at hond.

<sup>1</sup> a posteriori parte capitis <sup>2</sup> luxurians, <sup>3</sup> non lino, non lanificio, non aliquo mercationis genere, nec ulla mechanicarum artium specie <sup>4</sup> vitam producunt; sed otio dediti, delicias reputant <sup>5</sup> labore carere, divitias deputant libertate gaudere. Et cum Scotia hujus terræ filia utatur lyra, <sup>6</sup> tympano, et <sup>7</sup> choro, ac Wallia cithara, tibiis, <sup>8</sup> et choro; Hibernici tamen <sup>9</sup> in duobus musici generis instrumentis, (cithara scilicet <sup>10</sup> et tympano æreis <sup>11</sup> chordis armato,) præ cæteris sunt periti; quibus instrumentis quamvis <sup>12</sup> precipitem et velocem, <sup>13</sup> suavem tamen et jocundam crispatis modulis et intricatis notulis <sup>14</sup> efficiunt harmoniam. A B molli incipiunt et sub obtuso <sup>15</sup> grossioris chordæ sonitu latenter ludentes in idem redeunt, ut pars artis maxima <sup>16</sup> videatur artem velare, tanquam,

Si lateat, prosit; ferat ars deprensa <sup>17</sup> pudorem.

Gens etiam ista spurcissima, nondum decimas solvunt, nondum matrimonia rite contrahunt, non incestus <sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *præcipue* added in C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *capitis*] om. B.C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *intricans*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *spem*, A.D.

<sup>5</sup> *deputant*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *libia*, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> *et etiam*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *tibia*, C. (not D.)

<sup>9</sup> *tantum*, C. (not D.)

<sup>10</sup> *scilicet*] om. A.

<sup>11</sup> *æneis*, C.D.; *æris*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *quam*, E.

<sup>13</sup> *quamvis præcipitem et velocem*] licet præcipue, C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *et intricatis notulis*] om. D.

<sup>15</sup> *optuoso*, A.

<sup>16</sup> *maximam*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *deprehensa*, MSS. and Gale.

<sup>18</sup> *incestus non*, B.

hongynge down by hynde hir nolles.<sup>1</sup> Pey vse<sup>2</sup> no craft of flex and<sup>3</sup> wolle, of metal, noper of marchaundise; but 3eueþ hem alle<sup>4</sup> to idelnesse and to sleupe,<sup>5</sup> and countep<sup>6</sup> reste for likyng and fredom for richesse. And pey Scotland pe douȝter of Irlond vse harpe, tymbre, and tabour, [and Wales useþ harpe and pipe and tabour],<sup>7</sup> neuerpeles Irische men beep connyng in tweie manere instrumentis<sup>8</sup> of musyk, in harpe and tymbre þat is i-armed wip wire and wip strenges of bras. In pe whiche<sup>9</sup> instrumentis,<sup>8</sup> pey [pei]<sup>10</sup> pleye hastiliche and swiftliche, pey makeþ wel<sup>11</sup> mery armonye<sup>12</sup> and melody wip wel picke<sup>13</sup> tunes, werbeles, and nootes; and bygynneþ from bemol, and pleieþ priueliche vnder deepe<sup>14</sup> soun of þe grete strenges and torneþ aȝen in to þe same, so þat þe grettest partie of þe craft hideþ þe craft; [as hit wolde seme as þei þe craft]<sup>15</sup> so i-hidde schulde be aschamed, and it were i-take. Pese men beep of yuel maneres and of leuyng; pey paieþ none tepinges,<sup>16</sup> þei weddeþ lawefulliche none wyfes, pey spareþ not her alies, bot þe broþer weddeþ his broþer<sup>17</sup> wyf. Pey beep

TREVISA.

grete lengthte: not vsenge theire lyfe in makenge of clothe of wolle, other elles of lyne or flex, neither in eny kynde of marchandise, neither in eny honde crafte; but ȝiffen to ydelnesse, accompte to be with owte labor delites, and a pleasure to ioie in liberte. Also Scotlande, the douȝter of hit, as in ydelnesse vsethe an harpe, a tympan, and a crowde. And Wales vsethe trumpettes, an harpe, and a crowde. Neuerthelesse men of Irlonde be experte specially in ij. kyndes of musike, that is to say, an harpe, and a tympan stryngede and armede with cordes off brasse. But thauȝhe thei make a swyfte melody ther with and a swete, thei begynne with a softe noyce and tune, and pleyenge priuely vnder a dulle sounde of a more grosse corde returne to the same. The peple of this cuntre is vile of condicion; vn to this tyme presente they pay not theire tythes, thei make not lawefulle contractes in matrimony, thay avoide not inceste, but breper wedde the wyfes of theire brether, vsenge gretely

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *hedes*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *vseþ*, a.<sup>3</sup> *of*, a., Cx.<sup>4</sup> *alle*] om. Cx.<sup>5</sup> *slouthe*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *reke*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> Added from a. (not in Cx.)<sup>8</sup> So a.; *instrumentz*, MS. (twice.)<sup>9</sup> in *whiche*, Cx., with other slight variations.<sup>10</sup> *though they*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *right*, Cx.<sup>12</sup> So Cx.; *armenye*, MS.<sup>13</sup> *with thyck*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *secretely vnder dymme*, Cx.<sup>15</sup> Added from a. and Cx. The latter slightly varies a few words in the previous sentence.<sup>16</sup> *tythes*, Cx.; no *tepinges*, a.<sup>17</sup> *the broders*, Cx.

vitant; sed fratres fratrum uxores ducunt, proditionibus insistunt, securim, id est sparth,<sup>1</sup> in manu quasi pro baculo bajulant,<sup>2</sup> qua<sup>3</sup> sibi confidentes præoccupant. Gens ista versipellis et inconstans, varia et<sup>4</sup> versuta, cujus<sup>5</sup> magis timenda<sup>6</sup> ars quam Mars,<sup>7</sup> pax quam fax, mel quam fel,<sup>8</sup> malitia quam militia; cujus mores sunt,<sup>9</sup> quod nec in bello fortes, nec in pace fideles inveniuntur.<sup>10</sup> Cum illo quem dolose opprimere volunt, primo<sup>11</sup> compaternitatis et consecratæ fraternitatis fœdera jungunt; in qua alter alterius sanguinem sponte<sup>12</sup> fusum bibunt. Alumnos et collactaneos aliquantulum diligunt, fratres et cognatos persequuntur, vivos decipiunt, mortuos ulciscuntur. Inter quos adeo in naturam converti prævaluit pravæ consuetudinis longus abusus, adeo a convictu<sup>13</sup> mores formantur, ut etiam<sup>14</sup> hoc vitio prodi-

<sup>1</sup> *id est sparth*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *gestant*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *quas*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *et*] om. C.D. (twice.)

<sup>5</sup> So C.D., Gale; *cui*, A.E.

<sup>6</sup> *timenda*] om. E.

<sup>7</sup> So Gale; *Mars quam ars*, MSS. and G. (contrary to the meaning.)

<sup>8</sup> *mel . . . fel*] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> *sunt*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *inveniuntur*] om. C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *puro*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *sponte sanguinem*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *adeoque convictu*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *in*, B.

besy forto betraye hire neiȝbores and opere. Pey beren TREVISIA.  
sparthes in here hond instede of stauēs, and fiȝteȝ per-  
wip<sup>1</sup> aȝenst hem pat tristep<sup>2</sup> to hem beste; þe<sup>3</sup> men  
beep variable and vnstedefast, trecherous and gileful. Who  
pat deleȝ wip hem nedep more to be war more of gile þan  
of craft, of pees þan of brennyngē brondes, of hony þan  
of galle, of malice þan of knyȝthode. Pey haueȝ suche  
maneres pat þei beep not stronge in werre and bataille,  
noper trewe in pees. Pey bycomeȝ [gossibs to hem]<sup>4</sup> pat  
pey wollep falseliche betraye in<sup>5</sup> gosibrede and holy kynrede;  
cueriche drinkeȝ operes blood, whan it is i-sched. He<sup>6</sup>  
louep sondel her norice and here pleieng<sup>7</sup> feres whiche  
pat<sup>8</sup> soukeȝ þe same melk pat pey soukeȝ, while they beep<sup>9</sup>  
children. And pey purseweȝ here breperen, her cosyns,  
and here oper kyn; and despiseȝ hir kyn, while pey beep  
on lyue,<sup>10</sup> and awrekeȝ<sup>11</sup> her deep, and<sup>12</sup> pey beep i-slawe.  
Among hem longe vsage and euel custume hap so longe  
i-dured,<sup>13</sup> pat it hap i-made<sup>14</sup> þe maistrie, and torneȝ among  
hemself<sup>15</sup> traisoun in to kynde so fer forthe, pat as<sup>16</sup> þei  
be traytours by kynde,<sup>17</sup> so aliens and men of straunge  
londes pat woneȝ longe among hem draweȝ aftir þe manere<sup>18</sup>  
of hir companye, and skapeȝ wel vnneȝ<sup>19</sup> but pey be

treason, berenge in theire honde an instrumente callede a MS. HARL.  
sparth as for a staffe with the whiche they perische ofte-  
2261.  
tymes men trustenge in theyme. This peple is frowarde  
and inconstante, diuerse or variable, and wyly, amonge  
whom batelle is more to be dredde then arte, peace more  
then armor, hony more then galle, malice more then cheual-  
lery; the propertes and condicions of whom be, thei be  
neither stronge in battelle neither tru in pease; whiche  
ioyne to theyme men whom thei intende to sle by the bonde  
of compaternite and of consecrate fraternite, by whiche oon  
of theyme drynkethe the bloode of that other wyллеfully.  
Which luffe theire childer in a maner, and breper; whiche  
prosecute their cosynges; deceyvenge men in lyfe, and tak-

<sup>1</sup> *perwip*] om. Cx.

<sup>2</sup> *truste moost*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *þese*, a., Cx;

<sup>4</sup> Added from Cx. (not in a.)

<sup>5</sup> *in þe*, a.

<sup>6</sup> So MS. and a.; *they*, Cx. (in the same sense.)

<sup>7</sup> *pley feres*, a., Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So also a., and Cx.

<sup>9</sup> *were*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *alyue*, a.; *they lyue*, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> *auenge*, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> *whan*, Cx. (so often).

<sup>13</sup> Slightly varied in Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *goten*, Cx. adding *ouer them*.

<sup>15</sup> *among hemself*] om. Cx.

<sup>16</sup> *as* and *so*, below, om. Cx.

<sup>17</sup> *nature*, Cx.

<sup>18</sup> *maneres*, a.

<sup>19</sup> *folowen their maners that vnnethe*, Cx.



tionis<sup>1</sup> alienigenæ huc advecti fere inevitabiliter involvantur. In hac gente quamplures viri sedendo, mulieres stando urinam emittunt. Multi sunt in hac terra deformes, naturæ beneficio in<sup>2</sup> membris destituti; ita ut sicut<sup>3</sup> qui hic<sup>4</sup> bene formantur nusquam melius, ita<sup>5</sup> qui male nusquam pejus; et recte quidem, ut de gente incesta<sup>6</sup> nequiter copulata,<sup>7</sup> natura nequiter deformante, natura<sup>8</sup> læsa contra legem naturæ<sup>9</sup> producat. In hac terra et in Wallia vetulas quasdam in leporinam formam se transmutare<sup>10</sup> ubera vaccina<sup>11</sup> sugendo, alienum lac surripere,<sup>12</sup> leporariosque magnatum<sup>13</sup> cursu fatigare vetus quidem et adhuc frequens querela est. Quidam etiam magicis artibus pingues porcos (sed ru-beos duntaxat) ex aliqua præjacente materia producentes in nundinis vendunt; sed hi statim, ut aliquam

<sup>1</sup> *perditionis*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *in*] om. B.

<sup>3</sup> *sicut*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *hic qui*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *ibi*, C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *incestu*, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> *nequiter deformata vel natura læsa*, C. (not D.)

<sup>8</sup> *talis natura*, A. (second hand) B.D.

<sup>9</sup> C. (not D.) adds, *ne proles deformis producat*.

<sup>10</sup> *iransformare unita ubera*, A.; *mutuo transformare*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *vaccinea*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *suscipere*, C. (not D.)

<sup>13</sup> *magno*, C.D.

i-smotted<sup>1</sup> wip þe schrewednesse and bycomeþ traytours<sup>2</sup> TREVISA.  
 also. Among hem many men pisseþ sittynge and wommen  
 stondynge. Þere beþ meny men in þis<sup>3</sup> lond wonder<sup>4</sup>  
 foule and yuel i-schape yn lymes and in body.<sup>5</sup> For in  
 hir lymes lakkeþ<sup>6</sup> þe benefice of kynde, so þat nowher  
 beþ no<sup>7</sup> better i-schape, þan þey þat beþ þere wel i-  
 schape; and nowher non worse i-schape þan þey þat beþ  
 þere euel i-schape. And skilfulliche kynde, i-hurt and de-  
 fouled by wykkednesse of lyuynge, bryngeþ forþ suche foule  
 gromes and euel i-schape of hem þat wip vnlaweful wed-  
 dyng<sup>8</sup> wip foule maneres and euel lyuynge so wickedliche  
 defouleþ<sup>9</sup> kynde.<sup>10</sup> In þis lond and in Wales olde wyfes and  
 wymmen were i-woned, and beþ ȝit (as me pleyneþ)<sup>11</sup>  
 ofte forto schape hem self in liknes of hares for to melke  
 here neiȝhebores keen,<sup>12</sup> and so<sup>13</sup> stele hire melk, and ofte  
 grehoundes<sup>14</sup> renneþ after hem and purseweþ hem, and  
 wenep þat þey be hares. Also som by craft of nygramauncie  
 makeþ fat swyne [þat beþ reed of colour,]<sup>15</sup> and noon oper,  
 and selleþ hem in chepinge<sup>16</sup> and in feires; but anon as pese<sup>17</sup>

unge vengeance for dedde men. Mony men of that cuntre MS. HARL.  
 vse to make water and to sende furthe theire vryne syt- 2261.  
 tenge, and women stondenge. Also there is moche peple of  
 that londe destitute in theire membres thro the deformite  
 of nature; for lyke as men amonge theyme welle formede  
 by nature be semely men, so men deformed by nature  
 amonge þeim be moste vile and hade in contempte; and by  
 ryȝhte, for hit is not to be hade in meruayle, thauȝhe nature  
 hurte brynge furthe peple as ageyne the lawe of nature,  
 amonge peple vsenge inceste and takenge women ageyne the  
 lawe of God. Also hit is seide amonge commune peple,  
 olde women of that londe, and of Wales, to chaunge theyme  
 in to the forme of an hare and to sowke bestes, and to  
 take awaye the mylke of other men, and to make feynte  
 the grehowndes of grete men thro cowsenge and rennenge.  
 And somme of theim causenge redde swyne thro wycche-  
 crafte, after thei were made fatte and solde at feires, when

<sup>1</sup> smytted, a.<sup>2</sup> ther is none but he is besmitten  
with their treson also, Cx.<sup>3</sup> that, Cx.<sup>4</sup> om. Cx.<sup>5</sup> Slightly varied in Cx.<sup>6</sup> they lacke. Cx.<sup>7</sup> non, a.<sup>8</sup> delyng, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; and defouleþ, MS. and  
a. (without sense.)<sup>10</sup> kynde and nature, Cx.<sup>11</sup> So also a.; as men seyne, Cx.<sup>12</sup> kyne, Cx.<sup>13</sup> so] om. C.<sup>14</sup> gerhoundes, Cx.<sup>15</sup> Altered from Cx., who has for  
to be reed, &c. Absent from a.<sup>16</sup> markettis, Cx.<sup>17</sup> the, Cx.

aquam transeunt, in propriam naturam redeunt. Sed et hi quacunquē<sup>1</sup> industria servantur ultra triduum non perdurant.<sup>2</sup> Inter hæc et hujusmodi<sup>3</sup> advertendum est, quod<sup>4</sup> mundi extremitates<sup>5</sup> novis semper quibusdam prodigiis pollent;<sup>6</sup> ac si natura licentius ludat in privato et remoto, quam in propatulo<sup>7</sup> et propinquo. Unde et in hac insula plurima sunt miranda et stupenda.<sup>8</sup>

## CAP. XXXV.

*De locorum prodigiis.*

AFFIRMATUM est a multis<sup>9</sup> quod in boreali parte Hi-bernæ sit insula viventium,<sup>10</sup> in qua nemo mori potest; sed, cum diutino<sup>11</sup> detenti fuerint languore, ad proximam deportantur insulam. Est et alia ibi<sup>12</sup> insula, in qua mulieres parere non possunt, tamen concipere<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Sed et hi quacunquē*] *sed quantacumque*, C.D.; *at quantacumque*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *durant*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> So B., Gale; *hujus*, A.E.

<sup>4</sup> *Inter . . . quod*] om. C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *extremitas*, G. and Gale.

<sup>6</sup> *prodigiis quibusdam pollet*, G., Gale.

<sup>7</sup> *patulo*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *et stupenda*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *a multis*] om. A. (which has erasures) B.

<sup>10</sup> Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *diuturno*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Et est ibi alia*, A.

<sup>13</sup> *concipere tamen*, D.

swyne passeþ ony water þey torneþ aȝen in to hir owne TREVISA.  
kynde, where<sup>1</sup> it be straw, hey, gras, oper torues.<sup>2</sup> But  
þese swyn mowe not be i-kept by no manere<sup>3</sup> craft forto  
dure in liknesse of swyn<sup>4</sup> ouer þre dayes. Among þese  
wondres and opere take hede þat in þe vttermeste<sup>5</sup> endes  
of þe world falleþ ofte newe meruailles and wondres,<sup>6</sup> as  
þei kynde pleyde wiþ larger<sup>7</sup> leue priueliche and fer in þe  
endes þan openliche and nyȝ in<sup>8</sup> þe myddel. Þerfore in  
þis ilond beþ meny grisliche meruayles and wondres.

*De locorum prodigiis.*

*Capitulum tricesimum quintum.*

*Giraldus, capitulo nono.*<sup>9</sup> Meny men telleþ þat in þe  
norþ side of Irlond is þe ilond of lyf; in þat ilond is<sup>10</sup>  
no man þat<sup>11</sup> may deie;<sup>12</sup> but whan þey beþ i-holde wiþ  
hard<sup>13</sup> siknesse þey beþ i-bore out to þe next ilond,<sup>14</sup> and  
deie þere. Þere is anoper ilond in Irlond; þere no womman  
may bere a childe, but ȝit sche<sup>15</sup> may conceyue. Also þere

thei come to eny water to returne in to an other kynde, MS. HARL.  
causenge that body soe to endure by wycheecrafte by the 2261.  
space of thre dayes. Amonge whiche thynges hit is to be f. 50. b.  
aduertede that the extremities of the worlde schyne in newe  
wondres and meruailles, as if that nature scholde schyne  
and play more in priuate places and remouede then in  
open places and also nye.

*Of the Wondres and Meruayles of hit.*

*Capitulum tricesimum quintum.*

*Giraldus.* Mony men afferme and say that ther is an yle  
in the northe parte of Yrlonde whiche is callede the yle of  
men lyvenge, in whiche yle a man may not dye, but after that  
thei be detente with longe infirmite thei be brouȝhte to another  
yle nye to hit. Also there is an other yle, in whom a woman  
may not be delyuerede; neuerthelesse thei may conceyue in

<sup>1</sup> wheþer, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> turues, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> manere] om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Four previous words om. in Cx.

<sup>5</sup> otmeste, a.

<sup>6</sup> Slightly varied in Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So Cx., who has *loue* (typ. error?); *large*, MS. and a.

<sup>8</sup> in] om. Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Reference added from a.

<sup>10</sup> is] om. a.

<sup>11</sup> þat] om. a.

<sup>12</sup> *no man may deie*, Cx.

<sup>13</sup> *old and be vexed with grete*, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> *londe*, Cx.

<sup>15</sup> *he*, a. (probably meaning *they*.  
See pp. 357, 383.)

Purga-  
torium  
Patricii.

possunt. Est et alia insula<sup>1</sup> in qua mortuorum corpora putrescere non possunt.<sup>2</sup> Est lacus in Ultonia insulam continens bipartitam, cujus<sup>3</sup> una pars visitationibus angelorum<sup>4</sup> assueta, altera dæmonum incursibus exposita, in qua est purgatorium Patricii; quod<sup>5</sup> precibus<sup>6</sup> obtinere meruit ad confirmationem dicti sui, dum populo incredulo de pœnis reproborum ac<sup>7</sup> gaudiis sanctorum prædicaret. Cujus<sup>8</sup> loci, ut asserunt, si quis tormenta<sup>9</sup> ex injuncta pœnitentia sustinuerit, infernales pœnas (nisi<sup>10</sup> finaliter fuerit<sup>11</sup> impœnitens) non subibit,<sup>12</sup> sicut in fine hujus capituli plenius exemplabitur.<sup>13</sup> Est

<sup>1</sup> *insula*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *poterunt*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *cujus*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *vastationibus Anglorum*, Gale, absurdly, and against G.; where, however, *Angolorum* is deceitfully abbreviated.

<sup>5</sup> C.D. add *quidem*.

<sup>6</sup> *suis* added in B.

<sup>7</sup> *pœnis reproborum ac*] om. C. (not D., which has *de gaudiisque*.)

<sup>8</sup> *Hujus*, C.D. (with slight transpositions.)

<sup>9</sup> *tormenta* is in the place of *pœnitentia* in B.

<sup>10</sup> *ubi*, Gale, misreading the contraction in G.

<sup>11</sup> *fuerit finaliter*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *subiet*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *sicut . . . exemplabitur*] om. C.D.



is an ilond, pere<sup>1</sup> no dede body may roty.<sup>2</sup> In Vltonia TREVISA.  
 is an ilond in<sup>3</sup> a lake departed wonderliche atweyne; in  
 pe<sup>4</sup> oon partie is ofte grete destourbaunce and discomfort  
 of fendes, and in pe oper partie greet likynge and coumfort  
 of aungelles.<sup>5</sup> Pere is also Patrick his purgatorie, pat was  
 i-schewed at his prayere<sup>6</sup> to conferme his prechyng and  
 his lore, whan he preched to mysbileued men of sorwe and  
 peyne pat eucl men schal pole<sup>7</sup> for hire wicked wordes,<sup>8</sup>  
 and of ioie and of blisse pat good men schal fonge for  
 here holy dedes.<sup>9</sup> He telleþ [pat]<sup>10</sup> who pat suffreþ pe  
 peynes of pat purgatorie, 3if it be enioyned hym for pe-  
 naunce, he schal neuere suffre pe peynes of helle, but he  
 dye fynalliche wip oute repentaunce of synne, as þe en-  
 sample is i-sette more ful at this chapitres ende. *Trevisa.*  
 Þei þis sawe myȝt be sooth, it is but a iape. For<sup>11</sup> no  
 man pat doop dedely synne schal be i-saued, but he be  
 verrey repentaunt,<sup>12</sup> [what sommeuer penaunce he doo; and  
 euery man that is verray repentaunt] at his lifes ende of  
 al his mysdedes, he schal be sikerliche i-saued and haue þe  
 blisse of heuene, þey he neuere hire speke<sup>13</sup> of Patrik his  
 purgatorie.<sup>14</sup> R. Pere is an ilond in Conacte<sup>15</sup> Salo,<sup>16</sup> pat

hit. Also there is an other yle in whom the bodies of MS. HARL.  
 dedde men may not be putrefiede. Also there is a place 2261.  
 in Vltonia, that is callede Vlster, conteynge an yle par-  
 tede in tweyne. That oon of theyme is wonte to be vsede  
 with the visitacion of angelles. That other is expownde to  
 the incursion of deuelles, in whiche parte the purgatory of  
 Seynte Patrikke is, whiche he deseruede to obteyne by  
 hys preiers to the confirmation of his seyenge, when he  
 prechede to reprovable peple of the ioies of heuyn and  
 of the peynes of helle. For, as hit is seide, if eny man sus-  
 teyne the tormentes of that place by penaunce inioynede to  
 hym, he schalle not suffre the peynes of helle with owte that  
 he were inpenitente finally, as hit schalle be schewede more  
 pleyneley in the ende of this chapitre. Also there is an

<sup>1</sup> in whiche, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> rotye, a.; roten, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> So a., Cx.; and, MS.

<sup>4</sup> that, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Slightly transposed and varied in Cx.

<sup>6</sup> prayers, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> poole, a.; suffer, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So also a.; werkes, Cx., which is better.

<sup>9</sup> Very slight variations in the above sentence in Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>11</sup> But, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> he be verrey repentaunt] Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>13</sup> So a.; neuere speke, MS.; here, Cx.

<sup>14</sup> In the preceding extract, Cx. omits the first sentence, and, besides slight variations, adds the words in brackets, which are absent from MS. and a.

<sup>15</sup> Connacte, a.; Cannacte, Cx.

<sup>16</sup> So Cx.; Salao, MS.; Saloo, a.

Fons  
Pluviæ.

Salices.

et insula in Connacte salo a sancto<sup>1</sup> Brendano consecrata, muribus carens, ubi humana corpora nec<sup>2</sup> humanantur nec<sup>2</sup> putrescunt, sed sub divo servantur incorrupta. Est fons in Momonia,<sup>3</sup> cujus aquis si quis abluitur, pro toto seu pro parte canus efficitur. E contra est alius<sup>4</sup> fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius.<sup>5</sup> Est et fons in Momonia,<sup>6</sup> qui si tactus fuerit ab homine, statim tota provincia pluviis inundat,<sup>7</sup> quæ non<sup>8</sup> cessabunt donec sacerdos virgo a nativitate,<sup>9</sup> missa in vicina capella celebrata, aquæ benedictione et lactis<sup>10</sup> vaccæ unius coloris aspersione, barbaro satis ritu, fontem reconciliaverit. Apud Glyndelacan circa oratorium Sancti Keywyni<sup>11</sup> salices more pomerii<sup>12</sup> poma proferunt magis salubria quam sapida, quæ sanctus ille ad salutem pueri sui<sup>13</sup> precibus

<sup>1</sup> dicto, A.

<sup>2</sup> non, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> Nemonia, B.

<sup>4</sup> alius] om. C.D., and the words slightly transposed.

<sup>5</sup> amplius, C.D. This and the previous sentence omitted in A., which consistently omits the *etiam* following. They occur lower down.

<sup>6</sup> E. . . Momonia] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> inundatur, A.; inundavit, B.

<sup>8</sup> quæ non] et non, D.

<sup>9</sup> virgo after nativitate in B.

<sup>10</sup> lacte, C.D. (with other slight variations.)

<sup>11</sup> Kewyni, B.; Keilwin, C.; Kewynii, D. (apparently.)

<sup>12</sup> pomarii, A.C.D.

<sup>13</sup> su] om. C. (not D.)

is, in þe see of Conactia, i-halowed of Seynt Brendoun,<sup>1</sup> and hap no myse; pere dede bodyes beþ nouȝt i-buried, but beþ i-kepte pere oute [of therthe]<sup>2</sup> and rotieþ nouȝt. In Mamonia is a welle; who þat wascheþ<sup>3</sup> hym wip þe water of þat welle, for som oper for alle<sup>4</sup> he schal worpe hoor.<sup>5</sup> Pere is anoþer welle in Vltonia,<sup>6</sup> who þat<sup>7</sup> is i-wasche þerynne, he schal neuere wexe hoor afterward. Pere is anoþer<sup>8</sup> welle in Mamonia;<sup>9</sup> ȝif any man toucheþ þat welle, anon schalle falle a<sup>10</sup> greet reyn in to<sup>11</sup> alle the prouince; and þat reyn schal neuere cese, or<sup>12</sup> a preost þat is clene<sup>13</sup> mayde singe a masse in a chapel þat is faste by, and blisse<sup>14</sup> þe water, and with mylk of a cowe þat is of oon here byspringe þe welle, and so reconsile þe welle in a<sup>15</sup> straunge manere. At Glyndalkan<sup>16</sup> aboute þe oratorie of Saint Keynewyn wilewys<sup>17</sup> bereþ apples as it were appel treen, and beþ more holsom þan sauory; þat holy<sup>18</sup> seynt brouȝt forþ pilke apples by prayeres for to hele his childe.<sup>19</sup>

TREVISA.

yle in that cuntre, whiche was consecrate of Seynte Brendan, wontenge myce, where the bodies of men neither rote neither be beriedde, but lye with owte incorrupte. Also there is a welle in Manonia that and if a man wasche alle his body with that water, other elles parte, he schalle be made hoore. Also there is a welle in Vlster, where in a man waschenge hym schalle not wexe hoore afterwarde. Also there is a welle in Manonia whiche towchede of a man schalle cause alle the prouince to habunde in reyn, whiche schalle not sease vntille a preste beenge a virgyn from his natiuite syngenge masse in a chapelle nye to hit, makenge holy water, schalle reconsile that welle after the ryte of men of Barbre, castenge holy water abowte that welle with the mylke of a kowe that is of oon coloure. Also at a water callede Glynde, nye to the chyrche of Seynte Kexwyne, welotrees bere apples more hollesom then thei appere to the savoure, whom that seynte causede to be brouȝhte furthe thro his preiers for the sawle healethe of his childe. Also

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *Brendan, a.*<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx.; not in a.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; *wasteþ*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *for som . . . alle*] om. Cx.<sup>5</sup> Cx. adds *on his hede*.<sup>6</sup> So Cx.; *Mamonia*, MS., a.<sup>7</sup> *who someuer*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> a, a., Cx.<sup>9</sup> *Mownstere* or *Momonía*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> a] om. Cx.<sup>11</sup> to] om. Cx.<sup>12</sup> til, Cx.<sup>13</sup> a clene, Cx.<sup>14</sup> blesse, Cx.<sup>15</sup> in this, Cx.<sup>16</sup> Glydalkan, a.<sup>17</sup> withges, Cx.<sup>18</sup> So Cx.; *þat þe holy*, MS., a.<sup>19</sup> Cx. adds *that was seek*.

Lacus in  
Ultonia.

produxit. Est lacus in Ultonia piscosa satis, triginta millia passuum in longum<sup>1</sup> et quindecim in latum<sup>2</sup> habens, ex quo fluvius Banna usque in<sup>3</sup> oceanum borealem se diffundit; <sup>4</sup> cui<sup>5</sup> lacui<sup>6</sup> talis, ut asserunt, casus initium dedit. Celebre fuit aliquando<sup>7</sup> apud loci illius<sup>8</sup> incolae, vitio coeundi cum bestiis consuetissimos,<sup>9</sup> quod, quam cito fons quidam terræ illius ex prisca reverentia semper tectus<sup>10</sup> relinqueretur discoopertus, tanta statim fons inundatione exuberaret, quod totam provinciam submergeret.<sup>11</sup> Unde<sup>12</sup> contigit mulierem quandam<sup>13</sup> hauriendi causa ad fontem accessisse, qua necdum fonte signato ad parvulum vagientem properante, fons ita ebullivit, ut et<sup>14</sup> mulierem cum parvulo mergeret, et totam provinciam stagnum faceret. Hujus rei argumentum est, quod piscatores aquæ illius turres ecclesiasticas more<sup>15</sup> patriæ illius<sup>16</sup> altas et rotundas sub undis sereno tempore adhuc conspiciunt. Apud

<sup>1</sup> *longitudinem*, B.C. (not. D.)

<sup>2</sup> *latitudine*, C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *ad*, A.B.D.

<sup>4</sup> *transfundit*, D. (with other slight variations.)

<sup>5</sup> *huic*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *cujus lacus*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *quondam*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *illius*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *consuetos*, B.; *vitiosissimos*, C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *semper tectus*] coopertus, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *dilueret*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Dudum*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *quondam*, A.

<sup>14</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *secundum modum*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *illius*] om. C.D.

TREVISA.

Pere is a lake in Vltonia<sup>1</sup> and fische inow<sup>2</sup> perynne, and is pritty myle on<sup>3</sup> lengpe and fiftene in brede; pe ryuer Ban<sup>4</sup> rennep in to pe norþ ocean out of þat lake; and me seith þat [þat]<sup>5</sup> lake bygan in pis manere: pere were men in þat contre þat were of yuel leuyng, coeutes cum brutis, and pere was a welle in þat lond in grete reuerence in<sup>6</sup> olde tyme and alle wey i-heled;<sup>7</sup> and ȝif it were vnheled, pe welle wexe<sup>8</sup> and adrenche<sup>9</sup> al pe lond. And so it happed þat a womman wente to þat welle for to fecche water, and hiȝed<sup>10</sup> wel<sup>11</sup> faste to hir childe þat wepte<sup>12</sup> in his<sup>13</sup> cradell, and lefte pe welle vnheled; þan pe welle sprong so faste, þat it dreynt<sup>14</sup> pe woman and hir child, and made al pe contray a grete<sup>15</sup> lake and a fische pond. For to preue þat pis is soop, it is a grete argument þat whanne pe wedir is clere fischeres of þat water seen<sup>16</sup> in pe grounde vnder pe water rounde toures, [and]<sup>17</sup> hiȝe, i-schape as cherches of pe<sup>18</sup> lond. In pe norþ side of Irlond in the

there is a water in Vlster ful of fisches, hauenge xxx<sup>ti</sup> m. MS. HARL. 2261.  
passes in longitude and xv. m. in latitude, from whom the water, callede Banne, goethe furthe vn to the northe ocean, to whiche place and water a meruellous chaunce happede, as hit is seide. For that abhominable vice of sendenge furthe of sede was vsede amonge men of that cuntre with brute bestes, where a welle vsede to be couerede for olde reuerence, laste at a tyme vncouerede that welle so habundaunte in water drownede alle that prouince. Where of hit happede a woman to haue goen to that welle for cause to drawe water, and leuenge hit vncouerede, makenge haste to here childe cryenge, the water was so habundante that hit pereschede pe woman with here childe, and makenge alle the prouince a water: an argumente and a probacion of this thyng dothe appere in that the fischer, vsenge to fische in that water, may see in the bryȝhte daies of somer vnder the waters hye towres and rownde of chirches, after the vse of that cuntre. Also at the sowthe parte of Irlonde, in

<sup>1</sup> Vlster, Cx.<sup>2</sup> moche fyssh, Cx.<sup>3</sup> in, a.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; Ban þat, MS. and a.<sup>5</sup> Added from a.; that this, Cx.; the þat of MS. is probably transposed; see preceding note.<sup>6</sup> of, a., Cx.<sup>7</sup> couered, and vncouered below, Cx.<sup>8</sup> were] wold ryse, Cx.<sup>9</sup> drowne, Cx.<sup>10</sup> hied, a., Cx.<sup>11</sup> wel] om. Cx.<sup>12</sup> weep, a.<sup>13</sup> the, Cx.<sup>14</sup> drowned, Cx.<sup>15</sup> grete] om. Cx.<sup>16</sup> see, Cx.<sup>17</sup> Added from a. and Cx.<sup>18</sup> that, Cx. (not a.)



australem Hiberniam in regione Ossiriensi<sup>1</sup> quolibet septennio, per imprecationem ejusdam sancti abbatis,<sup>2</sup> duo conjuges mas et foemina a finibus illis et a formis propriis exulare coguntur. Nam formam lupinam induentes completo septennio, si forte superstites fuerint, aliis duobus loco eorum<sup>3</sup> simili conditione subrogatis, ad pristinam redeunt tam patriam quam naturam. Est lacus in hac terra, quo si per aliquod spatium palus ligneus infigatur, pars solo inhærens fit ferrea, quæ in aqua est fit lapidea, sed quæ supra aquam est lignea manet.<sup>4</sup> Est etiam ibidem<sup>5</sup> lacus, in quem si virgam de corylo injeceris,<sup>6</sup> convertitur in fraxinum, et e contra. Item in Hibernia sunt tres salmonum saltus, quibus ad summa ab imis contra rupem ad altitudinem unius hastæ<sup>7</sup> salmones se<sup>8</sup> transferunt. Item in Lagenia<sup>9</sup> est unum stagnum ubi<sup>10</sup> sunt aves

Lacus  
mirabiles.

<sup>1</sup> *Assiriensi*, C. ; *Hossiriensi*, D. ; *Affriensi*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *sancti abbatis*] E contra est alius fons in Ultonia quo intinctus non canescit ulterius. Est et fons qui . . . (blank in MS.), B., and so A. nearly.

<sup>3</sup> *illorum*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Slightly varied in C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *ibi*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *projeceris virgam coruli*, C.D. ; *corulo*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *unius hastæ altitudinem*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *salmones se*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *Laegenia*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *in quo*, B

contray of Ossiriens<sup>1</sup> eueriche seuene zere, at þe prayere of oon þat was an<sup>2</sup> holy abbot, tweyne þat beep i-wedded a man and a womman schal<sup>3</sup> nedes be outlawed<sup>4</sup> out of þat contray and out of here owne schap. For pilke seuene zere þey schul be riȝt as wolues i-schape; and, ȝif þey lyueþ so longe, þey schulle turne aȝen in to hir owne lond and in to hir schap at þe seuen zeres ende. Þanne schullen oper tweyne in her stede be in þe same manere outlawed and i-schape for oper seuen zere.<sup>5</sup> Þere is a lake in pis lond, ȝif a pole is i-piȝt<sup>6</sup> perynne, þat partie of þe pole<sup>7</sup> þat is in þe erthe schal turne in to iren; al þat is<sup>8</sup> in þe water schal torne in to stoon; and al þat is aboute þe water schal be tree and in his owne kynde. Also þere is a lake þat torneþ hasel into asche and asche into hasel, if it is i-doo<sup>9</sup> perynne. Also in Irlond beep pre samoun lepes; þere<sup>10</sup> samoun<sup>11</sup> lepeþ aȝenst a roche a longe speres lengþe. Also in Lagenia is a ponde; þere is Seynt Colman<sup>12</sup>

TREVISA.

the region off Ossirience, a man and a woman be constreynede to indue an other forme in the ende of vii. yere from that costes,<sup>13</sup> thro the preier of an holy abbote, whiche induede with the forme of a wulfe the space of vij. yere complete, if they be in lyve thei returne in to theire propre nature, other tweyne subrogate in to the places of theyme in lyke wyse. Also there is a water in that cuntre, in to whom if a staffe or a thyng of a tree be put by a certeyne tyme, the parte of that tre beenge in the erthe is yrne, that parte in the water is as the substaunce of a ston, that parte above the<sup>14</sup> water dothe remayne in that forme as when it was putte ynne. Also there is a lake in that cuntre, in to whom if thou putte a rodde of an haselle tre hit is turnede in to an asche, and in contrary wyse. Also there be in Yrlonde iij. weres, whiche be in latitude of the hiȝhte of a spere, ageyne a hille ouer whom salmones wyll passe pro a sprentenge. Also there is a water in Legennia, where [be] the bryddes of Seynte

MS. HARL.

2261.

<sup>1</sup> So *a.*, Cx.; *Assiriens*, MS.<sup>2</sup> *of an*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *must*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *exyled and forshappen in to lykenes of wolues, and abyde oute seuen yere*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> The sentence is thus recast by Cx.: *And at thende of seuen yere, yf they lyue, they come home agayn and take agayn theyr owne shappe; and then shal other tweyne goo forth in theyr stede, and so [be?] forshapen for other seuen yere.*<sup>6</sup> *pight*, *a.*, Cx., who adds *and stycked*.<sup>7</sup> *shaft or pool*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *and that part that abydeþ*, Cx., who has other slight variations.<sup>9</sup> *it be don*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *there as*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *samouns*, *a.*<sup>12</sup> *Coloman*, *a.*<sup>13</sup> So Harl. MS., but the sentence is more or less corrupt.<sup>14</sup> *that*, MS.

Sancti Colemanni,<sup>1</sup> scilicet cercellæ<sup>2</sup> manibus hominum assuetæ; quibus, si injuria fiat, aves non redeunt, et aquæ ibidem amarescunt, et foetent; et injuriator non evadet<sup>3</sup> vindictam, nisi condigne<sup>4</sup> satisfaciatur.<sup>5</sup> *Ranulphus.*<sup>6</sup> Circa purgatorium Patricii est notandum, quod Sanctus Patricius secundus, qui fuit<sup>7</sup> abbas et non episcopus, dum in Hibernia prædicaret, studuit animos hominum illorum<sup>8</sup> bestiales terrore tormentorū infernalium a malo revocare, et gaudiorum Paradisi promissione ad bonum confirmare. Illi autem dixerunt se nolle converti, nisi aliquis eorum<sup>9</sup> tormenta illa et gaudia posset<sup>10</sup> aliquo modo in hac vita experiri. Quamobrem Patricio super hoc oranti apparuit Jesus Christus dans textum evangelii

De Purgatorio S. Patricii.

<sup>1</sup> *Colomanni*, A.B.

<sup>2</sup> *cercellæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *evadit*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *digne*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *condigna satisfactio subsequatur*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *Ran. . . intendit* (end of chapter)] om. C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *fuit*] om. E.

<sup>8</sup> *illorum hominum*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *illorum*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *possit*, B.

his briddes; [pe briddes]<sup>1</sup> beep i-cleped cercelles, and comeþ homeliche to manis honde; but ȝif me doop hem harme,<sup>2</sup> pey goop away and comeþ nouȝt aȝen, but<sup>3</sup> the water pere schal wexe bitter and stynke; and he pat dede pe wrong schal nouȝt asterte wip oute wreche and meschief, but pei doo ful<sup>4</sup> amendes. R.<sup>5</sup> Touchynge<sup>6</sup> Patrik his purgatorie take hede pat<sup>7</sup> pe secounde Seynt Patrik, pat was abbot and nouȝt bisshop, whyle he preched in Irlond studied wel faste besily<sup>8</sup> for to torne pilke wicked men, pat leuede as bestes, out of here yuel lyf for drede of pe peynes of helle, and for to conferme hem in good lyf by hope of pe grete blisse of heuene; and pey seide pat pey wolde nouȝt torne, but some of hem myȝte knowe somwhat of pe grete peynes and pe blisse, pat he spak of, whyle pey were here on lyue.<sup>9</sup> Þanne Seynt Patrik preied to God alle myȝty perfore; and oure Lord Iesus Crist apperede to Patrik, and took hym a staf,<sup>10</sup> and pe text of

TREVISA.

Colomanne, whiche he callede cercelle, wonte to the hondes of men: if iniury be doen to those bryddes, they comme not ageyne; and also the waters per wexe bytter and make an ylle savour; and the doer of the iniury schalle not escape vengeance, vn tille that he have doen dewe satisfaccion. Also hit is to be attendede abowte the purgatory of Seynte Patrik, that Seynte Patrik the secunde, whiche was an abbot and not a byschoppe, when he prechede in Yrlonde, studiede to calle ageyne and brynge to the weye of sawle healethe the sawles of the bestialle peple in that cuntre from the peyne of helle, and to confirme the myndes of theyme in goodenesse thro the promission of the ioyes of paradise. The men of that cuntre seide they wolde not be conuertede, but if somme of theym myȝhte haue experience in this lyfe in a parte of the ioyes of paradise and of the peynes of helle: wherefore Seynte Patrike makege his preyers for that cause, oure Lorde Iesus Criste apperede to hym, ȝiffenge to hym a texte of the gospelle

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> Added from a. and Cx. (the latter has *the birdes*.)

<sup>2</sup> *ȝf men do hem wrong or harme*, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> *and*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *ful* om. Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Reference omitted in a.

<sup>6</sup> *As touching*, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *ȝe shal vnderstande that*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *besy, a.; labored and studied for to torne*, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> Cx. has some omissions (and slight variations) in the previous sentence.

<sup>10</sup> The remainder of the sentence omitted in Cx., who has *staf and ladde*.

et baculum unum, quæ adhuc manent in patria<sup>1</sup> apud summum archiepiscopum. Eduxit ergo<sup>2</sup> Dominus Patricium in desertum locum, ubi fossam unam<sup>3</sup> rotundam intrinsecus obscuram ei ostendit dicens: Quod si veraciter quis pœnitens<sup>4</sup> per diem et noctem in illa fossa manserit, et fide constans per illam transierit, videbit tormenta malorum et gaudia beatorum.<sup>5</sup> Ad hæc Christo disparente, Patricius construxit ibidem ecclesiam, canonicos regulares instituens;<sup>6</sup> fossam autem<sup>7</sup> illam, quæ modo<sup>8</sup> in cœmeterio<sup>9</sup> est ad orientalem ecclesiæ frontem, muro circumcinxit; januam obseravit, ne quis temere sine licentia episcopi et loci prioris ingrederetur. Multi quippe tempore illius Patricii ingressi sunt et regressi, narrantes pœnas et gaudia quæ viderant, quæ et<sup>10</sup> literis ibidem demandantur.<sup>11</sup> Qua occasione multi tunc ad fidem convertebantur. Multi quoque intraverunt, qui nusquam redierunt. Sed et<sup>12</sup> diebus Stephani regis An-

<sup>1</sup> patria illa, A.

<sup>2</sup> igitur, A.

<sup>3</sup> unam] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> pœnitens aliquis, B.

<sup>5</sup> bonorum, Gale.

<sup>6</sup> constituens, B.

<sup>7</sup> fossamque, omitting autem, B.

<sup>8</sup> modo] om. B.

<sup>9</sup> cimiterio, MSS.

<sup>10</sup> et quæ in, A.

<sup>11</sup> literis . . . demandantur] Space left for the words in B.

<sup>12</sup> et] om. B. ; in, Gale.



þe gospel þat beep in þe contray in þe erchebisshops ward.<sup>1</sup> Þanne oure Lorde ladde Patrik in to a wilde place, and schewed hym þere a round pitte þat was derke wip ynne, and seide: ȝif a man were verray repentaunt and stable of byleue, and went in to þis pitte, and waked<sup>2</sup> þere inne a day and a nyȝt, he schulde see þe sorwes and þe peynes of euil men and þe ioie and þe blisse of goode men; þan Crist vanysched out of Patrik his siȝt.<sup>3</sup> And Patrik rered þere a chirche, and dede þere<sup>4</sup> chanouns regular, and closed þe pitte aboute wip a wal; and<sup>5</sup> is now in the chirche ȝerde<sup>6</sup> riȝt at þe est ende of þe chirche, and is fast i-loke<sup>7</sup> wip a strong ȝate.<sup>8</sup> For no man schulde niseliche wende yn<sup>9</sup> wip oute leue of þe bisshop and<sup>10</sup> of þe priour of þe place. Meny men went yn þere and come<sup>11</sup> out aȝen in Patrik his tyme, and tolde of peynes and ioie þat þey hadde i-seie, and meruayles þat þey sey beep ȝit þere i-wrete.<sup>12</sup> And by cause þerof meny men torned and were conuerted to riȝt byleue. Also meny men wente yn, and come neuer aȝen. In kyng Steuene his tyme, kyng of

TREvisa.

and a staffe, whiche remayne ȝitte in the cuntre with the archibischope. After that oure Lorde ledde furthe Seynte Patrike in to a deserte place, where he schewede to hym a lytulle rownde dyche, obscure and derke with ynne, seyenge that if a man, beenge truly penitente, abyde in hit by a day and a nyȝhte, he schalle see the tormentes of ylle men and also the ioies of blessed men. Then Criste euaneschede away, and Seynte Patrike made a chirche there, ordeynenge in lit chanones regular, compassenge abowte that dyche with a walle, whiche is now in the chirche yerde at the este parte of the chirche, and kepenge hit with grete diligence vnder a locke, leste eny man scholde entre in to hit in foly, withowte licence of the byschoppe and of the prior of that place. Mony men entrede in to þat place in the tyme of Seynte Patrik, whiche commenge ageyne tellede of the peynes and of the ioies that thei hade seen; pro whiche thyng mony men were conuertede to the feithe of Criste: and mony men entrenge in to that place come neuer ageyne. But in the daies of Steven kyng of Englonde,

MS. HARL.  
2261.Of þe purgatory of Seynte Patryk.  
Seynte Patrik was a chanon.<sup>1</sup> So *a.*; name, MS.<sup>2</sup> *walked*, *a.* and Cx.<sup>3</sup> Cx. has a few trivial variations in the previous sentence, and also in the following.<sup>4</sup> and put therein, Cx.<sup>5</sup> The syntax requires *whiche*, or the addition of a nominative.<sup>6</sup> *hiȝe*, *a.*<sup>7</sup> *shytte*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *dore*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *goo in nycely*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *or*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *cam*, Cx., and so below.<sup>12</sup> *sawe ben there yet wreton*, Cx.

gliæ quidam miles, nomine Owynus, intravit, et rediens mansit in negotiis monasterii Ludensis ordinis Cisterciensis quoad vixit,<sup>1</sup> narrans quæ viderat. Locus autem vocatur purgatorium Patricii, ecclesia vocatur<sup>2</sup> Reglis.<sup>3</sup> Nulli imponitur ut locum intret, sed potius in principio<sup>4</sup> sibi dissuadetur ingressus; quod si omnino intrare voluerit, accedet primo ad episcopum loci, qui primus<sup>5</sup> ingressum dissuadet, sed perseveranti in tali proposito literas tradit ut loci priorem adeat, qui similiter ingressum dissuadet, hortando ut aliam poenitentiam assumat. Quod si perseverat, introducit eum in ecclesiam, ut quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus indulgeat, post quos hominem communione munitum perducit cum processione et letania<sup>6</sup> usque ad ostium purgatorii, ubi etiam iterum<sup>7</sup> dissuadet

<sup>1</sup> *quoad vixit*] om. B.; *quo adduxit*, A. (without sense); *quo advixit*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *vocatur*] om. A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *regularis*, Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *primo*, Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *primo*, A.

<sup>6</sup> *latania*, B. The form *letania* (for *litania*) is admitted by Du Cange, and so has been allowed to stand.

<sup>7</sup> *iterum*] om. B.

Engelond, a knyȝt þat heet Owen went into Patryk his purgatorie, and come aȝen, and dwelled al his lyf tyme afterward in þe nedes of þe abbay of Ludensis þat is of þe ordre of Cisterciens,<sup>1</sup> and tolde meny men of wondres þat he hadde i-seie in Patrykes purgatorie.<sup>2</sup> And the chirche hatte Reglis. No man is enioyned forto wende<sup>3</sup> in to þat purgatorie, bote i-counseilled wel faste þat þey<sup>4</sup> schulde not come pere; but ȝif he wil nedes entre, he schal first be i-sent to þe bisshop of þe place, and he schalle counsaile hym for to leue; and ȝif þe man is stable, and wil nede take þe wey, þe bisshop schal sende hym wip lettres to þe priour of þe place; and þe priour schal counseille hym to leue. And he wil<sup>5</sup> take þat wey, he schal be i-brouȝt into þe chirche, and pere he schal be in prayers and in fastynge fiftene dayes.<sup>6</sup> [And after fiftene dayes]<sup>7</sup> he schal be housled and i-lad to þe dore of purgatorie wip processoun and letanye; and pere<sup>8</sup> he schal

TREVISIA.

a knyȝhte, Owyne by name, entrede in to hit, whiche MS. HARL. 2261.  
returnenge ageyne was made a monke of the ordre Cisterciens, in the monastery of Ludense, whiche taryede þer after alle the tyme of his lyfe, tellenge thynges that he hade seene: that place is callede the purgatory of Seynte Patrikke. Truly eny man is not movede to entre in to that place, but he hathe counselle in the begynnenge that he scholde not entre in to hit. But and if a man wille entre into hit, in eny wyse he schalle goe firste to the bischoppe of that place, whiche ȝiffethe counselle to hym that he scholde not entre in to hit; but and if he remayne in that purpose, he takethe to hym a letter to goe to the prior of that place, whiche counsellethe hym also that he schalle not entre in to hit, movenge hym to take other penaunce. And if the man be perseuerante in his purpose, and wylle to entre in to that place, the prior bryngethe hym in to the chirche that he may applye hym selfe in fastenges and preiers by xv. daies. After that the prior, causenge the man to receyve the blessedde sacramente, bryngethe hym furthe with procession, the conuente syngenge the letany, vn to the durre of the purgatory, where the prior of that

<sup>1</sup> So a.; *Cistirensis*, MS.; *Ciste*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Cx. has a few very slight variations.

<sup>3</sup> *goo*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *he*, Cx., which is better.

<sup>5</sup> *he wil*] om. a.

<sup>6</sup> The two previous sentences are almost entirely recast in Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a. and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> *yet*, Cx., who has also slight variations elsewhere in the remainder of the chapter.

ingressum. Sed si perseverat, ostium ei<sup>1</sup> cum benedictione aperit, et post ingressum ostium consignat usque in diem alterum mane. Quo adveniente, prior,<sup>2</sup> si hominem regressum repererit, cum processione in ecclesiam deducit,<sup>3</sup> ubi aliis quindecim diebus jejuniis et orationibus intendit.

## CAP. XXXVI.

*De Sanctorum Praeconiis.*<sup>4</sup>

NOTAT hic Giraldus, quod<sup>5</sup> sicut istius nationis homines hac in vita<sup>6</sup> sunt prae aliis gentibus impatientes et praecipites ad vindictam, sic sancti hujus terrae<sup>7</sup> prae caeteris regionibus vindicis<sup>8</sup> animi esse noscuntur. Clerus hujus terrae castitate pollet, orationi vacat, sed et<sup>9</sup> abstinentiae per diem artificialem<sup>10</sup> indulget, noctem tamen<sup>11</sup> assidua potatione polluit. Ita ut pro miraculo

<sup>1</sup> ei] om. B.<sup>2</sup> prior] om. B.<sup>3</sup> reducit, A.<sup>4</sup> Title wanting in A.<sup>5</sup> Notat . . . quod] om. C.D.<sup>6</sup> in hac vita, B.<sup>7</sup> terrae istius, C.D.<sup>8</sup> vindicis] Space originally blank in B., filled in by a later hand.<sup>9</sup> et] om. A.<sup>10</sup> naturalem, C. (not D.)<sup>11</sup> autem, B.

be counseilled to leue þat weye. Þan yf he is stedfast and stable, þe dore schal be i-opened, and he schal be i-blessed, <sup>1</sup>and he schal blesse hymself also, and goo yn a Goddes half, <sup>2</sup>and holde forþ his wey. Þan þe dore schal be faste i-loke <sup>3</sup>for to anoper day. <sup>4</sup>Whan þe day is come, þe priour comeþ to þe dore erliche and by tyme, and openeþ the dore; and ȝif þe man is i-come, he ledeþ hym in to þe chirche wip processoun; and pere he schal be fiftene dayes in prayers and in fastinge.

TREVISIA.

*De Præconiis Sanctorum.*

*Capitulum tricesimum sextum.*

Here Girald makeþ mencion, <sup>5</sup>þat as men of þis nacioun beep more angry þan oper men and more hasty for to take wreche, while þey beep on lyue; <sup>6</sup>so seyntes and halowes of þis lond beep more wrecheþul þan seyntes of oper londes. Clerkes of þis lond beep chast, and biddeþ meny bedes, <sup>7</sup>and doop greet abstinence a day, and drynkeþ al nyȝt; so þat

place movethe hym ageyne that he scholde not entere in to hit. But and if the man be perseuerante in that purpose, he openethe the durre with a benediccion, makeþ the durre sure after hym, goethe ageyne in to the place, vn tulle the morowe followenge, whiche commenge to that place with the conuente, and fyndenge the man comen ageyne, bryngethe hym in to the chyrche with procession, where he taryethe afterwarde by xv. dayes in fastenges and preiers.

MS. HARL.  
2261.

*Of the Preconyes of Holy Men and Seyntes of that  
Londe. Capitulum tricesimum sextum.*

Giraldus rehersethe and seythe that like as men of that nacion be more impaciente afore other folke in this lyfe, and prompte to take vengeance, soe in like wise the seyntes of that cuntre be knownen to be of a moore vengeance then seyntes of other regiones. The clergy of that londe schynethe in chastite, ȝiffenge attendaunce to preier and to abstinence by the day artificialle, spendenge the nyȝhtes in surfettes and in ryette. Soe that hit may

<sup>1</sup> The clause following omitted in Cx.

<sup>2</sup> on Goddes name, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> shette, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> til the next day, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> mynde, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> alyue, a. A frequent variation.

<sup>7</sup> sayen many prayers, Cx.



ducatur;<sup>1</sup> quod<sup>2</sup> ubi vina dominantur, Venus non regnet.<sup>3</sup> Et sicut inter eos mali sunt pessimi, ita boni (quamvis pauci) sunt optimi. Prælati locorum in corripiendis<sup>4</sup> excessibus desides, contemplationi et otio, non prædicationi vacantes. Unde fit ut omnes sancti terræ istius<sup>5</sup> confessores sint,<sup>6</sup> et nullus martyr. Nec mirum, cum omnes pene hujus terræ prælati de monasteriis in clerum electi, quæ monachi sunt complent; quæ<sup>7</sup> clerici sunt vel prælati, negligunt. Unde, cum semel Cassiliensi episcopo objectum fuisset,<sup>8</sup> quomodo tot sancti possent esse in illa<sup>9</sup> terra ubi nullus martyr, ex quo tam feroces sunt subditi et desides prælati,<sup>10</sup> respondit ille<sup>11</sup> satis oblique: "Verum est," inquit, "quod gens nostra satis ferox<sup>12</sup> est, sed ad "seipsam; nunquam tamen in Dei ministros manum

<sup>1</sup> *dicatur*, A. (apparently) C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *ut*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *regnat*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *corrigendis*, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *illius*, B.; *hujus*, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *sunt*, B.D.

<sup>7</sup> *vero* added in C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *esset objectum*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *illa*] om. C.D.

<sup>10</sup> *ex . . . prælati*] et tam torpentes prælati circa curam subditorum fuissent, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *ille*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *fera*, C.D.

it is accounted for a myracle pat lecherie reigneþ nouȝt pere, as wyn reigneþ. And as moche schrewes among hem beþ of alle schrewes worste,<sup>1</sup> so good men among hem, (peiȝ pere beþ<sup>2</sup> but fewe,) beþ goode at þe best. Prelates of pat contray beþ wel<sup>3</sup> slowe in correccioun of trespas, and besy in contemplacioun, and nowt<sup>4</sup> of<sup>5</sup> prechyng of Goddes word. Perfore it is pat alle þe seyntes of pat lond beþ confessoures, and non martir among hem; and no wonder, for wel nyh<sup>6</sup> alle þe prelates of pat contrey beþ i-chose out of abbayes in to þe clergie, and doop as monkes schulde. What clerkes and prelates schulde doo is to hem vnknewe; perfore whan it was<sup>7</sup> i-putte aȝenst þe bisshop of Casille, how it myȝte be pat so meny seyntes beþ in Ir-lond and neuere a martir among ham,<sup>8</sup> sippe<sup>9</sup> pat þe men beþ so schrewed and so angry, and þe prelates so recheles and so slowh<sup>10</sup> in correcciouns of trespas, þe bisshop answerde frowardliche<sup>11</sup> i-now, and seide: "Oure men beþ schrewed and angry inow to<sup>12</sup> hem self, but in Goddes ser-

TREVISA.

—

be seide as a myracle lechery not to reigne in those places where wynes be moche vsede. And lyke as ylle men amonge theyme be moste wickede, soe in lyke wyse goode men amonge theyme be moste holy, thawȝhe þer be but fewe goode men. The prelates of places in that cuntre be slawthefulle to do correccion for excesses, ȝiffenge attendaunce to ydlenesse, and not to predicaciones. Where of hit is causede that alle the seyntes of that cuntre be confessorres, and noo martir. But meruayle defendethe lytelle þer of; for allemoste alle men exaltede in to grete dignites there be taken from monasteryes, whiche fullefiller raper the office of a clerke then the office of a prelate. Wherefore an obieccion was made in a tyme to the bischoppe Cassielense, how so meny seyntes myȝhte be in that londe, and alle confessorres and noo martir, sythe the subiectes of that londe be so cruelle, and prelates there be soe slawe in correccion. That byschoppe answerede and seide, "Trawthe is that the peple of that cuntre be cruelle amonge theyme selfe, but not to the seruauntes of God, sythe thei

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 54. b.

<sup>1</sup> And they that ben euyl of them ben worst of all other, so, &c., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> be, a., Cx. (the latter has other slight variations.)

<sup>3</sup> ful, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> nouȝt, a.

<sup>5</sup> in, a.

<sup>6</sup> wel nyh] om. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> was] So a. and Cx.; is, MS.

<sup>8</sup> MS. and a. (not Cx.) badly add and no wonder.

<sup>9</sup> sep, a.

<sup>10</sup> slowe, a.

<sup>11</sup> So a. and Cx. (frowardly); liche, MS.

<sup>12</sup> So Cx.; and to, MS. and a.

“ mittere voluit,<sup>1</sup> cum eos summe colat;<sup>2</sup> verum<sup>3</sup>  
 “ modo<sup>4</sup> venit in hanc terram gens Angligena,<sup>5</sup> quæ  
 “ martyres facere et<sup>6</sup> novit et consuevit.” *Ranulphus*.  
 Hoc autem dixerat episcopus ille, quia tunc temporis  
 venerat Rex Henricus Secundus ad terram illam re-  
 center post martyrizationem Beati Thomæ Cantua-  
 riensis. *Giraldus*.<sup>7</sup> In hac etiam terra, sicut<sup>8</sup> in  
 Wallia et in Scotia, sunt campanæ,<sup>9</sup> baculi recurvi,<sup>10</sup>  
 et alia hujusmodi pro reliquiis in magna veneratione<sup>11</sup>  
 habita, ita ut sacramenta super hæc longe magis quam  
 super evangelia præstare vereantur,<sup>12</sup> inter quæ præ-  
 cipuus videtur baculus Jesu<sup>13</sup> apud Dublinniam; per  
 quem, ut aiunt, <sup>14</sup> Patricius<sup>15</sup> primus<sup>16</sup> vermes ejecit.<sup>17</sup>  
*Augustinus*<sup>18</sup> de Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, ca-  
 pitulo septimo. Si quærat, quomodo varia genera  
 animalium, quæ ex commixtione procreantur, etiam post  
 diluvium in insulis esse potuerunt, creditur,<sup>19</sup> aut  
 ad insulas transisse natando, sed tunc ad proximas;<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> voluerunt, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> So B.; coluit, A.; colant, E.

Transposed in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> sed, B.

<sup>4</sup> nunc in hoc regnum venit, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> Anglicana, A.B., Gale.

<sup>6</sup> et] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *Ranulphus*. . . *Giraldus*] om. C.D.

<sup>8</sup> et added in C.D.

<sup>9</sup> et added in C.D.

<sup>10</sup> libri, B.

<sup>11</sup> in magna veneratione] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> reverentur, Gale.

<sup>13</sup> habitus, B.

<sup>14</sup> Sanctus added in C.D.

<sup>15</sup> Patricius] om. B.

<sup>16</sup> primus] om. C.D.

<sup>17</sup> expulit, B.; de terra venenosos, added in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *Augustinus* . . . viventem (end of cap.)] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> credere, B.

<sup>20</sup> sed . . . proximas] om. B.

“uauntes pey leye<sup>1</sup> neuere no<sup>2</sup> hond, but pey doop hem greet  
 “reuerence and worschippe; but Engliche men comeþ in to  
 “pis lond, pat konneþ make martires and were i-woned to vse  
 “pat craft.”<sup>3</sup> Þe bisshop seide so, bycause pat kyng Henry<sup>4</sup>  
 þe secounde was poo<sup>5</sup> i-come in to Irlond freschliche after  
 þe martirdom of Seint Thomas of Caunturbury. *Giraldus*.  
 In pis lond, in Wales, and in Scotlond, bee billes<sup>6</sup> and staues  
 wip croked hedes, and opere such þinges for relikes, in  
 grete reuerence and worschippe; so pat men of pis lond  
 dredeþ more forto swere<sup>7</sup> vpon eny of pilke belles and  
 gold battes<sup>8</sup> þan vpon þe gospel. Þe chief of alle suche  
 relikes is i-holde<sup>9</sup> Iesus his staf [pat is at Develynge; wip  
 þe whiche staf]<sup>10</sup> pey seip pat þe first Patrik droof þe  
 wormes out of Irlond. *Augustinus de Ciuitate Dei, libro*  
*sexto decimo, capitulo septimo*. 3if me asep, how it may  
 be pat dyuerse manere bestes and of dyuerse kynde, pat  
 beep kyndeliche i-gete by twene male and female, come and  
 beep in ilondes after Noes flood, me troweþ<sup>11</sup> pat suche  
 bestes swam in to ilondes aboute, and firste to þe nexte,

TREVISA.

“worschippe and luffe theyme moste: but now the peple of  
 “Englonde is comen in to oure cuntre, whiche haue had  
 “knowledge and exercise to make martires.” R. That  
 byschoppe seyde in that wyse, for kyng Henry the secunde  
 was comen that tyme in to the costes of Yrlonde newly  
 after the martirizacion of Seynte Thomas of Canterbury.  
*Giraldus*. Belles and crokede staves, and suche other  
 thynges, be hade in that londe in grete veneracion, as thei  
 vse in Wales and in Scotlande, in so moche that thei  
 drede more to swere by theym then to swere on the  
 masse booke. Amonge whom the staffe of Ihesus is as a  
 thyng principalle, beenge at Dublynne, by whom thei say  
 Seynte Paterike the firste to haue expellede serpentes and  
 wormes owte from that londe with that staffe. *Aug. de Civ.,*  
*libro 16, ca<sup>o</sup>. 7*. And if hit be inquirede how diuerse kyndes  
 of bestes whiche be procreate of commixtion myzhte be  
 in yles after the grete floode of Noe, hit is to be 3iffen  
 to credence that auther thei come thider by swymmenge,

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> leieþ, a.<sup>2</sup> no] om. a. and Cx.<sup>3</sup> A few trifling variations in Cx.<sup>4</sup> Harry, Cx.<sup>5</sup> þoy; i-come, a.; tho newe comen,  
Cx.<sup>6</sup> beep bellis, a.<sup>7</sup> swerie, a.<sup>8</sup> staues, Cx.<sup>9</sup> in hold, MS.; y holde, Cx.<sup>10</sup> Words in brackets added from  
a. and Cx.<sup>11</sup> So MS. and a.; men supposen,  
Cx.

aut per homines navigantes studio venandi adductas;  
aut Dei jussu et opere angelorum allata; aut ex terra  
exorta secundum primam originem, quando Deus dixerat: Producat terra animam viventem.

## CAP. XXXVII.

*De Albania sive*<sup>1</sup> *Scotia*.<sup>2</sup>

VULGATUM est quod<sup>3</sup> Scotia, prout hodie nuncupatur, promuntorium et<sup>4</sup> borealis pars Britanniae majoris, <sup>5</sup>marinis brachiis ab ea separata versus austrum;<sup>6</sup> in reliquis lateribus<sup>7</sup> undique cineta<sup>8</sup> mari. Hæc<sup>9</sup> quondam vocabatur Albania ab Albanacto, regis<sup>10</sup> Bruti filio, eam primum<sup>11</sup> inhabitante; sive ab Albania provincia, quæ est pars Scythiæ, vicina Amazonibus; unde et Scoti quasi Sciti a Scythia,<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Albania sive*] om. A.C.D.<sup>2</sup> *De Insula Scotia*, B.<sup>3</sup> *Vulgatum est quod*] om. C.D.<sup>4</sup> *quod . . . et*] Space left in B.<sup>5</sup> *agua*] added in C.D.<sup>6</sup> *in australi parte separatur*, C.D.<sup>7</sup> *partibus*, C.D.<sup>8</sup> *clausa*, C.D.<sup>9</sup> *Hæc*] om. C.D.; *Hoc*, E.<sup>10</sup> *Regis*] om. C.D.<sup>11</sup> *primo*, B.C.D.<sup>12</sup> *Scicia*, AB.; *Sithia*, C.D.;*Shicia*, E. Similar barbarisms in the MSS. of the versions.



and so forþ in to opere ; opere<sup>1</sup> men seillinge into opere TREVISIA.  
 londes<sup>2</sup> brouzte wip hem suche bestes for loue of huntinge ;  
 oper aungelles at God Almyzties heste<sup>3</sup> brouzte suche  
 bestes in to ilondes aboute ; oper þe erþe brouzt hem forþ  
 ferst, and fulfilled þoo Goddes heste, þat heet<sup>4</sup> þe erþe  
 brynge<sup>5</sup> forþ gras and quyk bestes.

*De Scotia.*

*Capitulum tricesimum septimum.*

Hit is comoun<sup>6</sup> sawe þat [þe]<sup>7</sup> contray þat now hatte  
 Scotlond is an out strecching, and is þe<sup>8</sup> norþ partie of þe  
 more Bretayne, and is departed in þe south side from  
 Bretayne wip armes of þe see, and in þe oper sides al aboute  
 byclipped wip þe see. Þis lond heet somtyme Albania, and  
 had<sup>9</sup> þat name of Albanactus, þat was kyng Brutis<sup>10</sup> sone,  
 (for Albanactus woned first perynne,) or of<sup>11</sup> þe prouince  
 Albania, þat is a contray of Scythia and nyȝ to Amazonia ;  
 þerfore Scottes beep i-cleped as it were Seites, for he<sup>12</sup>

other thei were brouȝhte thyder for cause of disporte by MS. HARL.  
 men saylunge in schippes, other by the precepte of Alle- 2261.  
 myȝhty God, other elles by the helpe of angelles, or elles  
 thei come of the erthe after the firste originalle, when  
 God seyde commandenge the erthe to brynge furthe euery  
 thyng hauenge the spirite of lyfe.

*Of that Londe callede Scottelande. Capitulum tricesimum septimum.*

Hit is made commune that the londe whiche is callede  
 nowwe Scotlande is the northe parte of the moore Briteyne,  
 departede from hit by armes of the see towarde the  
 sowthe, in other partes compassede with the see. That  
 londe was callede somme tyme Albania, of Albanactus,  
 the son of Brute, the kynge inhabitenge hit firste ; other  
 elles of Albannia, whiche is a parte of a londe callede  
 Scythia, nye to þe Amazones. Wherefore Scoti, that be  
 callede Scottes, be seide to take their begynnenge of

<sup>1</sup> or els, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> in to ylondes, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> comaundement, Cx., and so be-  
 low.

<sup>4</sup> commaunded, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> to brynge, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> a comyn, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> Added from a, and Cx.

<sup>8</sup> and is þe] of the, Cx. (his own  
 alteration.)

<sup>9</sup> hath, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> Brutus, Cx.

<sup>11</sup> So Cx. ; þerof, MS. and a.

<sup>12</sup> So MS. and a. ; they, Cx. (in the  
 same sense.)

originem duxerunt.<sup>1</sup> Postmodum dicta est Pictavia  
 a<sup>2</sup> Pictis ibidem regnantibus per spatium mille septua-  
 ginta annorum, vel secundum quosdam<sup>3</sup> per<sup>4</sup> mille tre-  
 centos sexaginta annos; et<sup>5</sup> tandem dicta est Hibernia.  
*Giraldus in Topographia.*<sup>6</sup> Tum propter affinitatem  
 contractam cum Hiberniensibus, de quibus uxores ac-  
 ceperant,<sup>7</sup> quod tam cultu quam lingua, tam<sup>8</sup> armis  
 quam moribus patenter ostenditur,<sup>9</sup> tum propter ha-  
 bitationem<sup>10</sup> Hiberniensium. *Beda, libro primo.* Qui  
 Hibernienses,<sup>11</sup> duce Reuda<sup>12</sup> de Hibernia, quæ proprie  
 Scotorum patria est, progressi,<sup>13</sup> ferro vel amicitia juxta  
 Pictos<sup>14</sup> sedes sibi<sup>15</sup> ad septentrionalem partem<sup>16</sup> sta-  
 tuerunt.<sup>17</sup> *Giraldus.* Nunc autem corrupte vocatur  
 Scotia a Scotis de Hibernia venientibus et in ea reg-  
 nantibus per spatium trecentorum quindecim annorum,  
 usque scilicet<sup>18</sup> ad regnum Willelmi<sup>19</sup> Rufi fratris  
 Malcolmi.<sup>20</sup> *Ranulphus.* Quod autem hæc Scotia sæ-  
 pius vocetur Hibernia patet per Bedam, libro secundo,<sup>21</sup>  
 capitulo quarto,<sup>22</sup> ubi dicit<sup>23</sup> sic:<sup>24</sup> Laurentius archi-

<sup>1</sup> *traxerunt*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *Picto sive a*, added in C. (not D.)

<sup>3</sup> *mille . . . quosdam*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *per* added from C.D.

<sup>5</sup> *et*] om. C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *in Topographia*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *acceperunt*, C.D.

<sup>8</sup> *quam*, A.

<sup>9</sup> So C.D.; *ostendit*, A.E., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *inhabitationem*, B.C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Hibernienses*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Reuda*] Space in B.; *Rheuda*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *progressus*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *juxta Pictos*] om. E.

<sup>15</sup> *quas* added in C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *Pictorum hactenus habent*, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> E. *Sicut infra ultimo capitulo de Britannia plenius dicetur*, added in C.D.

<sup>18</sup> *scilicet*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *Wilti* or *Willi*, MSS.; *Wilhelmi*, Gale. His coins have, in general, *Willelmus*, (mostly written *Pillelmus*); his great seal has *Wilielmus*. (Ruding, i. 162. Third ed.) Higden, however, should have written *Leonis* for *Rufi*.

<sup>20</sup> *Malcolini*, B., Gale.

<sup>21</sup> *j.*, B.C.D., wrongly.

<sup>22</sup> 4, C.D., correctly; x., A.B.E.

<sup>23</sup> *ait*, C.D.

<sup>24</sup> *sic*] om. C.D.

com out of Scythia. Afterward pat lond heet<sup>1</sup> Pictaunia; for pe Pictes reignede perynne a pousand 3ere, pre score, and ten; oper, as som men telleþ, a þowsand 3ere, pre hundred, and sixty; and at pe laste heet<sup>1</sup> Hibernia, as Irlond heet.<sup>2</sup> *Giraldus in Topographia.*<sup>3</sup> For meny skiles oon skile is for affinite and alye, þat was by twene hem and Irische men; for þey toke wyfes of Irlond, and þat is opounliche i-sene in her byleue, in clopinges, in langage, in<sup>4</sup> speche, in wepene, and in maneres. A noper skile is for Irische men woned pere somtyme. *Beda, libro primo.* Out of Irlond, þat is pe propre contray of Scottes, come Irische men with here duk þat heet Reuda,<sup>5</sup> and wip loue oper wip strengþe made hem cheef cees and citees besides pe Pictes in pe norþside. *Giraldus.* Now pe lond is schortliche i-cleped Scotland of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede pere inne pre hondred 3ere and fiftene anoon to Reed<sup>6</sup> William his tyme, þat was Malcolms<sup>7</sup> broþer. R. Meny evidencis we haueþ þat pis Scotland is ofte i-cleped and hatte Hibernia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. Þerfore<sup>8</sup> *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo decimo, seip þat Laurence,*

TREVISA.

Scythia. That londe was callede afterwarde Pictaunia, of Pictes reignenge there by the space of a m. lx. and x. yere, and after somme men a m. iij<sup>c</sup>. yere and iij<sup>xx</sup>., whiche was clepede Hibernia, and Yrlonde afterwarde. *Gir. in top.* Whiche thyng is schewede amonge theyme as welle in armes as in maneres, and also by theire langage, and what for the affinite contracte betwene men of Yrlonde and theyme, of whom the Scottes toke theire wyfes, and also for the inhabitation of men of Yrlonde dwellege in hit. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche men of Yrlonde goenge furthe with Reuda the gouernoure of theyme, from partes nye to Scotlande, takenge to theyme a place nye to the Pictes, taryede in the northe partes to theyme. *Giraldus.* That londe is callede now Scotlande, of Scottes commenge from Yrlonde, reignenge in hit by iij<sup>c</sup>. and xv. yere vn to the reigne of William Rufus,<sup>9</sup> brother to Macolmus. R. That theke<sup>10</sup> Scotlande be spoken of ofte tymes in the name of Yrlonde, hit is schewede by Bede in his secunde boke, the x<sup>th</sup>e chapitre, when he seithe that the arche-

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *het, a.* (twice.)<sup>2</sup> *hatte, a.*<sup>3</sup> So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Beda, MS.*<sup>4</sup> *and, a.*<sup>5</sup> *Reuda, Cx.* The MSS. both of the text and versions equally resemble this reading; but *Reuda* isdoubtless correct. See *Beda, lib. 1.*

c. 1. and Smith's note.

<sup>6</sup> *the rede, Cx.*<sup>7</sup> *Malcolms, MS.*<sup>8</sup> Sentence varied in *Cx.*<sup>9</sup> *Ruphus, Harl. MS.*<sup>10</sup> So *Harl. MS.*

episcopus Dorobernensis<sup>1</sup> Scotorum populis, qui Hiberniam<sup>2</sup> insulam Britanniae proximam incolunt, pastorem curam impendebat. Item Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo septimo: Clades mortalitatis Hiberniam insulam pari clade premebat.<sup>3</sup> Item, libro tertio, capitulo secundo: Porro gens Scotorum, quae<sup>4</sup> in australibus Hiberniae partibus morabantur. Item<sup>5</sup> libro quarto, capitulo tertio: Ubi dicunt<sup>6</sup> Ceddam adolescentem didicisse normam monasticam<sup>7</sup> in Hibernia. Item libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo secundo: Rex Northumbrorum Egfredus<sup>8</sup> vastavit Hiberniam.<sup>9</sup> Item libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo: Plurima pars Scotorum in Hibernia. Et ibi in<sup>10</sup> eodem capitulo vocat Hiberniam proprie dictam illam<sup>11</sup> insulam in occidente,<sup>12</sup> quae centum milliaribus ab omni Britannia<sup>13</sup> per mare separatur, et Scotiam vocat illam partem quae nunc Scotia dicitur, ubi dicit<sup>14</sup> quod Adamnan,<sup>15</sup> abbas insulae Hii,<sup>16</sup> navigavit Hiberniam,<sup>17</sup> ut doceret<sup>18</sup> Hibernicos legitimum pascha, ac tandem Scotiam rediit. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.*<sup>19</sup> Hujus Scotiae incolae dicuntur Scoti propria lingua, seu Picti<sup>20</sup> a picto corpore, quasi scissi,<sup>21</sup> eo quod aculeis ferreis cum atramento variarum figurarum stigmate antiquitus notabantur.<sup>22</sup> *Herodotus.*<sup>23</sup> Scoti sunt animo<sup>24</sup> leves, barbari satis et silvestres,

<sup>1</sup> *Dorobernia*, Gale; *Dorobernensis archiepiscopus*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Hibernia*, B., Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *Item . . . premebat*] om. B.

<sup>4</sup> *qui*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Idem*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *dicunt*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *monasticam*, B., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *Egfridus*, A.; *Elfridus*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *morabantur . . . Hiberniam*] om. E.

<sup>10</sup> *ibi in*] *itidem*, C.; *ibidem*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *illam scilicet*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *in occidente*] om. C.D.

<sup>13</sup> *Britannia latere*, C. (not D.)

<sup>14</sup> *dicitur*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Aminanus*, B.; *Aidaman*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *insulae Hii*] So E.D.G. (first

hand); huc, C.; hujus, A.B.G. (second hand), Gale, and the versions.

<sup>17</sup> *Hiberniam*] om. C.D.; *ibidem*, B.; *navigaret in Hiberniam*, A.

<sup>18</sup> *ubi docuit*, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> 9, C.D., correctly. See lib. ix. c. 2, § 103. Reference transposed in A.B. to quasi, badly.

<sup>20</sup> *seu Picti*] om. C.D.

<sup>21</sup> *scisti*, D.; *cisi*, A.E.; *Schyti*, Gale; *Schiti*, G.

<sup>22</sup> *antiquitus* (interlineated) *vocabantur*, A.

<sup>23</sup> *Erodocius*, B. The rest *Erodotos*, and so the versions.

<sup>24</sup> *Scoti sunt animo*] *Animo quidem*, C.D.

archebisshop of Donbarre,<sup>1</sup> was archebisshop of Scottes, pat woned in an ilond pat hatte Hibernia and is next to Bretayne. Also Beda, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo septimo, seip: Pestilens of moreyn bare doun Hibernia; also, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, seip pat pe Scottes, pat wonede in pe soup side of Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo tertio, he seip pat Chadde was a 3ongelyng, and lerned the rule of monkes in Hibernia. Also, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo secundo, Egifridus,<sup>2</sup> kyng of Northumberlond, destroyed Hibernia; also, libro quinto, capitulo quintodecimo: Pe moste deel of Scottes in Hibernia. And in pe same chapitre he clepeþ Hibernia propurliche i-nempned, pat west ilond pat is an hundred myle from euery Britayne, and departed wip pe see bitwene; and clepeþ Hibernia pat contre, pat now hatte Scotlond. Pere he telleþ, pat Adamnan, abbot of pis ilond, seilled to Hibernia for to teche Irische men pe laweful Esterday, and at pe laste com hoom<sup>3</sup> aȝen in to Scotlond. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro quartodecimo.* Men of pis Scotlond hatte Scottes in hir owne langage, and Pictes also; for somtyme here body was i-peynt in pis manere. Pey wolde somtyme wip scharpe egged tool picche<sup>4</sup> and kerue here owne bodies, and make peron dyuers figures and schappes, and peynte hym<sup>5</sup> wip ynke oper wip opir peynture and<sup>6</sup> colour. And for<sup>7</sup> pey were so i-peynt, pey were i-cleped Picti, pat is *i-peynt*. *Herodotus.*<sup>8</sup> Scottes beep lyȝt of herte, strange and wylde<sup>9</sup> i-now, but by mellynge<sup>10</sup> of

TREVISIA.

bisshoppe Dorobernense ȝafe cure pastoralle to the peple of Scottes, inhabitenge an yle nye to Briteyne, callede Yrlonde. Also in the thrydde booke, the secunde chapitre, the peple of Scottes, whiche inhabite and dwelle in the sowthe partes of Yrlonde. Also hit is seide in the v<sup>th</sup>e booke, the xv<sup>th</sup>e chapitre, that a grete parte of Scottes was in Irlonde, callenge in the same chapitre Yrlonde proprely that yle in the weste whiche is separate from alle Bryteyne by the see by a c. myles, and Scottelande, that parte whiche is callede now Scottelande, where he seithe that Amna an abbote of that yle sailede to Yrlonde that he myȝhte teche men of that cuntre to knowe the lawefulle tyme of Ester, after that returnenge at the laste to Scottelande. *Herodotus.* Scottes be liȝhte in sawle, cruelle and wylde; but now thei be amendede thro

MS. HARL.  
2261.

f. 55. b.

<sup>1</sup> Dunbar, Cx. Trevisa should have written *Canterbury*.

<sup>2</sup> Egfridus, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> hoom] om. Cx., with a few other trivial variations.

<sup>4</sup> pryche, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> or, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> hem, a.

<sup>7</sup> for] by cause, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> Giraldus, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; mylde, MS., a.

<sup>10</sup> medlynge, Cx.



sed admixtione cum Anglis<sup>1</sup> in parte emendantur. In hostes sævi,<sup>2</sup> servitutem summe<sup>3</sup> detestantur. In lecto mori reputant<sup>4</sup> segnitiam,<sup>5</sup> in campo interfici arbitrantur gloriam. Parci victu, diutius famem sustinent. Raro ante solis<sup>6</sup> occasum comedunt; carnibus, lacticiniis,<sup>7</sup> piscibus, et fructibus magis quam pane vescuntur. Et<sup>8</sup> cum sint elegantis formæ satis tamen ex proprio habitu deformantur. Paternos ritus commendant, alienos aspernantur. Terra eorum satis fertilis in pascuis, hortis, et agris. *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo octavodecimo.*<sup>9</sup> Scotorum principes, sicut Hispaniæ reges,<sup>10</sup> nec coronari solent<sup>11</sup> nec inungi.<sup>12</sup> In hac terra Scotiæ memoria beati Andreæ apostoli quamplurimum celebratur; nam<sup>13</sup> Beatus Andreas,<sup>14</sup> qui sorte prædicationis<sup>15</sup> aquilonales<sup>16</sup> mundi partes, Scythas<sup>17</sup> scilicet et Pictavos, suscepit convertendos, tandem apud Patras civitatem Achaïæ<sup>18</sup> in Græcia occubuit, ubi custodita<sup>19</sup> sunt ossa ejus usque

<sup>1</sup> *Agnis*, C. (not D.)

<sup>2</sup> *sed* added in B. ; *sed cum*, A.

<sup>3</sup> *summe*] om. C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *deputant*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *vilissimum*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *solis*] om. B.

<sup>7</sup> *et* added in A.C.

<sup>8</sup> *Et . . . octavo decimo*] om. C.D.

<sup>9</sup> *xliij.*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *sicut Hispaniæ principes dicuntur reges*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *consueverunt*, C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo 18º*, added in C. Reference omitted in D.

<sup>13</sup> *nam*] om. C.D.

<sup>14</sup> *Apostolus* added in C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *prædicandi*, C.D.

<sup>16</sup> *aquilonares*, B.D.

<sup>17</sup> *Scitas*, A.B. ; *Scithas*, C. ; *Sithas*, D. ; *Shites*, E.

<sup>18</sup> *Achaïæ*] om. C.D.

<sup>19</sup> *condita*, B.

Englisch men þey beep moche amended; þey beep cruel vppon hir enemyes, and hateþ bondage most of eny þing, and holdeþ a foule slewþe,<sup>1</sup> ȝif a man deieþ in his bed; and grete worschepe, ȝif he deie<sup>2</sup> in þe feeld. Þey beep litel of mete, and mowe faste longe, and eteþ wel seelde while<sup>3</sup> þe sonne is vppe, and eteþ flesche, fysshe,<sup>4</sup> mylk, and fruyt more þan brede. And þey [he] be<sup>5</sup> faire of schap, þey beep defouled and i-made vnsemelich i-now wip here owne cloþinge. Þey<sup>6</sup> preiseþ faste þe vsage of þeyre<sup>7</sup> owne forme fadres<sup>8</sup> and despiseþ oþer mens<sup>9</sup> doynge. Here lond is fruytful i-now in pasture, gardynes, and feeldes. *Giraldus, dist. prima,<sup>10</sup> capitulo octavodecimo.* Þe princes of Scottes, as þe kynges of Spayne, beep nouȝt i-woned to be annoynt noþer<sup>11</sup> i-crowned. In þis Scotlond is solemne and grete mynde of Seynt Andrew þe apostel; for Seint Andrewe hadde þe norþ contrayes of þe worlde, Scites and Pictes, to his lot, for to preche and conuerte þe peple to Cristes byleue; and was at þe laste i-martired in Achaie<sup>12</sup> in Grecia in a citee þat hatte Patras, and his bones were i-kept two hondred ȝere, þre skore, and twelue

TREVISA.

the admixtion of Engliche men. Thei be cruelle ageyne theire enemyes, hateþe gretely seruitute, accomptenge a slawe man that wolde dye in bedde, thenkenge hit a glory to dye in batelle. Skarse peple in meite and drynke, suffrenge hungre a longe tyme. Thei eite selde vn til after the goenge downe of the son; fedde more with flesche, fisches, white meite, and with frutes, then with brede. And sythe thei be semely in person, thai be deformed ynowe in theire propre habite, commendenge the consuetudes of that cuntre, and of theire predecessores, despisinge the rytes of oþer peple. That londe is plentuous ynowe in pastures, in gardynes, and in feldes. *Giraldus, dist. prima,<sup>10</sup> capitulo octavodecimo.* The princes of Scottes be not vsede to be anoynted, lyke to the kynges of Speyne. In that londe the memory of Seynte Andrewe thapostole is haloede gretely, and hade in veneracion; for blessed Andrew thapostole, whiche was sende by chaunce to preche to the men of the northe partes of the worlde, as to men of Scythia and to Pictes, diede at a citee callede Patras in the londe of Grece, where his boones rested vn

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> slewþe, a.; slouthe, Cx.<sup>2</sup> deieþ, a.<sup>3</sup> whan, Cx.<sup>4</sup> fysshe] Added from Cx.<sup>5</sup> þeiȝ he be, a.; though they, Cx.  
þey be, MS.<sup>6</sup> þe, a.<sup>7</sup> here, a.<sup>8</sup> for faders, Cx. (as usual.)<sup>9</sup> So a.; men, MS.; menes, Cx.<sup>10</sup> De p<sup>ra</sup>, MS.; de p., Cx.; Harl.

MS.

<sup>11</sup> enioynted (sic) nother, Cx.<sup>12</sup> Achaia, a., Cx.

ad tempora Constantini Magni spatio ducentorum septuaginta duorum annorum; et tunc<sup>1</sup> translata sunt Constantinopolim, et<sup>2</sup> recondita usque ad tempora<sup>3</sup> Theodosii<sup>4</sup> spatio centum decem<sup>5</sup> annorum. Tunc rex Pictorum in Scotia Ungust<sup>6</sup> magnam partem Britanniae devastans,<sup>7</sup> cum apud campum Merc<sup>8</sup> a numero<sup>9</sup> exercitu Britonum circumdaretur, audivit subito Beatum Andream sic eum alloquentem: "Ungus, "Ungus,<sup>10</sup> audi me apostolum Christi auxilium tibi pro-  
"mittentem; cum hostes tuos, me juvante,<sup>11</sup> deviceris,  
"dabis tertiam<sup>12</sup> partem hæreditatis tuæ Deo in elec-  
"mosynam et in honorem Beati Andreae." Et sic tertia die, signo crucis exercitum ejus præcedente, victor effectus est. Sic quoque patriam<sup>13</sup> reversus hæreditatem suam<sup>14</sup> divisit. Et cum incertum haberet quam urbem beato Andreae assignaret,<sup>15</sup> per triduum cum

<sup>1</sup> *et tunc*] inde, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *et*, placed before *Constantinopolim* in C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *tempus*, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *imperatoris* added in A.B.C.D., Gale.

<sup>5</sup> 100, C.D.

<sup>6</sup> *Unguus*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *vastans*, Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *Cassumert*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *numero*] *universo*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Unguste*, *Unguste*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *me juvante*] om. C.D.

<sup>12</sup> *decimam*, C.D. This reading seems to be correct. See below.

<sup>13</sup> *Sic quoque patriam*] *patriamque*, C.; *est effectus. Patriam*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *suam*] om. C.D.

<sup>15</sup> *eo* added in C.D.

anon to þe Grete Constantinus tyme<sup>1</sup> and þan þey were translated in to Constantinople,<sup>2</sup> and i-kepte [there]<sup>3</sup> an hundred þere and ten anon to Theodosius þe emperours tyme. Þanne Vngust, kyng of Pictes, in Scotlond, destroyed a greet partie of Britayne, and was<sup>4</sup> bysette wip a grete oost of Bretouns in a felde þat hatte Merk, and herde Seynt Andrew speke to hym in þis manere: "Vngus, "Vngus, here þou me Cristes apostle, I behote<sup>5</sup> þe help "and socour; whan þou hast ouercome þyn enemyes by "myn help, þow schalt ȝeue þe þridde dele of þyn heritage "in<sup>6</sup> almes to God Almyȝhty and in worschippe of Seint "Andrew." And þe signe of þe crosse<sup>7</sup> wente to fore his oost, and þe þridde day he hadde þe victorie, and so torned home aȝen and deled his heritage as he was i-hote.<sup>8</sup> And, for he was vncerteyn what citee he schulde dele for Seynt Andrew; he fasted pre dayes boþe he and al<sup>9</sup> his

TREVISA.

to the tyme of Grete Constantine, by the space of iij<sup>e</sup>. lx. MS. HARL. and vii. yere. The boones of the apostle Seynte Andrew 2261. were translate that tyme vn to the cite off Constantinople, restenge there vn to the tyme of Theodosius emperoure by the space of a c. and x. yere. Then Vnguste, the kyng of Pictes in Scottelande, wastenge a grete parte of Briteyne, was compassede abowte with a innumerable hoste of Briteynes at a felde callede Merc. Herenge also a voice seyenge to hym, "Vngus, Vngus, here me "thapostole of Criste promisenge helpe to the; for thou "schalle haue the victory ageyne thyne enmyes by my "helpe, if thou wille ȝiffe the thrydde parte of thy "lyvelode to God in to almes and in the worschippe of "blessede Andrewe his apostole." And in the thrydde day folowenge, Vngus, the kyng of the Pictes, hade victory of the Briteynes, enmyes to hym, the signe of the crosse goenge before his hoste. This kyng Vngus returnenge to his cuntre after that victory, diuidede his lyvelode in to thre partes, beyng not in certitude to what cite he scholde assigne that lyvelode in to the worschippe of Seynte Andrewe thapostle. Wherefore Vngus, that kyng, with alle his peple, faste by the space of thre daies,

<sup>1</sup> *vnto Constantinus theemperours tyme, Cx.*

<sup>2</sup> *Constantyne noble, MS., a.; Constantinoble, Cx.*

<sup>3</sup> *Added from Cx.*

<sup>4</sup> *wast, a.*

<sup>5</sup> *promise, Cx.*

<sup>6</sup> *So a. and Cx.; I, MS.*

<sup>7</sup> *croys, a.*

<sup>8</sup> *boden, Cx., who has also some slight variations.*

<sup>9</sup> *al] om. a.*

populo suo<sup>1</sup> jejunavit,<sup>2</sup> orans Beatum Andream ut super hoc certificaretur.<sup>3</sup> Et ecce unus de custodiens corpus Beati<sup>4</sup> Andreæ apud Constantinopolim admonitus est<sup>5</sup> in somnis, ut exiret de terra illa, et locum adiret quo angelus<sup>6</sup> eum duceret; qui tali ducatu venit<sup>7</sup> in Scotiam ad verticem montis Rigmund<sup>8</sup> cum septem comitibus suis. Eademque<sup>9</sup> hora lux cœlica circumfulsit regem Pictorum venientem cum exercitu ad locum qui dicitur Carcenan, ubi statim plurimi sanabantur infirmi. ...Ibique<sup>10</sup> occurrebat regi Regulus monachus<sup>11</sup> Constantinopolitanus cum reliquiis Beati<sup>12</sup> Andreæ. In cujus honore fundata est<sup>13</sup> ibi ecclesia,<sup>14</sup> quæ caput est omnium ecclesiarum in terra Pictorum. Hunc locum frequentant peregrini omnium<sup>15</sup> terrarum, in quo loco<sup>16</sup> Regulus monachus factus est<sup>17</sup> primus abbas, qui<sup>18</sup> monachos ibidem<sup>19</sup> congregavit, ac totam

<sup>1</sup> suo] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> jejunante, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> The last clause omitted in C.D.

<sup>4</sup> Sancti, B.

<sup>5</sup> est] om. E.

<sup>6</sup> præmiis added in D.

<sup>7</sup> qui venit prospere, D.

<sup>8</sup> Rigmund, A.; Rigmundi, D.

<sup>9</sup> Eadem quoque, B.

<sup>10</sup> Ibi quoque, A.

<sup>11</sup> monachus] om. E.

<sup>12</sup> Sancti, B., Gale.

<sup>13</sup> fundavit, B.

<sup>14</sup> ecclesiam, B.

<sup>15</sup> cunctarum, D.

<sup>16</sup> in quo loco] ibi primus, C.D.

<sup>17</sup> fuit, C.D.

<sup>18</sup> et, C.D.

<sup>19</sup> ibidem] om. C.D.



meyny,<sup>1</sup> and prayed<sup>2</sup> Andrewe pat he wolde schewe what place he wolde chese. And, loo,<sup>3</sup> oon of þe wardaynes pat kepte þe body of Seint Andrewe in Constantinople<sup>4</sup> was i-warned in his sweuene,<sup>5</sup> pat he schulde wende out of þat lond in to a stede whider an aungel hym wolde lede, and by suche ledynge<sup>6</sup> he com in to Scotlond wip seuene felawes to þe cop<sup>7</sup> of þe hille pat hat Ragmund.<sup>8</sup> Þe same oure list of heuene byschon and byclipped þe kyng of Pictes, pat was comyng wip his oost to a place pat hatte Carcenan. Þere were anon i-heled meny seke men; þere mette wip the kyng Regulus þe monk of Constantinople wip þe relikes of Seynt Andrewe. [There is founded a chirche in worship of Seynt Andrew,]<sup>9</sup> pat is hede of alle chirches in þe lond of Pictes, pat is Scotlond. To þis chirche comeþ pilgrymes oute of alle londes; þere was Regulus first abbot, and gadered monkes. And so al þe

TREVISA.

preyenge to the holy apostole of Godde that thei myȝhte be certifiede in that thyng. And anon oon of the keepers of the blessedde body of Seynte Andrewe was moneschede in his slepe that he scholde goe furthe from that londe vn to the place wheder an angelle scholde lede hym, whiche come thro the ledenge of an angelle in to Scotlonde, vn to the toppe of an hille callede Ragmunde with his vij. felawes. And in that howre a heuynly lyȝhte compassede abowte Vngus, the kyng of Pictes, comfenge with an hoste to that place whiche is callede Carcenan, where mony seke men were healede anon. And Regulus, a monke off Constantinople, mette that kyng per with the reliktes of Seynte Andrewe, in to the worschippe of whom a chirche was edifiede, whiche is the principalle chirche of alle the chirches in the londe of the Pictes. Whiche place pilgrymes of alle londes visitte. In whiche place Regulus the monke of Constantinople was made the firste abbotte, whiche gedrede monkes there, distributenge thro the monastery the holle tythe and grownde whom the kyng

MS. HARL.  
2261.

<sup>1</sup> meyny] om. *a.*; *he and his men*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> Seynt added in *a.*

<sup>3</sup> loo] om. Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Constantyn noble, MS. and *a.*; Constantynoble, Cx., and similarly below.

<sup>5</sup> swevene, *a.*

<sup>6</sup> that he shold go in to a place whyder an angle (sic) wolde lede him,

and so he cam, &c., Cx. A fair specimen of his free handling of the text, which makes a minute collation almost impossible.

<sup>7</sup> So MS., apparently; but *c* and *t* can hardly be distinguished. *toppe*, Cx. Both forms are good.

<sup>8</sup> So *a.* and Cx.; *Ragmud*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> Added from Cx. Absent also from *a.*

decimam terram, quam rex sibi assignaverat, per monasteria locorum<sup>1</sup> distribuerat.<sup>2</sup>

## CAP. XXXVIII.

*De Cambria sive<sup>3</sup> Wallia.*

Libri finis<sup>4</sup> nunc Cambriam  
 Prius tangit quam Angliam;<sup>5</sup>  
 Sic<sup>6</sup> p̄propero ad Walliam,  
 Ad Priami prosapiam;  
 Ad magni<sup>7</sup> Jovis sanguinem,  
 Ad Dardani progeniem.  
 Sub titulis his quatuor  
 Terræ statum exordior:  
 Primo de causa nominis;  
 Secundo de præconiis;  
 Tandem de gentis ritibus;  
 Quarto de mirabilibus.

<sup>1</sup> *locorum*] om. C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *distribuebat*, C.D. The readings of C.D. seem preferable throughout.

<sup>3</sup> *Cambria sive*] om. A.B.C.D.

<sup>4</sup> *cursus*, G. Gale.

<sup>5</sup> *Priusquam tangam Angliam, quæ vastam vult materiam*, C.D. The

alteration, not for the better, has doubtless been made for the sake of a different initial letter (L), so as to form the acrostick. See the Introduction.

<sup>6</sup> *Jam*, C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Et magni*, A.

tepe<sup>1</sup> londe, þat þe kyng hadde assigned him,<sup>2</sup> he departed TREVISA.  
in dyuers places among abbayes.

*De Wallia.*

*Capitulum tricesimum octavum.*

How<sup>3</sup> þe book takeþ in<sup>4</sup> honde  
Wales to fore Englonde;  
So I take my tales  
And wende forþ<sup>5</sup> in to Wales,  
To that noble brood  
Of Priamus his<sup>6</sup> blood,  
Kuweleche for to wyne  
Of greet Iubiter his<sup>7</sup> kynne,  
For to haue in mynde  
Dardanus<sup>8</sup> his kynde.  
In þis<sup>9</sup> foure titles I fonde  
To telle þe state<sup>10</sup> of þat londe.  
Cause of þe name I schal telle,  
And þan preise þe lond I<sup>11</sup> welle.  
Than I schal write wip my pen  
Alle þe maneres of þe men.  
Than I schal fonde  
To telle mervayles of þe londe.

hade ȝiffen in to the worschippe of God and of Seynte MS. HARL.  
Andrew. 2261.

*Of Wales, and of the Maneres and Consuetudes of hit.*

*Capitulum tricesimum octavum.*

THE auctor of this presente Cronicle towchethe in his  
progresse other processe rather Wales then Englonde,  
makege haste to Wales to the kynrede of Priamus, to  
the bloode of grete Iupiter, and to the kynrede of Dar-  
danus. Begynne the state of that londe vnder these iiij.  
titles. Fyrste of the cause of the name; in the seconde of  
the preconyes; in the thridde of the rites of the peple in  
hit; and in the iiij<sup>the</sup> of the mervayles of hit. *Of the  
reason of the name of hit.* That londe whiche is callede

<sup>1</sup> *tienthe*, Cx.

<sup>2</sup> So a.; *hem*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *Now*, a.; *now this*, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> *on*, a.

<sup>5</sup> *forþ*] om. Cx.

<sup>6</sup> *his*] om. Cx.

<sup>7</sup> *Jupiters*, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Bardanus*, MS.

<sup>9</sup> *thyse*, Cx.

<sup>10</sup> *mervayll*, a.

<sup>11</sup> *I*] om. a.; *and welle*, Cx.

De ratione  
nominis.

Hæc terra, quæ nunc Wallia,  
Quondam est <sup>1</sup> dicta Cambria,  
A Cambro Bruti filio,  
Qui <sup>2</sup> rexit hanc dominio :  
Sed post <sup>3</sup> est dicta Wallia,  
A Gwalaes <sup>4</sup> reginula,  
Regis Ebranci filia,  
Ad hæc nupta confinia ;  
Seu a Gualone <sup>5</sup> procere,  
Rupto soni caractere, <sup>6</sup>  
Reperies ad litteram  
Denominatam Walliam.  
Cujus circumferentia,  
Quamvis sit minor <sup>7</sup> Anglia,  
Par tamen <sup>8</sup> glebæ gloria,  
In matre et in filia.  
Terra fecunda fructibus,  
Et carnibus, et piscibus ;  
Domesticis, silvestribus,  
Bobus, equis, et ovibus ;  
Apta cunctis seminibus,  
Culmis, spicis, <sup>9</sup> graminibus ;

De patriæ  
præconiis.

<sup>1</sup> est quondam, B.

<sup>2</sup> Nam hanc rexit, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> prius, G. and Gale, absurdly ;  
post hæc (h<sup>c</sup>), A.

<sup>4</sup> Walles, B.

<sup>5</sup> Gualone, D.

<sup>6</sup> carcere, B.

<sup>7</sup> minor sit, D.

<sup>8</sup> est, B.

<sup>9</sup> spericis, E. (clerical error.)

Wales hatte now<sup>2</sup> Wallia,  
 And somtyme hiȝte<sup>3</sup> Cambria,  
 For Camber, Brutes sone,  
 Was kyng,<sup>4</sup> and pere dede wone ;  
 Pan Wallia was to mene,  
 For Gwalaes the quene,  
 Kyng Ebrank his childe,  
 Was wedded pider mylde.  
 And of pat lord *Gwaloun*  
 Wipdrawep lettres of þe soun,  
 And putte to L, I, and A,  
 And pow schalt fynde *Wallia*.  
 And þey pat this<sup>5</sup> londe  
 Be wel<sup>6</sup> lasse pan Engelonde,  
 As good glebe is oon as other,  
 In þe douȝter and<sup>7</sup> in<sup>8</sup> þe moder.  
 They pat londe be luyte,  
 Hit is ful of corne and fruyte ;<sup>9</sup>  
 And hap grete plente i-wys<sup>10</sup>  
 Bope of flesche, and of<sup>11</sup> fische ;  
 Of bestes, tame and wylde,  
 Of hors, schepe, and oxen mylde ;  
 Good lond for alle sedes  
 For corn, herbes, and gras pat<sup>12</sup> spredes.

TREVISA.

Of the  
 name, how  
 it is named  
 Wales.<sup>1</sup>

Of the  
 commo-  
 dytees of  
 the lond  
 of Wales.

now Wallia, other Wales in Engliche, was callede somme MS. HARL. 2261.  
 tyme Cambria, of Camber the son of Brute, whiche was  
 lorde of hyt. Afterwarde hit was callede Wales, other  
 wise Wallia, of Gwaleas the qwene, the doȝhter of Kynge  
 Ebrancus wedede vn to those costes. Other elles hit was  
 callede Wallia of Gualo a gentilman. Thauȝhe the cir-  
 cumference of hit be lesse then the grownde of Englonde,  
 neuertheslesse hit is egalle to hit in fertilite what in the  
 moder and in the doȝhter. *Of the preconyes of that cuntre.*  
 That londe is plentuous in frutes, flesche, fische, horses,  
 oxen, and schepe bothe wylde and tame. That londe is  
 apte also to alle seedes, gresse, cornes, medoes, feldes, and

<sup>1</sup> Marginal summaries added everywhere from Cx.

<sup>2</sup> now hatte, a.; now is called, Cx.

<sup>3</sup> heet, a. ; it heet, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> prynce, a., Cx.

<sup>5</sup> though this, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> moche, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> and] as, Cx.

<sup>8</sup> in] om. a. (not Cx.)

<sup>9</sup> of fruyte, a.

<sup>10</sup> ywys, Cx. (conjunctim.)

<sup>11</sup> Of flesshe and eke of, Cx.

<sup>12</sup> Here and elsewhere in these verses, Caxton has printed the word thus: þt; but perhaps in every other instance he replaces þ by th.



Arvis, pratis, nemoribus,  
 Herbis gaudet, et floribus ;  
 Fluminibus et fontibus,  
 Convallibus et montibus ;  
 Convalles pastum proferunt,  
 Montes metalla conferunt ;  
 Carbo sub terræ cortice,  
 Crescit viror in vertice ;  
 Calcem per artis regulas  
 Præbet ad tecta<sup>1</sup> tegulas.  
 Epularum materia  
 Mel, lac, et lacticia ;  
 Mulsum,<sup>2</sup> medo, cervisia  
 Abundat<sup>3</sup> in hac patria ;  
 Et quicquid vitæ congruit  
 Ubertim terra tribuit.  
 Sed ut de tantis dotibus  
 Multa claudam sub brevibus,  
 Stat hæc in orbis angulo,  
 Ac si Deus a sæculo  
 Hanc<sup>4</sup> daret promptuarium  
 Cunctorum salutarium.  
 Hæc<sup>5</sup> Wallia dividitur  
 Amne qui Tiwy<sup>6</sup> dicitur,

<sup>1</sup> *tecti*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Musum*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>3</sup> *abundant*, A.D., Gale.

<sup>4</sup> *Ac*, A. (without sense.)

<sup>5</sup> *Hæc*] om. A.

<sup>6</sup> *Twvi*, A.D.; *Twy*, C. Originally a space in B. filled in by a later hand, *Wy*. Certainly the *Wye* suits the description better (or rather, less badly) than anything else.

TREVISA.

There beep wodes and medes,  
 Herbes and floures pere spredes ;  
 There beep ryuers and welles,  
 Valeies and also helles ;  
 Valeys bryngeþ forþ food,  
 And hilles metal riȝt good,<sup>1</sup>  
 Col<sup>2</sup> groweþ vnder lond,  
 And gras aboue at þe hond ;<sup>3</sup>  
 There lyme is copious,  
 And sclattes also for hous.  
 Hony, mylk, and whyte<sup>4</sup>  
 There is deyntees,<sup>5</sup> and not lyte.  
 Of braget,<sup>6</sup> meth,<sup>7</sup> and ale  
 Is grete plente in þat vale.<sup>8</sup>  
 And al þat nedep to þe lyue  
 þat lond bryngeþ forþ ful ryue.  
 But of greet riches forto<sup>9</sup> drawe  
 Meny in a schort<sup>10</sup> sawe,  
 Hit is in a corner smal ;  
 And<sup>11</sup> as þei God first of al  
 Made þat lond so feele<sup>12</sup>  
 To be celer<sup>13</sup> of al heele.  
 Walys is deled by  
 A water þat hatte Twy.<sup>14</sup>

woodes, with herbes and floures, floodes and welles, vales and hilles. The vales in hit brynge furthe foode, and the hilles metalles. And the matere and substaunce amonge theyme is hony, mylke, and whitemeite. Methe and bragotte be there, as ale habundantely in that cuntre ; whiche londe bryngethe furthe plentuously what so euer thyng that is necessary to the lyfe. Entendenge to conclude mony thynges of those dowerys in fewe wordes, that yle stonde the in an angle of the worlde as God dothe from hit, ȝiffenge that londe as a promptuary of alle hollesomme thynges. That londe is diuידede by a water whiche is callede Tywy, whiche

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> *metals good*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *So a.*; *Cool*, Cx.; *Gold*, MS.<sup>3</sup> *atte honde*, Cx. (a frequent variation.)<sup>4</sup> *Hony and mylke whyte*, Cx. (wrongly ; see text.)<sup>5</sup> *deynte*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *braket*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *mede*, a.<sup>8</sup> *So a.* and Cx. ; and *þat in vale*, MS.<sup>9</sup> *forto*] to be, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *And close many in short*, Cx., probably rightly.<sup>11</sup> *And*] om. Cx.<sup>12</sup> *So a.* ; *fele*, Cx. ; *freele*, MS.<sup>13</sup> *selere*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *So also Cx.* ; *Tiwy*, a.

North-Wallos<sup>1</sup> ab Australibus  
 Scindit certis limitibus ;  
 Austrina<sup>2</sup> pars Demetia,<sup>3</sup>  
 Secunda Venedotia ;  
 Prima sagittis prævalet,  
 Hastis secunda præminet.  
 In hoc procinctu Walliæ  
 Tres olim erant curiæ,  
 Ad Kaermarthyn<sup>4</sup> primaria,  
 In Anglesey<sup>5</sup> sed<sup>6</sup> alia,  
 Tertia in Powysia,<sup>7</sup>  
 Pengwern, quæ nunc Salopia.  
 Septem quondam pontifices,  
 Nunc quatuor sunt præsules ;  
 Quondam suis principibus  
 Parebant, nunc<sup>8</sup> Saxonibus.  
 Convictus hujus patriæ  
 Differt a ritu<sup>10</sup> Angliæ,  
 In vestibus, in victibus,  
 In cæteris quampluribus.  
 His vestium insignia  
 Sunt chlamys<sup>11</sup> et camisia,  
 Et crispa femoralia,  
 Sub ventis et sub pluvia.

De incolarum moribus.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So A. ; *Nortwales*, B. ; *Nortwallos*, D. ; *Northwalles*, E. ; *Norwallos*, Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *Austerna*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Demicia*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Kaemerthyn*, B. ; *Chaermerthin*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Anglesie*, D.

<sup>6</sup> So E. and Gale ; *est*, A.B.C.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Powisia*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *ut*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ritibus*, A.B., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *a ritu differt*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *clamis*, A.B.E.

Norp Wales from þe south  
 Twy<sup>1</sup> deleþ in place ful coup.<sup>2</sup>  
 The south hatte Demesia,  
 And þe oper Venedocia;  
 The firste schetep and arwes<sup>3</sup> beres,  
 And þe oper<sup>4</sup> deleþ alle wip speres.  
 I<sup>5</sup> Wales how it be  
 Were somtyme contrees þre;  
 At Karmarthyn was þat oon,  
 And þat oper was in Moon;<sup>6</sup>  
 The pridde was in Powisy  
 In Pengwern, þat now is Schroysbury.<sup>7</sup>  
 There were bisshopes seuene,  
 And now beep foure euene,  
 Vnder Saxons al at honde;  
 Somtyme vnder princes of þat lond,  
 The manere leuyng of þat lond  
 Is wel dyuers from Engeland,  
 In mete and drynk and cloþinge,  
 And many oper doying.  
 They beep cloþed wonder wel  
 In a scherte and in<sup>8</sup> a mantel:  
 A crisp breche wel fayn  
 Boþe in wynd and in rayn.

TREVISA.

Of maner  
 and rites of  
 the Walss-  
 men.

diuidethe northe Wales from the southe parte of hit by MS. HARL. 2261.  
 certeyne merkes. The sowthe parte of Wales is callede Demecia. That other parte is callede Venedocia. Men of Demecia use bawes to schote, and men of Venedocia use speres. In whiche procinete were wonte to be thre courtes. The firste was at Caermerthyn, the secunde was in Anglesey, the thrydde was in Powiselonde at Pengwerne, whiche is now callede Schrewisbery. Somme tyme þer were vij. bischopes in hit, and now þer be iiij., whiche were obediente somme tyme to the princes of that cuntre, but now thei be obediente to the Saxones. *Of the rytes of the inhabitatores of hit.* The vse of that cuntre differrethe from the rite of Englonde in clothege, in fyndenge, and in mony other thynges. A mantelle and a schurte be the nowble thynges of vesture amonge theyme, whiche vse to bere fewe clothes in wynter,

<sup>1</sup> *Twy*, a.<sup>2</sup> *fu kouth*, a.<sup>3</sup> *arowes*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *That other*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *In*, a., Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Mone*, Cx. (who prints one above.)<sup>7</sup> *Shrousbury*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *in*] om. a. (not Cx.)

Plura non ferunt tegmina,  
 Quamvis brumescat borea.  
 Sub istis apparatibus,  
 Spretis lintheaminibus,<sup>1</sup>  
 Stant, sedent, cubant, dormiunt,  
 Pergunt, pugnant, prosiliunt.  
 Hi sine supertunicis  
 Collobiis et tunicis,  
 Capis, tenis, capuciis,  
 Nudatis semper tibiis,<sup>2</sup>  
 Vix aliter incederent,  
 Regi licet occurrerent.  
 Hastis, sagittis brevibus  
 Concertant in conflictibus,<sup>3</sup>  
 Validiores pedites  
 Ad pugnam sunt quam equites.  
 His silvæ sunt pro turribus,  
 Paludes pro<sup>4</sup> aggeribus,  
 Fugam ut pugnam capiunt,  
 Cum opportunum sentiunt.  
 Hos dicit Gildas<sup>5</sup> fragiles,  
 Et nec<sup>6</sup> in pace stabiles;  
 Cujus si causa quæritur,  
 Mirum nequaquam cernitur,

<sup>1</sup> linthiaminibus, MSS.

<sup>2</sup> tubiis, B.

<sup>3</sup> Pugnant in certaminibus, C.D.

<sup>4</sup> cum, A.

<sup>5</sup> Non Britanni sunt in bello  
fortes, nec in pace fideles. Gild. Hist.  
c. 4.

<sup>6</sup> nunc, A.



TREVISA.

In pis cloyng pey beep bolde,  
 Peyȝ pe weder be riȝt colde;  
 Wip oute schetes alway  
 Euermore in pis array  
 They goop, fiȝteȝ, pleieȝ, hoppeȝ, and <sup>1</sup> lepeȝ,  
 Stondeȝ, sitteȝ, liggeȝ, <sup>2</sup> and slepeȝ,  
 Wip oute sorcote, gowne, coote, <sup>3</sup> kirtelle;  
 Wip gipoun, <sup>4</sup> tabard, cloke, and <sup>5</sup> belle;  
 Wip oute lace and chapelet, pat hire lappes,  
 Wip oute hodes, hatte, or cappes.  
 Thus arraied goop pe geggis, <sup>6</sup>  
 And alle <sup>7</sup> wip bare legges;  
 He <sup>8</sup> kepeȝ non oȝer goyng, <sup>9</sup>  
 Pey he <sup>8</sup> mete wip pe kyng.  
 Wip arwes and schort speres  
 Pey fiȝteȝ wip hym <sup>10</sup> pat hem deres.  
 They fiȝteȝ better, ȝif hit nedet, <sup>11</sup>  
 Whan pey goop þan whan þei rideȝ. <sup>12</sup>  
 Insteȝe of castel and toure  
 They taken mareys and wodes <sup>13</sup> for socour,  
 Whan pey seeȝ pat hit is to do, <sup>14</sup>  
 In fiȝtinge pey wil be a goo.  
 Gildas seiȝ pey be variable  
 In pees, and no þing stable.  
 ȝif me aȝet why hit be,  
 Hit is no <sup>15</sup> wonder forto se,

thauȝhe wynde blawe ryȝhte coldely; whiche sytte, stonde, MS. HARL. 2261.  
 and slepe despisenge schetes; with owte huddes, cootes, or  
 tabardes, bare on the legges; whiche vse vnnethe to go eny  
 other way, thauȝhe thei scholde mete a kynge; fiȝhtenge  
 with shorte speres in conflictes, amonge whom the men in  
 foote be more stronge then the horse men. Woodes be to  
 theym as for towres, and marras for places of defence; whiche  
 take fleenge as fiȝhte, when<sup>9</sup> they thenke tyme and opor-  
 tunite. Gildas rehersethe Wallche men to be frayle, not  
 stable in pease. And if the cause be inquirede, hit is not

<sup>1</sup> hoppeȝ and] om. Cx.<sup>2</sup> lye, Cx.<sup>3</sup> koot, a.<sup>4</sup> iopen, Cx.<sup>5</sup> or, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So a.; segges, Cx. (quid?); gigges, MS.<sup>7</sup> alwey, a.<sup>8</sup> They, Cx. (twice.)<sup>9</sup> So Cx.; þing, MS.<sup>10</sup> hem, a.; them, Cx.<sup>11</sup> they nedet, Cx.<sup>12</sup> The metre requires redeȝ.<sup>13</sup> wode and marys, a.<sup>14</sup> So a. and Cx.; I doo, MS.<sup>15</sup> no] om. Cx.

Si gens expulsa satagat,  
Ut expulsores abigat.  
Sed frustra his temporibus,  
Succisis jam nemoribus,  
Cum sint circa maritima  
Firmata castra plurima.  
Gens diu famem sustinens,  
Communem victum diligens,  
Coquorum artificia  
Non quærit ad edulia;  
Nam panem hordeaceum <sup>1</sup>  
Edit et avenaceum,  
Latum, rotundum, tenuem,  
Ut decet tantum <sup>2</sup> sanguinem.  
Raro frumento vescitur,  
Vix furni flammis utitur;  
His pulres ad legumina  
Pro epulis <sup>3</sup> acrimina,  
Butyrum, lac, et caseus  
Oblongus <sup>4</sup> et tetragonus;  
Hæc sunt eorum fercula,  
Quæ provocant ad pocula  
Medonis et cervisiæ,  
Quibus instant quotidie.  
Vinum putant præcipuum,  
Quanto sit magis rubeum.

---

<sup>1</sup> *ordeacium*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *priscum*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Pepulis acrimonia*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Prolongus*, C.D.

TREVISA.

They men i-putt out of londe  
 To putte out opere wolde fonde.  
 But al for nouȝt at þis stounde,  
 For<sup>1</sup> meny wodes beep at grounde;  
 And vppon þe see among  
 Beep castellis<sup>2</sup> i-buld ful strong.  
 The men may dure longe vnete,  
 And louep wel comune mete;  
 They conne ete and be<sup>3</sup> mury<sup>4</sup>  
 Wip oute grete kewery.<sup>5</sup>  
 They eteth brede, colde and hote,  
 Of barliche and of oote;  
 Brood cakes, round and þynne,  
 As wel semep so grete kynne.  
 Seelde þey etep brede of whete,  
 And seelde þey doop oues ete.  
 They haueþ growel<sup>6</sup> to potage,  
 And a leke is skyn<sup>7</sup> to compernage;<sup>8</sup>  
 Also butter, melk, and chese<sup>9</sup>  
 I-schape euelong and cornered wise.<sup>10</sup>  
 Swiche<sup>11</sup> messes þey etep snel;  
 And þat makeþ hem drynk wel.  
 Mede<sup>12</sup> and ale, þat haþ myȝt,  
 Ther yune<sup>13</sup> þey spendep day and nyȝt.  
 Euere þe redder is þe wyn,  
 Þey holdep it þe more fyn;

to be hade in meruayle if a peple expulsede be abowte to expelle the expulsores of hit. But now in this tyme, the woodes kytte, mony castelles be made after the costes in the see. The peple of that cuntre wille suffre hungre longe, luffenge the commune foode, inquirenge not the artificialle operacion of cookes at the dyners of theyme, eitenge brede made of otes and of barly, brode, rownde, and thynne, as hit besemethe suche bloode. That peple dothe cite selde whete that is baken in an oue; the meites of whom be buttyr, mylke, and chese; which prouoke a man to drynke methe and ale, whiche thei do vse daily. Thei accompte that wyne moste principalle whiche is moste redde, whiche peple vsenge to drynke seasethe not from

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> For al, Cx.<sup>2</sup> So a.; castell, MS.; castels, Cx.,  
who omits ful.<sup>3</sup> ben, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So also Cx.; merye, a.<sup>5</sup> cury, Cx.<sup>6</sup> grewel, a.; gruel, Cx.<sup>7</sup> a leke his kyn, a.; And lekes  
kynde, Cx.<sup>8</sup> companage, Cx.<sup>9</sup> clyse, a.<sup>10</sup> corner wese, Cx.<sup>11</sup> suche, a., Cx.<sup>12</sup> Methe, Cx.<sup>13</sup> Theron, Cx.

Potando gens hæc garrula  
Vix cessat fari <sup>1</sup> frivola.  
Ad mensam et post prandium  
Sal porri sunt solatium.  
Sed et paterfamilias  
Hoc <sup>2</sup> reputat delicias,  
Caldarium cum pultibus  
Dare circumsedentibus,  
Taxando portiunculas,  
Servans sibi reliquias.  
Hos eis nocet nimium  
Ad carnis infortunium,  
Quod contra jussum physicum  
Edunt salmonem calidum.  
Domos demissas incolunt  
Ex virgulis quas construunt,  
Distantibus limitibus,  
Non prope, ut in urbibus.  
Cum devastarunt <sup>3</sup> propria,  
Vicina quærunt atria;  
Edentes <sup>4</sup> quod inveniunt,  
Post hæc <sup>5</sup> ad sua redeunt;

---

<sup>1</sup> loqui, B.

<sup>2</sup> Hæc, B.

<sup>3</sup> devastarint, B.

<sup>4</sup> Edendo, C.D.

<sup>5</sup> hæc] om. B.

TREVISA.

Whan pey drynkep at pe<sup>1</sup> ale,  
 They tellep meny a lewed tale.  
 For whan drynk is in handelyng  
 Pey beep ful al<sup>2</sup> of iangelynge.  
 At pe mete, and after eke,  
 Hir solace is salt and leke.  
 The housbonde in his wise  
 Tellep pat a grete prise,  
 To ȝeue a caudron<sup>3</sup> wip grewel  
 To hym pat sittep at<sup>4</sup> his mel,  
 He delep his mete at pe mel,  
 And ȝeuep eueriche manis del,<sup>5</sup>  
 And alle the ouer pluse  
 He kepep to his owne vse.<sup>6</sup>  
 Therfore pey hauep woo  
 And myshappes also,  
 They etep hote samoun alway,  
 They<sup>7</sup> phisik seie nay.  
 Here hous<sup>8</sup> bep lowe wip alle,  
 I-made<sup>9</sup> of ȝerdes smalle;  
 Nouȝt, as in citees, nygh,  
 But fer atwynne, and not to hiȝe.<sup>10</sup>  
 Whan al is i-ete<sup>11</sup> at home,  
 Panne to her neighebores wil pey rome;  
 And ete what pey may fynde and see,  
 And panne torne home aȝe.

communicacion and talkenge of ydelele thynges. Salt and lekes be to theyme solace at meyte, and after; acomptenge that a grete solace to ȝiffe a caldron with potages to men syttenge abowte and to diuide to euery man his porcion, kepenge to hym the remanente. But the infortuny of flesche nyouth theim moche eitenge salmon hote ageyue the precepte of phisike. Whiche inhabite howses, whom thei make of litelle rodde; not nye to gedre, as thei vse to make edificacions in cites. This peple vsethe to deuoure the goodes of other men after that thei haue deuourede there awne goodes, eitenge that thei fynde, retornege after that to there awne places, spendenge there

MS. HARL.  
2261.<sup>1</sup> at pe] atte, Cx., and so commonly.<sup>2</sup> al ful, a.<sup>3</sup> gawdron, a.<sup>4</sup> hem that sitten on, Cx.<sup>5</sup> The lines are transposed in MS. (not a.)<sup>6</sup> house, a.<sup>7</sup> All though, Cx.<sup>8</sup> howses, Cx.<sup>9</sup> And made, Cx.<sup>10</sup> So a.; nygh, MS.<sup>11</sup> eten, Cx.



Vitam ducentes otio,  
Sopori, et incendio.  
Mos cunctis est Wallensibus  
Aquam dare hospitibus;  
Si primo pedes laverint,  
Pendunt quod bene venerint.  
Ita quieti<sup>1</sup> victitant  
Quod raro bursam bajulant.  
His pecten et pecunia  
Pendent<sup>2</sup> ad femoralia;  
At<sup>3</sup> cum abhorrent nimium  
Ani pudendum sonitum,  
Mirum quod ante ostium  
Habent latrinas sordium.  
Choro, lyra, et tibiis  
Utuntur in conviviis,  
Sed elatis funeribus  
Clangunt caprinis cornibus.  
Extollunt Trojæ sanguinem,  
De quo ducunt originem.  
Propinquos satis reputant,  
Quos centum gradus separant.  
Sic præferunt se cæteris,  
Parent<sup>4</sup> tamen presbyteris,

---

<sup>1</sup> *quiete*, B.<sup>2</sup> *pendunt*, A.<sup>3</sup> *Et*, D.<sup>4</sup> *Favent*, B.

TREVISA.

The lyf is idel, þat þei ledes,  
 In brennyng and <sup>1</sup> slepyng and such dedes.  
 Walsche men vseþ wip hir myȝt  
 To wasche here gestes feet at nyȝt;<sup>2</sup>  
 Ȝif he wasche here feet, al and some,  
 Þanne þey knoweþ þey beþ welcome.  
 They leueþ so esiliche in arowte,<sup>3</sup>  
 Þat seelde þey bereþ purse aboute.  
 At here breche out and at home  
 They hengeþ<sup>4</sup> boþe money and come.<sup>5</sup>  
 Hit is wonder þey beþ so hende,  
 And hateþ a crak of þe neþer ende,  
 And with oute [ony]<sup>6</sup> core  
 Makeþ her wardrope at þe dore.  
 They haueþ in greet mangerie  
 Harpe, tabor, and pype for mynstralcie.  
 They bereþ forþ cors<sup>7</sup> wip sorwe grete;  
 Þey bloweþ<sup>8</sup> lowde hornes of geete.  
 They preiseþ faste Troian blood,  
 For þere of come al hir brood;  
 Nigh<sup>9</sup> kyn þey wil<sup>10</sup> bee  
 Þey he<sup>11</sup> passe an hondred gree.<sup>12</sup>  
 Aboute oper men þey wil hem<sup>13</sup> diȝte;  
 And worschipeþ preostes wip her myȝte;

life in ydelnesse and in slawthe. The consuetude is of MS. HARL. 2261.  
 Walche men to ȝiffe water to theire gestes to drynke.  
 And if thei wasche theire feete, thei thenke that thei be  
 welle commen. That peple lyvethe in suche ease that  
 vnnethe thei bere a purse, for thei vse to honge their  
 moneye at the hippes of theyme, mervaylunge moche, sythe  
 that thei abhorre moche the sownde of the partes posterialle,  
 that thei make seges of filthe afore the dures of theym.  
 Men of that cuntre vse in theire festes a crowde, an harpe,  
 and trumpes. But at the dethe of a man thei crye lyke to  
 wylde bestes in exaltenge the bloode of Troy, of whom  
 thei toke begynnege. That peple thenkethe men nye to  
 theyme by bloode whom a c. degrees do separate. Neuer-  
 thelesse thei be obediante to pristres, worschippenge theyme

f. 57. b.

<sup>1</sup> and] om. Cx., perhaps rightly.<sup>2</sup> anyȝt, a., Cx.<sup>3</sup> a rowte, Cx. (which is also good.)<sup>4</sup> hongeþ, a.<sup>5</sup> combe, Cx.<sup>6</sup> Added from Cx. (not in a.)<sup>7</sup> corps, Cx., who has also sorow.<sup>8</sup> And bloweþ, a.; And blowe, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Nyȝ, a.<sup>10</sup> wole, a.<sup>11</sup> they, Cx. (not a.)<sup>12</sup> degree, Cx.<sup>13</sup> So a.; hym, MS.

Et summi <sup>1</sup> Dei famulos  
 Venerantur ut angelos.  
 Hos consuevit fallere  
 Et ad bella impingere <sup>2</sup>  
 Merlini vaticinium,  
 Et frequens sortilegium.  
 Mores brutales Britonum  
 Jam ex <sup>3</sup> convictu <sup>4</sup> Saxonum  
 Commutantur in melius,  
 Ut patet luce clarius.  
 Hortos et agros excolunt,  
 Ad oppida se conferunt,  
 Et loricati equitant,  
 Et calceati peditant,  
 Urbane se <sup>5</sup> reficiunt,  
 Et sub tapetis dormiunt;  
 Ut judicentur <sup>6</sup> Anglici,  
 Nunc potius quam Wallici.  
 Hinc si quærat <sup>7</sup> ratio,  
 Quietius jam <sup>8</sup> solito  
 Cur illi vivant hodie,  
 In causa <sup>9</sup> sunt divitiæ;  
 Quas cito <sup>10</sup> gens hæc perderet,  
 Si passim nunc configeret.

<sup>1</sup> *summe*, A.

<sup>2</sup> *producere*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *nam jam*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *convicta*, C. (not D.)

<sup>5</sup> *se*] om. C. (not D.)

<sup>6</sup> *videntur*, B.

<sup>7</sup> So A.C.D.; *quæretur*, E.

<sup>8</sup> So A.; *quam*, D.E., Gale.

<sup>9</sup> *Revera*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *cito*] om. A.

TREVISA.  
—

As aungeles of heuene riȝt  
 Pey worschipep seruantes of God almyȝte.  
 Oft gyled<sup>1</sup> was this brood,  
 And ȝerned batail al for wood,  
 For Merlyns prophecie,  
 And ofte for sortelegie.<sup>2</sup>  
 Best in maneres of Bretouns,<sup>3</sup>  
 For companye of Saxouns,  
 Beep i-torned to beter riȝt;  
 þat is knowe as clere as liȝt.  
 Thei tiliep<sup>4</sup> gardyns, feeld, and downes,  
 And drauep hem to gode townes;  
 They ridep i-armed, as wolde<sup>5</sup> God,  
 And goop i-hosed and i-schod;  
 And sittep faire at hir mele,  
 And slepep in beddes faire and wele.<sup>6</sup>  
 So pey semeþ now in mynde  
 More Engliche men þan Walsche kynd;  
 Ȝif me axep whi pey doop now soo,<sup>7</sup>  
 More þan pey were woned<sup>8</sup> to doo,  
 They leueþ in more pees,  
 By cause of hir riches.  
 For hir catel schulde slake,  
 And<sup>9</sup> pey vseþ ofte wrake.  
 Drede of losse of here good  
 Makeþ hem now stille of mood;

as the angelles of God. The prophecy of Merlyne and MS. HARL.  
 wycche crafte was wonte to begile theyme and to move 2261.  
 them to batelles. But nowe thei chaunge theire maneres  
 gretely in to better exercise thro the communicacion of  
 Saxones. Thei tylle feldes and gardynes, and applye them to  
 inhabite townes, usenge haburiones, and goenge with schoes,  
 refreschenge them in meites after curtesy, slepenge in  
 beddes after the consuetude of Engliche rather then after  
 the maner of them vsede afore tyme. And if the cause  
 be inquirede why thei lyve so now rather then in tymes  
 afore, hyt may be ansuerede and seide that rychesse be  
 the cause per of, but now the drede of theire goode with-  
 drawethe them from the exercise of conflictes. For a man

<sup>1</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Of giles*, MS.<sup>2</sup> So a. and Cx.; *sortelogie*, MS.<sup>3</sup> Cx. puts a full stop after *Bri-*  
*tons*. It is almost certain that for  
*best* in we should read *bestly*.<sup>4</sup> *tillen*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *wol*, a.; *wole*, Cx. The text  
 seems corrupt.<sup>6</sup> *fele*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *now doo so*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *they woonte*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> *If*, Cx.

De terræ  
mirabili-  
bus.

Timor damni hos retrahit,  
Nam nil habes<sup>1</sup> nil metuit.  
Et, ut dixit Satiricus,<sup>2</sup>  
Cantat viator vacuus  
Coram latrone, tutior  
Quam phaleratus<sup>3</sup> ditior.  
Ad Brehnoch<sup>4</sup> est vivarium  
Satis abundans piscium,  
Sæpe coloris varii  
Comam gerens pomarii,<sup>5</sup>  
Structuras ædificii  
Sæpe videbis inibi.  
Sub lacu cum sit gelidus,  
Mirus auditur sonitus.  
Si terræ princeps venerit,  
Aves cantare jusserit,  
Statim depromunt<sup>6</sup> modulos,  
Nil concinunt ad cæteros.  
Juxta Caerlegion<sup>7</sup> mœnia,  
Ad duo milliaria,  
Stat rupes<sup>8</sup> fulva nimium  
Contra solarem radium,  
Quam Goldeclif<sup>9</sup> gens nominat,  
Ut aurum<sup>10</sup> quia rutilat;  
Nec frustra fit in rupibus  
Flos talis sine fructibus,

<sup>1</sup> *habens*, B.

<sup>2</sup> Juven. Sat., xii. 22.

<sup>3</sup> *phalaratus*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Breghenoc*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *pomij*, E.; *pomerii*, A.D., Gale.  
Both forms occur, but *pomarii* suits  
the metre best.

<sup>6</sup> *deproment*, A.B.D.

<sup>7</sup> *Caerleon*, A.; *Caerlion*, B.D., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *rupis*, C.D.

<sup>9</sup> So A., Gale; *Goldclif*, D. (apparently); *Goldeclif*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *aurumque*, C. (not D.)



Alle in oon hit is brouzt;  
 Hauē no ping and drede nouzt.  
 The poete seiþ a sawe of preef,  
 Þe foot man lereþ synge<sup>1</sup> to fore þe þeef,  
 And is wel bolder on his<sup>2</sup> way  
 Ðan þe horsman<sup>3</sup> riche and gay.  
 There is a pole at Breigheynok,<sup>4</sup>  
 There ynne of fische is many a flok;  
 Ofte he chaungeþ his hewe on cop,  
 And bereþ aboue a gardyn crop;  
 Ofte tyme, how it be,  
 Schap of hous pere þou schalt<sup>5</sup> see.  
 Whan þe pole is frore, hit is wonder  
 Of þe noyse þat is pere vnder;  
 3if þe prince of þe lond hote,  
 Briddes syngeþ wiþ mery<sup>6</sup> note,  
 As mery<sup>7</sup> as þey kan,  
 And syngeþ for noon oper man.  
 Bysides Carleoun,<sup>8</sup>  
 Tweyne<sup>9</sup> myle from þe toun,  
 Is a roche wel brizt of leme  
 Riht aʒenst þe sonne beme;  
 Gold clif þat roche hiʒte,  
 For he<sup>10</sup> schyneþ as gold ful briʒte:  
 Suche a floure in stoon is nouzt  
 Wiþ oute fruyt, and<sup>11</sup> hit were souzt;

TREVISA.

Of the  
 marueylles  
 and won-  
 ders of  
 Wales.

that hathe noʒhte to loose dredethe but lytelle; perfore MS. HARL.  
 Satiricus seith that a man hauenge but lytelle goode 2261.  
 syngethe, and goethe in more suerte afore a thefe then a  
 ryche man. *Of the meruayles of Wales.* At Brehenoc is  
 a water habundante in fisches of diuerse coloures, where a  
 man may see in clere tymes meruellous edifienges, where  
 a meruellous noyce and sownde be herde. And if the  
 prince of that londe come, the bryddes synge and make  
 grete melody to him, schewenge not pleasure and comforte  
 to eny other man. Also there is a grete broken hille nye  
 to the walles of Kaerlyon, schynenge moche ageyne the  
 beames of the sonne, whom peple calle Goldecliffe, in that  
 hit schynethe like to golde. Whiche floure apperethe not  
 there with owte frute, if the interialle partes of that hille

<sup>1</sup> foteman singeth, Cx.<sup>2</sup> is bolder on the, Cx.<sup>3</sup> horsmen, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Brechnok, Cx.<sup>5</sup> shal (sic) thou, Cx.<sup>6</sup> singe wel mery, Cx.<sup>7</sup> meryly, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Carlion, Cx.<sup>9</sup> Twa, Cx.<sup>10</sup> it, Cx. (and so often.)<sup>11</sup> if, Cx. (and so often.)

Si foret <sup>1</sup> qui penitima,<sup>2</sup>  
 Terræ venas et viscera,  
 Transpenetrare sedula  
 Novisset arte prævia.  
 Occulta latent plurima  
 Naturæ beneficia;  
 Quæ, hactenus incognita  
 Humana pro incuria,  
 Per posterorum <sup>3</sup> studia  
 Patebunt sub notitia;  
 Quod antiquis necessitas,  
 Hoc nobis dat sedulitas.  
 Itidem in <sup>4</sup> South-Wallia  
 Apud Kardeff<sup>5</sup> est insula,  
 Juxta Sabrinum <sup>6</sup> pelagus,  
 Barri<sup>7</sup> dicta antiquitus;  
 In cujus parte<sup>8</sup> proxima  
 Apparet rima modica,  
 Ad quam si aurem commodas,  
 Sonum mirandum audies;

---

<sup>1</sup> *floret*, G. and Gale.

<sup>2</sup> *fnitima*, A.B.

<sup>3</sup> *posteriorum*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Sowth*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Caerdif*, B.; *Kerdif*, D.; *Kaer-*  
*dif*, A., Gale.

<sup>6</sup> D. adds *est*.

<sup>7</sup> *Barra*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *terra*, B.

TREVISA.

Ȝif me koupe<sup>1</sup> by craft vndo  
 Þe veynes of þe erpe, and come perto.  
 Many benefices<sup>2</sup> of kynde<sup>3</sup>  
 Beep now i-hidde fro manis mynde,  
 And beep vnknewe Ȝit,  
 For defaute<sup>4</sup> of manis wit.  
 Grete tresour is hid in grounde,  
 And after þis it schal be founde  
 By greet studie and besynesse  
 Of hem þat comeþ after vs.  
 Þat olde men hadde by grete nede,  
 We haueþ be<sup>5</sup> besy dede.  
*Trevisa.*<sup>6</sup> In bookes Ȝe may rede,  
 Þat kynde failleþ not at nede;  
 Whanne no man hadde craft in mynde,  
 Þan of craft halp God and kynde;  
 Whan no techere was in londe,  
 Men hadde craft by Goddes sonde;<sup>7</sup>  
 Þey þat hadde craft so þenne  
 Tawȝte forþ craft to opere menne;  
 Som craft, þat Ȝit come nouȝt in place,  
 Somme men schal haue by Goddis grace.  
 R. An<sup>8</sup> ilond is wip noyse and strif  
 In West Wales at Cardif,<sup>9</sup>  
 Faste by Seuerne<sup>10</sup> stronde;  
 Barry hiȝte þat ilonde.  
 In þe hider<sup>11</sup> side in a chene<sup>12</sup>  
 þow schalt here a wonder dene,  
 And dyuerse noyse also,  
 Ȝif þou putte þyn ere to.

were souȝhte; for many benefites of nature be priueye in MS. HARL.  
 hit, whiche be vnknewen yitte for the ignoraunce of men, 2261.  
 but thei schalle be knowen by the study and labores of  
 men to comme afterwarde. Also in Sowthe Wales is an  
 yle at Kaerdif, nye to the water of Seuerne, called in  
 olde tyme Barri, in a nye parte to whom is a place, and  
 if thou putte thyne eiere to hit thou schalle here a mar-  
 uellous sownde and noyce, otherwhile like to the blawenge

<sup>1</sup> *men coude*, Cx.<sup>2</sup> *benefyce*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *knynde*, MS.<sup>4</sup> *deuaute*, a.<sup>5</sup> *by*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> This and the following reference added from a. and Cx. (the former has only a space for *Þ.*)<sup>7</sup> *honde*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *And*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>9</sup> *and Kardyf*, a.; *Kerdyf*, Cx.<sup>10</sup> *Seuarn*, Cx.<sup>11</sup> *hiȝ*, *hider*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)<sup>12</sup> *chyne*, a.

Nunc quasi flatus folium,  
 Nunc metallorum<sup>1</sup> sonitum,  
 Cotis ferri fricamina,  
 Fornacis nunc incendia.  
 Sed hoc non est<sup>2</sup> difficile  
 Ex fluctibus contingere  
 Marinis subintrantibus,  
 Hunc sonum procreantibus.  
 Apud Penbroc<sup>3</sup> est regio,  
 Quam dæmonum illusio  
 Vexat jactando sordida  
 Et exprobrando vitia,  
 Qui nullis valent<sup>4</sup> artibus  
 Fugari neque precibus;  
 Quod, quando terram agitat  
 Casum gentis<sup>5</sup> pronosticat.  
 Ad Cruemaur<sup>6</sup> in West-Wallicis<sup>7</sup>  
 Est tumulus mirabilis,  
 Qui se conformem<sup>8</sup> cuilibet  
 Advenienti exhibet;  
 Ubi si arma integra  
 Relinquantur in vespera,  
 Confracta proculdubio  
 Reperies diluculo.  
 Ad Nevyn in Norwallia<sup>9</sup>  
 Est insula permodica,  
 Quæ Bardeseya<sup>10</sup> dicitur;  
 A monachis incolitur.

<sup>1</sup> *martellorum*, B.D.

<sup>2</sup> *Hoc non erit*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Penbrok*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *valz*, E.; *valet*, A.D.G., Gale  
(without sense).

<sup>5</sup> *gentis casum*, D.

<sup>6</sup> So G. and Gale; *Crucinaur*,  
A.D.F.; *Crucina*, B. The text

seems to be right. See Nennius, c. 87,  
in Petrie's *Mon. Hist. Brit.* p. 80.

<sup>7</sup> So C.D.; *West-Wallis*, A.B.E.  
G., Gale.

<sup>8</sup> *conformet*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Northwallia*, A.B.D.G., Gale.

<sup>10</sup> *Bardiseya*, A.; *Pardiseya*, C.;  
*Berdesia*, D.; *Bardiseia*, G.

TREVISA.  
—

Noyse of leues and of wynde,<sup>1</sup>  
 Noyse of metal pou schalt fynde;  
 Frotinge of iren and whestones pou schalt hire,  
 Hetynge ouenes<sup>2</sup> þan wip fire;  
 Al þis may wel be  
 By wawes of þe see,  
 Þat brekep in þare  
 Wip suche noyse and fare.  
 At Penbrook in a stede  
 Fendes doop ofte quede,  
 And prowep foule þing ynne,  
 And despiseþ also synne.  
 Noper craft ne bedes may  
 Do<sup>3</sup> pennes þat sorwe away;  
 Whan hit greueþ soo  
 To þe men hit bodeþ woo.  
 At Crucinar<sup>4</sup> in West Wales  
 Is a wonder buriales;  
 Euerich man, þat comeþ hit to see,  
 Semep it euene as moche as he;  
 Hool wepoun pere a nyȝt  
 Schal be i-broke er day lyȝt.  
 At Nemyn<sup>5</sup> in Norp Wales  
 A litel ilond pere is,  
 Þat hatte Bardeseie;<sup>6</sup>  
 Monkes woneþ pere alweie.

of belose, and in an other season lyke to þe sownde of MS. HARL  
 metalles, and otherwhile like the rubbenge of a qwettenge- 2261.  
 ston, and otherwhile lyke to the noyse of a flame of f. 58. a.  
 fire. But hit is noo meruayle these thynges to happe of  
 the floenges off water causenge that sownde vnder the  
 erthe. Also there is a region at Penbroke<sup>7</sup> whiche is vexede  
 moche by the illusion of deuelles, whiche can not be made  
 clene thro eny crafte other preiers, whiche, movenge that  
 londe, dothe prenosticate a grete falle of the peple of that  
 cuntre. Also there is a maruellous berielle at Curcinaur  
 in Weste Wales, whiche is conformed to euery man com-  
 menge to hit; if holle armor be lafte per at nyȝhte, pou  
 schalle fynde them broken in the mornenge. Also in a  
 place in Northe Wales callede Neuyn is an yle whiche is  
 callede Pardesey, inhabite of monkes, where thei lyve soe

<sup>1</sup> This line is absent from MS.<sup>2</sup> of ouenes, a.<sup>3</sup> So a. and Cx.; *De*, MS.<sup>4</sup> So a. and Cx.; *Crucina*, MS.<sup>5</sup> So MS. and a.<sup>6</sup> *Bardysey*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> So the MS., in extenso.



Ubi tam diu vivitur  
 Quod senior præmoritur ;  
 Ibi Merlinus conditur  
 Silvestris, ut asseritur ;  
 Duo fuerunt igitur  
 Merlini, ut conjicitur,<sup>1</sup>  
 Unus dictus Ambrosius,  
 Ex incubo<sup>2</sup> progenitus,  
 Ad Kermerthyn<sup>3</sup> Demetiæ  
 Sub Vortigerni tempore ;  
 Qui sua vaticinia  
 Proflavit in Snawdonia<sup>4</sup>  
 Ad ortum amnis Coneway<sup>5</sup>  
 Ad clivum montis Eriry ;<sup>6</sup>  
 Dynas-Embreis,<sup>7</sup> ut comperi,  
 Sonat collem Ambrosii ;  
 Ad ripam quando regulus  
 Vortiger sedit anxius.

<sup>1</sup> Slightly transposed in C. (not D.) ; *convicitur*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *incuba*, C.D.

<sup>3</sup> *Carmerthyn*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Snowdonia*, B

<sup>5</sup> *Conowey*, A. ; *Conwy*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Eryry*, A. ; *Erryri*, B. ; *Eriri*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Dinas Embreys*, A.G. ; *Duas Embrex*, B. ; *Dyneis Embreis*, D. ; *Duias Embreys*, Gale.

TREVISA.

Men lyueþ so longe in þat hurste,  
 þat þe eldest deiȝeþ furst.  
 Me seiþ þat Merlyn i-buried pere is,  
 þat hiȝte also Siluestris.  
 There were Merlyns tweyne  
 And prophecied alle<sup>1</sup> beyne.  
 Oon hiȝte Ambrose and Merlyn,  
 And wes i-gete of<sup>2</sup> gobolyn.  
 In Demecia at Caermerthyn,  
 Vnder kyng Fortigeryn,<sup>3</sup>  
 He tolde oute his prophecie;  
 Euene in Snawdonye.  
 At þe heed of þe water of Conewy,<sup>4</sup>  
 In þe side of mount Eryry,  
 Dynays Embreys a<sup>5</sup> Walsche,  
 Ambrose his hille on<sup>6</sup> Englisch,  
 Kyng Fortigern<sup>7</sup> sat on  
 þe water side, and was wel ful of woon.  
 þan Ambrose Merlyn prophecied so  
 To fore hym pere riȝt poo.<sup>8</sup>  
 [*Trevisa*]<sup>9</sup> What wight<sup>10</sup> wolde wene  
 þat a fend myȝt now gete a<sup>11</sup> childe?  
 Som men wolde mene,  
 þat he may no werk soche wilde.<sup>12</sup>  
 That fend þat goop a nyȝt,  
 Wommen wel<sup>13</sup> ofte to begile,<sup>14</sup>  
 Incubus hatte be ryȝt;  
 And gileþ men oþer while,  
 Succubus is þat wight:  
 God graunte vs non suche vile.  
 Who þat in hir myȝt<sup>15</sup>  
 Comeþ wonder hap schal<sup>16</sup> smyle.

that the elder man diethe euer a fore the yonger man. MS. HARL.  
 Where Merlyn callede Silvestris is beryede, as hit is seide. 2261.  
 Therefore there were ij. Merlynes; oon of them callede  
 Ambrosius, geten of a spratte at Kaermerthyn in Sowthe  
 Wales, whiche<sup>17</sup> profeciede in Snawdonia in the tyme of  
 Vortigernus. Also there was an other Merlyn in Albania,

<sup>1</sup> *alle*] om. *a.* and Cx.<sup>2</sup> *y-goten by*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *Vortigerin*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> *Coneway*, Cx.<sup>5</sup> *a*] in, Cx. (not *a.*)<sup>6</sup> *on*] in, Cx. (not *a.*)<sup>7</sup> *Vortigere*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> *tho*, Cx.<sup>9</sup> This and the following reference omitted in MSS. and Cx.<sup>10</sup> *witte*, Cx., who omits *now* below.<sup>11</sup> Om. *a.*<sup>12</sup> *no such werk welde*, Cx.<sup>13</sup> *ful*, *a.*, Cx.<sup>14</sup> *gile*, Cx.<sup>15</sup> *Who that cometh in hir gyle*, Cx.

The text is very obscure, and perhaps corrupt.

<sup>16</sup> *Wonder happe shal he*, Cx.<sup>17</sup> *in the whiche*, MS., originally.

Est<sup>1</sup> alter de Albania  
 Merlinus, quæ et<sup>2</sup> Scotia;  
 Repertus est binomius  
 Silvestris Calidoni-<sup>3</sup>us;  
 A silva Calidonia,<sup>4</sup>  
 Qua promsit<sup>5</sup> vaticinia;  
 Silvestris dictus ideo,  
 Quod consistens in prælio  
 Monstrum videns in aere  
 Mente<sup>6</sup> cœpit excedere,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ad silvam tendens<sup>8</sup> propere,  
 Arthuri<sup>9</sup> regis tempore;

<sup>1</sup> So A.B.C.D., Gale; *Et*, E.

<sup>2</sup> *est*, A.B.D.; *nunc*, G., Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *Callidoni-*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Collidonia*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *prosit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *mentem*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *incendere*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *tondens*, A.

<sup>9</sup> *Cathuri*, C. (not D.)

\*

Wip wonder dede  
 Bope men and wommen sede  
 Fendes wyl kepe  
 Wip craft, and brynge in on hepe.<sup>1</sup>  
 So fendes wilde  
 May make wommen bere childe;  
 ⁊ it neuere in mynde  
 Was childe of fendes kynde.  
 For wip oute eye  
 There myȝte childe non suche<sup>2</sup> deye.  
 Clergie makeþ mynde  
 Deep sleep nouȝt<sup>3</sup> fendes kynde;  
 But deth slowe Merlyn,  
 Merlyn was ergo no gobelyn.  
 [R.] Anoper Merlyn of Albalonde,<sup>4</sup>  
 þat now hatte Scottelonde,  
 Hadde<sup>5</sup> names two,  
 Siluestris and Calidonus also,  
 Of þat wode Calidonie,  
 For pere<sup>6</sup> he tolde his prophecie;  
 And heet Siluestris as wel,  
 For whan he was in [a]<sup>7</sup> batel,  
 And sigh<sup>8</sup> aboue a grisliche kynde,  
 And fil anon out of his mynde;  
 And made no more bood,<sup>9</sup>  
 But ran<sup>10</sup> to þe wood.  
*Trevisa.*<sup>11</sup> Siluestris is wood,  
 Other wilde of mood;  
 Other elles,  
 þat at þe wode he dwelles.<sup>12</sup>  
 R. Siluestris Merlyn  
 Tolde prophecie wel and fyn,  
 And prophecied ful sure<sup>13</sup>  
 Vnder kyng Arthure,

TREVISA.

callede now Scottelande, whiche hade ij. names; oon name MS. HARL.  
 was Siluestris, that other was Calidonus, of a woode callede 2261.  
 Calidonia, where he propheciede; callede Silvestris in that  
 he beenge in batelle see in the aiere a meruellous thyng  
 thro the whiche sighte he began to be distracte. Whiche  
 goenge to a woode began to prophecy in the tyme of

<sup>1</sup> bringe an heepe, Cx.<sup>2</sup> no suche child, Cx.<sup>3</sup> no, Cx.<sup>4</sup> Albin lond, Cx.<sup>5</sup> And he had, Cx.<sup>6</sup> So Cx. (there); þat, MS., a.<sup>7</sup> Added from a.<sup>8</sup> sawe, Cx.<sup>9</sup> abood, Cx.<sup>10</sup> ran anon, Cx.<sup>11</sup> This and the following reference added from Cx.<sup>12</sup> welles, a.<sup>13</sup> soure, a.

Prophetavit apertius  
 Quam Merlinus Ambrosius.  
 Sunt montes in Snawdonia  
 Cum summitate nimia,  
 Ab imis usque verticem  
 Vix transmeatur per diem.  
 Quos Cambri vocant Eriry,<sup>1</sup>  
 Quod sonat montes<sup>2</sup> nivei;  
 Hi Walliæ pecoribus  
 Sufficerent in pascuis;<sup>3</sup>  
 In horum<sup>4</sup> summo vertice  
 Sunt duo lacus hodie,  
 Quorum unus erraticam  
 In se concludit<sup>5</sup> insulam,  
 Ventis hinc inde mobilem,  
 Ripis approximabilem,<sup>6</sup>  
 Ita<sup>7</sup> ut armentarii  
 Mirentur se clam provehi.  
 Dat alter<sup>8</sup> lacus perchios,  
 Turtros<sup>9</sup> omnes monoculos;  
 Quod<sup>10</sup> reperitur hodie  
 In Mulwellis<sup>11</sup> Albanæ.  
 Ruthelan in confinibus  
 Tegengil<sup>12</sup> est fons modicus,

<sup>1</sup> *Eriri*, A.C.D.; *Erriri*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *mons*, E. (clerical error.)

<sup>3</sup> So MSS. and Gale; but the metre suggests *pastibus*.

<sup>4</sup> *quorum*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *conclaudit*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *approbriabilem*, C. (not D.)

<sup>7</sup> So A.C.D.; *Item*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *altera*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Turcos*, A., Gale. Possibly *turtas* should be read. See Ducange, s.v. *truta*.

<sup>10</sup> *Hoc*, C.D.

<sup>11</sup> *Mulwelles*, B.; *Mulwelle*, C. (not D.)

<sup>12</sup> *Tegnigil*, A.; *Tetungil*, B.



TREVISA.

Openliche, nouzt<sup>1</sup> so cloos  
 As Merlyn Ambros.  
 There beep hilles in Snowdowye,  
 þat beep wonderliche hiȝe,  
 Wiþ heiȝte as grete way<sup>2</sup>  
 As a man may goo a day;  
 And hiȝte<sup>3</sup> Eryry in Walische,<sup>4</sup>  
 Snowy hilles on Engliche.  
 In pese hilles pere is  
 Leese i-now for al<sup>5</sup> Walis;  
 þis hil in þe cop berys  
 Tweye grete fische werys,  
 Conteyned in þe oon<sup>6</sup> pond;  
 Meueþ wiþ the wynd an ilond,  
 As peigh he dede swymme,  
 And neiȝeth<sup>7</sup> to þe brymme;  
 So þat herdes haueþ greet wonder  
 And wenep þat þe world meueþ vnder.  
 In þe oper is perche and trouȝtis,<sup>8</sup>  
 Euery fysshe one eyed is;<sup>9</sup>  
 So fareþ as wel  
 In Albania þe Milewel.<sup>10</sup>  
 In Ruthlond by Tygentil<sup>11</sup>  
 There is a litel<sup>12</sup> welle,

Kynge Arthure. There be hilles in Snawdonia of a grete MS. HARL.  
 altitude, in so moche that a man may vnnethe goe from 2261.  
 the foote of hit to the hiȝhte of hit in a day. Whiche  
 hilles men of that cuntre calle Eriri, that sowndethe in  
 Engliche the hilles of snawe, whiche be sufficiaunte in  
 pastures to alle the bestes in Wales; in the altitude of  
 whom be ij. waters, oon of whom concludethe an yle  
 movede to and fro with the wynde, in so moche that drovers  
 of bestes meruaile theyme to be caryede from oon place to  
 an other sodenly. That other water ȝiffethe fisches of di-  
 uerse kyndes hauenge but oon eie, whiche thyng is founde  
 also in the Mulwelle of Albania. Also there is a lytelle  
 welle in the costes of Ruthlande, Tetengil by name, whiche

<sup>1</sup> and not, Cx.<sup>2</sup> a waye. Cx.<sup>3</sup> hatte, a.; heete, Cx.<sup>4</sup> on Waltshe, Cx.<sup>5</sup> al beestes of, Cx.<sup>6</sup> that one, Cx.<sup>7</sup> neiȝheþ, a.<sup>8</sup> trowȝtis, a.; and fysshe, Cx.<sup>9</sup> So Cx., omitting fysshe; And  
 oper fische on euery side is, MS., a.<sup>10</sup> Meluel, a.; Mylwel, Cx.<sup>11</sup> Tegentil, a.; Tetingel, Cx.<sup>12</sup> lite, a.

Qui non marinis moribus  
 Die bis undat fluctibus,  
 Sed undis crebro deficit,  
 Undis vicissim sufficit.  
 In Monia <sup>1</sup> Norwalliæ,<sup>2</sup>  
 Quæ Anglesey est hodie,  
 Est lapis, sicut didici,  
 Concors humano femori;  
 Qui, quantolibet spatio  
 Asportetur ab aliquo,<sup>3</sup>  
 Nocte per se revertitur.  
 Hoc comperit, ut legitur,  
 Hugo comes Salopiæ  
 Henrici primi<sup>4</sup> tempore;  
 Probandi causa lapidem  
 Ligavit ad consimilem  
 Magnis catenis ferreis,  
 Et projecit in fluctibus;  
 Qui tamen sub diluculo<sup>5</sup>  
 Visus est loco pristino.  
 Hunc semel quidam<sup>6</sup> rusticus  
 Ligavit suis cruribus;  
 Statim femur computruit;  
 Lapis ad locum rediit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Menia*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *North Walliæ*, A.D., Gale.

<sup>3</sup> *Aquilo*, G., and Gale, absurdly.

<sup>4</sup> *primo*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *diliculo*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *quidem*, D.

TREVISA.

Pat flowep nouȝt alway,  
 As þe·see twies a day;  
 But somtyme it is drye,  
 And somtyme al ful vp to <sup>1</sup> þe yȝe.  
 There is in North Wallia  
 In Mon, þat hatte Angleseia,  
 A stoon, acordynge ful <sup>2</sup> nyhe  
 As hit were a manis pyghe;  
 How fer euere þat stoon  
 Be i-bore of eny moon,  
 A <sup>3</sup> nyght he goop hoom his way.  
 Pat he fonde by assay  
 How, <sup>4</sup> þe erle of Schroisbury, <sup>5</sup>  
 In tyme of þe firste Henry; <sup>6</sup>  
 For he wolde þe sop fynde,  
 Pat stoon to anoþer he gan bynde <sup>7</sup>  
 Wip grete cheynes of ire,  
 And prewe al in fyre <sup>8</sup>  
 I-bounde at oon hepe  
 In to a water depe.  
 Ȝet a morwe þat stoon  
 Was i-seie erliche in Moon.  
 A cherl helde hymself ful sligh, <sup>9</sup>  
 And bonde þat stoon to his pigh;  
 His pigh was roted <sup>10</sup> or day,  
 And þe stoon went away.

dothe not floo and refloo in the maner of a sec, but other-  
 while water habundet the there, and otherwhile hit wontethe  
 water. Also there is a ston in Mononia in Northe Wales,  
 whiche is callede Angleseye, as y haue lernede, accordenge  
 to the hippe of man; whiche ston brouȝhte from that place  
 by a certeyne space of eny man is returnede to his propre  
 place ageyne in the nyȝhte, as hit hathe bene provede mony  
 tymes. Hugo, therle of Schrewesbury, provenge the seide  
 thyng in the tyme of kyng Henry the firste, bonde that  
 ston to an other with grete cheynes of yrne, and caste hit  
 in to the water, whiche ston was founde in the mornyng  
 in his olde place. Whiche ston a churle bonde in a tyme  
 to his theȝhe, and hit rotede anon, and the ston wente to

MS. HARL.  
 2261.  
 fol. 58. b.

<sup>1</sup> to] by, a., Cx.

<sup>2</sup> wel, a.

<sup>3</sup> On, Cx.

<sup>4</sup> Hughe, Cx.

<sup>5</sup> Srouysbury, a.; Shrewsbury, Cx.

<sup>6</sup> Harry, Cx.

<sup>7</sup> So a. and Cx.; another kynde, MS.  
<sup>8</sup> So a.; al in þe fyre, MS.; al y  
 feren, Cx.

<sup>9</sup> slyȝ, a., which has both pigh and  
 piȝ below.

<sup>10</sup> roten, Cx.

Si opus fiat Veneris  
 Juxta procinctum lapidis,  
 Lapis sudorem faciet,  
 Et proles non proveniet.  
 Est<sup>1</sup> rupes audientium,  
 Sic dicta<sup>2</sup> per contrarium;  
 Ubi,<sup>3</sup> si sonum feceris  
 Cornu vel exclamaveris,  
 Hac parte non percipitur  
 Sonus, qui illac editur.  
 Est alia et<sup>4</sup> insula  
 Huic loco contigua,  
 Sed eremitas<sup>5</sup> continet,  
 Quorum si quisquam dissidet,  
 Statim se mures congregant;  
 Escas eorum devorant.  
 Nec cessat hæc molestia,<sup>6</sup>  
 Donec cesset discordia.  
 Sicut hic et Hibernia<sup>7</sup>  
 Gens extat melancholica,<sup>8</sup>  
 Sic sancti hujus climatis  
 Propositi sunt vindicis.  
 In hac quoque provincia,  
 Hibernia, et Scotia

<sup>1</sup> *Est*] Et, E.

<sup>2</sup> So C.; *dictus*, A.D.E., Gale  
(though having *rupes* or *rupis*  
above).

<sup>3</sup> *Ibi*, A.

<sup>4</sup> *Est et alia*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *heremitas*, MSS.

<sup>6</sup> *malitia*, A.

<sup>7</sup> So D., Gale; *Hibernica*, A.E.

<sup>8</sup> *malencolica*, A.D.; *malancolia*, B.

TREVISA.

Ȝif me doop<sup>1</sup> leccherie  
 Nigh pat stoon faste bie,<sup>2</sup>  
 Swoot comeþ of þe stoon,  
 But child comeþ þere noon.  
 There is a roche wel<sup>3</sup> wonderly,  
 Þe roche of herynge be contrary,  
 Theyȝ þere crie eny man i-born,  
 And blowe also wiþ an<sup>4</sup> horn,  
 Noyse pat is þere i-made, þeiȝ pou abide,  
 Þow schalt here non in þis side.  
 Þere is anoper ilond  
 Faste by Mon at þe hond,  
 Heremytes þere beþ ryue;  
 Ȝif ony of hem doop stryue,  
 Alle þe mys pat may be gete  
 Comeþ and eteþ al hir mete;  
 Þanne ceseþ neuere pat woo,  
 Ar þe strif<sup>5</sup> cese also.  
 As men in þis londe  
 Beþ angry, as in Irlond,  
 So seyntes of þis contray  
 Beþ also wrecchefull alway.  
 Also in þis lond,  
 In Irlond, and in Scotlond

his propre place. And if the synne of lechery be fulle- MS. HARL. 2261.  
 filled with in the caste of ston to hit, that ston wille sende  
 from hit as sweetenge, and also thei schalle not gette a  
 childe. Also there is an hille of men herenge, callede so  
 by name contrarious, that and if thou make a sownde, other  
 elles blawe with an horne, the sownde is not perceyvede in  
 that parte. Also there is an other yle contiguate to that  
 place, conteynenge heremites; and if there be discorde  
 amonge theyme, myce gedre anon and deuoure the meites  
 of theyme, whiche greuaunce dothe not cease tille that  
 peace be reconsiled amonge theim. Also that peple of  
 that cuntre be replete with the melancholy lyke to the peple  
 of Yrlonde, so seyntes of that cuntre be prompte vn to  
 vengeance; where belles and crokede staves be hade in  
 grete veneration, as men vse in Yrlonde and in Scotte-

<sup>1</sup> *men don*, Cx. (as usual.)<sup>2</sup> *that stone by*, Cx.<sup>3</sup> *right*, Cx.<sup>4</sup> So Cx.; *wipoute*, MS., *a*.<sup>5</sup> So *a*, and Cx.; *firste*, MS.



Campanæ<sup>1</sup> sunt et baculi  
 Ornatu sub<sup>2</sup> multiplici,  
 Tam digni proculdubio  
 In clero et in populo,  
 Quod vereantur hodie  
 Perjurium committere  
 Tam super horum alterum,  
 Quam super evangelium.  
 Ad Basingwerk<sup>3</sup> fons oritur,  
 Qui sacer<sup>4</sup> vulgo dicitur;  
 Et<sup>5</sup> tantis bullis scaturit,  
 Quod mox injecta rejicit;  
 Tam magnum flumen procreat,  
 Ut Cambriæ sufficiat.  
 Ægri, qui dant rogamina,  
 Reportant medicamina.  
 Rubro guttatos lapides  
 In scatebris<sup>6</sup> reperies;  
 In signum sacri sanguinis,  
 Quem Wenefredæ virginis  
 Guttur truncatum fuderat.  
 Qui scelus hoc patraverat,  
 Ac nati et nepotuli,  
 Latrant, ut canum catuli;

<sup>1</sup> *Campani*, C.D.

<sup>2</sup> *sub*] om. A.

<sup>3</sup> *Basingworth*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Qui sacer*] Fons sicut, C.  
And so D. apparently (sic<sup>2</sup>.)

<sup>5</sup> *Qui*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *scatebro*, B.

TREVISA.  
—

Ben<sup>1</sup> belles and staues  
 [That]<sup>2</sup> in worschippe men haues,  
 And beep worschipped [so]<sup>3</sup> panne  
 [Of]<sup>4</sup> clerkes and lewed menne,  
 þat dredeþ also  
 To swere by<sup>5</sup> ony of þo  
 Staf oper belle,  
 As hit were þe gospelle.  
 At Basyngwere<sup>6</sup> is a welle,  
 þat sacer hiȝt, as men doop telle.  
 Hit springeþ so sore, as men may see,  
 What is cast yn, it þroweþ aȝee.  
 Þere of springeþ a grete stronde;  
 Hit were i-now for al þat londe.  
 Seke at þat place  
 Hauēþ bope hele and grace.  
 In þe welmes offer þan ones  
 Is y-founde reed splekked<sup>7</sup> stones;  
 In tokene of [þe]<sup>8</sup> blood reed,  
 þat þe mayde Wynefrede  
 Schadde at þat putte,<sup>9</sup>  
 Whan hire prote was i-kutte.  
 He þat dede þat dede  
 Hap sorwe on his sede;  
 His children at alle stoundes  
 Berkeþ as whelpes of houndes.

lande, whiche peple drede more to swere by theym then MS. HARL. 2261.  
 on a masse booke. Also at Basyngwere spryngethe an holy  
 welle, whiche is of so grete feruence that hit castethe owte  
 thynges caste in to hit, whiche bredethe so grete a water  
 that myȝhte suffice to alle Wales; whiche water ȝiffethe  
 grete helpe to seke peple; where thou schalle fynde stones  
 hauenge in theym as dropes of blood, in the signe of the  
 holy bloode whiche floede owte from the throte of Seynte  
 Wenefride. For whiche offence the doers of hit and alle  
 their childer and successors berke in the maner of dogges,

<sup>1</sup> So Cx.; *Bope*, MS., *a*.<sup>2</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>3</sup> Added from *a*. and Cx.<sup>4</sup> Added from Cx.<sup>5</sup> *on*, Cx.<sup>6</sup> *Basyngwerke*, Cx.<sup>7</sup> *plekked*, *a*.; *sperclid*, Cx.<sup>8</sup> Added from *a*. and Cx.<sup>9</sup> *put*, *a*.; *pytte*, Cx., and *kytte*,  
below.

Donec sanctæ<sup>1</sup> suffragium  
Poscant<sup>2</sup> ad hunc fonticulum,  
Vel ad urbem Salopiæ,  
Ubi quiescit hodie.

---

<sup>1</sup> *sanctum*, B.

| <sup>2</sup> *poscunt*, B.

---

For þy<sup>1</sup> pray þat mayde grace  
 Riȝt at þat welle place,  
 Oþir in Schroyisbury<sup>2</sup> strete;  
 Þere þat mayde restep swete.

TREVISA.  
 —

---

vn til thei aske the suffrage and helpe of Seynte Wene- MS. HARL.  
 fride at that welle, other elles at the cite of Schrewisbury, 2261.  
 where sche restethe now, hade there in grete veneracion. —

---

<sup>1</sup> So MS. and α.; *For to they*, Cx. |    <sup>2</sup> *Shrowsbury*, Cx.

---





---

A P P E N D I X.

---



## APPENDIX.

### *Description of Paradise in the Geographia Universalis.*

MS. Arundel. Mus. Brit. 123. f. 14 b. vellum 4to. xiv. cent.

Paradisus est locus in partibus orientis constitutus, cujus vocabulum ex Græco in Latinum vertitur *hortus*. Porro in Hebraico *Eden* dicitur, quod apud nos *delicia* interpretatur, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo ij. Est enim hortus deliciarum, ut dicit idem, quia cum ex omni genere ligni et pomiferarum arborum est constitutus, habens in se lignum vitæ, non ibi frigus, non ibi æstus, sed perpetua aeris temperies, ex cujus medio fons prorumpens totum nemus<sup>2</sup> irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina; cujus aditus post peccatum primi hominis humano generi interclusus fuit, quia undique flammea rumphea, id est muro igneo circumcinctus,<sup>3</sup> ita ut ejus pene cum cœlo incendium conjungatur; præsidiumque angelorum arcendis spiritibus malis super rumpheæ flammam est a Domino ordinatum, ut homines flammæ, angelos vero malos boni angeli submoveant, ne alicui spiritui vel carni peccatrici aditus pateat paradisi. Hucusque Isidorus, libro xv., capitulo iij., ubi tractat de regionibus. Secundum Magistrum autem in Historiis, capitulo ij. super Genesim, dicitur sic: Plantavit, inquit, Deus, id est, a principio creationis, herbis et arboribus, locum deliciarum aptavit, et hoc in mundi principio, scilicet in oriente; et ille locus est amœnissimus,

Ibi non  
est frigus  
nec æstus,  
sed perpetua  
aeris  
temperies.<sup>1</sup>  
De muro  
igneo circa  
paradisum.

<sup>1</sup> The marginal notes are in another hand and ink.

<sup>2</sup> *venus*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *circumcincta*, MS.

Aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt ad paradysum.

Paradysus est omni terra altior. De pulchritudine et gloria paradisi.

De altitudine situs paradisi. Continua temperies ibi est. Omnium bonorum abundantia.

Summa amœnitas.

longo terræ et maris contractu a nostro habitabili<sup>1</sup> segregatus, id est altus, ut usque ad lunarem globum attingat, ubi et propter situs altitudinem aquæ diluvii non pervenerunt, ut dicit idem. De paradiso autem dicit Johannes Damascenus: Quia vero ex visibili creatura conditurus erat Deus hominem ad imaginem suam et similitudinem, sicut quendam regem et principem omnis terræ et omnium quæ sunt in ipsa, construxit ante quasi quandam regionem, in qua conversatus beatam duceret vitam; et iste locus divinus est paradysus, Dei manibus in Eden,<sup>2</sup> id est, deliciis et voluptate, plantatus, in oriente quidem omni terra celsior, penitus temperato et tenuissimo aere circumfulgens, plantis semper floridis comatus et bono odore plenus, lumine repletus [et] pulchritudine universa, gaudii et exultationis promptuarium, creaturæ sensibilis excedens intelligentiam; divina regio et digna eo<sup>3</sup> qui secundum imaginem erat, in quo nil irrationabilium habitabat, sed solus homo divinarum<sup>4</sup> manuum plasma. Item Strabus et Beda dicunt quod paradysus locus in oriente positus, interjecto oceano et montibus oppositis, a regionibus quas incolunt homines secretus et remotissimus est, pertingensque altitudine usque ad circulum ipsius lunæ; fuit locus summe conveniens homini innocentī propter ejus summam temperiem, quare non frigus ibi est nec æstus, sed perpetua temperies, ut dicit Isidorus. Item propter omnium bonorum abundantiam; quia, ut dicit Augustinus de Civitate Dei xiiij., capitulo x., quid timere aut dolere poterant in tantorum tanta affluentia bonorum, ubi non aberat quicquam quod bona voluntas adipisceretur,<sup>5</sup> nec inerat quod carnem [vel] animum hominis feliciter viventis offenderet vel in aliqua molestaret? Item propter summam amœnitatem; nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium, ut dicit

<sup>1</sup> *habitali*, MS.

<sup>2</sup> *Edom*, MS.

<sup>3</sup> *digno digna ei*, MS.

<sup>4</sup> *divinorum*, MS.

<sup>5</sup> *adipiscere*, MS.

Damascenus, quod attestatur tam arborum quam florum et frondium inmarcessibilis pulchritudo; nam arbores comam non perdunt, flores non marcescunt. Item propter summam jocunditatem, quod attestatur fructuum dulcedo, quia ibi est omne lignum pulchrum visu et suavissimum ad vescendum, Genesis ij. Idem etiam attestatur lucis plenitudo, nam puritate aeris claritas lucis proportionatur, ut dicit Beda. Item propter soli fecunditatem, quod attestatur fontium irrigantium multitudo; dicitur autem, Genesis ij.: Fons ascendebat et irrigabat paradysum, qui in quatuor flumina est divisus, Genesis ij. Item propter loci securitatem, quod attestatur situationis ejus altitudo; nam lunarem tangit circulum, ut dicunt Beda et Isidorus, id est, pertingit usque ad aerem quietum post istum aerem turbulentum, ubi finis est et terminus exhalationum et vaporum humidorum quorum fluxus et progressus lunari corpori approximatur; sicut exponit Alexander, non secundum veritatem attingere<sup>1</sup> in altitudine orbem lunæ, sed circulum lunarem attingere hyperbolice, ut ejus maxima altitudo et incomparabilis respectu terræ inferioris insinueretur. Item propter ejus incorruptibilitatem, quod attestatur existentium ibi vitæ longitudo; nam ibi sunt Elyas et Enoch vivi usque hodie et incorrupti, [ut] dicit Magister in Historiis. Nihil enim potest ibi mori quod est vivum; nec hoc mirandum est de paradiso, cum in Hibernia scimus esse insulam in qua mortuorum corpora non putrescunt, et aliam in qua homines mori non possunt, sed oportet ut ultimo senio extra insulam deferantur; quære supra de Hibernia in littera J. De paradiso autem et ejus situ fuit opinio apud gentiles, ut refert Plinius, ubi loquitur de insulis Fortunatis; de quibus etiam loquitur Isidorus, libro xv., inter quas est una quæ omnia fere parturit bona, ubi humus sponte procreat omnes fructus, ubi in jugis collium arbores virore frondium et dulcore fructuum semper vestiuntur, ubi ad herbarum vicem

Pulchritudo paradisi.

Summa jocunditas.

Plenitudo lucis.

Fecunditas soli.

Securitas loci.

Incorruptibilitas loci.

Elyas et Ennok ibi sunt.

Nil ibi moritur.

De loco in Hibernia in quo homines non moriuntur.

De insulis Fortunatis.

<sup>1</sup> nam . . . attingit, MS., against the sense; see below.



Propter  
sonitum  
aquarum  
cadentium  
fiunt homi-  
nes surdi.

messis et olus crescit, unde et gentilium error et sæcularium carmina poetarum propter soli fecunditatem eadem insulas paradisum esse putaverunt; quod quidem ponere est erroneum, cum prædictæ insulæ Fortunatæ sint in occidente contra lævam Mauritaniae in oceano collocatæ, ut dicit Isidorus, libro xv. Paradisus autem in oriente, in altissimo monte, de cujus cacumine cadentes aquæ maximum faciunt lacum, et in suo casu tantum faciunt strepitum et fragorem, quod omnes incolæ juxta prædictum lacum nascuntur surdi ex immoderato sonitu seu fragore sensum auditus in parvulis corrumpente, ut dicit Basilius in Exameron; similiter et Ambrosius. Ex illo autem lacu, velut ex uno fonte, procedunt illa flumina quatuor, Phison qui et Ganges, Gyon qui et Nilus dicitur, et Tigris ac Euphrates de quibus in libro Geneseos fit mentio specialis.

*The same, as it is given in the shorter form of the Polychronicon (C. D.<sup>1</sup>)*

*Isid. li. [xiv.] c. 3.* Paradisus locus est in Oriente, longo maris tractu a nostro habitabili segregatus, cujus vocabulum a Græco in Latinum versum dicitur *hortus*, Hebraice vero *Eden*, quod sonat *deliciæ*; quod utrumque junctum facit *hortum deliciarum*. Est enim locus omni genere arborum consitus, ubi est et lignum vitæ; cujus loci aditus post peccatum primi hominis interclusus est; septus est enim undique rumphea flammea, id est, muro igneo, ita ut ejus cum coelo pæne jungatur incendium. Supra vero rumpheam illam positi sunt cherubin, id est, angeli boni ad arcendum spiritus malos; rumphea etiam arcet homines. Habet etiam locus ille salubritatem; quia temperie gaudens nec frigus habet nec æstum; et quicquid ibi vivit, mori non potest. Cui rei attestatur quod Enoch et Helias

<sup>1</sup> The text is taken from D. Compare pp. 66–78 of this volume.

adhuc vivunt ibidem incorrupti. *Johannes Damascenus*. Habet etiam locus ille amoenitatem, nam universæ pulchritudinis erat promptuarium. Ubi cuncti generis arbores comam non perdunt; flores non marcescunt. Habet etiam jocunditatem; cui rei attestatur fructuum dulcedo. *Giraldus*, 3. Et omne lignum pulchrum visu et ad vescendum suave. Habet et securitatem, cui rei attestatur loci altitudo. *Beda*. Nam pertingit aerem quietum usque ad lunarem circulum. *Petrus*, c. 13. Idcirco aquæ diluvii illuc minime pervenerunt. *R.* Quod exponens *Alexander*,<sup>1</sup> dicit ita esse non secundum rei veritatem, sed secundum hyperbolicam locutionem, ut sit ejus incomparabilis altitudo respectu nostri habitabilis ostenderetur. *Basiliius in Exameron*. Igitur de Paradisi altissimo monte cadentes aquæ magnum faciunt lacum; ex quo velut ex uno fonte quatuor nascuntur flumina. *Isidorus libro quarto*. De medio enim Paradisi fons prorumpens totum nemus irrigat, dividiturque in quatuor nascentia flumina. *Josephus libro primo*. Nam Phison educitur in Indiam; Euphrates et Tigris in mare Rubrum feruntur; Gion vero per Ægyptum fluens Nilum facit. *Isidorus libro tertiodecimo*. Salustius tamen auctor certissimus asserit quod de Cerauneis montibus Armeniæ ad pedem Caucasii montis oritur fons, qui caput est duorum fluminum, Tigris et Euphratis, quæ ambo post longum circuitum circa Mesopotamiam descendunt in mare Rubrum. Idcirco Hieronymus animadvertit de Paradisi fluminibus aliter fore sentiendum. *Petrus cap. quarto decimo*. Primus fluvius Phison circuit Indiam trahens aureas arenas, et dictus est Ganges a Gangoro rege Indiæ, et interpretatur *caterva*, eo quod decem flumina recipit. Secundus dictus est Gion, qui et Nilus, et circuit Æthiopiam et Ægyptum. Tertius Tigris, secun-

<sup>1</sup> "Quid quod deliciis ornatus  
"apex paradisi

"Lunarem tangit vertice pene  
"globum?"

Alex. Neckham, *De Laud. Div. Sap.*,  
p. 441 (in this series), where much  
in common with Higden may be  
read.

dum Josephum, dicitur Diglath, quod sonat *acutum*, eo quod velox sit, et vadit contra Assyrios. Quartus Euphrates, quod sonat frugifer, et vadit contra Chaldaeos. Hæc quatuor flumina ab eodem fonte manant et separantur; et iterum quædam eorum inter se commiscuntur, et separantur; sæpe etiam absorbentur a terra et locis iterum in pluribus emergunt. Inde est quod de ortu eorum varia leguntur; quia Ganges dicitur nasci in locis Caucasi montis; Nilus non procul ab Atlante monte; Tigris et Euphrates in Armenia.

*Specimens of the Orthography of Tenison's MS. of Trevisa, and of Caxton's printed Text. (Compare p. 385.)*

TENISON'S MS. OF TREVISA, our a.  
(now MS. Addit. 24194, Mus.  
Brit.)

*Beda, li. p.* Out of Irlond, þat is, þe ʒpre contray of scottes, come Irische men wiþ here duke þat het renda, and wiþ loue oþ<sup>er</sup> wiþ strēgh<sup>e</sup> made hem cheef Cees and citees besides þe pittes in þe Norþside. Giŕ. Now þe lond is schortliche I cleped Scotlond of Scottes, þat come out of Irlond and reignede þerynne þre hundred ʒere and fiftene anon to reed williams tyme þat was Malcolins broþ<sup>er</sup>. ʒ. Meny euedencis we haueþ þat þis scotlond is ofte I cleped and hatte hībnia, riȝt as Irlond hatte. Þ<sup>er</sup>fore beda, li. 2. c. 10., seiþ þat laurence, archebisshop of Donbar, was archebisshop of Scottes þat wonede in an ilond þat hatte hībnia and is next to britayne. ¶ also beda, li. 3. c. 27., seiþ pestilens of moreyn bar doun hībnia. also, li. 3. c. 2., seiþ þe Scottes þat wonede in þe soup side of hībnia; also, li. 4. c. 3. he seiþ þat chadde was a ʒongelynge and lerned þe rule of monkes in hībnia. Also,

CAXTON'S PRINTED TEXT.

Beda, libro primo Out of yrlond that is the propre countraye of the scottes come yrysshe men with her duke that was called renda. And with loue & with strengthe made hem chyef sees and cytees beside the pyctes in the northsyde Gir, Now the londe is shortly called scotland of scottes that come out of yrlōd & regned therinne. iij. C, xv, yere vnto the rede williams tyme that was malcolyns broder. ʒ. many euydencis we haue of this scotland that it is ofte called and heyte hibernia, as yrlōd doth, therfor beda, libro 2. c. p, seyth that laurence archibisshop of dunbar was archibisshop of scottes that dwellyd in an ylond that heet hibernia & is next to brytayne. Also beda, li, 3. c. 27. seyth Pestelence of moreyn bare doun hibernia, Also, libro tercio. capitulo secundo seyth that the scottes that dwellyd in the south side of hibernia, also libro 4. capitulo tercio, he sayth that chadde was a yonglyng and lerned the rewle of monkes in hibernia, Also libro quarto capitulo visesimo (sic)

li°. 4°. c°. 22°, Egfrid' kyng of Norþhüberland destroyede hiċnia. Also, li°. 5°. c°. 15°, þe moſte deel of Scottis in hiċnia. ¶ And in þe ſame chapitre he clepeþ hiċnia ꝥpurliche I nempned: þat Weſt ylonð. þat is an hundred myle fro ev<sup>o</sup>y britayne and deÞted wiþ þe ſee bytwene, and clepeþ hiċnia þat contre þat now hatte Scotland. þere he telleþ þat adamnan, abbot of þis flond, ſeillede to hiċnia forto teche Irifſhe men þe laweful Eſterday, and at þe laſte come hoom aȝen into ſcotlond. *ysið eth li°. 14°.* Men of þ<sup>o</sup> ſcotlond hatte ſcottes in here owne langage and pittes alſo. For ſomtyme here body was I peynt in þis manere; þei wolde sōtyme wiþ ſcharpe egged tool pycche ꝛ kerue here owne bodyes and make þ<sup>o</sup>on dyv<sup>o</sup>s figures and ſchappes, and peynte hem wiþ Inke op<sup>o</sup> wiþ op<sup>o</sup> peynture and colo<sup>r</sup> and for þey were ſo I peynt þei were I cleped picty, þat is, I peynt.

secundo, Egfridus kyng of north-berland (sic) destroyed hibernia. Also libro. 4. ca. 15. The moost dele of scottes in hibernia, And in the same chapytre he clepeth hibernia proprely named, That west ylonde is an honderd myle from eueryche brytayne and departed with the see bitwene, And called hibernia that countray that now is callid scotland, there he telleth that adanman (sic) abbote of this ylonð seyled to hibernia for to teche yryshmen the lawful ester daye And atte laſte cam agayne in to ſcotlōd. *Ysi, ethli (sic) 14.* Mē of this ſcotlād, ben named scottes in their own lāgage ꝛ pycetes alſo: for sōtyme her body was peinted in this man'. they wold sōtyme with a ſharp egged tole prycke ꝛ kerue her own bodyes. ꝛ make theron dyūse figures ꝛ ſhappes, ꝛ peynte hem with Inke or with other peynture, or colour. And by cauſe they were ſo peynted they were called picti, that is to ſaye peynted.

END OF VOL. I.

LONDON:  
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.  
[3724.—1000.—2/65.]



# LIST OF WORKS

PUBLISHED

By the late Record and State Paper Commissioners,  
or under the Direction of the Right Honourable  
the Master of the Rolls, which may be pur-  
chased of Messrs. Longman and Co., London;  
Messrs. J. H. and J. Parker, Oxford and Lon-  
don; Messrs. Macmillan and Co., Cambridge and  
London; Messrs. A. and C. Black, Edinburgh;  
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

---

## PUBLIC RECORDS AND STATE PAPERS.

---

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry  
III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols.  
folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM.  
Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN  
BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 2, 3, and 4, folio (1806—1808; 1821—1828),  
boards: vols. 2 and 3, *price* 21s. each; vol. 4, *price* 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS.  
Vol. 4. *Edited by* The Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. (1812), folio,  
boards. *Price* 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM, Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* The  
Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol.  
folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir  
HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards (Domesday-Book, vol. 3).  
*Price* 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC.  
ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards  
(Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21s.

STATUTES OF THE REALM, large folio. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices (1819—1828). *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. *Price* 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30s. each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Henry VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1810, &c.), boards. *Price* 25s. each.

\* \* The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42s.

“FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ,” &c.; or, Rymer’s Fœdera, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 2, Part 2, and Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1821—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21s. each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31s. 6d.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21s.

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21s. each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King’s High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. Edward I., II. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42s.

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). The first volume, 1204—1224. The second volume, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81s., cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir N. HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98s.; or separately, 14s. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

\* \* The Introduction is also published in 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9s.

ROTULI CURLE REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28s.

ROTULI NORMANNIE IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12s. 6d.

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18s.

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIE IN CURIA DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John (1195—1214). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, *price* 2s. 6d.

ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42s.

DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18s.

ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30s.

REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS. 1831 to 1837. 1 vol. folio, boards. *Price* 8s.

REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44s. Or, in 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36s.

ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4s. 6d.

THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45s. 6d.

MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.



MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42s.

REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15s.

THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. *Price* 42s. Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 ; *price* 10s. 6d. each.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS. 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.

THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES. 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.

ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35s. Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25s.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30s. Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21s.

ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, in royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.

NOTES OF MATERIALS FOR THE HISTORY OF PUBLIC DEPARTMENTS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. Demy folio (1846), cloth. *Price* 10s.

HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. Royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12s.



STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH. 11 vols. 4to., cloth, (1830—1852), with Indices of Persons and Places. *Price 5l. 15s. 6d.* ; or separately, *price 10s. 6d.* each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND ; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By F. S. THOMAS, Esq.* 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price 40s.*

---

*In the Press.*

CALENDARUM GENEALOGICUM ; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq.*

---

## CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS.

[IMPERIAL 8vo. *Price 15s. each Volume or Part.*]

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856.

Vol. I.—1547–1580.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610.

Vol. II.—1611–1618.

Vol. III.—1619–1623.

Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., V.P.S.A. 1858–1864.

Vol. I.—1625–1626.

Vol. II.—1627–1628.

Vol. III.—1628–1629.

Vol. IV.—1629–1631.

Vol. V.—1631–1633.

Vol. VI.—1633–1634.

Vol. VII.—1634–1635.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860–1864.

Vol. I.—1660–1661.

Vol. II.—1661–1662.

Vol. III.—1663–1664.

Vol. IV.—1664–1665.

Vol. V.—1665–1666.

Vol. VI.—1666–1667.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860.

Vol. I.—1509–1573.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1864.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts),—1515–1518.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864.

Vol. I.—1202–1509.

---

### *In the Press.*

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. II.—1574–1585.

- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1580-1590. •
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. II.—1559-1560.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. VIII.—1635.
- CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. III.—1519, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. VII.—1667-1668.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. II.

---

*In Progress.*

- CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. Vol. II.—Henry VIII.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOËL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan.
-

## THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo. *Price* 10s. each Volume or Part.]

1. THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
2. CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.
3. LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.
4. MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA ; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.
5. FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.
6. THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ; by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.
7. JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.
8. HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS, by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.



9. EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1863.
10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.
11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* C. A. COLE, Esq. 1858.
12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859-1860.
13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.
14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.
15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.
16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA (A.D. 449-1298). *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.
17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.
18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. I. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.
19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.
20. ANNALES CAMBRIÆ. *Edited by* the Rev. J. WILLIAMS AB ITHEL. 1860.

21. THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1861-1863.
22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.
23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.
24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.
25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.
26. DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862.
27. ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216-1235. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1862.
28. THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—THE ENGLISH HISTORY OF THOMAS WALSINGHAM, MONK OF SAINT ALBAN'S. Vol. I., 1272-1381. Vol. II., 1381-1422. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1864.
29. CHRONICON ABBATIE EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMLÆ ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.
30. RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. I., 447-871. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.
31. YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 30-31, and 32-33. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1864.

32. NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY, 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Herault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.* 1863.
33. HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ. Vol. I. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A.; Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.* 1863.
34. ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ. *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1863.
35. LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I. and II. *Collected and edited by the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1864-1865.
36. ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066-1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registry of the University, Cambridge.* 1864.
37. MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire.* 1864.
38. CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. I. ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI. *Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.* 1864.
39. RECUEIL DES CRONIKES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. From Albina to 688. *Edited by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
40. A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND, BY JOHN DE WAVRIN. From Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding.) *Edited and translated by WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.* 1864.
41. POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENI, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.* 1865.

*In the Press.*

- LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITTANIE. *Edited by J. GLOVER, M.A.,*  
Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight.
- THE WARS OF THE DANES IN IRELAND : written in the Irish language.  
*Edited by the Rev. J. H. TODD, D.D.,* Librarian of the University  
of Dublin.
- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating  
to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British  
Isles. *Edited by GEORGE W. DASENT, Esq., D.C.L. Oxon.*
- A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE  
REIGN OF HENRY IV. Vol. II. *Edited by the Rev. F. C.*  
*HINGESTON, M.A.,* of Exeter College, Oxford.
- OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO  
HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited*  
*by the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D.,* Senior Fellow of King's  
College, Cambridge.
- ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN  
OF HENRY III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office.  
Vol. II. *Selected and edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D.,*  
Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ  
Church, Oxford.
- ORIGINAL DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL AND CLERICAL  
LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD BETWEEN THE REIGNS OF  
HENRY III. AND HENRY VII. *Edited by the Rev. H. ANSTEY,*  
*M.A.*
- ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited*  
*by the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B.,* Treasurer of St. Canice,  
Ireland.
- RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM  
ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872-1066. *Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR,*  
*M.A.,* Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. John's College, and  
Librarian of the University, Cambridge.
- THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by*  
*J. S. BREWER, M.A.,* Professor of English Literature, King's  
College, London.
- HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ.  
Vol. II. *Edited by W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A. ;* Membre cor-  
respondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie.
- HISTORIA MINOR MATTHÆI PARIS. *Edited by Sir FREDERICK*  
*MADDEN, K.H.,* Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts,  
British Museum.



ANNALES MONASTICI. Vol. II. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge.

CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIÉRO-SOLYMIS. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.

THE SAINT ALBAN'S CHRONICLES:—Vol. III., THE CHRONICLES OF RISHANGER, 'TROKELOWE, BLANEFORD, AND OTHERS. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law.

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST. Vol. II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian.

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. 20th, 21st, and 22nd Years. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN (continued). *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.

CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1400. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDENI, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. II. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

---

### *In Progress.*

DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., of Durham University.

WILLIELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM, LIBRI V. *Edited by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

*February 1865.*

---









MUSKINGUM COLLEGE LIBRARY  
DA25 .V5 v.41 v.41 pt.1 mustk  
Higden, Ranulf/Polychronicon Ranulphi Hi



3 8152 00156 9404

DA25  
B5  
v.41  
Pt.1

Higden  
Polychronicon  
Ranulphi Higden  
monachi Cestrensis



